



# **JBoss Enterprise Application Platform 6.3 Administration and Configuration Guide**

---

For Use with Red Hat JBoss Enterprise Application Platform 6

Red Hat Customer Content Services



# JBoss Enterprise Application Platform 6.3 Administration and Configuration Guide

---

For Use with Red Hat JBoss Enterprise Application Platform 6

## **Legal Notice**

Copyright © 2014 Red Hat, Inc..

This document is licensed by Red Hat under the [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License](#). If you distribute this document, or a modified version of it, you must provide attribution to Red Hat, Inc. and provide a link to the original. If the document is modified, all Red Hat trademarks must be removed.

Red Hat, as the licensor of this document, waives the right to enforce, and agrees not to assert, Section 4d of CC-BY-SA to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law.

Red Hat, Red Hat Enterprise Linux, the Shadowman logo, JBoss, MetaMatrix, Fedora, the Infinity Logo, and RHCE are trademarks of Red Hat, Inc., registered in the United States and other countries.

Linux ® is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States and other countries.

Java ® is a registered trademark of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

XFS ® is a trademark of Silicon Graphics International Corp. or its subsidiaries in the United States and/or other countries.

MySQL ® is a registered trademark of MySQL AB in the United States, the European Union and other countries.

Node.js ® is an official trademark of Joyent. Red Hat Software Collections is not formally related to or endorsed by the official Joyent Node.js open source or commercial project.

The OpenStack ® Word Mark and OpenStack Logo are either registered trademarks/service marks or trademarks/service marks of the OpenStack Foundation, in the United States and other countries and are used with the OpenStack Foundation's permission. We are not affiliated with, endorsed or sponsored by the OpenStack Foundation, or the OpenStack community.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

## **Abstract**

This book is a guide to the administration and configuration of Red Hat JBoss Enterprise Application Platform 6 and its patch releases.

## Table of Contents

<b>Preface</b>	.....	<b>14</b>
1. Document Conventions		14
1.1. Typographic Conventions		14
1.2. Pull-quote Conventions		15
1.3. Notes and Warnings		16
2. Getting Help and Giving Feedback		16
2.1. Do You Need Help?		16
2.2. We Need Feedback!		17
<b>Chapter 1. Introduction</b>	.....	<b>18</b>
1.1. About Red Hat JBoss Enterprise Application Platform 6		18
1.2. Features of JBoss EAP 6		18
1.3. About JBoss EAP 6 Operating Modes		19
1.4. About Standalone Servers		19
1.5. About Managed Domains		19
1.6. About the Domain Controller		20
1.7. About Domain Controller Discovery and Failover		21
1.8. About Host Controller		22
1.9. About Server Groups		23
1.10. About JBoss EAP 6 Profiles		24
<b>Chapter 2. Application Server Management</b>	.....	<b>25</b>
2.1. Start and Stop JBoss EAP 6		25
2.1.1. Start JBoss EAP 6		25
2.1.2. Start JBoss EAP 6 as a Standalone Server		25
2.1.3. Start JBoss EAP 6 as a Managed Domain		25
2.1.4. Configure the Name of a Host in a Managed Domain		26
2.1.5. Create Managed Domain on Two Machines		27
2.1.6. Start JBoss EAP 6 with an Alternative Configuration		29
2.1.7. Stop JBoss EAP 6		30
2.1.8. Reference of Switches and Arguments to pass at Server Runtime		33
2.2. Start and Stop Servers		35
2.2.1. Start and Stop Servers Using the Management CLI		35
2.2.2. Start a Server Using the Management Console		36
2.2.3. Stop a Server Using the Management Console		37
2.3. Filesystem Paths		37
2.3.1. Filesystem Paths		37
2.4. Configuration Files		39
2.4.1. About JBoss EAP 6 Configuration Files		39
2.4.2. Descriptor-based Property Replacement		40
2.4.3. Enabling/Disabling Descriptor Based Property Replacement		42
2.4.4. Configuration File History		43
2.4.5. Start the Server with a Previous Configuration		43
2.4.6. Save a Configuration Snapshot Using the Management CLI		44
2.4.7. Load a Configuration Snapshot Using the Management CLI		45
2.4.8. Delete a Configuration Snapshot Using Management CLI		45
2.4.9. List All Configuration Snapshots Using Management CLI		46
<b>Chapter 3. Management Interfaces</b>	.....	<b>48</b>
3.1. Manage the Application Server		48
3.2. Management Application Programming Interfaces (APIs)		48
3.3. About the Management Console and Management CLI		49

3.4. The Management Console	50
3.4.1. Management Console	50
3.4.2. Log in to the Management Console	50
3.4.3. Change the Language of the Management Console	51
3.4.4. Analytics in EAP Console	51
3.4.5. Enable/Disable Google Analytics in EAP Console	52
3.4.6. Configure a Server Using the Management Console	54
3.4.7. Add a Deployment in the Management Console	55
3.4.8. Create a New Server in the Management Console	55
3.4.9. Change the Default Log Levels Using the Management Console	56
3.4.10. Create a New Server Group in the Management Console	56
3.5. The Management CLI	57
3.5.1. About the Management Command Line Interface (CLI)	57
3.5.2. Launch the Management CLI	57
3.5.3. Quit the Management CLI	57
3.5.4. Connect to a Managed Server Instance Using the Management CLI	58
3.5.5. Obtain Help with the Management CLI	58
3.5.6. Use the Management CLI in Batch Mode	59
3.5.7. CLI Batch Mode Commands	60
3.5.8. Use Operations and Commands in the Management CLI	61
3.5.9. Management CLI Configuration Options	64
3.5.10. Reference of Management CLI Commands	66
3.5.11. Reference of Management CLI Operations	67
3.6. Management CLI Operations	69
3.6.1. Display the Attributes of a Resource with the Management CLI	69
3.6.2. Display the Active User in the Management CLI	71
3.6.3. Display System and Server Information in the Management CLI	72
3.6.4. Display an Operation Description using the Management CLI	72
3.6.5. Display the Operation Names using the Management CLI	74
3.6.6. Display Available Resources using the Management CLI	75
3.6.7. Display Available Resource Descriptions using the Management CLI	80
3.6.8. Reload the Application Server using the Management CLI	81
3.6.9. Shut the Application Server down using the Management CLI	81
3.6.10. Configure an Attribute with the Management CLI	82
3.6.11. Configure System Properties Using the Management CLI	83
3.7. The Management CLI Command History	89
3.7.1. Use the Management CLI Command History	89
3.7.2. Show the Management CLI Command history	89
3.7.3. Clear the Management CLI Command history	89
3.7.4. Disable the Management CLI Command history	90
3.7.5. Enable the Management CLI Command history	90
3.8. Management Interface Audit Logging	91
3.8.1. About Management Interface Audit Logging	91
3.8.2. Enable Management Interface Audit Logging from the Management CLI	91
3.8.3. About a Management Interface Audit Logging Formatter	92
3.8.4. About a Management Interface Audit Logging File Handler	93
3.8.5. About a Management Interface Audit Logging Syslog Handler	93
3.8.6. Enable Management Interface Audit Logging to a Syslog Server	95
<b>Chapter 4. User Management . . . . .</b>	<b>96</b>
4.1. User Creation	96
4.1.1. Add the User for the Management Interfaces	96
4.1.2. Pass Arguments to the User Management add-user Script	97
4.1.2.1. Add User Command Arguments	98

4.1.3. Add-user Command Arguments	90
4.1.4. Specify Alternate Properties Files for User Management Information	99
4.1.5. Add-user Script Command Line Examples	100
<b>Chapter 5. Network and Port Configuration . . . . .</b>	<b>102</b>
5.1. Interfaces	102
5.1.1. About Interfaces	102
5.1.2. Configure Interfaces	103
5.2. Socket Binding Groups	106
5.2.1. About Socket Binding Groups	106
5.2.2. Configure Socket Bindings	109
5.2.3. Network Ports Used By JBoss EAP 6	111
5.2.4. About Port Offsets for Socket Binding Groups	114
5.2.5. Configure Port Offsets	114
5.2.6. Configuration of Message Size in Remoting	115
5.3. IPv6	115
5.3.1. Configure JVM Stack Preferences for IPv6 Networking	115
5.3.2. Configure the Interface Declarations for IPv6 Networking	116
5.3.3. Configure JVM Stack Preferences for IPv6 Addresses	116
<b>Chapter 6. Datasource Management . . . . .</b>	<b>118</b>
6.1. Introduction	118
6.1.1. About JDBC	118
6.1.2. JBoss EAP 6 Supported Databases	118
6.1.3. Types of Datasources	118
6.1.4. The Example Datasource	118
6.1.5. Deployment of -ds.xml files	119
6.2. JDBC Drivers	119
6.2.1. Install a JDBC Driver with the Management Console	119
6.2.2. Install a JDBC Driver as a Core Module	120
6.2.3. JDBC Driver Download Locations	122
6.2.4. Access Vendor Specific Classes	122
6.3. Non-XA Datasources	124
6.3.1. Create a Non-XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces	124
6.3.2. Modify a Non-XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces	125
6.3.3. Remove a Non-XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces	126
6.4. XA Datasources	127
6.4.1. Create an XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces	127
6.4.2. Modify an XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces	129
6.4.3. Remove an XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces	130
6.4.4. XA Recovery	131
6.4.4.1. About XA Recovery Modules	131
6.4.4.2. Configure XA Recovery Modules	131
6.5. Datasource Security	133
6.5.1. About Datasource Security	133
6.6. Database Connection Validation	134
6.6.1. Configure Database Connection Validation Settings	134
6.7. Datasource Configuration	136
6.7.1. Datasource Parameters	136
6.7.2. Datasource Connection URLs	142
6.7.3. Datasource Extensions	142
6.7.4. View Datasource Statistics	144
6.7.5. Datasource Statistics	144
6.8. Example Datasources	145

6.8.1. Example PostgreSQL Datasource	145
6.8.2. Example PostgreSQL XA Datasource	146
6.8.3. Example MySQL Datasource	147
6.8.4. Example MySQL XA Datasource	148
6.8.5. Example Oracle Datasource	149
6.8.6. Example Oracle XA Datasource	150
6.8.7. Example Microsoft SQLServer Datasource	152
6.8.8. Example Microsoft SQLServer XA Datasource	153
6.8.9. Example IBM DB2 Datasource	154
6.8.10. Example IBM DB2 XA Datasource	155
6.8.11. Example Sybase Datasource	156
6.8.12. Example Sybase XA Datasource	157
<b>Chapter 7. Configuring Modules .....</b>	<b>159</b>
7.1. Introduction	159
7.1.1. Modules	159
7.1.2. Global Modules	160
7.1.3. Module Dependencies	160
7.1.4. Subdeployment Class Loader Isolation	161
7.2. Disable Subdeployment Module Isolation for All Deployments	161
7.3. Add a module to all deployments	162
7.4. Create a Custom Module	163
7.5. Define an External JBoss Module Directory	165
7.6. Reference	165
7.6.1. Included Modules	165
7.6.2. Dynamic Module Naming	166
<b>Chapter 8. Jsvc .....</b>	<b>167</b>
8.1. Introduction	167
8.1.1. About Jsvc	167
8.1.2. Start and Stop JBoss EAP using Jsvc	167
<b>Chapter 9. Global Valves .....</b>	<b>172</b>
9.1. About Valves	172
9.2. About Global Valves	172
9.3. About Authenticator Valves	172
9.4. Install a Global Valve	172
9.5. Configure a Global Valve	173
<b>Chapter 10. Application Deployment .....</b>	<b>175</b>
10.1. About Application Deployment	175
10.2. Deploy with the Management Console	176
10.2.1. Manage Application Deployment in the Management Console	176
10.2.2. Enable a Deployed Application Using the Management Console	176
10.2.3. Disable a Deployed Application Using the Management Console	177
10.2.4. Undeploy an Application Using the Management Console	178
10.3. Deploy with the Management CLI	179
10.3.1. Manage Application Deployment in the Management CLI	179
10.3.2. Deploy an Application in a Standalone Server Using the Management CLI	179
10.3.3. Undeploy an Application in a Standalone Server Using the Management CLI	179
10.3.4. Deploy an Application in a Managed Domain Using the Management CLI	180
10.3.5. Undeploy an Application in a Managed Domain Using the Management CLI	181
10.4. Deploy with the HTTP API	181
10.4.1. Deploy an application using the HTTP API	181

10.5. Deploy with the Deployment Scanner	184
10.5.1. Manage Application Deployment in the Deployment Scanner	184
10.5.2. Deploy an Application to a Standalone Server Instance with the Deployment Scanner	185
10.5.3. Undeploy an Application from a Standalone Server Instance with the Deployment Scanner	
10.5.4. Redeploy an Application to a Standalone Server Instance with the Deployment Scanner	186
10.5.5. Reference for Deployment Scanner Marker Files	188
10.5.6. Reference for Deployment Scanner Attributes	189
10.5.7. Configure the Deployment Scanner	190
10.5.8. Configure the Deployment Scanner with the Management CLI	190
10.6. Deploy with Maven	193
10.6.1. Manage Application Deployment with Maven	193
10.6.2. Deploy an Application with Maven	193
10.6.3. Undeploy an Application with Maven	195
10.7. Control the order of Deployed Applications on JBoss EAP 6	196
10.8. Deployment Descriptor Overrides	197
<b>Chapter 11. Securing JBoss EAP 6 . . . . .</b>	<b>199</b>
11.1. About the Security Subsystem	199
11.2. About the Structure of the Security Subsystem	199
11.3. Configure the Security Subsystem	200
11.4. About Deep Copy Subject Mode	201
11.5. Enable Deep Copy Subject Mode	201
11.6. Security Domains	202
11.6.1. About Security Domains	202
11.6.2. About Picketbox	202
11.6.3. About Authentication	202
11.6.4. Configure Authentication in a Security Domain	203
11.6.5. About Authorization	205
11.6.6. Configure Authorization in a Security Domain	205
11.6.7. About Security Auditing	206
11.6.8. Configure Security Auditing	206
11.6.9. About the Audit Log	207
11.6.10. About Security Mapping	208
11.6.11. Configure Security Mapping in a Security Domain	208
11.6.12. Use a Security Domain in Your Application	209
11.6.13. Java Authorization Contract for Containers (JACC)	212
11.6.13.1. About Java Authorization Contract for Containers (JACC)	212
11.6.13.2. Configure Java Authorization Contract for Containers (JACC) Security	212
11.6.14. Java Authentication SPI for Containers (JASPI)	213
11.6.14.1. About Java Authentication SPI for Containers (JASPI) Security	213
11.6.14.2. Configure Java Authentication SPI for Containers (JASPI) Security	214
11.7. Securing IIOP	214
11.7.1. About JBoss IIOP	214
11.7.2. About IOR	214
11.7.3. IOR Security Parameters	215
11.8. Management Interface Security	216
11.8.1. Default User Security Configuration	216
11.8.2. Overview of Advanced Management Interface Configuration	217
11.8.3. About LDAP	218
11.8.4. Use LDAP to Authenticate to the Management Interfaces	219
11.8.5. Disable the HTTP Management Interface	222
11.8.6. Remove Silent Authentication from the Default Security Realm	223
11.8.7. Disable Remote Access to the JMX Subsystem	225

11.8.8. Configure Security Realms for the Management Interfaces	225
11.9. Securing the Management Interfaces with Role-Based Access Control	227
11.9.1. About Role-Based Access Control (RBAC)	227
11.9.2. Role-Based Access Control in the Management Console and CLI	227
11.9.3. Supported Authentication Schemes	228
11.9.4. The Standard Roles	228
11.9.5. About Role Permissions	229
11.9.6. About Constraints	230
11.9.7. About JMX and Role-Based Access Control	231
11.9.8. Configuring Role-Based Access Control	231
11.9.8.1. Overview of RBAC Configuration Tasks	231
11.9.8.2. Enabling Role-Based Access Control	232
11.9.8.3. Changing the Permission Combination Policy	233
11.9.9. Managing Roles	234
11.9.9.1. About Role Membership	234
11.9.9.2. Configure User Role Assignment	235
11.9.9.3. Configure User Role Assignment using the Management CLI	238
11.9.9.4. About Roles and User Groups	241
11.9.9.5. Configure Group Role Assignment	242
11.9.9.6. Configure Group Role Assignment using the Management CLI	245
11.9.9.7. About Authorization and Group Loading with LDAP	248
username-to-dn	249
The Group Search	251
General Group Searching	253
11.9.9.8. About Scoped Roles	255
11.9.9.9. Creating Scoped Roles	255
11.9.10. Configuring Constraints	257
11.9.10.1. Configure Sensitivity Constraints	257
11.9.10.2. Configure Application Resource Constraints	259
11.9.10.3. Configure the Vault Expression Constraint	260
11.9.11. Constraints Reference	261
11.9.11.1. Application Resource Constraints Reference	261
11.9.11.2. Sensitivity Constraints Reference	263
11.10. Network Security	270
11.10.1. Secure the Management Interfaces	270
11.10.2. Specify Which Network Interface JBoss EAP 6 Uses	270
11.10.3. Network Ports Used By JBoss EAP 6	271
11.10.4. Configure Network Firewalls to Work with JBoss EAP 6	274
11.11. Java Security Manager	277
11.11.1. About the Java Security Manager	277
11.11.2. Run JBoss EAP 6 Within the Java Security Manager	277
11.11.3. About Java Security Manager Policies	279
11.11.4. Write a Java Security Manager Policy	279
11.11.5. Debug Security Manager Policies	280
11.12. SSL Encryption	281
11.12.1. Implement SSL Encryption for the JBoss EAP 6 Web Server	281
11.12.2. Generate a SSL Encryption Key and Certificate	283
11.12.3. SSL Connector Reference	286
11.13. Password Vaults for Sensitive Strings	292
11.13.1. Password Vault System	292
11.13.2. Create a Java Keystore to Store Sensitive Strings	292
11.13.3. Mask the Keystore Password and Initialize the Password Vault	294
11.13.4. Configure JBoss EAP 6 to Use the Password Vault	295

11.13.5. Configure JBoss EAP 6 to Use a Custom Implementation of the Password Vault	297
11.13.6. Store and Retrieve Encrypted Sensitive Strings in the Java Keystore	298
11.13.7. Store and Resolve Sensitive Strings In Your Applications	300
11.14. FIPS 140-2 Compliant Encryption	303
11.14.1. About FIPS 140-2 Compliance	303
11.14.2. FIPS 140-2 Compliant Passwords	303
11.14.3. Enable FIPS 140-2 Cryptography for SSL on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6	304
11.14.4. Enable FIPS 140-2 Cryptography in Apache HTTP Server	307
<b>Chapter 12. Security Administration Reference</b>	<b>308</b>
12.1. Included Authentication Modules	308
12.2. Included Authorization Modules	334
12.3. Included Security Mapping Modules	335
12.4. Included Security Auditing Provider Modules	339
<b>Chapter 13. Subsystem Configuration</b>	<b>340</b>
13.1. Subsystem Configuration Overview	340
<b>Chapter 14. The Logging Subsystem</b>	<b>341</b>
14.1. Introduction	341
14.1.1. Overview of Logging	341
14.1.2. Application Logging Frameworks Supported By JBoss LogManager	341
14.1.3. Configure Boot Logging	341
14.1.4. About Garbage Collection Logging	342
14.1.5. Implicit Logging API Dependencies	342
14.1.6. Default Log File Locations	342
14.1.7. Filter Expressions for Logging	343
14.1.8. About Log Levels	345
14.1.9. Supported Log Levels	345
14.1.10. About Log Categories	346
14.1.11. About the Root Logger	346
14.1.12. About Log Handlers	346
14.1.13. Types of Log Handlers	346
14.1.14. About Log Formatters	347
14.1.15. Log Formatter Syntax	348
14.2. Configure Logging in the Management Console	348
14.3. Logging Configuration in the CLI	349
14.3.1. Configure the Root Logger with the CLI	349
14.3.2. Configure a Log Category in the CLI	351
14.3.3. Configure a Console Log Handler in the CLI	354
14.3.4. Configure a File Log Handler in the CLI	357
14.3.5. Configure a Periodic Log Handler in the CLI	361
14.3.6. Configure a Size Log Handler in the CLI	366
14.3.7. Configure a Async Log Handler in the CLI	371
14.3.8. Configure a syslog-handler	375
14.3.9. Configure a Custom Log Formatter in the CLI	376
14.4. Per-deployment Logging	377
14.4.1. About Per-deployment Logging	377
14.4.2. Disable Per-deployment Logging	377
14.5. Logging Profiles	378
14.5.1. About Logging Profiles	378
14.5.2. Create a new Logging Profile using the CLI	378
14.5.3. Configuring a Logging Profile using the CLI	379
14.5.4. Specify a Logging Profile in an Application	380

-- Specifying Logging Options in an Application	381
14.5.5. Example Logging Profile Configuration	381
14.6. Logging Configuration Properties	382
14.6.1. Root Logger Properties	382
14.6.2. Log Category Properties	382
14.6.3. Console Log Handler Properties	383
14.6.4. File Log Handler Properties	383
14.6.5. Periodic Log Handler Properties	384
14.6.6. Size Log Handler Properties	385
14.6.7. Async Log Handler Properties	386
14.7. Sample XML Configuration for Logging	386
14.7.1. Sample XML Configuration for the Root Logger	386
14.7.2. Sample XML Configuration for a Log Category	387
14.7.3. Sample XML Configuration for a Console Log Handler	387
14.7.4. Sample XML Configuration for a File Log Handler	387
14.7.5. Sample XML Configuration for a Periodic Log Handler	387
14.7.6. Sample XML Configuration for a Size Log Handler	388
14.7.7. Sample XML Configuration for a Async Log Handler	388
<b>Chapter 15. Infinispan</b>	<b>389</b>
15.1. About Infinispan	389
15.2. Clustering modes	389
15.3. Cache Containers	390
15.4. Cache Stores	392
15.5. About Infinispan Statistics	392
15.6. Enable Infinispan Statistics Collection	393
15.6.1. Enable Infinispan Statistics Collection in the Startup Configuration File	393
15.6.2. Enable Infinispan Statistics Collection from the Management CLI	393
15.6.3. Verify Infinispan Statistics Collection is Enabled	394
15.7. JGroups	394
15.7.1. About JGroups	394
<b>Chapter 16. JVM</b>	<b>396</b>
16.1. About JVM	396
16.1.1. About JVM Settings	396
16.1.2. Display the JVM Status in the Management Console	397
16.1.3. Configuring JVM	398
<b>Chapter 17. Web Subsystem</b>	<b>401</b>
17.1. Configure the Web Subsystem	401
17.2. Replace the Default Welcome Web Application	405
<b>Chapter 18. Web Services Subsystem</b>	<b>407</b>
18.1. Configure Web Services Options	407
<b>Chapter 19. HTTP Clustering and Load Balancing</b>	<b>409</b>
19.1. Introduction	409
19.1.1. About High-Availability and Load Balancing Clusters	409
19.1.2. Components Which Can Benefit from High Availability	409
19.1.3. Overview of HTTP Connectors	410
19.1.4. Worker Node	411
19.2. Connector Configuration	412
19.2.1. Define Thread Pools for HTTP Connector in JBoss EAP 6	412
19.3. Web Server Configuration	415
19.3.1. About the Standalone Apache HTTP Server	415

19.3.2. Install the Apache HTTP Server included with JBoss EAP 6 (Zip)	416
19.3.3. Install Apache HTTP Server in Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 5, 6, and 7 (RPM)	418
19.3.4. mod_cluster Configuration on httpd	420
19.3.5. Use an External Web Server as the Web Front-end for JBoss EAP 6 Applications	424
19.3.6. Configure JBoss EAP 6 to Accept Requests From External Web Servers	424
<b>19.4. Clustering</b>	426
19.4.1. Use TCP Communication for the Clustering Subsystem	426
19.4.2. Configure the JGroups Subsystem to Use TCP	427
19.4.3. Disable Advertising for the mod_cluster Subsystem	429
19.4.4. Switch UDP to TCP for HornetQ Clustering	431
<b>19.5. Web, HTTP Connectors, and HTTP Clustering</b>	432
19.5.1. About the mod_cluster HTTP Connector	432
19.5.2. Configure the mod_cluster Subsystem	433
19.5.3. Install the mod_cluster Module Into Apache HTTP Server or JBoss Enterprise Web Server (Zip)	447
19.5.4. Install the mod_cluster Module Into Apache HTTP Server or JBoss Enterprise Web Server (RPM)	450
19.5.5. Configure Server Advertisement Properties for Your mod_cluster-enabled Web Server	
19.5.6. Configure a mod_cluster Worker Node	452
19.5.7. Migrate Traffic between Clusters	458
<b>19.6. Apache mod_jk</b>	459
19.6.1. About the Apache mod_jk HTTP Connector	459
19.6.2. Configure JBoss EAP 6 to Communicate with Apache Mod_jk	460
19.6.3. Install the mod_jk Module Into the Apache HTTP Server (ZIP)	460
19.6.4. Install the Mod_jk Module Into the Apache HTTP Server (RPM)	464
19.6.5. Configuration Reference for Apache Mod_jk Workers	467
<b>19.7. Apache mod_proxy</b>	469
19.7.1. About the Apache mod_proxy HTTP Connector	469
19.7.2. Install the Mod_proxy HTTP Connector into Apache HTTP Server	469
<b>19.8. Microsoft ISAPI</b>	472
19.8.1. About the Internet Server API (ISAPI) HTTP Connector	472
19.8.2. Download and Extract Webserver Connector Natives for Microsoft IIS	472
19.8.3. Configure Microsoft IIS to Use the ISAPI Redirector	473
19.8.4. Configure the ISAPI Redirector to Send Client Requests to JBoss EAP 6	474
19.8.5. Configure ISAPI to Balance Client Requests Across Multiple JBoss EAP 6 Servers	477
<b>19.9. Oracle NSAPI</b>	479
19.9.1. About the Netscape Server API (NSAPI) HTTP Connector	479
19.9.2. Configure the NSAPI Connector on Oracle Solaris	480
19.9.3. Configure NSAPI as a Basic HTTP Connector	481
19.9.4. Configure NSAPI as a Load-balancing Cluster	483
<b>Chapter 20. Messaging</b> .....	486
<b>20.1. Introduction</b>	486
20.1.1. HornetQ	486
20.1.2. About Java Messaging Service (JMS)	486
20.1.3. Supported Messaging Styles	486
<b>20.2. Configuration of Transports</b>	487
20.2.1. About Acceptors and Connectors	487
20.2.2. Configuring Netty TCP	487
20.2.3. Configuring Netty Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)	490
20.2.4. Configuring Netty HTTP	491
20.2.5. Configuring Netty Servlet	493
<b>20.3. About Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI)</b>	494
<b>20.4. Dead Connection Detection</b>	494

20.4.1. Closing Dead Connection Resources on the Server	494
20.4.2. Detecting Client Side Failure	496
20.5. Work with Large Messages	497
20.5.1. Work with Large Messages	497
20.5.2. Configuring HornetQ Large Messages	497
20.5.3. Configuring Parameters	498
20.6. Paging	499
20.6.1. About Paging	499
20.6.2. Page Files	499
20.6.3. Configuration of Paging Folder	499
20.6.4. Paging Mode	500
20.7. Diverts	501
20.7.1. Exclusive Divert	502
20.7.2. Non-exclusive Divert	502
20.8. Configuration	503
20.8.1. Configure the JMS Server	503
20.8.2. Configure JMS Address Settings	508
20.8.3. Configure Messaging with HornetQ	512
20.8.4. Enable Logging for HornetQ	512
20.8.5. Configuring HornetQ Core Bridge	513
20.8.6. Configuring JMS Bridge	514
20.8.7. Configure Delayed Redelivery	516
20.8.8. Configure Dead Letter Addresses	516
20.8.9. Configure Message Expiry Addresses	517
20.8.10. Reference for HornetQ Configuration Attributes	517
20.8.11. Set Message Expiry	523
20.9. Message Grouping	524
20.9.1. About Message Grouping	524
20.9.2. Using HornetQ Core API on Client Side	524
20.9.3. Configuring Server for Java Messaging Service (JMS) Clients	524
20.9.4. Clustered Grouping	525
20.9.5. Best Practices for Clustered Grouping	526
20.10. Duplicate Message Detection	526
20.10.1. About Duplicate Message Detection	526
20.10.2. Using Duplicate Message Detection for Sending Messages	527
20.10.3. Configuring Duplicate ID Cache	528
20.10.4. Using Duplicate Detection with Bridges and Cluster Connections	528
20.11. JMS Bridges	528
20.11.1. About Bridges	528
20.11.2. Create a JMS Bridge	529
20.12. Persistence	531
20.12.1. About Persistence in HornetQ	531
20.13. HornetQ Clustering	532
20.13.1. About Server Discovery	533
20.13.2. Broadcast Groups	533
20.13.2.1. User Datagram Protocol (UDP) Broadcast Group	534
20.13.2.2. JGroups Broadcast Group	535
20.13.3. Discovery Groups	536
20.13.3.1. Configuring User Datagram Protocol (UDP) Discovery Group on the Server	536
20.13.3.2. Configuring JGroups Discovery Group on the Server	537
20.13.3.3. Configuring Discovery Groups for Java Messaging Service (JMS) Clients	538
20.13.3.4. Configuring discovery for Core API	539
20.13.4. Server Side Load Balancing	539

-----	-----
20.13.4.1. Configuring Cluster Connections	539
20.14. High Availability	542
20.14.1. High Availability Introduction	543
20.14.2. About HornetQ Shared Stores	543
20.14.3. About HornetQ Storage Configurations	544
20.14.4. About HornetQ Journal Types	544
20.14.5. Configuring HornetQ for Dedicated Topology with Shared Store	545
20.14.6. HornetQ Message Replication	546
20.14.7. Configuring the HornetQ Servers for Replication	546
20.14.8. About High-availability (HA) Failover	547
20.14.9. Deployments on HornetQ Backup Servers	548
<b>Chapter 21. Transaction Subsystem .....</b>	<b>549</b>
21.1. Transaction Subsystem Configuration	549
21.1.1. Transactions Configuration Overview	549
21.1.2. Configure the Transaction Manager	549
21.1.3. Configure Your Datasource to Use JTA Transaction API	553
21.1.4. Configure an XA Datasource	554
21.1.5. About Transaction Log Messages	555
21.1.6. Configure Logging for the Transaction Subsystem	556
21.2. Transaction Administration	557
21.2.1. Browse and Manage Transactions	557
21.3. Transaction References	561
21.3.1. JBoss Transactions Errors and Exceptions	561
21.3.2. Limitations on JTA Transactions	561
21.4. ORB Configuration	562
21.4.1. About Common Object Request Broker Architecture (CORBA)	562
21.4.2. Configure the ORB for JTS Transactions	562
21.5. JDBC Object Store Support	563
21.5.1. JDBC Store for Transactions	563
<b>Chapter 22. Mail subsystem .....</b>	<b>565</b>
22.1. Use custom transports in mail subsystem	565
<b>Chapter 23. Enterprise JavaBeans .....</b>	<b>567</b>
23.1. Introduction	567
23.1.1. Overview of Enterprise JavaBeans	567
23.1.2. Overview of Enterprise JavaBeans for Administrators	567
23.1.3. Enterprise Beans	567
23.1.4. Session Beans	568
23.1.5. Message-Driven Beans	568
23.2. Configuring Bean Pools	568
23.2.1. Bean Pools	568
23.2.2. Create a Bean Pool	568
23.2.3. Remove a Bean Pool	570
23.2.4. Edit a Bean Pool	571
23.2.5. Assign Bean Pools for Session and Message-Driven Beans	572
23.3. Configuring EJB Thread Pools	573
23.3.1. Enterprise Bean Thread Pools	573
23.3.2. Create a Thread Pool	573
23.3.3. Remove a Thread Pool	574
23.3.4. Edit a Thread Pool	575
23.4. Configuring Session Beans	577
23.4.1. Session Bean Access Timeout	577

23.4.1. Session Bean Access Timeout	577
23.4.2. Set Default Session Bean Access Timeout Values	577
23.5. Configuring Message-Driven Beans	578
23.5.1. Set Default Resource Adapter for Message-Driven Beans	578
23.6. Configuring the EJB3 Timer Service	579
23.6.1. EJB3 Timer Service	579
23.6.2. Configure the EJB3 timer Service	579
23.7. Configuring the EJB Asynchronous Invocation Service	580
23.7.1. EJB3 Asynchronous Invocation Service	580
23.7.2. Configure the EJB3 Asynchronous Invocation Service Thread Pool	580
23.8. Configuring the EJB3 Remote Invocation Service	581
23.8.1. EJB3 Remote Service	581
23.8.2. Configure the EJB3 Remote Service	581
23.9. Configuring EJB 2.x Entity Beans	581
23.9.1. EJB Entity Beans	581
23.9.2. Container-Managed Persistence	581
23.9.3. Enable EJB 2.x Container-Managed Persistence	581
23.9.4. Configure EJB 2.x Container-Managed Persistence	582
23.9.5. CMP Subsystem Properties for HiLo Key Generators	584
<b>Chapter 24. Java Connector Architecture (JCA)</b>	<b>585</b>
24.1. Introduction	585
24.1.1. About the Java EE Connector API (JCA)	585
24.1.2. Java Connector Architecture (JCA)	585
24.1.3. Resource Adapters	585
24.2. Configure the Java Connector Architecture (JCA) Subsystem	586
24.3. Deploy a Resource Adapter	591
24.4. Configure a Deployed Resource Adapter	592
24.5. Resource Adapter Descriptor Reference	597
24.6. View Defined Connection Statistics	601
24.7. Resource Adapter Statistics	601
24.8. Deploy the WebSphere MQ Resource Adapter	602
24.9. Install JBoss Active MQ Resource Adapter	608
24.10. Configure a Generic JMS Resource Adapter for Use with a Third-party JMS Provider	608
<b>Chapter 25. Deploy JBoss EAP 6 on Amazon EC2</b>	<b>613</b>
25.1. Introduction	613
25.1.1. About Amazon EC2	613
25.1.2. About Amazon Machine Instances (AMIs)	613
25.1.3. About JBoss Cloud Access	613
25.1.4. JBoss Cloud Access Features	613
25.1.5. Supported Amazon EC2 Instance Types	614
25.1.6. Supported Red Hat AMIs	614
25.2. Deploying JBoss EAP 6 on Amazon EC2	615
25.2.1. Overview of Deploying JBoss EAP 6 on Amazon EC2	615
25.2.2. Non-clustered JBoss EAP 6	615
25.2.2.1. About Non-clustered Instances	615
25.2.2.2. Non-clustered Instances	615
25.2.2.2.1. Launch a Non-clustered JBoss EAP 6 Instance	615
25.2.2.2.2. Deploy an Application on a non-clustered JBoss EAP 6 Instance	617
25.2.2.2.3. Test the Non-clustered JBoss EAP 6 Instance	618
25.2.2.3. Non-clustered Managed Domains	619
25.2.2.3.1. Launch an Instance to Serve as a Domain Controller	619
25.2.2.3.2. Launch One or More Instances to Serve as Host Controllers	621

---

25.2.2.3.3. Test the Non-Clustered JBoss EAP 6 Managed Domain	623
25.2.2.3.4. Configuring Domain Controller Discovery and Failover on Amazon EC2	624
25.2.3. Clustered JBoss EAP 6	625
25.2.3.1. About Clustered Instances	625
25.2.3.2. Create a Relational Database Service Database Instance	626
25.2.3.3. About Virtual Private Clouds	627
25.2.3.4. Create a Virtual Private Cloud (VPC)	627
25.2.3.5. Launch an Apache HTTP Server Instance to Serve as a mod_cluster Proxy and a NAT Instance for the VPC	628
25.2.3.6. Configure the VPC Private Subnet Default Route	630
25.2.3.7. About Identity and Access Management (IAM)	630
25.2.3.8. Configure IAM Setup	630
25.2.3.9. About the S3 Bucket	631
25.2.3.10. Configure S3 Bucket Setup	631
25.2.3.11. Clustered Instances	633
25.2.3.11.1. Launch Clustered JBoss EAP 6 AMIs	633
25.2.3.11.2. Test the Clustered JBoss EAP 6 Instance	636
25.2.3.12. Clustered Managed Domains	637
25.2.3.12.1. Launch an Instance to Serve as a Cluster Domain Controller	637
25.2.3.12.2. Launch One or More Instances to Serve as Cluster Host Controllers	639
25.2.3.12.3. Test the Clustered JBoss EAP 6 Managed Domain	641
25.3. Establishing Monitoring with JBoss Operations Network (JON)	643
25.3.1. About AMI Monitoring	643
25.3.2. About Connectivity Requirements	643
25.3.3. About Network Address Translation (NAT)	644
25.3.4. About Amazon EC2 and DNS	644
25.3.5. About Routing in EC2	644
25.3.6. About Terminating and Restarting with JON	645
25.3.7. Configure an Instance to Register with JBoss Operations Network	645
25.4. User Script Configuration	645
25.4.1. Permanent Configuration Parameters	646
25.4.2. Custom Script Parameters	648
25.5. Troubleshooting	649
25.5.1. About Troubleshooting Amazon EC2	649
25.5.2. Diagnostic Information	649
<b>Supplemental References</b> .....	<b>650</b>
A.1. Download Files from the Red Hat Customer Portal	650
A.2. Configure the Default JDK on Red Hat Enterprise Linux	650
<b>Revision History</b> .....	<b>653</b>

# Preface

## 1. Document Conventions

This manual uses several conventions to highlight certain words and phrases and draw attention to specific pieces of information.

### 1.1. Typographic Conventions

Four typographic conventions are used to call attention to specific words and phrases. These conventions, and the circumstances they apply to, are as follows.

#### Mono-spaced Bold

Used to highlight system input, including shell commands, file names and paths. Also used to highlight keys and key combinations. For example:

To see the contents of the file **my\_next\_bestselling\_novel** in your current working directory, enter the **cat my\_next\_bestselling\_novel** command at the shell prompt and press **Enter** to execute the command.

The above includes a file name, a shell command and a key, all presented in mono-spaced bold and all distinguishable thanks to context.

Key combinations can be distinguished from an individual key by the plus sign that connects each part of a key combination. For example:

Press **Enter** to execute the command.

Press **Ctrl+Alt+F2** to switch to a virtual terminal.

The first example highlights a particular key to press. The second example highlights a key combination: a set of three keys pressed simultaneously.

If source code is discussed, class names, methods, functions, variable names and returned values mentioned within a paragraph will be presented as above, in **mono-spaced bold**. For example:

File-related classes include **filesystem** for file systems, **file** for files, and **dir** for directories. Each class has its own associated set of permissions.

#### Proportional Bold

This denotes words or phrases encountered on a system, including application names; dialog-box text; labeled buttons; check-box and radio-button labels; menu titles and submenu titles. For example:

Choose **System → Preferences → Mouse** from the main menu bar to launch **Mouse Preferences**. In the **Buttons** tab, select the **Left-handed mouse** check box and click **Close** to switch the primary mouse button from the left to the right (making the mouse suitable for use in the left hand).

To insert a special character into a **gedit** file, choose **Applications → Accessories → Character Map** from the main menu bar. Next, choose **Search → Find...** from the **Character Map** menu bar, type the name of the character in the **Search** field and click **Next**. The character you sought will be highlighted in the

**Character Table.** Double-click this highlighted character to place it in the **Text to copy** field and then click the **Copy** button. Now switch back to your document and choose **Edit → Paste** from the **gedit** menu bar.

The above text includes application names; system-wide menu names and items; application-specific menu names; and buttons and text found within a GUI interface, all presented in proportional bold and all distinguishable by context.

### **Mono-spaced Bold Italic or Proportional Bold Italic**

Whether mono-spaced bold or proportional bold, the addition of italics indicates replaceable or variable text. Italics denotes text you do not input literally or displayed text that changes depending on circumstance. For example:

To connect to a remote machine using ssh, type **ssh *username@domain.name*** at a shell prompt. If the remote machine is **example.com** and your username on that machine is john, type **ssh john@example.com**.

The **mount -o remount *file-system*** command remounts the named file system. For example, to remount the **/home** file system, the command is **mount -o remount /home**.

To see the version of a currently installed package, use the **rpm -q *package*** command. It will return a result as follows: ***package-version-release***.

Note the words in bold italics above: *username*, *domain.name*, *file-system*, *package*, *version* and *release*. Each word is a placeholder, either for text you enter when issuing a command or for text displayed by the system.

Aside from standard usage for presenting the title of a work, italics denotes the first use of a new and important term. For example:

Publican is a *DocBook* publishing system.

## 1.2. Pull-quote Conventions

Terminal output and source code listings are set off visually from the surrounding text.

Output sent to a terminal is set in **mono-spaced roman** and presented thus:

books	Desktop	documentation	drafts	mss	photos	stuff	svn
books_tests	Desktop1	downloads	images	notes	scripts	svgs	

Source-code listings are also set in **mono-spaced roman** but add syntax highlighting as follows:

```
static int kvm_vm_ioctl_deassign_device(struct kvm *kvm,
                                         struct kvm_assigned_pci_dev *assigned_dev)
{
    int r = 0;
    struct kvm_assigned_dev_kernel *match;

    mutex_lock(&kvm->lock);

    match = kvm_find_assigned_dev(&kvm->arch.assigned_dev_head,
                                  assigned_dev->assigned_dev_id);
    if (!match) {
        printk(KERN_INFO "%s: device hasn't been assigned\n",
              __func__);
    }
}
```

```

before, "
        "so cannot be deassigned\n", __func__);
r = -EINVAL;
goto out;
}

kvm_deassign_device(kvm, match);

kvm_free_assigned_device(kvm, match);

out:
mutex_unlock(&kvm->lock);
return r;
}

```

## 1.3. Notes and Warnings

Finally, we use three visual styles to draw attention to information that might otherwise be overlooked.

### Note

Notes are tips, shortcuts or alternative approaches to the task at hand. Ignoring a note should have no negative consequences, but you might miss out on a trick that makes your life easier.

### Important

Important boxes detail things that are easily missed: configuration changes that only apply to the current session, or services that need restarting before an update will apply. Ignoring a box labeled “Important” will not cause data loss but may cause irritation and frustration.

### Warning

Warnings should not be ignored. Ignoring warnings will most likely cause data loss.

## 2. Getting Help and Giving Feedback

### 2.1. Do You Need Help?

If you experience difficulty with a procedure described in this documentation, visit the Red Hat Customer Portal at <http://access.redhat.com>. Through the customer portal, you can:

- » search or browse through a knowledgebase of technical support articles about Red Hat products.
- » submit a support case to Red Hat Global Support Services (GSS).
- » access other product documentation.

Red Hat also hosts a large number of electronic mailing lists for discussion of Red Hat software and technology. You can find a list of publicly available mailing lists at <https://www.redhat.com/mailman/listinfo>. Click on the name of any mailing list to subscribe to that list or to access the list archives.

## 2.2. We Need Feedback!

If you find a typographical error in this manual, or if you have thought of a way to make this manual better, we would love to hear from you! Please submit a report in Bugzilla: <http://bugzilla.redhat.com/> against the product **JBoss Enterprise Application Platform**.

When submitting a bug report, be sure to mention the manual's identifier:  
*Administration\_and\_Configuration\_Guide*

If you have a suggestion for improving the documentation, try to be as specific as possible when describing it. If you have found an error, please include the section number and some of the surrounding text so we can find it easily.

# Chapter 1. Introduction

## 1.1. About Red Hat JBoss Enterprise Application Platform 6

Red Hat JBoss Enterprise Application Platform 6 (JBoss EAP 6) is a middleware platform built on open standards and compliant with the Java Enterprise Edition 6 specification. It integrates JBoss Application Server 7 with high-availability clustering, messaging, distributed caching, and other technologies.

JBoss EAP 6 includes a new, modular structure that allows service enabling only when required, improving start-up speed.

The Management Console and Management Command Line Interface make editing XML configuration files unnecessary and add the ability to script and automate tasks.

In addition, JBoss EAP 6 includes APIs and development frameworks for quickly developing secure and scalable Java EE applications.

[Report a bug](#)

## 1.2. Features of JBoss EAP 6

**Table 1.1. JBoss EAP 6.3.0 Features**

Feature	Description
Java Certification	Java Enterprise Edition 6 Full Profile and Web Profile certified.
Managed Domain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Centralized management of multiple server instances and physical hosts, while a standalone server allows for a single server instance.</li> <li>➤ Per-server group management of configuration, deployment, socket bindings, modules, extensions and system properties.</li> <li>➤ Centralized and simplified management of application security (including security domains).</li> </ul>
Management Console and Management CLI	New domain or standalone server management interfaces. XML configuration file editing is no longer required. The Management CLI also includes a batch mode that can script and automate management tasks.
Simplified directory layout	The <b>modules</b> directory now contains all application server modules. The common and server-specific <b>lib</b> directories are deprecated. The <b>domain</b> and <b>standalone</b> directories contain the artifacts and configuration files for domain and standalone deployments respectively.

Feature	Description
Modular classloading mechanism	Modules are loaded and unloaded on demand. This improves performance, has security benefits and reduces start-up and restart times.
Streamlined Data source management	Database drivers are deployed just like other services. In addition, datasources are created and managed directly in the Management Console or Management CLI.
Reduced and more efficient resource use.	JBoss EAP 6 uses fewer system resources and uses them more efficiently than previous versions. Among other benefits, JBoss EAP 6 starts and stops faster than JBoss EAP 5.

[Report a bug](#)

### 1.3. About JBoss EAP 6 Operating Modes

JBoss EAP 6 provides two operating modes for JBoss EAP 6 instances: standalone server or managed domain.

The two modes differ in how servers are managed, not in their capacity to service end-user requests. It is important to note that the high-availability (HA) cluster functionality is available via either operating mode. A group of standalone servers can be configured to form an HA cluster.

[Report a bug](#)

### 1.4. About Standalone Servers

Standalone server mode is an independent process and is analogous to the only running mode available in previous JBoss EAP versions.

A JBoss EAP 6 instance running as a standalone server is a single instance only but can optionally run in a clustered configuration.

[Report a bug](#)

### 1.5. About Managed Domains

The managed domain operating mode allows for management of multiple JBoss EAP 6 instances from a single control point.

Centrally managed JBoss EAP 6 server collections are known as members of a domain. All JBoss EAP 6 instances in a domain share a common management policy.

A domain consists of one domain controller, one or more host controller(s), and zero or more server groups per host.

A domain controller is the central point from which the domain is controlled. It ensures that each server is configured according to the management policy of the domain. The domain controller is also a host controller.

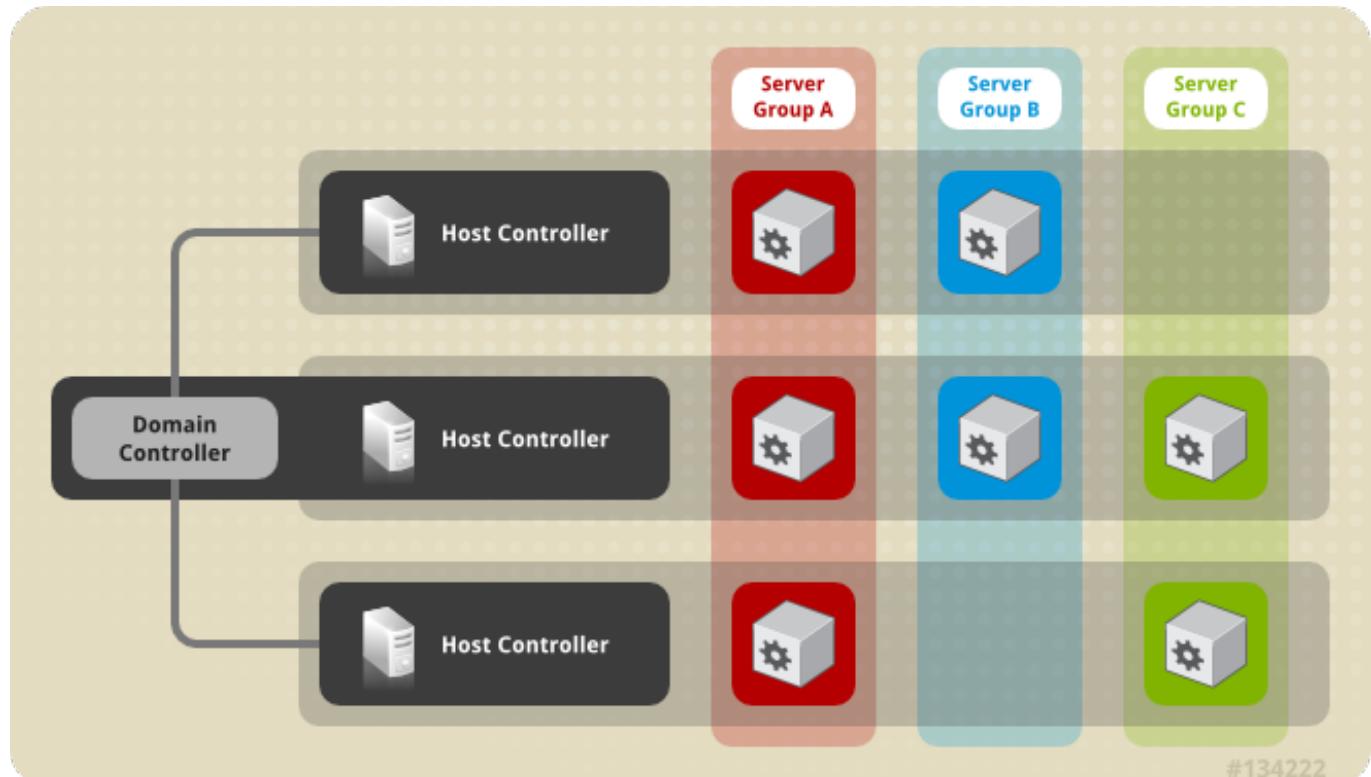
A host controller is a physical or virtual host on which the `domain.sh` or `domain.bat` script is run. Host controllers are configured to delegate domain management tasks to the domain controller.

The host controller on each host interacts with the domain controller to control the lifecycle of the application server instances running on its host and to assist the domain controller to manage them. Each host can contain multiple server groups.

A server group is a set of server instances which have JBoss EAP 6 installed on them and are managed and configured as one. The domain controller manages the configuration of and applications deployed onto server groups. Consequently, each server in a server group shares the same configuration and deployments.

It is possible for a domain controller, a single host controller, and multiple servers to run within the same JBoss EAP 6 instance, on the same physical system.

Host controllers are tied to specific physical (or virtual) hosts. You can run multiple host controllers on the same hardware if you use different configurations, ensuring their ports and other resources do not conflict.



**Figure 1.1. Graphical Representation of a Managed Domain**

[Report a bug](#)

## 1.6. About the Domain Controller

A domain controller is the JBoss EAP 6 server instance that acts as a central management point for a domain. One host controller instance is configured to act as a domain controller.

The primary responsibilities of the domain controller are:

- Maintain the domain's central management policy.
- Ensure all host controllers are aware of its current contents.
- Assist the host controllers in ensuring that all running JBoss EAP 6 instances are configured in accordance with this policy.

By default, the central management policy is stored in the **domain/configuration/domain.xml** file. This file is in the unzipped JBoss EAP 6 installation file, on the domain controller's host's filesystem.

A **domain.xml** file must be located in the **domain/configuration/** directory of the host controller set to run as the domain controller. This file is not mandatory for installations on host controllers that are not meant to run as a domain controller. The presence of a **domain.xml** file on such a server does no harm, however.

The **domain.xml** file contains the profile configurations that can be run on the server instances in a domain. A profile configuration includes the detailed settings of the various subsystems that comprise a profile. The domain configuration also includes the definition of socket groups and the server group definitions.

[Report a bug](#)

## 1.7. About Domain Controller Discovery and Failover

When setting up a managed domain, each host controller must be configured with information needed to contact the domain controller. In JBoss EAP 6.3, each host controller can now be configured with multiple options for finding the domain controller. Host controllers iterate through the list of options until one succeeds.

This allows host controllers to be pre-configured with contact information for a backup domain controller. A backup host controller can be promoted to master if there is a problem with the primary domain controller, allowing host controllers to automatically fail over to the new master once it's been promoted.

The following is an example of how to configure a host controller with multiple options for finding the domain controller.

```
<domain-controller>
    <remote security-realm="ManagementRealm">
        <discovery-options>
            <static-discovery name="primary" host="172.16.81.100"
port="9999"/>
            <static-discovery name="backup" host="172.16.81.101"
port="9999"/>
        </discovery-options>
    </remote>
</domain-controller>
```

A static discovery option includes the following mandatory attributes:

### **name**

The name for this domain controller discovery option

### **host**

The remote domain controller's host name.

### **port**

The remote domain controller's port.

In the example above, the first discovery option is the one expected to succeed. The second can be used in failover situations.

If a problem arises with the primary domain controller, a host controller that was started with the **--backup** option can be promoted to act as the domain controller.



### Note

Starting a host controller with the **--backup** option will cause that controller to maintain a local copy of the domain configuration. This configuration will be used if the host controller is reconfigured to act as the domain controller.

#### **Procedure 1.1. Promoting a host controller to be the domain controller**

1. Ensure the original domain controller has, or is, stopped.
2. Use the Management CLI to connect to the host controller that is to become the new domain controller.
3. Execute the following command to configure the host controller to act as the new domain controller.

```
/host=HOST_NAME:write-local-domain-controller
```

4. Execute the following command to reload the host controller.

```
reload --host=HOST_NAME
```

The host controller chosen in step 2 will now act as the domain controller.

[Report a bug](#)

## 1.8. About Host Controller

A host controller is launched when the **domain.sh** or **domain.bat** script is run on a host.

The primary responsibility of a host controller is server management. It delegates domain management tasks and is responsible for starting and stopping the individual application server processes that run on its host.

It interacts with the domain controller to help manage the communication between the servers and the domain controller. Multiple host controllers of a domain can interact with only a single domain controller. Hence, all the host controllers and server instances running on a single domain mode have a single domain controller and must belong to the same domain.

By default each host controller reads its configuration from the **domain/configuration/host.xml** file located in the unzipped JBoss EAP 6 installation file on its host's filesystem. The **host.xml** file contains the following configuration information that is specific to the particular host:

- The names of the JBoss EAP 6 instances meant to run from this installation.
- Any of the following configurations:

- How the host controller contacts the domain controller to register itself and access the domain configuration.
- How to find and contact a remote domain controller.
- That the host controller is to act as the domain controller
- Configurations specific to the local physical installation. For example, named interface definitions declared in **domain.xml** can be mapped to an actual machine-specific IP address in **host.xml**. And abstract path names in **domain.xml** can be mapped to actual filesystem paths in **host.xml**.

[Report a bug](#)

## 1.9. About Server Groups

A server group is a collection of server instances that are managed and configured as one. In a managed domain, every application server instance belongs to a server group, even if it is the only member. The server instances in a group share the same profile configuration and deployed content.

A domain controller and a host controller enforce the standard configuration on all server instances of every server group in its domain.

A domain can consist of multiple server groups. Different server groups can be configured with different profiles and deployments. A domain can be configured with different server tiers providing different services, for example.

Different server groups can also have the same profile and deployments. This can, for example, allow for rolling application upgrades where the application is upgraded on one server group and then updated on a second server group, avoiding a complete service outage.

The following is an example of a server group definition:

```
<server-group name="main-server-group" profile="default">
  <socket-binding-group ref="standard-sockets"/>
  <deployments>
    <deployment name="foo.war_v1" runtime-name="foo.war"/>
    <deployment name="bar.ear" runtime-name="bar.ear"/>
  </deployments>
</server-group>
```

A server group includes the following mandatory attributes:

- **name**: the server group name.
- **profile**: the server group profile name.
- **socket-binding-group**: the default socket binding group used for servers in the group. This name can be overridden on a per-server basis in **host.xml**. However, this is a mandatory element for every server group and the domain can not start if it is missing.

A server group includes the following optional attributes:

- **deployments**: the deployment content to be deployed on the servers in the group.
- **system-properties**: the system properties to be set on servers in the group

- » **jvm**: the default JVM settings for all servers in the group. The host controller merges these settings with any other configuration provided in **host.xml** to derive the settings used to launch the server's JVM.

[Report a bug](#)

## 1.10. About JBoss EAP 6 Profiles

The concept of profiles that was used in previous versions of JBoss EAP is no longer used. JBoss EAP 6 now uses a small number of configuration files to hold all information about its configuration.

Modules and drivers are now loaded on an as-needed basis. Consequently the concept of a default profile - used in previous versions of JBoss EAP 6 to make the server start more efficiently - does not apply.

At deployment time, module dependencies are determined, ordered, resolved by the server or domain controller, and loaded in the correct order. Modules are unloaded when no deployment needs them any longer.

It is possible to disable modules or unload drivers and other services manually by removing the subsystems from the configuration. However, for most cases this is unnecessary. If none of your applications use a module, it will not be loaded.

[Report a bug](#)

# Chapter 2. Application Server Management

## 2.1. Start and Stop JBoss EAP 6

### 2.1.1. Start JBoss EAP 6

Start JBoss EAP 6 in one of the following ways:

- » [Section 2.1.2, “Start JBoss EAP 6 as a Standalone Server”](#)
- » [Section 2.1.3, “Start JBoss EAP 6 as a Managed Domain”](#)

[Report a bug](#)

### 2.1.2. Start JBoss EAP 6 as a Standalone Server

#### Summary

This topic covers the steps to start JBoss EAP 6 as a Standalone Server.

#### Procedure 2.1. Start the Platform Service as a Standalone Server

1. **For Red Hat Enterprise Linux.**

Run the command: `EAP_HOME/bin/standalone.sh`

2. **For Microsoft Windows Server.**

Run the command: `EAP_HOME\bin\standalone.bat`

3. **Optional: Specify additional parameters.**

To print a list of additional parameters to pass to the start-up scripts, use the `-h` parameter.

#### Result

The JBoss EAP 6 Standalone Server instance starts.

[Report a bug](#)

### 2.1.3. Start JBoss EAP 6 as a Managed Domain

#### Order of Operations

The domain controller must be started before any slave servers in any server groups in the domain. Use this procedure first on the domain controller, and then on each associated host controller and each other host associated with the domain.

#### Procedure 2.2. Start the Platform Service as a Managed Domain

1. **For Red Hat Enterprise Linux.**

Run the command: `EAP_HOME/bin/domain.sh`

## 2. For Microsoft Windows Server.

Run the command: **EAP\_HOME\bin\domain.bat**

## 3. Optional: Pass additional parameters to the start-up script.

For a list of parameters you can pass to the start-up script, use the **-h** parameter.

### Result

The JBoss EAP 6 Managed Domain instance starts.

[Report a bug](#)

## 2.1.4. Configure the Name of a Host in a Managed Domain

### Summary

Every host running in a managed domain must have a unique host name. To ease administration and allow for the use of the same host configuration files on multiple hosts, the server uses the following precedence for determining the host name.

1. If set, the **host** element **name** attribute in the **host.xml** configuration file.
2. The value of the **jboss.host.name** system property.
3. The value that follows the final period (".") character in the **jboss.qualified.host.name** system property, or the entire value if there is no final period (".") character.
4. The value that follows the period (".") character in the **HOSTNAME** environment variable for POSIX-based operating systems, the **COMPUTERNAME** environment variable for Microsoft Windows, or the entire value if there is no final period (".") character.

For information about how to set environment variables, see the documentation for your operating system. For information about how to set system properties, see [Section 3.6.11, “Configure System Properties Using the Management CLI”](#).

This topic describes how to set the name of the host in the configuration file, using either a system property or a hard-coded name.

### Procedure 2.3. Configure the Host Name Using a System Property

1. Open the host configuration file for editing, for example, **host.xml**.
2. Find the **host** element in the file, for example:

```
<host name="master" xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:1.6">
```

3. If it is present, remove the **name="HOST\_NAME"** attribute declaration. The **host** element should now look like the following example.

```
<host xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:1.6">
```

4. Start the server passing the **-Djboss.host.name=HOST\_NAME** argument, for example:

```
-Djboss.host.name=HOST_NAME
```

#### Procedure 2.4. Configure the Host Name Using a Specific Name

- Start the JBoss EAP slave host using the following syntax:

```
bin/domain.sh --host-config=HOST_FILE_NAME
```

For example:

```
bin/domain.sh --host-config=host-slave01.xml
```

- Launch the Management CLI.
- Use the following syntax to replace the host name:

```
/host=EXISTING_HOST_NAME:write-attribute(name="name", value=UNIQUE_HOST_NAME)
```

For example:

```
/host=master:write-attribute(name="name", value="host-slave01")
```

You should see the following result.

```
"outcome" => "success"
```

This modifies the host **name** attribute in the **host-slave01.xml** file as follows:

```
<host name="host-slave01" xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:1.6">
```

- You must reload the server configuration using the old host name to complete the process

```
reload --host=EXISTING_HOST_NAME
```

For example:

```
reload --host=master
```

[Report a bug](#)

#### 2.1.5. Create Managed Domain on Two Machines



#### Note

You may need to configure your firewall to run this example.

You can create managed domain on two machines, wherein one machine is a domain controller and the other machine is a host. For more information, refer [Section 1.6, “About the Domain Controller”](#).

- IP1 = IP address of the domain controller (Machine 1)

- » IP2 = IP address of the host (Machine 2)

## Procedure 2.5. Create managed domain on two machines

### 1. On Machine 1

- Use the add-user.sh script to add management user. For example, **slave01**, so the host can authenticate the domain controller. Note the **SECRET\_VALUE** from the **add-user** output.
- Start domain with **host-master.xml** config file, which is preconfigured for dedicated domain controller.
- Use **-bmanagement=\$IP1** to make domain controller visible to other machines.

```
[${JBOSS_HOME}/bin]$ ./domain.sh --host-config=host-master.xml -bmanagement=$IP1
```

### 2. On Machine 2

- Update **\$JBOSS\_HOME/domain/configuration/host-slave.xml** file with user credentials.

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?>
<host xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:1.6" name="slave01">
    <!-- add user name here -->
    <management>
        <security-realms>
            <security-realm name="ManagementRealm">
                <server-identities>
                    <secret value="$SECRET_VALUE" />
                    <!-- use secret value from add-user.sh
output-->
                </server-identities>
                ...
            </security-realm>
        </security-realms>
    </management>
</host>
```

- Start host.

```
[${JBOSS_HOME}/bin]$ ./domain.sh --host-config=host-slave.xml -Djboss.domain.master.address=$IP1 -b=$IP2
```

### 3. Now we can manage the domain.

via CLI:

```
[${JBOSS_HOME}/bin]$ ./jboss-cli.sh -c --controller=$IP1
```

via Web Console:

```
http://$IP1:9990
```

Access the server index page:

```
http://$IP2:8080/
http://$IP2:8230/
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 2.1.6. Start JBoss EAP 6 with an Alternative Configuration

If you do not specify a configuration file, the server starts with the default file. However, when you start the server, you can specify a configuration manually. The process varies slightly, depending on whether you are using a Managed Domain or Standalone Server, and depending on which operating system you are using.

#### Prerequisites

- » Before using an alternate configuration file, prepare it using the default configuration as a template. For a Managed Domain, the configuration file needs to be placed in the **EAP\_HOME/domain/configuration/** directory. For a Standalone Server, the configuration file should be placed in the **EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/** directory.

#### Example configurations

Several example configurations are included in the **EAP\_HOME/docs/examples/configs/** directory. Use these examples to enable extra features such as clustering or the Transactions XTS API.

Some of the example configurations must be modified before being used. The following configuration files produce errors if they are used without being modified: **standalone-picketlink.xml**, **standalone-genericjms.xml** and **standalone-hornetq-colocated.xml**.

#### Procedure 2.6. Start the Instance with an Alternative Configuration

##### 1. Standalone server

For a Standalone Server, provide the filename of the configuration file as an option to the **--server-config** parameter. The configuration file must be located in the **EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/** directory, and you need to specify the file path relative to that directory.

##### Example 2.1. Using an alternate configuration file for a Standalone Server in Red Hat Enterprise Linux

```
[user@host bin]$ ./standalone.sh --server-config=standalone-alternate.xml
```

This example uses the **EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone-alternate.xml** configuration file.

##### Example 2.2. Using an alternate configuration file for a Standalone Server in Microsoft Windows Server

```
C:\EAP_HOME\bin> standalone.bat --server-config=standalone-alternate.xml
```

This example uses the `EAP_HOME\standalone\configuration\standalone-alternate.xml` configuration file.

## 2. Managed Domain

For a Managed Domain, provide the file name of the configuration file as an option to the `--domain-config` parameter. The file must be present in the `EAP_HOME/domain/configuration/` directory, and you need to specify the path relative to that directory.

### Example 2.3. Using an alternate configuration file for a Managed Domain in Red Hat Enterprise Linux

```
[user@host bin]$ ./domain.sh --domain-config=domain-alternate.xml
```

This example uses the `EAP_HOME/domain/configuration/domain-alternate.xml` configuration file.

### Example 2.4. Using an alternate configuration file for a Managed Domain in Microsoft Windows Server

```
C:\EAP_HOME\bin> domain.bat --domain-config=domain-alternate.xml
```

This example uses the `EAP_HOME\domain\configuration\domain-alternate.xml` configuration file.

## Result

JBoss Enterprise Application Platform is now running, using your alternate configuration file.

[Report a bug](#)

### 2.1.7. Stop JBoss EAP 6

The way that you stop JBoss EAP 6 depends on how it was started. This task covers stopping an instance that was started interactively, stopping an instance that was started by a service, and stopping an instance that was forked into the background by a script.



## Note

For information on how to stop a server or server group in a Managed Domain see [Section 2.2.3, “Stop a Server Using the Management Console”](#). For information on how to stop a server using the Management CLI, see [Section 2.2.1, “Start and Stop Servers Using the Management CLI”](#).

### » Procedure 2.7. Stop an instance of JBoss EAP 6

- **Stop an instance which was started interactively from a command prompt.**

Press **Ctrl -C** in the terminal where JBoss EAP 6 is running.

### » Procedure 2.8. Stop an instance which was started as an operating system service.

Depending on your operating system, use one of the following procedures.

- **A. Red Hat Enterprise Linux**

For Red Hat Enterprise Linux, if you have written a service script, use its **stop** facility. This needs to be written into the script. Then you can use **service scriptname stop**, where *scriptname* is the name of your script.

#### **B. Microsoft Windows Server**

In Microsoft Windows, use the **net service** command, or stop the service from the **Services** applet in the Control Panel.

### » Procedure 2.9. Stop an instance which is running in the background (Red Hat Enterprise Linux)

- » Obtain the process ID (PID) of the process:

- **If only a single instance is running (standalone mode)**

Either of the following commands will return the PID of a single instance of JBoss EAP 6:

- **pidof java**
- **jps**

(The **jps** command will return an ID for two processes; one for **jboss-modules.jar** and one for **jps** itself. Use the ID for **jboss-modules.jar** to stop the EAP instance)

- **If multiple EAP instances are running (domain mode)**

Identifying the correct process to end if more than one instance of EAP is running requires more comprehensive commands be used.

- The **jps** command can be used in verbose mode to provide more information about the java processes it finds.

Below is an abridged output from a verbose **jps** command identifying the different EAP processes running by PID and role:

```
$ jps -v
12155 jboss-modules.jar -D[Server:server-one] -
XX:PermSize=256m -XX:MaxPermSize=256m -Xms1303m
...
12196 jboss-modules.jar -D[Server:server-two] -
XX:PermSize=256m -XX:MaxPermSize=256m -Xms1303m
...
12096 jboss-modules.jar -D[Host Controller] -Xms64m -
Xmx512m -XX:MaxPermSize=256m
...
11872 Main -Xms128m -Xmx750m -XX:MaxPermSize=350m -
XX:ReservedCodeCacheSize=96m -XX:+UseCodeCacheFlushing
...
11248 jboss-modules.jar -D[Standalone] -
XX:+UseCompressedOops -verbose:gc
...
12892 Jps
...
12080 jboss-modules.jar -D[Process Controller] -Xms64m -
Xmx512m -XX:MaxPermSize=256m
...
```

- The **ps aux** command can also be used to return information about multiple EAP instances.

Below is an abridged output from a verbose **ps aux** command identifying the different EAP processes running by PID and role:

```
$ ps aux | grep java
username 12080 0.1 0.9 3606588 36772 pts/0 Sl+ 10:09
0:01 /path/to/java -D[Process Controller] -server -Xms128m
-Xmx128m -XX:MaxPermSize=256m
...
username 12096 1.0 4.1 3741304 158452 pts/0 Sl+ 10:09
0:13 /path/to/java -D[Host Controller] -Xms128m -Xmx128m -
XX:MaxPermSize=256m
...
username 12155 1.7 8.9 4741800 344224 pts/0 Sl+ 10:09
0:22 /path/to/java -D[Server:server-one] -XX:PermSize=256m
-XX:MaxPermSize=256m -Xms1000m -Xmx1000m -server -
...
username 12196 1.8 9.4 4739612 364436 pts/0 Sl+ 10:09
0:22 /path/to/java -D[Server:server-two] -XX:PermSize=256m
-XX:MaxPermSize=256m -Xms1000m -Xmx1000m -server
...
```

In the above examples, the **Process Controller** processes are the processes to stop in order to stop the entire domain.

The **grep** utility can be used with either of these commands to identify the **Process Controller**:

```
jps -v | grep "Process Controller"
```

```
ps aux | grep "Process Controller"
```

- » Send the process the **TERM** signal, by running **kill PID**, where *PID* is the process ID identified by one of the commands above.

## Result

Each of these alternatives shuts JBoss EAP 6 down cleanly so that data is not lost.

[Report a bug](#)

### 2.1.8. Reference of Switches and Arguments to pass at Server Runtime

The application server startup script accepts the addition of arguments and switches at runtime. The use of these parameters allows for the server to be started under alternative configurations to those defined in the **standalone.xml**, **domain.xml** and **host.xml** configuration files. This might include starting the server with an alternative set of socket bindings or a secondary configuration. A list of these available parameters can be accessed by passing the help switch at startup.

#### Example 2.5.

The following example is similar to the server startup explained in [Section 2.1.2, “Start JBoss EAP 6 as a Standalone Server”](#) and [Section 2.1.3, “Start JBoss EAP 6 as a Managed Domain”](#), with the addition of the **-h** or **--help** switches. The results of the help switch are explained in the table below.

Standalone mode:

```
[localhost bin]$ standalone.sh -h
```

Domain mode:

```
[localhost bin]$ domain.sh -h
```

**Table 2.1. Table of runtime switches and arguments**

Argument or Switch	Mode	Description
<b>--admin-only</b>	Standalone	Set the server's running type to <b>ADMIN_ONLY</b> . This will cause it to open administrative interfaces and accept management requests, but not start other runtime services or accept end user requests.

Argument or Switch	Mode	Description
<b>--admin-only</b>	Domain	Set the host controller's running type to <b>ADMIN_ONLY</b> causing it to open administrative interfaces and accept management requests but not start servers or, if this host controller is the master for the domain, accept incoming connections from slave host controllers.
<b>-b &lt;value&gt;, -b=&lt;value&gt;</b>	Standalone, Domain	Set system property <b>jboss.bind.address</b> to the given value.
<b>-b&lt;interface&gt;=&lt;value&gt;</b>	Standalone, Domain	Set system property <b>jboss.bind.address.&lt;interface&gt;</b> to the given value.
<b>--backup</b>	Domain	Keep a copy of the persistent domain configuration even if this host is not the Domain Controller.
<b>-c &lt;config&gt;, -c=&lt;config&gt;</b>	Standalone	Name of the server configuration file to use. The default is <b>standalone.xml</b> .
<b>-c &lt;config&gt;, -c=&lt;config&gt;</b>	Domain	Name of the server configuration file to use. The default is <b>domain.xml</b> .
<b>--cached-dc</b>	Domain	If the host is not the Domain Controller and cannot contact the Domain Controller at boot, boot using a locally cached copy of the domain configuration.
<b>--debug [&lt;port&gt;]</b>	Standalone	Activate debug mode with an optional argument to specify the port. Only works if the launch script supports it.
<b>-D&lt;name&gt;[=&lt;value&gt;]</b>	Standalone, Domain	Set a system property.
<b>--domain-config=&lt;config&gt;</b>	Domain	Name of the server configuration file to use. The default is <b>domain.xml</b> .
<b>-h, --help</b>	Standalone, Domain	Display the help message and exit.
<b>--host-config=&lt;config&gt;</b>	Domain	Name of the host configuration file to use. The default is <b>host.xml</b> .
<b>--interprocess-hc-address=&lt;address&gt;</b>	Domain	Address on which the host controller should listen for communication from the process controller.
<b>--interprocess-hc-port=&lt;port&gt;</b>	Domain	Port on which the host controller should listen for communication from the process controller.
<b>--master-address=&lt;address&gt;</b>	Domain	Set system property <b>jboss.domain.master.address</b> to the given value. In a default slave Host Controller config, this is used to configure the address of the master Host Controller.
<b>--master-port=&lt;port&gt;</b>	Domain	Set system property <b>jboss.domain.master.port</b> to the given value. In a default slave Host Controller config, this is used to configure the port used for native management communication by the master Host Controller.
<b>--read-only-server-config=&lt;config&gt;</b>	Standalone	Name of the server configuration file to use. This differs from <b>--server-config</b> and <b>-c</b> in that the original file is never overwritten.

Argument or Switch	Mode	Description
<b>--read-only-domain-config=&lt;config&gt;</b>	Domain	Name of the domain configuration file to use. This differs from <b>--domain-config</b> and <b>-c</b> in that the initial file is never overwritten.
<b>--read-only-host-config=&lt;config&gt;</b>	Domain	Name of the host configuration file to use. This differs from <b>--host-config</b> in that the initial file is never overwritten.
<b>-P &lt;url&gt;, -P=&lt;url&gt;, --properties=&lt;url&gt;</b>	Standalone, Domain	Load system properties from the given URL.
<b>--pc-address=&lt;address&gt;</b>	Domain	Address on which the process controller listens for communication from processes it controls.
<b>--pc-port=&lt;port&gt;</b>	Domain	Port on which the process controller listens for communication from processes it controls.
<b>-S&lt;name&gt;[=&lt;value&gt;]</b>	Standalone	Set a security property.
<b>--server-config=&lt;config&gt;</b>	Standalone	Name of the server configuration file to use. The default is <b>standalone.xml</b> .
<b>-u &lt;value&gt;, -u=&lt;value&gt;</b>	Standalone, Domain	Set system property <b>jboss.default.multicast.address</b> to the given value.
<b>-v, -V, --version</b>	Standalone, Domain	Display the application server version and exit.

[Report a bug](#)

## 2.2. Start and Stop Servers

### 2.2.1. Start and Stop Servers Using the Management CLI

#### Prerequisites

- ▶ [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

You can start and stop servers (in standalone mode) with the Management CLI or the Management Console. In Domain mode, you can only start server instances. Both management tools allow you to control a single Standalone Server instance, or selectively manage multiple servers across a Managed Domain deployment. If you are using the Management Console in Domain Mode, refer to [Section 2.2.2, “Start a Server Using the Management Console”](#) for instructions. If you are using the Management CLI, the process varies between Standalone Server and Managed Domain instances.

#### Start and Stop a Standalone Server with the Management CLI

A Standalone Server instance can be started by the command line scripts, and shut down from the Management CLI with the **shutdown** command. If you require the instance again, run the startup process again as described in [Section 2.1.2, “Start JBoss EAP 6 as a Standalone Server”](#).

#### Example 2.6. Stop a Standalone Server instance via the Management CLI

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] shutdown
```

#### Start and Stop a Managed Domain with the Management CLI

If you are running a Managed Domain, the Management Console allows you to selectively start or stop specific servers in the domain. This includes server groups across the whole of the domain, as well as specific server instances on a host.

#### Example 2.7. Stop a Server Host in a Managed Domain via the Management CLI

Similar to Standalone Server instance, the **shutdown** command is used to shut down a declared Managed Domain host. This example stops a server host named master by declaring the instance name before calling the shutdown operation. Use the **tab** key to assist with string completion and to expose visible variables such as available host values.

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] /host=master:shutdown
```

#### Example 2.8. Start and Stop a Server Group in a Managed Domain via the Management CLI

This example starts a default server group named **main-server-group** by declaring the group before calling the **start** and **stop** operations. Use the **tab** key to assist with string completion and to expose visible variables such as available server group name values.

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] /server-group=main-server-group:start-servers
```

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] /server-group=main-server-group:stop-servers
```

#### Example 2.9. Start and Stop a Server Instance in a Managed Domain via the Management CLI

This example starts and then stops a server instance named **server-one** on the **master** host by declaring the host and server configuration before calling the **start** and **stop** operations. Use the **tab** key to assist with string completion and to expose visible variables such as available host and server configuration values.

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] /host=master/server-config=server-one:start
```

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] /host=master/server-config=server-one:stop
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 2.2.2. Start a Server Using the Management Console

### Prerequisites

- » [Section 2.1.3, “Start JBoss EAP 6 as a Managed Domain”](#)
- » [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#)

### Procedure 2.10. Start the Server for a Managed Domain

1. Select the **Runtime** tab at the top of the console. Expand the **Server** menu and select **Overview**.

2. From the list of **Server Instances**, select the server you want to start. Servers that are running are indicated by a check mark.  
Hover the cursor over an instance in this list to show options in blue text below the server's details.
3. To start the instance, click on the **Start Server** text when it appears. A confirmation dialogue box will open. Click **Confirm** to start the server.

## Result

The selected server is started and running.

[Report a bug](#)

### 2.2.3. Stop a Server Using the Management Console

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 2.1.3, "Start JBoss EAP 6 as a Managed Domain"](#)
- » [Section 3.4.2, "Log in to the Management Console"](#)

#### Procedure 2.11. Stop a Server in a Managed Domain Using the Management Console

1. Select the **Runtime** tab from the top of the console. Expand the **Domain** menu and select **Overview**.
2. A list of available **Server Instances** is displayed on the **Hosts, groups and server instances** table. Servers that are running are indicated by a check mark.
3. Hover the cursor over the chosen server. Click on the **Stop Server** text that appears. A confirmation dialogue window will appear.
4. Click **Confirm** to stop the server.

## Result

The selected server is stopped.

[Report a bug](#)

## 2.3. Filesystem Paths

### 2.3.1. Filesystem Paths

JBoss EAP 6 uses logical names for filesystem paths. The **domain.xml**, **host.xml** and **standalone.xml** configurations all include a section where paths can be declared. Other sections of the configuration can then reference those paths by their logical name, avoiding the declaration of the absolute path for each instance. This benefits configuration and administration efforts as it allows specific host configurations to resolve to universal logical names.

For example, the logging subsystem configuration includes a reference to the **jboss.server.log.dir** path that points to the server's **log** directory.

**Example 2.10. Relative path example for the logging directory**

```
<file relative-to="jboss.server.log.dir" path="server.log"/>
```

JBoss EAP 6 automatically provides a number of standard paths without any need for the user to configure them in a configuration file.

**Table 2.2. Standard Paths**

Value	Description
<b>jboss.home.dir</b>	The root directory of the JBoss EAP 6 distribution.
<b>user.home</b>	The user home directory.
<b>user.dir</b>	The user's current working directory.
<b>java.home</b>	The Java installation directory
<b>jboss.server.base</b>	The root directory for an individual server instance.
<b>.dir</b>	
<b>jboss.server.data</b>	The directory the server will use for persistent data file storage.
<b>.dir</b>	
<b>jboss.server.conf</b>	The directory that contains the server configuration.
<b>ig.dir</b>	
<b>jboss.server.log</b>	The directory the server will use for log file storage.
<b>.dir</b>	
<b>jboss.server.temp</b>	The directory the server will use for temporary file storage.
<b>.dir</b>	
<b>jboss.controller</b>	The directory the host controller will use for temporary file storage.
<b>.temp.dir</b>	

### Override a Path

If you are running a standalone server, you can override the **jboss.server.base.dir**, **jboss.server.log.dir**, or **jboss.server.config.dir** paths in one of two ways.

1. You can pass arguments on the command line when you start the server. For example:

```
bin/standalone.sh -Djboss.server.log.dir=/var/log
```

2. You can modify the **JAVA\_OPTS** variable in the server configuration file. Open the **EAP\_HOME/bin/standalone.conf** file and add the following line at the end of the file:

```
JAVA_OPTS="$JAVA_OPTS Djboss.server.log.dir=/var/log"
```

Path overrides are not supported for servers running in a managed domain.

### Add a Custom Path

You can also create your own custom path. For example, you may want to define a relative path to use for logging:

```
my.relative.path=/var/log
```

You can then change the log handler to use **my.relative.path**,

[Report a bug](#)

## 2.4. Configuration Files

### 2.4.1. About JBoss EAP 6 Configuration Files

The configuration for JBoss EAP 6 has changed considerably from previous versions. One of the most obvious differences is the use of a simplified configuration file structure, which includes one or more of the files listed below.

**Table 2.3. Configuration File Locations**

Server mode	Location	Purpose
domain.xml	<b>EAP_HOME/domain/configuration/domain.xml</b>	This is the main configuration file for a managed domain. Only the domain master reads this file. On other domain members, it can be removed.
host.xml	<b>EAP_HOME/domain/configuration/host.xml</b>	This file includes configuration details specific to a physical host in a managed domain, such as network interfaces, socket bindings, the name of the host, and other host-specific details. The <b>host.xml</b> file includes all of the features of both <b>host-master.xml</b> and <b>host-slave.xml</b> , which are described below. This file is not present for standalone servers.
host-master.xml	<b>EAP_HOME/domain/configuration/host-master.xml</b>	This file includes only the configuration details necessary to run a server as a managed domain master server. This file is not present for standalone servers.
host-slave.xml	<b>EAP_HOME/domain/configuration/host-slave.xml</b>	This file includes only the configuration details necessary to run a server as a managed domain slave server. This file is not present for standalone servers.
standalone.xml	<b>EAP_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone.xml</b>	This is the default configuration file for a standalone server. It contains all information about the standalone server, including subsystems, networking, deployments, socket bindings, and other configurable details. This configuration is used automatically when you start your standalone server.

Server mode	Location	Purpose
standalone-full.xml	<b>EAP_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone-full.xml</b>	This is an example configuration for a standalone server. It includes support for every possible subsystem except for those required for high availability. To use it, stop your server and restart using the following command: <b>EAP_HOME/bin/standalone.sh -c standalone-full.xml</b>
standalone-ha.xml	<b>EAP_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone-ha.xml</b>	This example configuration file enables all of the default subsystems and adds the <b>mod_cluster</b> and JGroups subsystems for a standalone server, so that it can participate in a high-availability or load-balancing cluster. This file is not applicable for a managed domain. To use this configuration, stop your server and restart using the following command: <b>EAP_HOME/bin/standalone.sh -c standalone-ha.xml</b>
standalone-full-ha.xml	<b>EAP_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone-full-ha.xml</b>	This is an example configuration for a standalone server. It includes support for every possible subsystem, including those required for high availability. To use it, stop your server and restart using the following command: <b>EAP_HOME/bin/standalone.sh -c standalone-full-ha.xml</b>

These are only the default locations. You can specify a different configuration file at runtime.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 2.4.2. Descriptor-based Property Replacement

Application configuration - for example, datasource connection parameters - typically varies between development, testing, and production deployments. This variance is sometimes accommodated by build system scripts, as the Java EE specification does not contain a method to externalize these configurations.

With JBoss Enterprise Application Platform 6 you can use *Descriptor-based property replacement* to manage configuration externally.

*Descriptor-based property replacement* substitutes properties based on descriptors, allowing you to remove assumptions about the environment from the application and the build chain. Environment-specific configurations can be specified in deployment descriptors rather than annotations or build system scripts. You can provide configuration in files or as parameters at the command line.

Descriptor-based property replacement is enabled globally through **standalone.xml** or **domain.xml**:

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:ee:1.1">
  <spec-descriptor-property-replacement>
    true
  </spec-descriptor-property-replacement>
  <jboss-descriptor-property-replacement>
    true
  </jboss-descriptor-property-replacement>
</subsystem>
```

Java EE descriptors in **ejb-jar.xml** and **persistence.xml** can be replaced. By default this is disabled.

JBoss-specific descriptor replacement is enabled by default. Descriptors can be replaced in:

- » **jboss-ejb3.xml**
- » **jboss-app.xml**
- » **jboss-web.xml**
- » **\*-jms.xml**
- » **\*-ds.xml**

For example, given a Bean with the following annotation:

```
@ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "connectionParameters",
  propertyValue = "host=192.168.1.1;port=5445")
```

With descriptor-based property replacement enabled, the **connectionParameters** can be specified via the command-line as:

```
./standalone.sh -DconnectionParameters='host=10.10.64.1;port=5445'
```

To accomplish the same via system properties:

```
<activation-config>
  <activation-config-property>
    <activation-config-property-name>
      connectionParameters
    </activation-config-property-name>
    <activation-config-property-value>
      ${jms.connection.parameters:'host=10.10.64.1;port=5445'}
    </activation-config-property-value>
  </activation-config-property>
</activation-config>
```

`${jms.connection.parameters: 'host=10.10.64.1;port=5445'}` allows the connection parameters to be overridden by a command-line supplied parameter, while providing a default value.

[Report a bug](#)

## 2.4.3. Enabling/Disabling Descriptor Based Property Replacement

### Summary

Finite control over descriptor property replacement was introduced in `jboss-as-ee_1_1.xsd`. This task covers the steps required to configure descriptor based property replacement.

### Prerequisites

- » [Section 2.1.1, “Start JBoss EAP 6”](#)
- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

Descriptor based property replacement flags have boolean values:

- » When set to `true`, property replacements are enabled.
- » When set to `false`, property replacements are disabled.

### Procedure 2.12. jboss-descriptor-property-replacement

`jboss-descriptor-property-replacement` is used to enable or disable property replacement in the following descriptors:

- » `jboss-ejb3.xml`
- » `jboss-app.xml`
- » `jboss-web.xml`
- » `*-jms.xml`
- » `*-ds.xml`

The default value for `jboss-descriptor-property-replacement` is `true`.

1. In the Management CLI, run the following command to determine the value of `jboss-descriptor-property-replacement`:

```
/subsystem=ee:read-attribute(name="jboss-descriptor-property-replacement")
```

2. Run the following command to configure the behavior:

```
/subsystem=ee:write-attribute(name="jboss-descriptor-property-replacement",value=VALUE)
```

### Procedure 2.13. spec-descriptor-property-replacement

`spec-descriptor-property-replacement` is used to enable or disable property replacement in the following descriptors:

- » `ejb-jar.xml`

## » persistence.xml

The default value for **spec-descriptor-property-replacement** is **false**.

1. In the Management CLI, run the following command to confirm the value of **spec-descriptor-property-replacement**:

```
/subsystem=ee:read-attribute(name="spec-descriptor-property-replacement")
```

2. Run the following command to configure the behavior:

```
/subsystem=ee:write-attribute(name="spec-descriptor-property-replacement",value=VALUE)
```

## Result

The descriptor based property replacement tags have been successfully configured.

[Report a bug](#)

### 2.4.4. Configuration File History

The application server configuration files include **standalone.xml**, as well as the **domain.xml** and **host.xml** files. While these files may be modified by direct editing, the recommended method is to configure the application server model with the available management operations, including the Management CLI and the Management Console.

To assist in the maintenance and management of the server instance, the application server creates a timestamped version of the original configuration file at the time of startup. Any additional configuration changes made by management operations result in the original file being automatically backed up, and a working copy of the instance being preserved for reference and rollback. This archival functionality extends to saving, loading and deleting snapshots of the server configuration to allow for recall and rollback scenarios.

- » [Section 2.4.5, “Start the Server with a Previous Configuration”](#)
- » [Section 2.4.6, “Save a Configuration Snapshot Using the Management CLI”](#)
- » [Section 2.4.7, “Load a Configuration Snapshot Using the Management CLI”](#)
- » [Section 2.4.8, “Delete a Configuration Snapshot Using Management CLI”](#)
- » [Section 2.4.9, “List All Configuration Snapshots Using Management CLI”](#)

[Report a bug](#)

### 2.4.5. Start the Server with a Previous Configuration

The following example shows how to start the application server with a previous configuration in a standalone server with **standalone.xml**. The same concept applies to a managed domain with **domain.xml** and **host.xml** respectively.

This example recalls a previous configuration saved automatically by the application server as management operations modify the server model.

1. Identify the backed up version that you want to start. This example will recall the instance of the server model prior to the first modification after successfully booting up.

```
EAP_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone_xml_history/current/standalone.v1.xml
```

2. Start the server with this configuration of the backed up model by passing in the relative filename under `jboss.server.config.dir`.

```
EAP_HOME/bin/standalone.sh --server-config=standalone_xml_history/current/standalone.v1.xml
```

## Result

The application server starts with the selected configuration.

### Note

The domain configuration history is located in

```
EAP_HOME/domain/configuration/domain_xml_history/current/domain.v1.xml
```

Start the server with this configuration of the backed up model by passing the relative filename under `jboss.domain.config.dir`.

To start the domain with this configuration:

```
EAP_HOME/bin/domain.sh --domain-config=domain_xml_history/current/domain.v1.xml
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 2.4.6. Save a Configuration Snapshot Using the Management CLI

### Summary

Configuration snapshots are a point-in-time copy of the current server configuration. These copies can be saved and loaded by the administrator.

The following example uses the `standalone.xml` configuration file, but the same process applies to the `domain.xml` and `host.xml` configuration files.

### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

### Procedure 2.14. Take a Configuration Snapshot and Save It

- » **Save a snapshot**

Run the `take-snapshot` operation to capture a copy of the current server configuration.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] :take-snapshot
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" =>
"/home/User/EAP_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone_xml_history/snapshot/20110630-172258657standalone.xml"
```

## Result

A snapshot of the current server configuration has been saved.

[Report a bug](#)

### 2.4.7. Load a Configuration Snapshot Using the Management CLI

Configuration snapshots are a point-in-time copy of the current server configuration. These copies can be saved and loaded by the administrator. The process of loading snapshots is similar to the method used to [Section 2.4.5, “Start the Server with a Previous Configuration”](#), running from the command line rather than the Management CLI interface used to create, list and delete snapshots.

The following example uses the `standalone.xml` file, but the same process applies to the `domain.xml` and `host.xml` files.

#### Procedure 2.15. Load a Configuration Snapshot

1. Identify the snapshot to be loaded. This example will recall the following file from the snapshot directory. The default path for the snapshot files is as follows.

```
EAP_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone_xml_history/snapshot/20110812-191301472standalone.xml
```

The snapshots are expressed by their relative paths, by which the above example can be written as follows.

```
jboss.server.config.dir/standalone_xml_history/snapshot/20110812-191301472standalone.xml
```

2. Start the server with the selected configuration snapshot by passing in the filename.

```
EAP_HOME/bin/standalone.sh --server-config=standalone_xml_history/snapshot/20110913-164449522standalone.xml
```

## Result

The server restarts with the configuration selected in the loaded snapshot.

[Report a bug](#)

### 2.4.8. Delete a Configuration Snapshot Using Management CLI

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

Configuration snapshots are a point-in-time copy of the current server configuration. These copies can be saved and loaded by the administrator.

The following examples use the `standalone.xml` file, but the same process applies to the `domain.xml` and `host.xml` files.

#### Procedure 2.16. Delete a Specific Snapshot

1. Identify the snapshot to be deleted. This example will delete the following file from the snapshot directory.

```
EAP_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone_xml_history/snapshot/20110630-165714239standalone.xml
```

2. Run the `:delete-snapshot` command to delete a specific snapshot, specifying the name of the snapshot as in the example below.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] :delete-snapshot(name="20110630-165714239standalone.xml")
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

#### Result

The snapshot has been deleted.

#### Procedure 2.17. Delete All Snapshots

- » Run the `:delete-snapshot(name="all")` command to delete all snapshots as in the example below.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] :delete-snapshot(name="all")
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

#### Result

All snapshots have been deleted.

[Report a bug](#)

### 2.4.9. List All Configuration Snapshots Using Management CLI

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

Configuration snapshots are a point-in-time copy of the current server configuration. These copies can be saved and loaded by the administrator.

The following example uses the `standalone.xml` file, but the same process applies to the `domain.xml` and `host.xml` files.

#### Procedure 2.18. List All Configuration Snapshots

- » [List all snapshots](#)

List all of the saved snapshots by running the **:list-snapshots** command.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] :list-snapshots
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "directory" =>
"/home/hostname/EAP_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone_xml_history/snapshot",
        "names" => [
            "20110818-133719699standalone.xml",
            "20110809-141225039standalone.xml",
            "20110802-152010683standalone.xml",
            "20110808-161118457standalone.xml",
            "20110912-151949212standalone.xml",
            "20110804-162951670standalone.xml"
        ]
    }
}
```

## Result

The snapshots are listed.

[Report a bug](#)

## Chapter 3. Management Interfaces

### 3.1. Manage the Application Server

JBoss EAP 6 offers you multiple management tools to configure and administer your implementation as you require. These include the new Management Console or the Management Command Line Interface (CLI), as examples of the underlying Management API that enables expert users to develop their own tools if they desire.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.2. Management Application Programming Interfaces (APIs)

#### Management clients

JBoss EAP 6 offers three different approaches to configure and manage servers, being a web interface, a command line client and a set of XML configuration files. While the recommended methods for editing the configuration file include the Management Console and Management CLI, edits made to the configuration by all three are always synchronized across the different views and finally persisted to the XML files. Note that edits made to the XML configuration files while a server instance is running will be overwritten by the server model.

#### HTTP API

The Management Console is an example of a web interface built with the Google Web Toolkit (GWT). The Management Console communicates with the server using the HTTP management interface. The HTTP API endpoint is the entry point for management clients that rely on the HTTP protocol to integrate with the management layer. It uses a JSON encoded protocol and a de-typed, RPC-style API to describe and execute management operations against a Managed Domain or Standalone Server. The HTTP API is used by the web console, but offers integration capabilities for a wide range of other clients too.

The HTTP API endpoint is co-located with either the domain controller or a Standalone Server instance. The HTTP API Endpoint serves two different contexts; one for executing management operations and the other to access the web interface. By default, it runs on port 9990.

#### Example 3.1. HTTP API Configuration File Example

```
<management-interfaces>
  [...]
  <http-interface security-realm="ManagementRealm">
    <socket-binding http="management-http"/>
  </http-interface>
</management-interfaces>
```

The web console is served through the same port as the HTTP management API. It is important to distinguish between the Management Console accessed as on a default localhost, the Management Console as accessed remotely by a specific host and port combination, and the exposed domain API.

**Table 3.1. URLs to access the Management Console**

URL	Description
<code>http://localhost:9990/console</code>	The Management Console accessed on the local host, controlling the Managed Domain configuration.
<code>http://hostname:9990/console</code>	The Management Console accessed remotely, naming the host and controlling the Managed Domain configuration.
<code>http://hostname:9990/management</code>	The HTTP Management API runs on the same port as the Management Console, displaying the raw attributes and values exposed to the API.

## Native API

An example of a Native API tool is the Management CLI. This management tool is available for a Managed Domain or Standalone Server instance, allowing the a user to connect to the domain controller or a Standalone Server instance and execute management operations available through the de-typed management model.

The Native API endpoint is the entry point for management clients that rely on the native protocol to integrate with the management layer. It uses an open binary protocol and an RPC-style API based on a very small number of Java types to describe and execute management operations. It's used by the Management CLI management tool, but offers integration capabilities for a wide range of other clients too.

The Native API endpoint is co-located with either a host controller or a Standalone Server. It must be enabled to use the Management CLI. By default, it runs on port 9999.

### Example 3.2. Native API Configuration File Example

```
<management-interfaces>
  <native-interface security-realm="ManagementRealm">
    <socket-binding native="management-native"/>
  </native-interface>
  [...]
</management-interfaces>
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 3.3. About the Management Console and Management CLI

In JBoss EAP 6, all server instances and configurations are managed through management interfaces rather than by editing XML files. While the configuration XML files are still available for editing, administration through the management interfaces provides extra validation and advanced features for the persistent management of server instances. Changes made to the XML configuration files while the server instance is running will be overwritten by the server model, and any XML comments added will be removed as well. Only the management interfaces should be used for modifying the configuration files while a server instance is running.

To manage servers through a graphical user-interface in a web browser, use the Management Console.

To manage servers through a command line interface, use the Management CLI.

[Report a bug](#)

## 3.4. The Management Console

### 3.4.1. Management Console

The Management Console is a web-based administration tool for JBoss EAP 6.

Use the Management Console to start and stop servers, deploy and undeploy applications, tune system settings, and make persistent modifications to the server configuration. The Management Console also has the ability to perform administrative tasks, with live notifications when any changes require the server instance to be restarted or reloaded.

In a Managed Domain, server instances and server groups in the same domain can be centrally managed from the Management Console of the domain controller.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.4.2. Log in to the Management Console

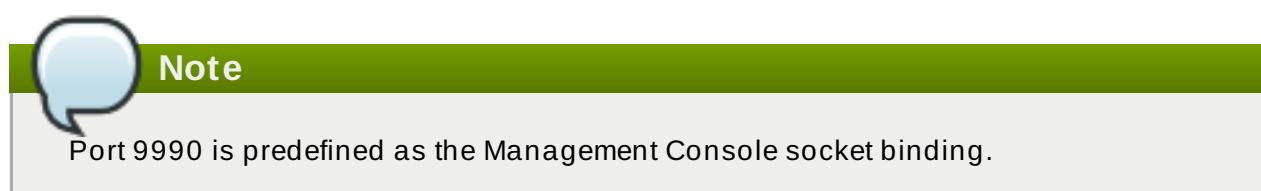
#### Prerequisites

- » You must create an administrative user as described here: [Section 4.1.1, “Add the User for the Management Interfaces”](#).

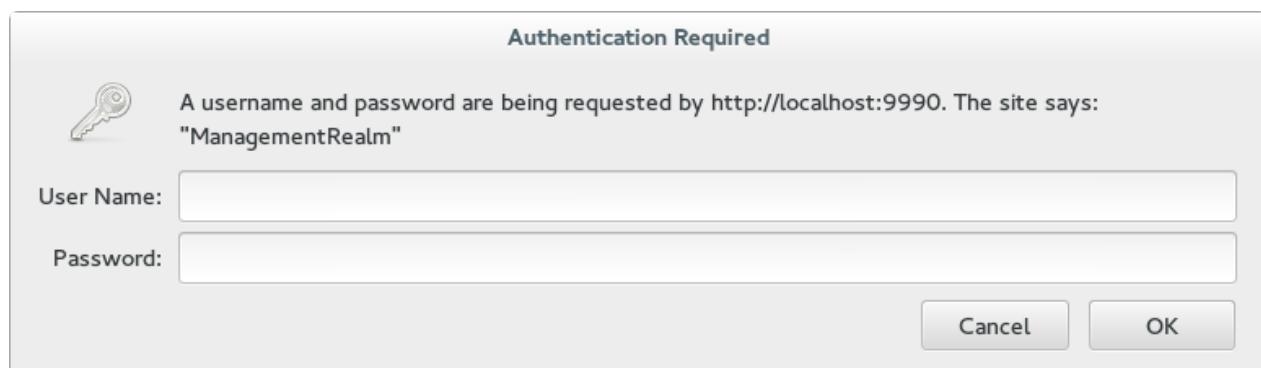
JBoss EAP 6 must be running.

#### 1. Navigate to the Management Console start page

Launch your web browser and navigate to the Management Console in your web browser at <http://localhost:9990/console/App.html>



2. Enter the username and password of the account that you created previously to log in to the Management Console login screen.



**Figure 3.1. Log in screen for the Management Console**

## Result

Once logged in, you are redirected to the following address and the the Management Console landing page appears: <http://localhost:9990/console/App.html#home>

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.4.3. Change the Language of the Management Console

The language settings of web-based Management Console use English by default. You can choose to use one of the following languages instead.

#### Supported Languages

- » German (de)
- » Simplified Chinese (zh-Hans)
- » Brazilian Portuguese (pt-BR)
- » French (fr)
- » Spanish (es)
- » Japanese (ja)

#### Procedure 3.1. Change the Language of the Web-based Management Console

1. Log into the Management Console.

Log into the web-based Management Console.

2. Open the Settings dialog.

Near the bottom right of the screen is a **Settings** label. Click it to open the settings for the Management Console.

3. Select the desired language.

Select the desired language from the **Locale** selection box. Select **Save**. A confirmation box informs you that you need to reload the application. Click **Confirm**. Refresh your web browser to use the new locale.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.4.4. Analytics in EAP Console

#### About Google Analytics

Google Analytics is a free web analytics service which provides comprehensive usage statistics on a website. It provides vital data regarding a site's visitors like their visits, page views, pages per visit and average time spent on site. Google Analytics provides more visibility around a website's presence and its users.

#### About Google Analytics in EAP Administration Console

JBoss EAP 6.3 provides users the option to enable/disable Google Analytics in the management

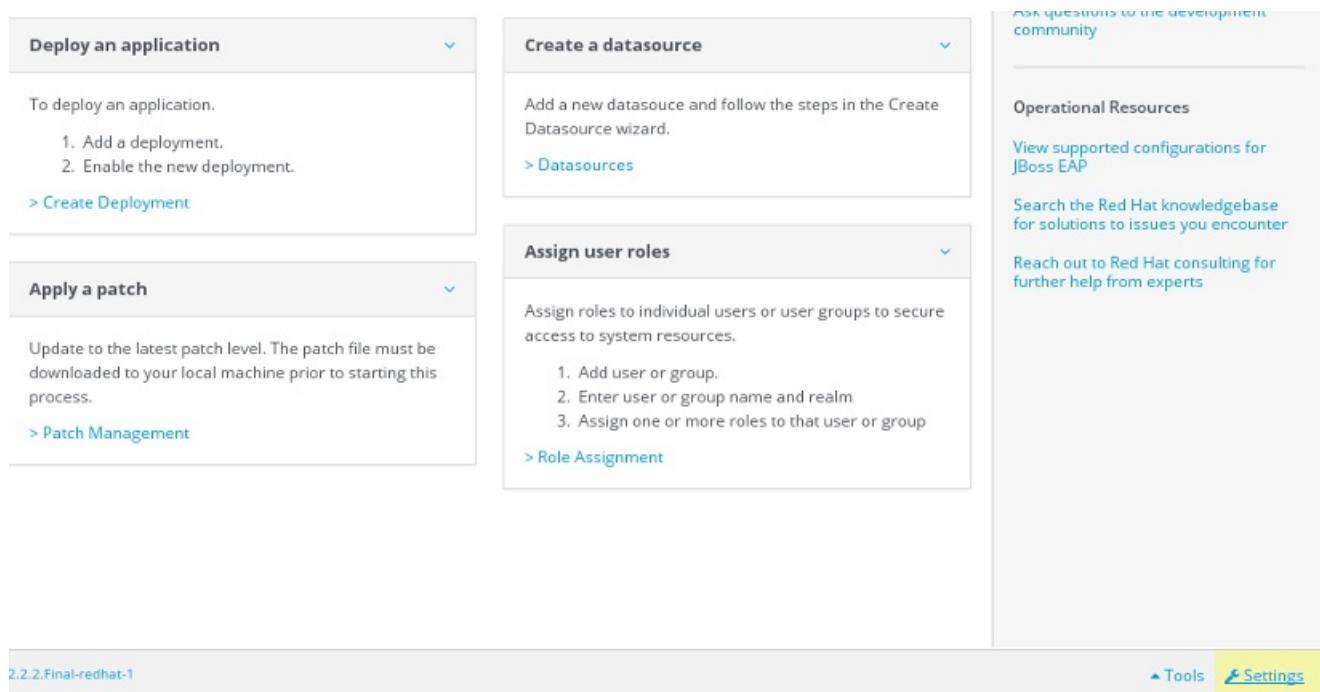
console. The Google Analytics feature aims to help Red Hat EAP team understand how the customers are using the console and which parts of the console matter the most to the customers. This information will in-turn help the team adapt the console design, features and content to the immediate needs of the customers.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.4.5. Enable/Disable Google Analytics in EAP Console

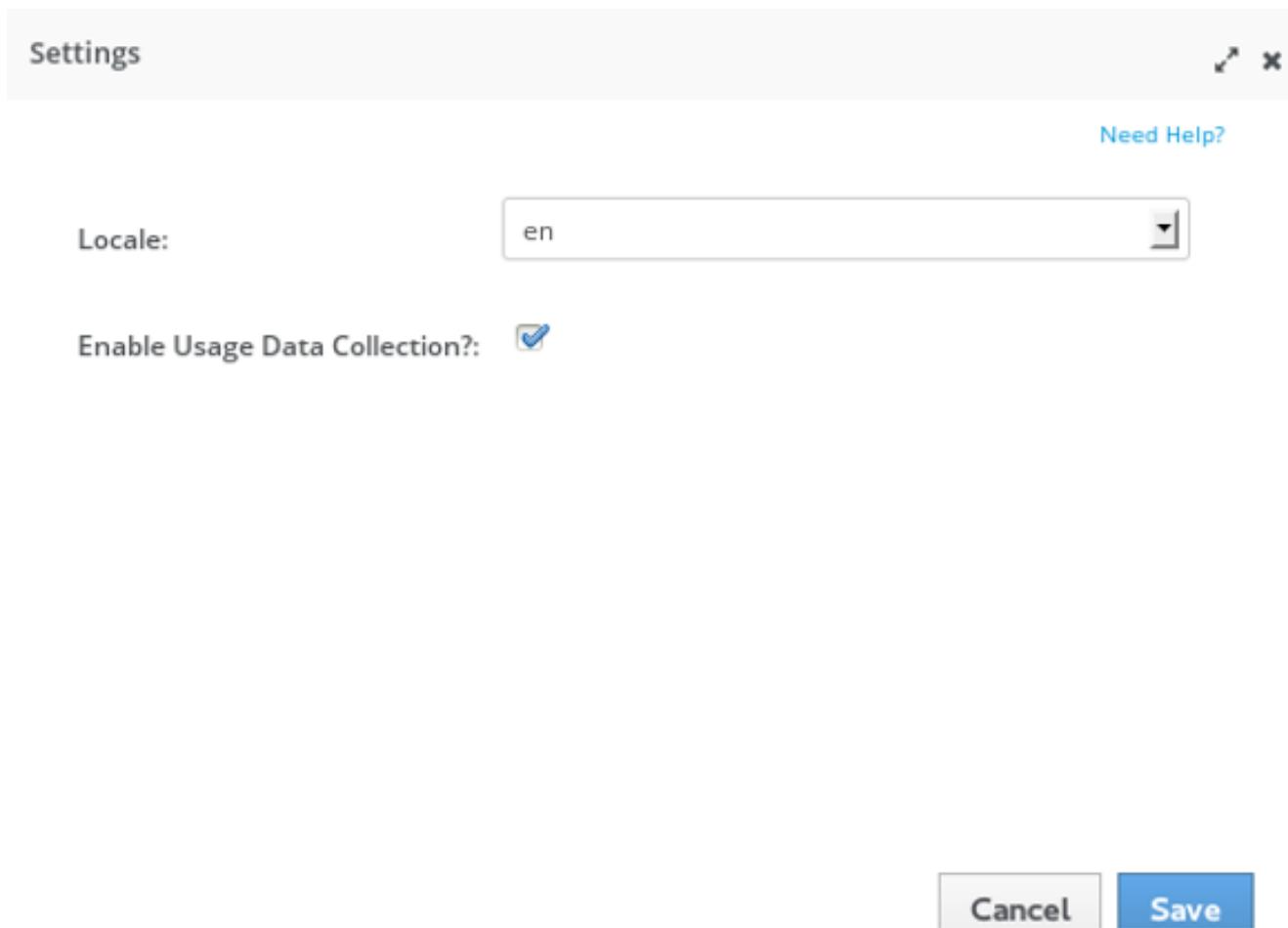
To enable Google Analytics in EAP administration console:

- » Log in to the administration console
- » Click **Settings** on the right-hand bottom of your console



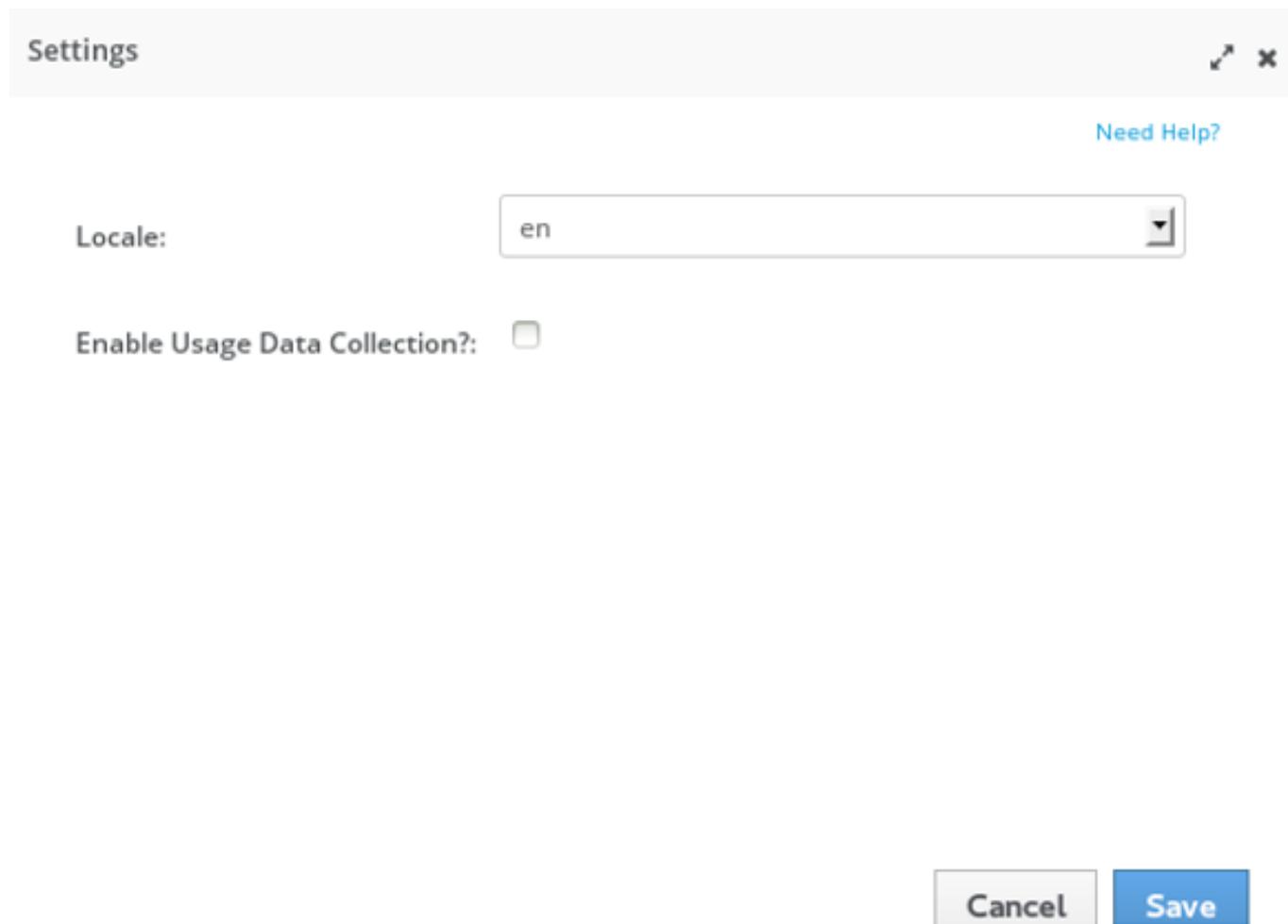
**Figure 3.2. Log in screen of the Administration Console**

- » Select **Enable Usage Data Collection** checkbox on the **Settings** window and click **Save** button. Reload the application to activate the new settings.



**Figure 3.3. Settings Window (Enable Usage Data Collection)**

To disable Google Analytics in administration console after you have enabled it click **Enable Usage Data Collection** on the **Settings** window to remove the selection. Click **Save** button.



**Figure 3.4. Settings Window (Disable Usage Data Collection)**

**Note**

Google Analytics is disabled by default in EAP 6.3 console and its usage is optional

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.4.6. Configure a Server Using the Management Console

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 2.1.3, “Start JBoss EAP 6 as a Managed Domain”](#)
- » [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#)

#### Procedure 3.2. Configure the Server

1. Select the **Domain** tab from the top of the console. Available server instances will be displayed in a table.
2. Select the server instance from the **Available Server Configurations** table.
3. Click **Edit** above the details of the chosen server.

4. Make changes to the configuration attributes.
5. Click **Save** to finish.

## Result

The server configuration is changed, and will take effect next time the server restarts.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.4.7. Add a Deployment in the Management Console

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#)

1. Select the **Runtime** tab at the top of the console.
2. For a standalone server, expand the **Server** menu and select **Manage Deployments**. For a managed domain, expand the **Domain** menu and select **Manage Deployments**. The **Manage Deployments** panel appears.
3. Select **Add** on the **Content Repository** tab. A **Create Deployment** dialog box appears.
4. In the dialog box, click **Browse**. Browse to the file you want to deploy and select it for upload. Click **Next** to proceed.
5. Verify the deployment name and runtime name that appear in the **Create Deployments** dialog box. Click **Save** to upload the file once the names are verified.

## Result

The selected content is uploaded to the server and is now ready for deployment.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.4.8. Create a New Server in the Management Console

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 2.1.3, “Start JBoss EAP 6 as a Managed Domain”](#)
- » [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#)

#### Procedure 3.3. Create a New Server Configuration

1. **Navigate to the Server Configurations page in the Management Console**  
Select the **Domain** tab from the top of the console.
2. **Create a new configuration**
  - a. Select the **Add** button above the **Available Server Configuration** table.
  - b. Enter the basic server settings in the **Create Server Configuration** dialog.
  - c. Select the **Save** button to save the new server configuration.

## Result

The new server is created and listed in the **Server Configurations** list.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.4.9. Change the Default Log Levels Using the Management Console

#### Procedure 3.4. Edit the Logging Levels

##### 1. Navigate to the Logging panel in the Management Console

- a. If you are working with a managed domain, select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the console, then select the relevant profile from the drop-down list on the left of the console.
- b. For either a managed domain or a standalone server, expand the **Core** menu from the list on the left of the console and click the **Logging** entry.
- c. Click on the **Log Categories** tab in the top of the console.

##### 2. Edit logger details

Edit the details for any of the entries in the **Log Categories** table.

- a. Select an entry in the **Log Categories** table, then click **Edit** in the **Details** section below.
- b. Set the log level for the category with the **Log Level** drop-down box. Click the **Save** button when done.

## Result

The log levels for the relevant categories are now updated.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.4.10. Create a New Server Group in the Management Console

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#)

#### Procedure 3.5. Configure and Add a new Server Group

##### 1. Navigate to the Server Groups view

Select the **Domain** tab from the top of the console.

##### 2. Expand the **Server** label in the menu in the left hand column. Select **Server Groups**.

##### 3. Add a server group

Click the **Add** button to add a new server group.

##### 4. Configure the server group

- a. Enter a name for the server group.
- b. Select the profile for the server group.
- c. Select the socket binding for the server group.
- d. Click the **Save** button to save your new group.

## Result

The new server group is visible in the Management Console.

[Report a bug](#)

## 3.5. The Management CLI

### 3.5.1. About the Management Command Line Interface (CLI)

The Management Command Line Interface (CLI) is a command line administration tool for JBoss EAP 6.

Use the Management CLI to start and stop servers, deploy and undeploy applications, configure system settings, and perform other administrative tasks. Operations can be performed in batch mode, allowing multiple tasks to be run as a group.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.5.2. Launch the Management CLI

#### Prerequisites:

- » [Section 2.1.2, “Start JBoss EAP 6 as a Standalone Server”](#)
- » [Section 2.1.3, “Start JBoss EAP 6 as a Managed Domain”](#)

#### Procedure 3.6. Launch CLI in Linux or Microsoft Windows Server

##### A. Launch the CLI in Linux

Run the **EAP\_HOME/bin/jboss-cli.sh** file by entering the following at a command line:

```
$ EAP_HOME/bin/jboss-cli.sh
```

##### B. Launch the CLI in Microsoft Windows Server

Run the **EAP\_HOME\bin\jboss-cli.bat** file by double-clicking it, or by entering the following at a command line:

```
C:\>EAP_HOME\bin\jboss-cli.bat
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.5.3. Quit the Management CLI

From the Management CLI, enter the **quit** command:

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] quit
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.5.4. Connect to a Managed Server Instance Using the Management CLI

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

#### Procedure 3.7. Connect to a Managed Server Instance

- » **Run the connect command**

From the Management CLI, enter the **connect** command:

```
[disconnected /] connect
Connected to domain controller at localhost:9999
```

A. Alternatively, to connect to a managed server when starting the Management CLI on a Linux system, use the **--connect** parameter:

```
$ EAP_HOME/bin/jboss-cli.sh --connect
```

B. The **--connect** parameter can be used to specify the host and port of the server. To connect to the address **192.168.0.1** with the port value **9999** the following would apply:

```
$ EAP_HOME/bin/jboss-cli.sh --connect --
controller=192.168.0.1:9999
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.5.5. Obtain Help with the Management CLI

#### Summary

Sometimes you might need guidance if you need to learn a CLI command or feel unsure about what to do. The Management CLI features a help dialog with general and context-sensitive options. (Note that the help commands dependent on the operation context require an established connection to either a standalone or domain controller. These commands will not appear in the listing unless the connection has been established.)

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

##### 1. For general help

From the Management CLI, enter the **help** command:

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] help
```

##### 2. Obtain context-sensitive help

From the Management CLI, enter the **help -commands** extended command:

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] help --commands
```

3. For a more detailed description of a specific command, enter the command, followed by **--help**.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] deploy --help
```

## Result

The CLI help information is displayed.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.5.6. Use the Management CLI in Batch Mode

#### Summary

Batch processing allows a number of operation requests to be grouped in a sequence and executed together as a unit. If any of the operation requests in the sequence fail, the entire group of operations is rolled back.

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)
- » [Section 3.5.4, “Connect to a Managed Server Instance Using the Management CLI”](#)

#### Procedure 3.8. Batch Mode Commands and Operations

##### 1. Enter batch mode

Enter batch mode with the **batch** command.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] batch
[standalone@localhost:9999 / #]
```

Batch mode is indicated by the hash symbol (#) in the prompt.

##### 2. Add operation requests to the batch

Once in batch mode, enter operation requests as normal. The operation requests are added to the batch in the order they are entered.

Refer to [Section 3.5.8, “Use Operations and Commands in the Management CLI”](#) for details on formatting operation requests.

##### 3. Run the batch

Once the entire sequence of operation requests is entered, run the batch with the **run-batch** command.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 / #] run-batch
The batch executed successfully.
```

Refer to [Section 3.5.7, “CLI Batch Mode Commands”](#) for a full list of commands available for working with batches.

#### 4. Batch commands stored in external files

Frequently run batch commands can be stored in an external text file and can either be loaded by passing the full path to the file as an argument to the **batch** command or executed directly by being an argument to the **run-batch** command.

You can create a batch command file using a text editor. Each command must be on a line by itself and the CLI should be able to access it.

The following command will load a **myscript.txt** file in the batch mode. All commands in this file will now be accessible to be edited or removed. New commands can be inserted. Changes made in this batch session do not persist to the **myscript.txt** file.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] batch --file=myscript.txt
```

The following will instantly run the batch commands stored in the file **myscript.txt**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] run-batch --file=myscript.txt
```

#### Result

The entered sequence of operation requests is completed as a batch.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 3.5.7. CLI Batch Mode Commands

This table provides a list of valid batch commands that can be used in the JBoss EAP 6 CLI. These commands can only be used to work with batches.

**Table 3.2. CLI Batch Mode Commands**

Command Name	Description
list-batch	List of the commands and operations in the current batch.
edit-batch-line line-number edited-command	Edit a line in the current batch by providing the line number to edit and the edited command. Example: <b>edit-batch-line 2 data-source disable --name=ExampleDS</b> .
move-batch-line fromline toline	Re-order the lines in the batch by specifying the line number you want to move as the first argument and its new position as the second argument. Example: <b>move-batch-line 3 1</b> .
remove-batch-line linenumber	Remove the batch command at the specified line. Example: <b>remove-batch-line 3</b> .

Command Name	Description
holdback-batch [batchname]	<p>You can postpone or store a current batch by using this command. Use this if you want to suddenly execute something in the CLI outside the batch. To return to this holdback batch, simply type <b>batch</b> again at the CLI command line.</p> <p>If you provide a batchname while using <b>holdback-batch</b> command the batch will be stored under that name. To return to the named batch, use the command <b>batch batchname</b>. Calling the <b>batch</b> command without a batchname will start a new (unnamed) batch. There can be only one unnamed holdback batch.</p> <p>To see a list of all holdback batches, use the <b>batch -l</b> command.</p>
discard-batch	Discards the currently active batch.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.5.8. Use Operations and Commands in the Management CLI

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)
- » [Section 3.5.4, “Connect to a Managed Server Instance Using the Management CLI”](#)

#### Procedure 3.9. Create, Configure and Execute Requests

##### 1. Construct the operation request

Operation requests allow for low-level interaction with the management model. They provide a controlled way to edit server configurations. An operation request consists of three parts:

- » an *address*, prefixed with a slash (/).
- » an *operation name*, prefixed with a colon (:).
- » an optional set of *parameters*, contained within parentheses (()).

###### a. Determine the address

The configuration is presented as a hierarchical tree of addressable resources. Each resource node offers a different set of operations. The address specifies which resource node to perform the operation on. An address uses the following syntax:

/node-type=node-name

- » *node-type* is the resource node type. This maps to an element name in the configuration XML.

- ❖ *node-name* is the resource node name. This maps to the `name` attribute of the `subsystem` element in the configuration XML.
- ❖ Separate each level of the resource tree with a slash (/).

Refer to the configuration XML files to determine the required address. The `EAP_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone.xml` file holds the configuration for a standalone server and the `EAP_HOME/domain/configuration/domain.xml` and `EAP_HOME/domain/configuration/host.xml` files hold the configuration for a managed domain.

### Example 3.3. Example operation addresses

To perform an operation on the logging subsystem, use the following address in an operation request:

```
/subsystem=logging
```

To perform an operation on the Java datasource, use the following address in an operation request:

```
/subsystem=datasources/data-source=java
```

### b. Determine the operation

Operations differ for each different type of resource node. An operation uses the following syntax:

```
:operation-name
```

- ❖ *operation-name* is the name of the operation to request.

Use the `read-operation-names` operation on any resource address in a standalone server to list the available operations.

### Example 3.4. Available operations

To list all available operations for the logging subsystem, enter the following request for a standalone server:

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging:read-operation-names
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => [
        "add",
        "read-attribute",
        "read-children-names",
        "read-children-resources",
        "read-children-types",
        "read-operation-description",
        "read-operation-names",
```

```

    "read-resource",
    "read-resource-description",
    "remove",
    "undefine-attribute",
    "whoami",
    "write-attribute"
]
}

```

### c. Determine any parameters

Each operation may require different parameters.

Parameters use the following syntax:

*(parameter-name=parameter-value)*

- ✳ *parameter-name* is the name of the parameter.
- ✳ *parameter-value* is the value of the parameter.
- ✳ Multiple parameters are separated by commas (,).

To determine any required parameters, perform the **read-operation-description** command on a resource node, passing the operation name as a parameter. Refer to [Example 3.5, “Determine operation parameters”](#) for details.

### Example 3.5. Determine operation parameters

To determine any required parameters for the **read-children-types** operation on the logging subsystem, enter the **read-operation-description** command as follows:

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging:read-operation-description(name=read-children-types)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "operation-name" => "read-children-types",
        "description" => "Gets the type names of all the children under the selected resource",
        "reply-properties" => {
            "type" => LIST,
            "description" => "The children types",
            "value-type" => STRING
        },
        "read-only" => true
    }
}
```

## 2. Enter the full operation request

Once the address, operation, and any parameters have been determined, enter the full operation request.

#### **Example 3.6. Example operation request**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=web/connector=http: read-resource(recursive=true)
```

#### **Result**

The management interface performs the operation request on the server configuration.

[Report a bug](#)

### **3.5.9. Management CLI Configuration Options**

The management CLI configuration file - `jboss-cli.xml` - is loaded each time the CLI is started. It must be located either in the directory `$EAP_HOME/bin` or a directory specified in the system property `jboss.cli.config`.

#### **default-controller**

Configuration of the controller to which to connect if the `connect` command is executed without any parameters.

#### **default-controller Parameters**

##### **host**

Hostname of the controller. Default: `localhost`.

##### **port**

Port number on which to connect to the controller. Default: 9999.

#### **validate-operation-requests**

Indicates whether the parameter list of the operation requests is to be validated before the requests are sent to the controller for execution. Type: Boolean. Default: `true`.

#### **history**

This element contains the configuration for the commands and operations history log.

#### **history Parameters**

##### **enabled**

Indicates whether or not the `history` is enabled. Type: Boolean. Default: `true`.

##### **file-name**

Name of the file in which the history is to be stored. Default = `.jboss-cli-history`.

##### **file-dir**

Directory in which the history is to be stored. Default = `$USER_HOME`

#### **max-size**

Maximum size of the history file. Default: 500.

#### **resolve-parameter-values**

Whether to resolve system properties specified as command argument (or operation parameter) values before sending the operation request to the controller or let the resolution happen on the server side. Type: Boolean. Default = `false`.

#### **connection-timeout**

The time allowed to establish a connection with the controller. Type: Integer. Default: 5000 seconds.

#### **ssl**

This element contains the configuration for the Key and Trust stores used for SSL.



#### **Warning**

Red Hat recommends that you explicitly disable SSL in favor of TLSv1.1 or TLSv1.2 in all affected packages.

#### **ssl Parameters**

##### **vault**

Type: `vaultType`

##### **key-store**

Type: string.

##### **key-store-password**

Type: string.

##### **alias**

Type: string

##### **key-password**

Type: string

##### **trust-store**

Type: string.

##### **trust-store-password**

Type: string.

##### **modify-trust-store**

If set to `true`, the CLI will prompt the user when unrecognised certificates are received and allow them to be stored in the truststore. Type: Boolean. Default:

received and allow them to be stored in the truststore. Type: Boolean. Default: true.

#### vaultType

If neither **code** nor **module** are specified, the default implementation will be used. If **code** is specified but not **module**, it will look for the specified class in the Picketbox module. If **module** and **code** are specified, it will look for the class specified by **code** in the module specified by 'module'.

#### code

Type: String.

#### module

Type: String

#### silent

Specifies if informational and error messages are to be output to the terminal. Even if the **false** is specified, the messages will still be logged using the logger if its configuration allows and/or if the output target was specified as part of the command line using >. Default: **False**.

[Report a bug](#)

## 3.5.10. Reference of Management CLI Commands

### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

### Summary

The topic [Section 3.5.5, “Obtain Help with the Management CLI”](#) describes how to access the Management CLI help features, including a help dialogue with general and context sensitive options. The help commands are dependent on the operation context and require an established connection to either a standalone or domain controller. These commands will not appear in the listing unless the connection has been established.

**Table 3.3.**

Command	Description
<b>batch</b>	Starts the batch mode by creating a new batch or, depending on the existing held back batches, re-activates one. If there are no held back batches this command invoked w/o arguments will start a new batch. If there is an unnamed held back batch, this command will re-activate it. If there are named held back batches, they can be activated by executing this command with the name of the held back batch as the argument.

Command	Description
<b>cd</b>	Changes the current node path to the argument. The current node path is used as the address for operation requests that do not contain the address part. If an operation request does include the address, the included address is considered relative to the current node path. The current node path may end on a node-type. In that case, to execute an operation specifying a node-name would be sufficient, such as logging:read-resource.
<b>clear</b>	Clears the screen.
<b>command</b>	Allows you to add new, remove and list existing generic type commands. A generic type command is a command that is assigned to a specific node type and which allows you to perform any operation available for an instance of that type. It can also modify any of the properties exposed by the type on any existing instance.
<b>connect</b>	Connects to the controller on the specified host and port.
<b>connection-factory</b>	Defines a connection factory.
<b>data-source</b>	Manages JDBC datasource configurations in the datasource subsystem.
<b>deploy</b>	Deploys the application designated by the file path or enables an application that is pre-existing but disabled in the repository. If executed without arguments, this command will list all the existing deployments.
<b>help</b>	Displays the help message. Can be used with the <b>--commands</b> argument to provide context sensitive results for the given commands.
<b>history</b>	Displays the CLI command history in memory and displays a status of whether the history expansion is enabled or disabled. Can be used with arguments to clear, disable and enable the history expansion as required.
<b>jms-queue</b>	Defines a JMS queue in the messaging subsystem.
<b>jms-topic</b>	Defines a JMS topic in the messaging subsystem.
<b>ls</b>	List the contents of the node path. By default the result is printed in columns using the whole width of the terminal. Using the <b>-1</b> switch will print results on one name per line.
<b>pwd</b>	Prints the full node path of the current working node.
<b>quit</b>	Terminates the command line interface.
<b>read-attribute</b>	Prints the value and, depending on the arguments, the description of the attribute of a managed resource.
<b>read-operation</b>	Displays the description of a specified operation, or lists all available operations if none is specified.
<b>undeploy</b>	Undeploys an application when run with the name of the intended application. Can be run with arguments to remove the application from the repository also. Prints the list of all existing deployments when executed without an application specified.
<b>version</b>	Prints the application server version and environment information.
<b>xa-data-source</b>	Manages JDBC XA datasource configuration in the datasource subsystem.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.5.11. Reference of Management CLI Operations

## Exposing operations in the Management CLI

Operations in the Management CLI can be exposed by using the **read-operation-names** operation described in the topic [Section 3.6.5, “Display the Operation Names using the Management CLI”](#). The operation descriptions can be exposed by using the **read-operation-descriptions** operation described in the topic [Section 3.6.4, “Display an Operation Description using the Management CLI”](#).

**Table 3.4. Management CLI operations**

Operation Name	Description
<b>add-namespace</b>	Adds a namespace prefix mapping to the namespaces attribute's map.
<b>add-schema-location</b>	Adds a schema location mapping to the schema-locations attribute's map.
<b>delete-snapshot</b>	Deletes a snapshot of the server configuration from the snapshots directory.
<b>full-replace-deployment</b>	Add previously uploaded deployment content to the list of content available for use, replace existing content of the same name in the runtime, and remove the replaced content from the list of content available for use. Refer to link for further information.
<b>list-snapshots</b>	Lists the snapshots of the server configuration saved in the snapshots directory.
<b>read-attribute</b>	Displays the value of an attribute for the selected resource.
<b>read-children-names</b>	Displays the names of all children under the selected resource with the given type.
<b>read-children-resources</b>	Displays information about all of a resource's children that are of a given type.
<b>read-children-types</b>	Displays the type names of all the children under the selected resource.
<b>read-config-as-xml</b>	Reads the current configuration and displays it in XML format.
<b>read-operation-description</b>	Displays the details of an operation on the given resource.
<b>read-operation-names</b>	Displays the names of all the operations for the given resource.
<b>read-resource</b>	Displays a model resource's attribute values along with either basic or complete information about any child resources.
<b>read-resource-description</b>	Displays the description of a resource's attributes, types of children and operations.
<b>reload</b>	Reloads the server by shutting all services down and restarting.
<b>remove-namespace</b>	Removes a namespace prefix mapping from the namespaces attribute map.
<b>remove-schema-location</b>	Removes a schema location mapping from the schema-locations attribute map.
<b>replace-deployment</b>	Replace existing content in the runtime with new content. The new content must have been previously uploaded to the deployment content repository.
<b>resolve-expression</b>	Operation that accepts an expression as input or a string that can be parsed into an expression, and resolves it against the local system properties and environment variables.
<b>resolve-internet-address</b>	Takes a set of interface resolution criteria and finds an IP address on the local machine that matches the criteria, or fails if no matching IP address can be found.

Operation Name	Description
<b>server-set-restart-required</b>	Puts the server into a restart-required mode
<b>shutdown</b>	Shuts down the server via a call to <b>System.exit(0)</b> .
<b>start-servers</b>	Starts all configured servers in a Managed Domain that are not currently running.
<b>stop-servers</b>	Stops all servers currently running in a Managed Domain.
<b>take-snapshot</b>	Takes a snapshot of the server configuration and saves it to the snapshots directory.
<b>upload-deployment-bytes</b>	Indicates that the deployment content in the included byte array should be added to the deployment content repository. Note that this operation does not indicate the content should be deployed into the runtime.
<b>upload-deployment-stream</b>	Indicates that the deployment content available at the included input stream index should be added to the deployment content repository. Note that this operation does not indicate the content should be deployed into the runtime.
<b>upload-deployment-url</b>	Indicates that the deployment content available at the included URL should be added to the deployment content repository. Note that this operation does not indicate the content should be deployed into the runtime.
<b>validate-address</b>	Validates the operation's address.
<b>write-attribute</b>	Sets the value of an attribute for the selected resource.

[Report a bug](#)

## 3.6. Management CLI Operations

### 3.6.1. Display the Attributes of a Resource with the Management CLI

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

#### Summary

The **read-attribute** operation is a global operation used to read the current runtime value of a selected attribute. It can be used to expose only the values that have been set by the user, ignoring any default or undefined values. The request properties include the following parameters.

#### Request Properties

##### **name**

The name of the attribute to get the value for under the selected resource.

##### **include-defaults**

A Boolean parameter that can be set to **false** to restrict the operation results to only show attributes set by the user and ignore default values.

#### Procedure 3.10. Display the Current Runtime Value of a Selected Attribute

- » **Run the read-attribute operation**

From the Management CLI, use the **read - attribute** operation to display the value of a resource attribute. For more details on operation requests, refer to the topic [Section 3.5.8, “Use Operations and Commands in the Management CLI”](#).

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]: read - attribute(name= name-of-attribute)
```

An advantage of the **read - attribute** operation is the ability to expose the current runtime value of a specific attribute. Similar results can be achieved with the **read - resource** operation, but only with the addition of the **include-runtime** request property, and only as part of a list of all available resources for that node. The **read - attribute** operation is intended for fine-grained attribute queries, as the following example shows.

#### **Example 3.7. Run the read - attribute operation to expose the public interface IP**

If you know the name of the attribute that you would like to expose, you can use the **read - attribute** to return the exact value in the current runtime.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /interface=public:read-
attribute(name=resolved-address)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => "127.0.0.1"
}
```

The **resolved - address** attribute is a runtime value, so it is not displayed in the results of the standard **read - resource** operation.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /interface=public:read-resource
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "any" => undefined,
        "any-address" => undefined,
        "any-ipv4-address" => undefined,
        "any-ipv6-address" => undefined,
        "inet-address" => expression "${jboss.bind.address:127.0.0.1}",
        "link-local-address" => undefined,
        "loopback" => undefined,
        "loopback-address" => undefined,
        "multicast" => undefined,
        "name" => "public",
        "nic" => undefined,
        "nic-match" => undefined,
        "not" => undefined,
        "point-to-point" => undefined,
        "public-address" => undefined,
        "site-local-address" => undefined,
        "subnet-match" => undefined,
        "up" => undefined,
        "virtual" => undefined
    }
}
```

To display **resolved-address** and other runtime values, you must use the **include-runtime** request property.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /interface=public:read-resource(include-runtime=true)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "any" => undefined,
        "any-address" => undefined,
        "any-ipv4-address" => undefined,
        "any-ipv6-address" => undefined,
        "inet-address" => expression "${jboss.bind.address:127.0.0.1}",
        "link-local-address" => undefined,
        "loopback" => undefined,
        "loopback-address" => undefined,
        "multicast" => undefined,
        "name" => "public",
        "nic" => undefined,
        "nic-match" => undefined,
        "not" => undefined,
        "point-to-point" => undefined,
        "public-address" => undefined,
        "resolved-address" => "127.0.0.1",
        "site-local-address" => undefined,
        "subnet-match" => undefined,
        "up" => undefined,
        "virtual" => undefined
    }
}
```

## Result

The current runtime attribute value is displayed.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.6.2. Display the Active User in the Management CLI

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

#### Summary

The **whoami** operation is a global operation used to identify the attributes of the current active user. The operation exposes the identity of the username and the realm that they are assigned to. The **whoami** operation is useful for administrators managing multiple users accounts across multiple realms, or to assist in keeping track of active users across domain instances with multiple terminal session and users accounts.

#### Procedure 3.11. Display the Active User in the Management CLI Using the **whoami** Operation

## » Run the `whoami` operation

From the Management CLI, use the `whoami` operation to display the active user account.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] :whoami
```

The following example uses the `whoami` operation in a standalone server instance to show that the active user is `username`, and that the user is assigned to the `ManagementRealm` realm.

### Example 3.8. Use the `whoami` in a standalone instance

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]:whoami
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {"identity" => {
        "username" => "username",
        "realm" => "ManagementRealm"
    }}
}
```

## Result

Your current active user account is displayed.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.6.3. Display System and Server Information in the Management CLI

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

#### Procedure 3.12. Display System and Server Information in the Management CLI

##### » Run the `version` command

From the Management CLI, enter the `version` command:

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] version
```

## Result

Your application server version and environment information is displayed.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.6.4. Display an Operation Description using the Management CLI

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

### Procedure 3.13. Execute the Command in Management CLI

#### » Run the `read-operation-description` operation

From the Management CLI, use `read-operation-description` to display information about the operation. The operation requires additional parameters in the format of a key-value pair to indicate which operation to display. For more details on operation requests, refer to the topic [Section 3.5.8, “Use Operations and Commands in the Management CLI”](#).

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]:read-operation-description(name=name-of-operation)
```

#### Example 3.9. Display the `list-snapshots` operation description

The following example shows the method for describing the `list-snapshots` operation.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] :read-operation-description(name=list-snapshots)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "operation-name" => "list-snapshots",
        "description" => "Lists the snapshots",
        "request-properties" => {},
        "reply-properties" => {
            "type" => OBJECT,
            "value-type" => {
                "directory" => {
                    "type" => STRING,
                    "description" => "The directory where the snapshots are stored",
                    "expressions-allowed" => false,
                    "required" => true,
                    "nillable" => false,
                    "min-length" => 1L,
                    "max-length" => 2147483647L
                },
                "names" => {
                    "type" => LIST,
                    "description" => "The names of the snapshots within the snapshots directory",
                    "expressions-allowed" => false,
                    "required" => true,
                    "nillable" => false,
                    "value-type" => STRING
                }
            },
            "access-constraints" => {"sensitive" => {"snapshots" => {"type" => "core"}}, "read-only" => false
        }
    }
}
```

## Result

The description is displayed for the chosen operation.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.6.5. Display the Operation Names using the Management CLI

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

#### Procedure 3.14. Execute the Command in Management CLI

- » **Run the `read-operation-names` operation**

From the Management CLI, use the **read-operation-names** operation to display the names of the available operations. For more details on operation requests, refer to the topic [Section 3.5.8, “Use Operations and Commands in the Management CLI”](#).

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]: read-operation-names
```

#### Example 3.10. Display the operation names using the Management CLI

The following example shows the method for describing the **read-operation-names** operation.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]: read-operation-names
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => [
        "add-namespace",
        "add-schema-location",
        "delete-snapshot",
        "full-replace-deployment",
        "list-snapshots",
        "read-attribute",
        "read-children-names",
        "read-children-resources",
        "read-children-types",
        "read-config-as-xml",
        "read-operation-description",
        "read-operation-names",
        "read-resource",
        "read-resource-description",
        "reload",
        "remove-namespace",
        "remove-schema-location",
        "replace-deployment",
        "resolve-expression",
        "resolve-internet-address",
        "server-set-restart-required",
        "shutdown",
        "take-snapshot",
        "undefine-attribute",
        "upload-deployment-bytes",
```

```

    "upload-deployment-stream",
    "upload-deployment-url",
    "validate-address",
    "validate-operation",
    "whoami",
    "write-attribute"
]
}

```

## Result

The available operation names are displayed.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.6.6. Display Available Resources using the Management CLI

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

#### Summary

The **read-resource** operation is a global operation used to read resource values. It can be used to expose either basic or complete information about the resources of the current or child nodes, along with a range of request properties to expand or limit the scope of the operation results. The request properties include the following parameters.

#### Request Properties

##### **recursive**

Whether to recursively include complete information about child resources.

##### **recursive-depth**

The depth to which information about child resources should be included.

##### **proxies**

Whether to include remote resources in a recursive query. For example including the host level resources from slave Host Controllers in a query of the Domain Controller.

##### **include-runtime**

Whether to include runtime attributes in the response, such as attribute values that do not come from the persistent configuration. This request property is set to false by default.

##### **include-defaults**

A boolean request property that serves to enable or disable the reading of default attributes. When set to false only the attributes set by the user are returned, ignoring any that remain undefined.

#### Procedure 3.15. Execute the Command in Management CLI

1. **Run the read-resource operation**

From the Management CLI, use the **read - resource** operation to display the available resources.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]: read - resource
```

The following example shows how you might use the **read - resource** operation on a standalone server instance to expose general resource information. The results resemble the **standalone.xml** configuration file, displaying the system resources, extensions, interfaces and subsystems installed or configured for the server instance. These can be further queried directly.

#### Example 3.11. Using the read - resource operation at the root level

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]: read - resource
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "deployment" => undefined,
        "deployment-overlay" => undefined,
        "management-major-version" => 1,
        "management-micro-version" => 0,
        "management-minor-version" => 4,
        "name" => "longgrass",
        "namespaces" => [],
        "product-name" => "EAP",
        "product-version" => "6.3.0.GA",
        "release-codename" => "Janus",
        "release-version" => "7.2.0.Final-redhat-3",
        "schema-locations" => [],
        "system-property" => undefined,
        "core-service" => {
            "management" => undefined,
            "service-container" => undefined,
            "server-environment" => undefined,
            "platform-mbean" => undefined
        },
        "extension" => {
            "org.jboss.as.clustering.infinispan" => undefined,
            "org.jboss.as.connector" => undefined,
            "org.jboss.as.deployment-scanner" => undefined,
            "org.jboss.as.ee" => undefined,
            "org.jboss.as.ejb3" => undefined,
            "org.jboss.as.jaxrs" => undefined,
            "org.jboss.as.jdr" => undefined,
            "org.jboss.as.jmx" => undefined,
            "org.jboss.as.jpa" => undefined,
            "org.jboss.as.jsf" => undefined,
            "org.jboss.as.logging" => undefined,
            "org.jboss.as.mail" => undefined,
            "org.jboss.as.naming" => undefined,
            "org.jboss.as.pojo" => undefined,
            "org.jboss.as.remoting" => undefined,
            "org.jboss.as.sar" => undefined,
            "org.jboss.as.security" => undefined,
            "org.jboss.as.threads" => undefined,
        }
    }
}
```

```

        "org.jboss.as.transactions" => undefined,
        "org.jboss.as.web" => undefined,
        "org.jboss.as.webservices" => undefined,
        "org.jboss.as.weld" => undefined
    },
    "interface" => {
        "management" => undefined,
        "public" => undefined,
        "unsecure" => undefined
    },
    "path" => {
        "jboss.server.temp.dir" => undefined,
        "user.home" => undefined,
        "jboss.server.base.dir" => undefined,
        "java.home" => undefined,
        "user.dir" => undefined,
        "jboss.server.data.dir" => undefined,
        "jboss.home.dir" => undefined,
        "jboss.server.log.dir" => undefined,
        "jboss.server.config.dir" => undefined,
        "jboss.controller.temp.dir" => undefined
    },
    "socket-binding-group" => {"standard-sockets" =>
undefined},
    "subsystem" => {
        "logging" => undefined,
        "datasources" => undefined,
        "deployment-scanner" => undefined,
        "ee" => undefined,
        "ejb3" => undefined,
        "infinispan" => undefined,
        "jaxrs" => undefined,
        "jca" => undefined,
        "jdr" => undefined,
        "jmx" => undefined,
        "jpa" => undefined,
        "jsf" => undefined,
        "mail" => undefined,
        "naming" => undefined,
        "pojo" => undefined,
        "remoting" => undefined,
        "resource-adapters" => undefined,
        "sar" => undefined,
        "security" => undefined,
        "threads" => undefined,
        "transactions" => undefined,
        "web" => undefined,
        "webservices" => undefined,
        "weld" => undefined
    }
}
}

```

## 2. Run the read-resource operation against a child node

The **read - resource** operation can be run to query child nodes from the root. The structure of the operation first defines the node to expose, and then appends the operation to run against it.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]/subsystem=web/connector=http: read - resource
```

In the following example, specific resource information about a web subsystem component can be exposed by directing the **read - resource** operation towards the specific web subsystem node.

#### **Example 3.12. Expose child node resources from the root node**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=web/connector=http: read - resource
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "configuration" => undefined,
        "enable-lookups" => false,
        "enabled" => true,
        "executor" => undefined,
        "max-connections" => undefined,
        "max-post-size" => 2097152,
        "max-save-post-size" => 4096,
        "name" => "http",
        "protocol" => "HTTP/1.1",
        "proxy-name" => undefined,
        "proxy-port" => undefined,
        "redirect-port" => 443,
        "scheme" => "http",
        "secure" => false,
        "socket-binding" => "http",
        "ssl" => undefined,
        "virtual-server" => undefined
    }
}
```

The same results are possible by using the **cd** command to navigate into the child nodes and run the **read - resource** operation directly.

#### **Example 3.13. Expose child node resources by changing directories**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] cd subsystem=web
```

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 subsystem=web] cd connector=http
```

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 connector=http] :read-resource
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
```

```

    "configuration" => undefined,
    "enable-lookups" => false,
    "enabled" => true,
    "executor" => undefined,
    "max-connections" => undefined,
    "max-post-size" => 2097152,
    "max-save-post-size" => 4096,
    "name" => "http",
    "protocol" => "HTTP/1.1",
    "proxy-name" => undefined,
    "proxy-port" => undefined,
    "redirect-port" => 443,
    "scheme" => "http",
    "secure" => false,
    "socket-binding" => "http",
    "ssl" => undefined,
    "virtual-server" => undefined
}
}

```

### 3. Use the recursive parameter to include active values in results

The recursive parameter can be used to expose the values of all attributes, including non-persistent values, those passed at startup, or other attributes otherwise active in the runtime model.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]/interface=public:read-
resource(include-runtime=true)
```

Compared to the previous example, the inclusion of the `include-runtime` request property exposes additional active attributes, such as the bytes sent and bytes received by the HTTP connector.

#### Example 3.14. Expose additional and active values with the `include-runtime` parameter

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=web/connector=http:read-
resource(include-runtime=true)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "any" => undefined,
        "any-address" => undefined,
        "any-ipv4-address" => undefined,
        "any-ipv6-address" => undefined,
        "inet-address" => expression
        "${jboss.bind.address:127.0.0.1}",
        "link-local-address" => undefined,
        "loopback" => undefined,
        "loopback-address" => undefined,
        "multicast" => undefined,
        "name" => "public",
        "nic" => undefined,
    }
}
```

```

    "nic-match" => undefined,
    "not" => undefined,
    "point-to-point" => undefined,
    "public-address" => undefined,
    "resolved-address" => "127.0.0.1",
    "site-local-address" => undefined,
    "subnet-match" => undefined,
    "up" => undefined,
    "virtual" => undefined
}
}

```

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.6.7. Display Available Resource Descriptions using the Management CLI

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

#### Procedure 3.16. Execute the Command in Management CLI

##### 1. Run the `read-resource-description` operation

From the Management CLI, use the `read-resource-description` operation to read and display the available resources. For more details on operation requests, refer to the topic [Section 3.5.8, “Use Operations and Commands in the Management CLI”](#).

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]: read-resource-description
```

##### 2. Use optional parameters

The `read-resource-description` operation allows the use of the additional parameters.

- a. Use the `operations` parameter to include descriptions of the resource's operations.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]: read-resource-
description(operations=true)
```

- b. Use the `inherited` parameter to include or exclude descriptions of the resource's inherited operations. The default state is true.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]: read-resource-
description(inherited=false)
```

- c. Use the `recursive` parameter to include recursive descriptions of the child resources.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]: read-resource-
description(recursive=true)
```

- d. Use the `locale` parameter to get the resource description in. If null, the default locale will be used.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]: read-resource-description(locale=true)
```

## Result

Descriptions of the available resources are displayed.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.6.8. Reload the Application Server using the Management CLI

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

From the management CLI, use the **reload** operation to shut down all services and restart the runtime. After the **reload** is complete the management CLI will automatically reconnect.

For more details on operation requests, see [Section 3.5.8, “Use Operations and Commands in the Management CLI”](#).

#### Example 3.15. Reload the Application Server

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]: reload
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.6.9. Shut the Application Server down using the Management CLI

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

#### Procedure 3.17. Shut down the Application Server

- » **Run the shutdown operation**

■ From the Management CLI, use the **shutdown** operation to shut the server down via the **System.exit(0)** system call. For more details on operation requests, refer to the topic [Section 3.5.8, “Use Operations and Commands in the Management CLI”](#).

■ In the standalone mode, use the following command:

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]: shutdown
```

■ In the domain mode, use the following command with the appropriate host name:

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /]: host=master: shutdown
```

■ To connect to a detached CLI instance and shut down the server, execute the following command:

```
jboss-cli.sh --connect command=:shutdown
```

- To connect to a remote CLI instance and shutdown the server, execute the following command:

```
[disconnected /] connect IP_ADDRESS
Connected to IP_ADDRESS:PORT_NUMBER
[192.168.1.10:9999 /] :shutdown
```

Replace *IP\_ADDRESS* with the IP address of your instance.

## Result

The application server is shut down. The Management CLI will be disconnected as the runtime is unavailable.

[Report a bug](#)

## 3.6.10. Configure an Attribute with the Management CLI

### Prerequisites

- [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

### Summary

The **write-attribute** operation is a global operation used to write or modify a selected resource attribute. You can use the operation to make persistent changes and to modify the configuration settings of your managed server instances. The request properties include the following parameters.

### Request Properties

#### **name**

The name of the attribute to set the value for under the selected resource.

#### **value**

The desired value of the attribute under the selected resource. May be null if the underlying model supports null values.

### Procedure 3.18. Configure a Resource Attribute with the Management CLI

- Run the `write-attribute` operation**

From the Management CLI, use the **write-attribute** operation to modify the value of a resource attribute. The operation can be run at the child node of the resource or at the root node of the Management CLI where the full resource path is specified.

### Example 3.16. Disable the deployment scanner with the `write-attribute` operation

The following example uses the **write-attribute** operation to disable the deployment scanner. The operation is run from the root node, using tab completion to aid in populating the correct resource path.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=deployment-
scanner/scanner=default:write-attribute(name=scan-enabled,value=false)
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

The results of the operation can be confirmed directly with the **read-attribute** operation.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=deployment-
scanner/scanner=default:read-attribute(name=scan-enabled)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => false
}
```

The results can also be confirmed by listing all of the node's available resource attributes with the **read-resource** operation. In the following example, this particular configuration shows the **scan-enabled** attribute is now set to **false**.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=deployment-
scanner/scanner=default:read-resource
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "auto-deploy-exploded" => false,
        "auto-deploy-xml" => true,
        "auto-deploy-zipped" => true,
        "deployment-timeout" => 600,
        "path" => "deployments",
        "relative-to" => "jboss.server.base.dir",
        "scan-enabled" => false,
        "scan-interval" => 5000
    }
}
```

## Result

The resource attribute is updated.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.6.11. Configure System Properties Using the Management CLI

#### Procedure 3.19. Configure System Properties Using the Management CLI

1. Start the JBoss EAP server.
2. Launch the Management CLI using the command for your operating system.

For Linux:

```
EAP_HOME/bin/jboss-cli.sh --connect
```

For Windows:

```
EAP_HOME\bin\jboss-cli.bat --connect
```

3. Add a system property.

The command you use depends on whether you are running a standalone server or a managed domain. If you are running a managed domain, you can add system properties to any or all of the servers running in that domain.

A. Add a system property on a standalone server using the following syntax:

```
/system-property=PROPERTY_NAME:add(value=PROPERTY_VALUE)
```

**Example 3.17. Add a system property to a standalone server**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /system-
property=property.mybean.queue:add(value=java:/queue/MyBeanQue
ue)
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

B. Add a system property to all hosts and servers in a managed domain using the following syntax:

```
/system-property=PROPERTY_NAME:add(value=PROPERTY_VALUE)
```

**Example 3.18. Add a system property to all servers in a managed domain**

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] /system-
property=property.mybean.queue:add(value=java:/queue/MyBeanQue
ue)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => undefined,
    "server-groups" => {"main-server-group" => {"host" =>
    {"master" => {
        "server-one" => {"response" => {"outcome" =>
        "success"}},
        "server-two" => {"response" => {"outcome" =>
        "success"}}}}
    }}}}
```

C. Add a system property to a host and its server instances in a managed domain using the following syntax:

```
/host=master/system-
property=PROPERTY_NAME:add(value=PROPERTY_VALUE)
```

**Example 3.19. Add a system property to a host and its servers in a domain**

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] /host=master/system-
property=property.mybean.queue:add(value=java:/queue/MyBeanQue
ue)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => undefined,
    "server-groups" => {"main-server-group" => {"host" =>
{"master" => {
        "server-one" => {"response" => {"outcome" =>
"success"}},
        "server-two" => {"response" => {"outcome" =>
"success"}}
    }}}
}
```

- D. Add a system property to a server instance in a managed domain using the following syntax:

```
/host=master/server-config=server-one/system-
property=PROPERTY_NAME:add(value=PROPERTY_VALUE)
```

**Example 3.20. Add a system property to a server instance in a managed domain**

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] /host=master/server-config=server-
one/system-
property=property.mybean.queue:add(value=java:/queue/MyBeanQue
ue)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => undefined,
    "server-groups" => {"main-server-group" => {"host" =>
{"master" => {"server-one" => {"response" => {"outcome" =>
"success"}}}}}}
```

4. Read a system property.

The command you use depends on whether you are running a standalone server or a managed domain.

- A. Read a system property from a standalone server using the following syntax:

```
/system-property=PROPERTY_NAME:read-resource
```

**Example 3.21. Read a system property from a standalone server**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /system-
property=property.mybean.queue:read-resource
{
```

```

        "outcome" => "success",
        "result" => {"value" => "java:/queue/MyBeanQueue"}
    }

```

- B. Read a system property from all hosts and servers in a managed domain using the following syntax:

```
/system-property=PROPERTY_NAME:read-resource
```

**Example 3.22. Read a system property from all servers in a managed domain**

```

[domain@localhost:9999 /] /system-
property=property.mybean.queue:read-resource
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "boot-time" => true,
        "value" => "java:/queue/MyBeanQueue"
    }
}

```

- C. Read a system property from a host and its server instances in a managed domain using the following syntax:

```
/host=master/system-property=PROPERTY_NAME:read-resource
```

**Example 3.23. Read a system property from a host and its servers in a domain**

```

[domain@localhost:9999 /] /host=master/system-
property=property.mybean.queue:read-resource
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "boot-time" => true,
        "value" => "java:/queue/MyBeanQueue"
    }
}

```

- D. Read a system property from a server instance in a managed domain using the following syntax:

```
/host=master/server-config=server-one/system-
property=PROPERTY_NAME:read-resource
```

**Example 3.24. Read a system property from a server instance in a managed domain**

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] /host=master/server-config=server-one/system-property=property.mybean.queue:read-resource
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "boot-time" => true,
        "value" => "java:/queue/MyBeanQueue"
    }
}
```

## 5. Remove a system property.

The command you use depends on whether you are running a standalone server or a managed domain.

## A. Remove a system property from a standalone server using the following syntax:

```
/system-property=PROPERTY_NAME:remove
```

**Example 3.25. Remove a system property from a standalone server**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /system-
property=property.mybean.queue:remove
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

## B. Remove a system property from all hosts and servers in a managed domain using the following syntax:

```
/system-property=PROPERTY_NAME:remove
```

**Example 3.26. Remove a system property from all hosts and servers in a domain**

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] /system-
property=property.mybean.queue:remove
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => undefined,
    "server-groups" => {"main-server-group" => {"host" =>
    {"master" => {
        "server-one" => {"response" => {"outcome" =>
        "success"}},
        "server-two" => {"response" => {"outcome" =>
        "success"}}
    }}}
}
```

```

        "success"]}
    }]}
}
```

- C. Remove a system property from a host and its server instances in a managed domain using the following syntax:

```
/host=master/system-property=PROPERTY_NAME:remove
```

**Example 3.27. Remove a system property from a host and its instances in a domain**

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] /host=master/system-
property=property.mybean.queue:remove
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => undefined,
    "server-groups" => {"main-server-group" => {"host" =>
    {"master" => {
        "server-one" => {"response" => {"outcome" =>
    "success"}},
        "server-two" => {"response" => {"outcome" =>
    "success"}}
    }}}}
}
```

- D. Remove a system property from a server instance in a managed domain using the following syntax:

```
/host=master/server-config=server-one/system-
property=PROPERTY_NAME:remove
```

**Example 3.28. Remove a system property from a server in a managed domain**

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] /host=master/server-config=server-
one/system-property=property.mybean.queue:remove
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => undefined,
    "server-groups" => {"main-server-group" => {"host" =>
    {"master" => {"server-one" => {"response" => {"outcome" =>
    "success"}}}}}}
```

## 3.7. The Management CLI Command History

### 3.7.1. Use the Management CLI Command History

The Management CLI features a command history functionality that is enabled by default in the application server installation. The history is kept both as a record in the volatile memory of the active CLI session, and appended to a log file that saves automatically in the user's home directory as `.jboss-cli-history`. This history file is configured by default to record up to a maximum of 500 CLI commands.

The `history` command by itself will return the history of the current session, or with additional arguments will disable, enable or clear the history from the session memory. The Management CLI also features the ability to use your keyboard's arrow keys to go back and forth in the history of commands and operations.

#### Functions of the Management CLI history

- » [Section 3.7.2, “Show the Management CLI Command history”](#)
- » [Section 3.7.3, “Clear the Management CLI Command history”](#)
- » [Section 3.7.4, “Disable the Management CLI Command history”](#)
- » [Section 3.7.5, “Enable the Management CLI Command history”](#)

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.7.2. Show the Management CLI Command history

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

#### Procedure 3.20. Show the Management CLI Command History

- » **Run the `history` command**

From the Management CLI, enter the `history` command:

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] history
```

#### Result

The CLI command history stored in memory since the CLI startup or the history clear command is displayed.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.7.3. Clear the Management CLI Command history

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

### Procedure 3.21. Clear the Management CLI Command history

- » **Run the `history --clear` command**

From the Management CLI, enter the `history --clear` command:

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] history --clear
```

#### Result

The history of commands recorded since the CLI startup is cleared from the session memory. The command history is still present in the `.jboss-cli-history` file saved to the user's home directory.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.7.4. Disable the Management CLI Command history

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

### Procedure 3.22. Disable the Management CLI Command history

- » **Run the `history --disable` command**

From the Management CLI, enter the `history --disable` command:

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] history --disable
```

#### Result

Commands made in the CLI will not be recorded either in memory or in the `.jboss-cli-history` file saved to the user's home directory.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.7.5. Enable the Management CLI Command history

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

### Procedure 3.23. Enable the Management CLI Command history

- » **Run the `history --enable` command**

From the Management CLI, enter the `history --enable` command:

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] history --enable
```

#### Result

Commands made in the CLI are recorded in memory and in the `.jboss-cli-history` file saved to the user's home directory.

[Report a bug](#)

## 3.8. Management Interface Audit Logging

### 3.8.1. About Management Interface Audit Logging

When audit logging is enabled, all operations carried out via the management API can be recorded in an audit log. Whether those operations are carried out via the management console, management CLI interface, or a custom-written interface, all are subject to audit logging. By default, audit logging is disabled.

Before being stored, log entries pass through a formatter and handler. The formatter specifies the format of the log entries, while the handler outputs the records to the specified destination(s). Only one formatter is currently available, which outputs entries in JSON format. A handler may be configured to output log records to a file, forwarded to a Syslog server or both.



#### Note

Audit logging can be configured only via the management CLI.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.8.2. Enable Management Interface Audit Logging from the Management CLI

Management interface audit logging is disabled by default but preconfigured to output log records using a file handler named `file` to the file `EAP_HOME/standalone/data/audit-log.log`.

To enable audit logging from the Management CLI, enter the following command.

```
/core-service=management/access=audit/logger=audit-log:write-attribute(name=enabled,value=true)
```

To see all management interface audit logging configuration attributes and their values, enter the following command.

```
/core-service=management/access=audit:read-resource(recursive=true)
```

In addition to enabling or disabling management interface audit logging, the following `logger` configuration attributes are available.

#### `log-boot`

If set to `true`, management operations when booting the server are included in the audit log, `false` otherwise. Default: `true`.

#### `log-read-only`

If set to `true`, all operations will be audit logged. If set to `false` only operations that change the model will be logged. Default: `false`.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.8.3. About a Management Interface Audit Logging Formatter

The formatter specifies the format of the log entries. Only one formatter is available, which outputs log entries in JSON format. Each log entry begins with an optional timestamp, then the fields listed in the *JSON Formatter Fields* table.

The *JSON Formatter Attributes* table lists all the attributes which can be used to change the formatting of the log entries.

**Table 3.5. JSON Formatter Attributes**

Attribute	Description
include-date	Boolean value which defines whether or not the timestamp is included in the formatted log records.
date-separator	A string containing characters to separate the date and the rest of the formatted log message. This is ignored if <b>include-date=false</b> .
date-format	The date format to use for the timestamp as understood by java.text.SimpleDateFormat. Ignored if <b>include-date=false</b> .
compact	If <b>true</b> it will format the JSON on one line. There may still be values containing new lines, so if having the whole record on one line is important, set <b>escape-new-line</b> or <b>escape-control-characters</b> to <b>true</b> .
escape-control-characters	If <b>true</b> it will escape all control characters (ASCII entries with a decimal value < 32) with the ASCII code in octal; for example, a new line becomes '#012'. If this is <b>true</b> , it will override <b>escape-new-line=false</b> .
escape-new-line	If <b>true</b> it will escape all new lines with the ASCII code in octal; for example #012.

**Table 3.6. JSON Formatter Fields**

Field Name	Description
type	This can have the values <b>core</b> , meaning it is a management operation, or <b>jmx</b> meaning it comes from the JMX subsystem (see the JMX subsystem for configuration of the JMX subsystem's audit logging).
r/o	Has the value <b>true</b> if the operation does not change the management model, <b>false</b> otherwise.
booting	Has the value <b>true</b> if the operation was executed during the bootup process, <b>false</b> if it was executed once the server is up and running.
version	The version number of the JBoss EAP instance.
user	The username of the authenticated user. If the operation occurs via the Management CLI on the same machine as the running server, the special user <b>\$local</b> is used.
domainUUID	An ID to link together all operations as they are propagated from the domain controller to its servers, slave host controllers, and slave host controller servers.

Field Name	Description
access	This can have one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➢ NATIVE - The operation came in through the native management interface, for example the Management CLI.</li> <li>➢ HTTP - The operation came in through the domain HTTP interface, for example the Management Console.</li> <li>➢ JMX - The operation came in through the JMX subsystem. See JMX for how to configure audit logging for JMX.</li> </ul>
remote-address	The address of the client executing this operation.
success	Has the value <b>true</b> if the operation succeeded, <b>false</b> if it was rolled back
ops	The operations being executed. This is a list of the operations serialized to JSON. At boot this is the operations resulting from parsing the XML. Once booted the list typically contains a single entry.

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.8.4. About a Management Interface Audit Logging File Handler

A file handler specifies the parameters by which audit log records are output to a file. Specifically it defines the formatter, file name and path for the file.

The *File Handler Audit Log Attributes* table lists all the attributes which can be used to change the output of the log entries.

**Table 3.7. File Handler Audit Log Attributes**

Attribute	Description	Read Only
formatter	The name of a JSON formatter to use to format the log records.	False
path	The path of the audit log file.	False
relative-to	The name of another previously named path, or of one of the standard paths provided by the system. If <b>relative-to</b> is provided, the value of the path attribute is treated as relative to the path specified by this attribute.	False
failure-count	The number of logging failures since the handler was initialized.	True
max-failure-count	The maximum number of logging failures before disabling this handler.	False
disabled-due-to-failure	Takes the value <b>true</b> if this handler was disabled due to logging failures.	True

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.8.5. About a Management Interface Audit Logging Syslog Handler

A syslog handler specifies the parameters by which audit log entries are sent to a syslog server, specifically the syslog server's hostname and the port on which the syslog server is listening.

Sending audit logging to a syslog server provides more security options than logging to a local file or local syslog server. Multiple syslog handlers can be defined.

Syslog servers vary in their implementation, so not all settings are applicable to all syslog servers. Testing has been conducted using the *rsyslog* syslog implementation.

**Table 3.8. Syslog Handler Attributes**

Attribute	Description	Default Value
<b>app-name</b>	The application name to add to the syslog records as defined in section 6.2.5 of RFC-5424. If not specified it will default to the name of the product.	undefined
<b>disabled-due-to-failure</b>	Takes the value <b>true</b> if this handler was disabled due to logging failures.	false
<b>facility</b>	The facility to use for syslog logging as defined in section 6.2.1 of RFC-5424, and section 4.1.1 of RFC-3164.	USER_LEVEL
<b>failure-count</b>	The number of logging failures since the handler was initialized.	0 (zero)
<b>formatter</b>	The name of the formatter to use to format the log records.	null
<b>host</b>	The hostname of the syslog server.	localhost
<b>max-failure-count</b>	The maximum number of logging failures before disabling this handler.	10
<b>max-length</b>	The maximum length of a log message (in bytes), including the header. If undefined, it will default to <b>1024</b> bytes if the <b>syslog-format</b> is <b>RFC3164</b> , or <b>2048</b> bytes if the <b>syslog-format</b> is <b>RFC5424</b> .	undefined
<b>port</b>	The port on which the syslog server is listening.	514
<b>protocol</b>	The protocol to use for the syslog handler. Must be one and only one of <b>udp</b> , <b>tcp</b> or <b>tls</b> .	null
<b>syslog-format</b>	Syslog format: <i>RFC-5424</i> or <i>RFC-3164</i> .	RFC5424

Attribute	Description	Default Value
<b>truncate</b>	Whether or not a message, including the header, is to be truncated if the length in bytes is greater than the maximum length. If set to <b>false</b> messages will be split and sent with the same header values.	false

[Report a bug](#)

### 3.8.6. Enable Management Interface Audit Logging to a Syslog Server

#### Note

Add the prefix **/host=HOST\_NAME** to the **/core-service** commands if the change is to be applied to a managed domain.

In this example the syslog server is running on the local host on port 514. Replace these parameters with values appropriate to your environment.

#### Procedure 3.24. Enable Logging to a Syslog Server

##### 1. Create a syslog handler named **msyslog**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]batch
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]/core-
service=management/access=audit/syslog-
handler=msyslog:add(formatter=json-formatter)
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]/core-
service=management/access=audit/syslog-
handler=msyslog/protocol=udp:add(host=localhost,port=514)
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]run-batch
```

##### 2. Add a reference to the syslog handler.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]/core-
service=management/access=audit/logger=audit-
log/handler=msyslog:add
```

#### Result

Management interface audit log entries are logged on the syslog server.

[Report a bug](#)

## Chapter 4. User Management

### 4.1. User Creation

#### 4.1.1. Add the User for the Management Interfaces

##### Overview

JBoss EAP 6's management instances are secured by default as there are no user accounts available initially, (unless you have installed the platform using the graphical installer.) This is a precautionary measure designed to prevent security breaches that can arise from simple configuration errors.

HTTP communication with JBoss EAP 6 is considered to be remote access, even if the traffic originates on the localhost. Therefore, you must create at least one user in order to be able to use the management console. If you attempt to access the management console before adding a user, you will receive an error because it does not deploy until a user is created.

Follow these steps to create the initial administrative user, which can use the web-based Management Console and remote instances of the Management CLI to configure and administer JBoss EAP 6 from remote systems.

#### Procedure 4.1. Create the Initial Administrative User for the Remote Management Interfaces

##### 1. Run the `add-user.sh` or `add-user.bat` script.

Change to the `EAP_HOME/bin/` directory. Invoke the appropriate script for your operating system.

###### Red Hat Enterprise Linux

```
[user@host bin]$ ./add-user.sh
```

###### Microsoft Windows Server

```
C:\bin> add-user.bat
```

##### 2. Choose to add a Management user.

Press **ENTER** to select the default option **a** to add a Management user.

This user is added to the **ManagementRealm** and is authorized to perform management operations using the web-based Management Console or command-line based Management CLI. The other choice, **b**, adds a user to the **ApplicationRealm**, and provides no particular permissions. That realm is provided for use with applications.

##### 3. Enter the desired username and password.

When prompted, enter the username and password. You will be prompted to confirm the password.

##### 4. Enter group information.

Add the group or groups to which the user belongs. If the user belongs to multiple groups, enter a comma-separated list. Leave it blank if you do not want the user to belong to any groups.

#### 5. Review the information and confirm.

You are prompted to confirm the information. If you are satisfied, type **yes**.

#### 6. Choose whether the user represents a remote JBoss EAP 6 server instance.

Besides administrators, the other type of user which occasionally needs to be added to JBoss EAP 6 in the **ManagementRealm** is a user representing another instance of JBoss EAP 6, which must be able to authenticate to join a cluster as a member. The next prompt allows you to designate your added user for this purpose. If you select **yes**, you will be given a hashed **secret** value, representing the user's password, which would need to be added to a different configuration file. For the purposes of this task, answer **no** to this question.

#### 7. Enter additional users.

You can enter additional users if desired, by repeating the procedure. You can also add them at any time on a running system. Instead of choosing the default security realm, you can add users to other realms to fine-tune their authorizations.

#### 8. Create users non-interactively.

You can create users non-interactively, by passing in each parameter at the command line. This approach is not recommended on shared systems, because the passwords will be visible in log and history files. The syntax for the command, using the management realm, is:

```
[user@host bin]$ ./add-user.sh username password
```

To use the application realm, use the **-a** parameter.

```
[user@host bin]$ ./add-user.sh -a username password
```

#### 9. You can suppress the normal output of the add-user script by passing the **--silent** parameter. This applies only if the minimum parameters **username** and **password** have been specified. Error messages will still be shown.

### Result

Any users you add are activated within the security realms you have specified. Users active within the **ManagementRealm** realm are able to manage JBoss EAP 6 from remote systems.

### See Also:

» [Section 11.8.1, “Default User Security Configuration”](#)

[Report a bug](#)

### 4.1.2. Pass Arguments to the User Management add-user Script

You can run the **add-user.sh** or **add-user.bat** command interactively or you can pass the arguments on the command line. This section describes the options available when passing command line arguments to the add-user script.

For a comprehensive list of the command line arguments available for the **add-user.sh** or **add-user.bat** command, see [Section 4.1.3, “Add-user Command Arguments”](#).

For information on how to specify an alternate properties file and location, see [Section 4.1.4, “Specify Alternate Properties Files for User Management Information”](#).

For examples that demonstrate how to pass arguments on the **add-user.sh** or **add-user.bat** command, see [Section 4.1.5, “Add-user Script Command Line Examples”](#).

[Report a bug](#)

### 4.1.3. Add-user Command Arguments

The following table describes the arguments available for the **add-user.sh** or **add-user.bat** command.

**Table 4.1. Add-user Command Arguments**

Command Line Argument	Argument Value	Description
-a	N/A	This argument specifies to create a user in the application realm. If omitted, the default is to create a user in the management realm.
-dc	<i>DOMAIN_CONFIGURATION_DIRECTORY</i>	This argument specifies the domain configuration directory that will contain the properties files. If it is omitted, the default directory is <b>EAP_HOME/domain/configuration/</b> .
-sc	<i>SERVER_CONFIGURATION_DIRECTORY</i>	This argument specifies an alternate standalone server configuration directory that will contain the properties files. If it is omitted, the default directory is <b>EAP_HOME/standalone/configuration/</b> .
-up	<i>USER_PROPERTIES_FILE</i>	This argument specifies the name of the alternate user properties file. It can be an absolute path or it can be a file name used in conjunction with the -sc or -dc argument that specifies the alternate configuration directory.
--user-properties		
-g	<i>GROUP_LIST</i>	A comma-separated list of groups to assign to this user.
--group		
-gp	<i>GROUP_PROPERTIES_FILE</i>	This argument specifies the name of the alternate group properties file. It can be an absolute path or it can be a file name used in conjunction with the -sc or -dc argument that specifies the alternate configuration directory.
--group-properties		

Command Line Argument	Argument Value	Description
-p --password	PASSWORD	<p>The password of the user. The password must satisfy the following requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➢ It must contain at least 8 characters.</li> <li>➢ It must contain at least one alphabetic character.</li> <li>➢ It must contain at least one digit.</li> <li>➢ It must contain at least one non-alphanumeric symbol</li> </ul>
-u --user	USER_NAME	<p>The name of the user. Only alphanumeric characters and the following symbols are valid: ,./=@\.</p>
-r --realm	REALM_NAME	<p>The name of the realm used to secure the management interfaces. If omitted, the default is <b>ManagementRealm</b>.</p>
-s --silent	N/A	<p>Run the add-user script with no output to the console.</p>
-h --help	N/A	<p>Display usage information for the add-user script.</p>

[Report a bug](#)

#### 4.1.4. Specify Alternate Properties Files for User Management Information

##### Overview

By default, user and role information created using the **add-user.sh** or **add-user.bat** script are stored in properties files located in the server configuration directory. The server configuration information is stored in the **EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/** directory and the domain configuration information is stored in the **EAP\_HOME/domain/configuration/** directory. This topic describes how to override the default file names and locations.

##### Procedure 4.2. Specify Alternate Properties Files

- A. To specify an alternate directory for the server configuration, use the **-sc** argument. This argument specifies an alternate directory that will contain the server configuration properties files.
- B. To specify an alternate directory for the domain configuration, use the **-dc** argument. This argument specifies an alternate directory that will contain the domain configuration properties files.
- C. To specify an alternate user configuration properties file, use the **-up** or **--user-properties** argument. It can be an absolute path or it can be a file name used in conjunction with the **-sc** or **-dc** argument that specifies the alternate configuration directory.

- D. To specify an alternate group configuration properties file, use the **-gp** or **--group-properties** argument. It can be an absolute path or it can be a file name used in conjunction with the **-sc** or **-dc** argument that specifies the alternate configuration directory.

### Note

The **add-user** command is intended to operate on existing properties files. Any alternate properties files specified in command line arguments must exist or you will see the following error:

```
JBAS015234: No appusers.properties files found
```

For more information about command arguments, see [Section 4.1.3, “Add-user Command Arguments”](#).

For examples of the add-user commands, see [Section 4.1.5, “Add-user Script Command Line Examples”](#).

[Report a bug](#)

#### 4.1.5. Add-user Script Command Line Examples

The following examples demonstrate how to pass arguments on the **add-user.sh** or **add-user.bat** command. Unless noted, these commands assume the configuration of a standalone server.

##### Example 4.1. Create a user belonging to a single group using the default properties files.

```
EAP_HOME/bin/add-user.sh -a -u 'appuser1' -p 'password1!' -g 'guest'
```

The above command produces the following results.

- » The user **appuser1** is added to the following default properties files that store user information.

**EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/application-users.properties**

**EAP\_HOME/domain/configuration/application-users.properties**

- » The user **appuser1** with group **guest** is added to the default properties files that store group information.

**EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/application-roles.properties**

**EAP\_HOME/domain/configuration/application-roles.properties**

##### Example 4.2. Create a user belonging to multiple groups using the default properties files.

```
EAP_HOME/bin/add-user.sh -a -u 'appuser1' -p 'password1!' -g 'guest,app1group,app2group'
```

The above command produces the following results.

- The user **appuser1** is added to the following default properties files that store user information.

**EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/application-users.properties**

**EAP\_HOME/domain/configuration/application-users.properties**

- The user **appuser1** with groups **guest**, **app1group**, and **app2group** is added to the default properties files that store group information.

**EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/application-roles.properties**

**EAP\_HOME/domain/configuration/application-roles.properties**

**Example 4.3. Create a user with admin privileges in the default realm using the default properties files.**

**EAP\_HOME/bin/add-user.sh -u 'adminuser1' -p 'password1!' -g 'admin'**

The above command produces the following results.

- The user **adminuser1** is added to the following default properties files that store user information.

**EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/mgmt-users.properties**

**EAP\_HOME/domain/configuration/mgmt-users.properties**

- The user **adminuser1** with group **admin** is added to the default properties files that store group information.

**EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/mgmt-groups.properties**

**EAP\_HOME/domain/configuration/mgmt-groups.properties**

**Example 4.4. Create a user belonging to single group using alternate properties files to store the information.**

**EAP\_HOME/bin/add-user.sh -a -u appuser1 -p password1! -g app1group -sc /home/someusername/userconfigs/ -up appusers.properties -gp appgroups.properties**

The above command produces the following results.

- The user **appuser1** is added to the following properties file and that file is now the default file to store user information.

**/home/someusername/userconfigs/appusers.properties**

- The user **appuser1** with group **app1group** is added to the following properties file and that file is now the default file to store group information.

**/home/someusername/userconfigs/appgroups.properties**

[Report a bug](#)

# Chapter 5. Network and Port Configuration

## 5.1. Interfaces

### 5.1.1. About Interfaces

The application server uses named interface references throughout the configuration. This gives the configuration the ability to reference the individual interface declarations with logical names, rather than the full details of the interface at each use. The use of logical names also allows for consistency in group references to named interfaces, where server instances on a managed domain may contain varying interface details across multiple machines. With this methodology, each server instance may correspond to a logical name group that allows for easier administration of the interface group as a whole.

A network interface is declared by specifying a logical name and a selection criteria for the physical interface. The application server ships with a default configuration for a management and a public interface name. In this configuration, the public interface group is intended for use by any application-related network communication such as Web or Messaging. The management interface group is intended for use for all components and services that are required by the management layer, including the HTTP Management Endpoint. The interface names themselves are provided as a suggestion only, where any name for any group can be substituted or created as required.

The **domain.xml**, **host.xml** and **standalone.xml** configuration files all include interface declarations. The declaration criteria can reference a wildcard address or specify a set of one or more characteristics that an interface or address must have in order to be a valid match. The following examples show multiple possible configurations of interface declarations, typically defined in either the **standalone.xml** or **host.xml** configuration files. This allows any remote host groups to maintain their own specific interface attributes, while still allowing reference to the any interface groups in the **domain.xml** configuration file of the domain controller.

The first example shows a specific **inet-address** value specified for both the **management** and **public** relative name groups.

#### Example 5.1. An interface group created with an **inet-address** value

```
<interfaces>
  <interface name="management">
    <inet-address value="127.0.0.1"/>
  </interface>
  <interface name="public">
    <inet-address value="127.0.0.1"/>
  </interface>
</interfaces>
```

In the following example a global interface group uses the **any-address** element to declare a wildcard address.

#### Example 5.2. A global group created with a wildcard declaration

```
<interface name="global">
    <!-- Use the wild-card address -->
    <any-address/>
</interface>
```

The following example declares a network interface card under a relative group with the name **external**.

#### **Example 5.3. An external group created with an NIC value**

```
<interface name="external">
    <nic name="eth0"/>
</interface>
```

In the following example a declaration is created as the default group for a specific requirement. In this instance, the characteristics of the additional elements set the condition for the interface to be a valid match. This allows for the creation of very specific interface declaration groups, with the ability to reference them in a preset manner, reducing the configuration and administration time across multiple server instances.

#### **Example 5.4. A default group created with specific conditional values**

```
<interface name="default">
    <!-- Match any interface/address on the right subnet if it's
        up, supports multicast, and isn't point-to-point -->
    <subnet-match value="192.168.0.0/16"/>
    <up/>
    <multicast/>
    <not>
        <point-to-point/>
    </not>
</interface>
```

While the interface declarations can be made and edited in the source configuration files, the Management CLI and Management Console provide a safe, controlled and persistent environment for configuration changes.

[Report a bug](#)

### **5.1.2. Configure Interfaces**

The default interface configurations in the **standalone.xml** and **host.xml** configuration files offer three named interfaces with relative interface tokens for each. Use the management console or management CLI to configure additional attributes and values, as listed in the table below. The relative interface bindings can be replaced with specific values as required but note that if you do so, you will be unable to pass an interface value at server runtime, as the **-b** switch can only override a relative value.

### Example 5.5. Default Interface Configurations

```
<interfaces>
  <interface name="management">
    <inet-address value="${jboss.bind.address.management:127.0.0.1}" />
  </interface>
  <interface name="public">
    <inet-address value="${jboss.bind.address:127.0.0.1}" />
  </interface>
  <interface name="unsecure">
    <inet-address value="${jboss.bind.address.unsecure:127.0.0.1}" />
  </interface>
</interfaces>
```

**Table 5.1. Interface Attributes and Values**

Interface Element	Description
<b>any</b>	Empty element of the address exclusion type, used to constrain the selection criteria.
<b>any-address</b>	Empty element indicating that sockets using this interface should be bound to a wildcard address. The IPv6 wildcard address (:) will be used unless the java.net.preferIPv4Stack system property is set to true, in which case the IPv4 wildcard address (0.0.0.0) will be used. If a socket is bound to an IPv6 anylocal address on a dual-stack machine, it can accept both IPv6 and IPv4 traffic; if it is bound to an IPv4 (IPv4-mapped) anylocal address, it can only accept IPv4 traffic.
<b>any-ipv4-address</b>	Empty element indicating that sockets using this interface should be bound to the IPv4 wildcard address (0.0.0.0).
<b>any-ipv6-address</b>	Empty element indicating that sockets using this interface should be bound to the IPv6 wildcard address (:).
<b>inet-address</b>	Either a IP address in IPv6 or IPv4 dotted decimal notation, or a hostname that can be resolved to an IP address.
<b>link-local-address</b>	Empty element indicating that part of the selection criteria for an interface should be whether or not an address associated with it is link-local.
<b>loopback</b>	Empty element indicating that part of the selection criteria for an interface should be whether or not it is a loopback interface.
<b>loopback-address</b>	A loopback address that may not actually be configured on the machine's loopback interface. Differs from inet-addressType in that the given value will be used even if no NIC can be found that has the IP address associated with it.
<b>multicast</b>	Empty element indicating that part of the selection criteria for an interface should be whether or not it supports multicast.
<b>nic</b>	The name of a network interface (e.g. eth0, eth1, lo).
<b>nic-match</b>	A regular expression against which the names of the network interfaces available on the machine can be matched to find an acceptable interface.
<b>not</b>	Empty element of the address exclusion type, used to constrain the selection criteria.

Interface Element	Description
<b>point-to-point</b>	Empty element indicating that part of the selection criteria for an interface should be whether or not it is a point-to-point interface.
<b>public-address</b>	Empty element indicating that part of the selection criteria for an interface should be whether or not it has a publicly routable address.
<b>site-local-address</b>	Empty element indicating that part of the selection criteria for an interface should be whether or not an address associated with it is site-local.
<b>subnet-match</b>	A network IP address and the number of bits in the address' network prefix, written in "slash notation"; e.g. "192.168.0.0/16".
<b>up</b>	Empty element indicating that part of the selection criteria for an interface should be whether or not it is currently up.
<b>virtual</b>	Empty element indicating that part of the selection criteria for an interface should be whether or not it is a virtual interface.

## » Configure Interface Attributes

You can use tab completion to complete the command string as you type, as well as to expose the available attributes.

### A. Configure Interface Attributes with the Management CLI

Use the Management CLI to add new interfaces and write new values to the interface attributes.

#### a. Add a New Interface

The **add** operation creates new interfaces as required. The **add** command runs from the root of the Management CLI session, and in the following example it creates a new interface name title *interfacename*, with an **inet-address** declared as *12.0.0.2*.

```
/interface=interfacename/:add(inet-address=12.0.0.2)
```

#### b. Edit Interface Attributes

The **write-attribute** operation writes new values to an attribute. The following example updates the **inet-address** value to *12.0.0.8*.

```
/interface=interfacename/:write-attribute(name=inet-address,
value=12.0.0.8)
```

#### c. Verify Interface Attributes

Confirm that the attribute values have changed by running the **read-resource** operation with the **include-runtime=true** parameter to expose all current values active in the server model. For example:

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 interface=public] :read-
resource(include-runtime=true)
```

### B. Configure Interface Attributes with the Management Console

#### a. Log into the Management Console.

Log into the Management Console of your Managed Domain or Standalone Server instance.

b. **Navigate to the Interfaces screen**

i. **Navigate to Configuration tab.**

Select the **Configuration** tab from the top of the screen.

ii. **For Domain Mode only**

Select a profile from the **Profile** drop-down menu at the top left of the screen.

c. **Select Interfaces from the Navigation Menu.**

Expand the **General Configuration** menu. Select the **Interfaces** menu item from the navigation menu.

d. **Add a New Interface**

i. Click **Add**.

ii. Enter any required values for **Name**, **Inet Address** and **Address Wildcard**.

iii. Click **Save**.

e. **Edit Interface Attributes**

i. Select the interface that you need to edit from the **Available Interfaces** list and click **Edit**.

ii. Enter any required values for **Name**, **Inet Address** and **Address Wildcard**.

iii. Click **Save**.

[Report a bug](#)

## 5.2. Socket Binding Groups

### 5.2.1. About Socket Binding Groups

Socket bindings and socket binding groups allow you to define network ports and their relationship to the networking interfaces required for your JBoss EAP 6 configuration.

A socket binding is a named configuration for a socket. The declarations for these named configurations can be found in both the **domain.xml** and **standalone.xml** configuration files. Other sections of the configuration can then reference those sockets by their logical name, rather than having to include the full details of the socket configuration. This allows you to reference relative socket configurations which may otherwise vary on different machines.

Socket bindings are collected under a socket binding group. A socket binding group is a collection of socket binding declarations that are grouped under a logical name. The named group can then be referenced throughout the configuration. A standalone server contains only one such group, while a managed domain instance can contain multiple groups. You can create a socket binding group for

each server group in the managed domain, or share a socket binding group between multiple server groups.

The naming groups allow for simplified references to be used for particular groups of socket bindings when configuring server groups in the case of a managed domain. Another common use is for the configuration and management of multiple instances of the standalone server on the one system. The following examples show the default socket binding groups in the configuration files for the standalone and domain instances.

### **Example 5.6. Default socket bindings for the standalone configuration**

The default socket binding groups in the **standalone.xml** configuration file are grouped under **standard-sockets**. This group is also referenced to the **public** interface, using the same logical referencing methodology.

```
<socket-binding-group name="standard-sockets" default-
interface="public">
    <socket-binding name="http" port="8080"/>
    <socket-binding name="https" port="8443"/>
    <socket-binding name="jacorb" port="3528"/>
    <socket-binding name="jacorb-ssl" port="3529"/>
    <socket-binding name="jmx-connector-registry" port="1090"
interface="management"/>
    <socket-binding name="jmx-connector-server" port="1091"
interface="management"/>
    <socket-binding name="jndi" port="1099"/>
    <socket-binding name="messaging" port="5445"/>
    <socket-binding name="messaging-throughput" port="5455"/>
    <socket-binding name="osgi-http" port="8090"
interface="management"/>
    <socket-binding name="remoting" port="4447"/>
    <socket-binding name="txn-recovery-environment" port="4712"/>
    <socket-binding name="txn-status-manager" port="4713"/>
</socket-binding-group>
```

### **Example 5.7. Default socket bindings for the domain configuration**

The default socket binding groups in the **domain.xml** configuration file contain four groups: the **standard-sockets**, **ha-sockets**, **full-sockets** and the **full-ha-sockets** groups. These groups are also referenced to an interface called **public**.

```
<socket-binding-groups>
    <socket-binding-group name="standard-sockets" default-
interface="public">
        <!-- Needed for server groups using the 'default' profile -->
        <socket-binding name="ajp" port="8009"/>
        <socket-binding name="http" port="8080"/>
        <socket-binding name="https" port="8443"/>
        <socket-binding name="osgi-http" interface="management"
port="8090"/>
        <socket-binding name="remoting" port="4447"/>
        <socket-binding name="txn-recovery-environment" port="4712"/>
        <socket-binding name="txn-status-manager" port="4713"/>
```

```

<outbound-socket-binding name="mail-smtp">
    <remote-destination host="localhost" port="25"/>
</outbound-socket-binding>
</socket-binding-group>
<socket-binding-group name="ha-sockets" default-interface="public">
    <!-- Needed for server groups using the 'ha' profile -->
    <socket-binding name="ajp" port="8009"/>
    <socket-binding name="http" port="8080"/>
    <socket-binding name="https" port="8443"/>
    <socket-binding name="jgroups-mping" port="0" multicast-
address="${jboss.default.multicast.address:230.0.0.4}" multicast-
port="45700"/>
    <socket-binding name="jgroups-tcp" port="7600"/>
    <socket-binding name="jgroups-tcp-fd" port="57600"/>
    <socket-binding name="jgroups-udp" port="55200" multicast-
address="${jboss.default.multicast.address:230.0.0.4}" multicast-
port="45688"/>
    <socket-binding name="jgroups-udp-fd" port="54200"/>
    <socket-binding name="modcluster" port="0" multicast-
address="224.0.1.105" multicast-port="23364"/>
    <socket-binding name="osgi-http" interface="management"-
port="8090"/>
    <socket-binding name="remoting" port="4447"/>
    <socket-binding name="txn-recovery-environment" port="4712"/>
    <socket-binding name="txn-status-manager" port="4713"/>
    <outbound-socket-binding name="mail-smtp">
        <remote-destination host="localhost" port="25"/>
    </outbound-socket-binding>
</socket-binding-group>
<socket-binding-group name="full-sockets" default-
interface="public">
    <!-- Needed for server groups using the 'full' profile -->
    <socket-binding name="ajp" port="8009"/>
    <socket-binding name="http" port="8080"/>
    <socket-binding name="https" port="8443"/>
    <socket-binding name="jacorb" interface="unsecure"-
port="3528"/>
    <socket-binding name="jacorb-ssl" interface="unsecure"-
port="3529"/>
    <socket-binding name="messaging" port="5445"/>
    <socket-binding name="messaging-group" port="0" multicast-
address="${jboss.messaging.group.address:231.7.7.7}" multicast-
port="${jboss.messaging.group.port:9876}"/>
    <socket-binding name="messaging-throughput" port="5455"/>
    <socket-binding name="osgi-http" interface="management"-
port="8090"/>
    <socket-binding name="remoting" port="4447"/>
    <socket-binding name="txn-recovery-environment" port="4712"/>
    <socket-binding name="txn-status-manager" port="4713"/>
    <outbound-socket-binding name="mail-smtp">
        <remote-destination host="localhost" port="25"/>
    </outbound-socket-binding>
</socket-binding-group>
<socket-binding-group name="full-ha-sockets" default-
interface="public">
    <!-- Needed for server groups using the 'full-ha' profile -->

```

```

<socket-binding name="ajp" port="8009"/>
<socket-binding name="http" port="8080"/>
<socket-binding name="https" port="8443"/>
<socket-binding name="jacorb" interface="unsecure"
port="3528"/>
    <socket-binding name="jacorb-ssl" interface="unsecure"
port="3529"/>
        <socket-binding name="jgroups-mping" port="0" multicast-
address="${jboss.default.multicast.address:230.0.0.4}" multicast-
port="45700"/>
            <socket-binding name="jgroups-tcp" port="7600"/>
            <socket-binding name="jgroups-tcp-fd" port="57600"/>
            <socket-binding name="jgroups-udp" port="55200" multicast-
address="${jboss.default.multicast.address:230.0.0.4}" multicast-
port="45688"/>
                <socket-binding name="jgroups-udp-fd" port="54200"/>
                <socket-binding name="messaging" port="5445"/>
                <socket-binding name="messaging-group" port="0" multicast-
address="${jboss.messaging.group.address:231.7.7.7}" multicast-
port="${jboss.messaging.group.port:9876}"/>
                    <socket-binding name="messaging-throughput" port="5455"/>
                    <socket-binding name="modcluster" port="0" multicast-
address="224.0.1.105" multicast-port="23364"/>
                        <socket-binding name="osgi-http" interface="management"
port="8090"/>
                            <socket-binding name="remoting" port="4447"/>
                            <socket-binding name="txn-recovery-environment" port="4712"/>
                            <socket-binding name="txn-status-manager" port="4713"/>
                            <outbound-socket-binding name="mail-smtp">
                                <remote-destination host="localhost" port="25"/>
                            </outbound-socket-binding>
                        </socket-binding-group>
                    </socket-binding-groups>
    
```

The socket binding instances can be created and edited in the `standalone.xml` and `domain.xml` source files in the application server directory. The recommended method of managing bindings is to use either the Management Console or the Management CLI. The advantages of using the Management Console include a graphical user interface with a dedicated Socket Binding Group screen under the **General Configuration** section. The Management CLI offers an API and workflow based around a command line approach that allows for batch processing and the use of scripts across the higher and lower levels of the application server configuration. Both interfaces allow for changes to be persisted or otherwise saved to the server configuration.

[Report a bug](#)

## 5.2.2. Configure Socket Bindings

Socket bindings can be defined in unique socket binding groups. A standalone server contains one such group, the **standard-sockets** group, and is unable to create any further groups. Instead you can create alternate standalone server configuration files. For a managed domain however, you can create multiple socket binding groups and configure the socket bindings that they contain as you require. The following table shows the available attributes for each socket binding.

**Table 5.2. Socket Binding Attributes**

Attribute	Description	Role
<b>name</b>	Logical name of the socket configuration that should be used elsewhere in the configuration.	Required
<b>port</b>	Base port to which a socket based on this configuration should be bound. Note that servers can be configured to override this base value by applying an increment or decrement to all port values.	Required
<b>interface</b>	Logical name of the interface to which a socket based on this configuration should be bound. If not defined, the value of the <b>default-interface</b> attribute from the enclosing socket binding group will be used.	Optional
<b>multicast-address</b>	If the socket will be used for multicast, the multicast address to use.	Optional
<b>multicast-port</b>	If the socket will be used for multicast, the multicast port to use.	Optional
<b>fixed-port</b>	If <b>true</b> , declares that the value of <b>port</b> must always be used for the socket and should not be overridden by applying an increment or decrement.	Optional

## » Configure Socket Bindings in Socket Binding Groups

Choose either the management CLI or the management console to configure your socket bindings as required.

### A. Configure Socket Bindings Using the Management CLI

Use the management CLI to configure socket bindings.

#### a. Add a New Socket Binding

Use the **add** operation to create a new address setting if required. You can run this command from the root of the management CLI session, which in the following examples creates a new socket binding titled *newsocket*, with a **port** attribute declared as *1234*. The examples apply for both a standalone server and a managed domain editing on the **standard-sockets** socket binding group as shown.

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] /socket-binding-group=standard-sockets/socket-binding=newsocket/:add(port=1234)
```

#### b. Edit Pattern Attributes

Use the **write-attribute** operation to write a new value to an attribute. You can use tab completion to help complete the command string as you type, as well as to expose the available attributes. The following example updates the **port** value to 2020

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] /socket-binding-group=standard-
sockets/socket-binding=newsocket/:write-
attribute(name=port,value=2020)
```

### c. Confirm Pattern Attributes

Confirm the values are changed by running the **read-resource** operation with the **include-runtime=true** parameter to expose all current values active in the server model.

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] /socket-binding-group=standard-
sockets/socket-binding=newsocket/:read-resource
```

## B. Configure Socket Bindings Using the Management Console

Use the management console to configure socket bindings.

### a. Log into the Management Console.

Log into the management console of your managed domain or standalone server.

### b. Navigate to the Configuration tab.

Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the screen.

### c. Select the Socket Binding item from the navigation menu.

Expand the **General Configuration** menu. Select **Socket Binding**. If you are using a managed domain, select the desired group in the **Socket Binding Groups** list.

### d. Add a New Socket Binding

- i. Click the **Add** button.
- ii. Enter any required values for **Name**, **Port** and **Binding Group**.
- iii. Click **Save** to finish.

### e. Edit Socket Binding

- i. Select a socket binding from the list and click **Edit**.
- ii. Enter any required values such as **Name**, **Interface** or **Port**.
- iii. Click **Save** to finish.

[Report a bug](#)

### 5.2.3. Network Ports Used By JBoss EAP 6

The ports used by the JBoss EAP 6 default configuration depend on several factors:

- » Whether your server groups use one of the default socket binding groups, or a custom group.
- » The requirements of your individual deployments.

## Numerical port offsets

A numerical port offset can be configured, to alleviate port conflicts when you run multiple servers on the same physical server. If your server uses a numerical port offset, add the offset to the default port number for its server group's socket binding group. For instance, if the HTTP port of the socket binding group is **8080**, and your server uses a port offset of **100**, its HTTP port is **8180**.

Unless otherwise stated, the ports use the TCP protocol.

### The default socket binding groups

- » **full-ha-sockets**
- » **full-sockets**
- » **ha-sockets**
- » **standard-sockets**

**Table 5.3. Reference of the default socket bindings**

Name	Port	Multicast Port	Description	full-ha-sockets	full-sockets	ha-socket	standard-socket
<b>ajp</b>	8009		Apache JServ Protocol. Used for HTTP clustering and load balancing.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>http</b>	8080		The default port for deployed web applications.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>https</b>	8443		SSL-encrypted connection between deployed web applications and clients.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>jacorb</b>	3528		CORBA services for JTS transactions and other ORB-dependent services.	Yes	Yes	No	No
<b>jacorb-ssl</b>	3529		SSL-encrypted CORBA services.	Yes	Yes	No	No
<b>jgroup-s-diagnistics</b>	7500		Multicast. Used for peer discovery in HA clusters. Not configurable using the Management Interfaces.	Yes	No	Yes	No

Name	Port	Multicast Port	Description	full-ha-sockets	full-sockets	ha-socket	standard-socket
jgroup-s-mping		45700	Multicast. Used to discover initial membership in a HA cluster.	Yes	No	Yes	No
jgroup-s-tcp	7600		Unicast peer discovery in HA clusters using TCP.	Yes	No	Yes	No
jgroup-s-tcp-fd	57600		Used for HA failure detection over TCP.	Yes	No	Yes	No
jgroup-s-udp	55200	45688	Multicast peer discovery in HA clusters using UDP.	Yes	No	Yes	No
jgroup-s-udp-fd	54200		Used for HA failure detection over UDP.	Yes	No	Yes	No
messaging	5445		JMS service.	Yes	Yes	No	No
messaging-group			Referenced by HornetQ JMS broadcast and discovery groups.	Yes	Yes	No	No
messaging-throughput	5455		Used by JMS Remoting.	Yes	Yes	No	No
mod_cluster		23364	Multicast port for communication between JBoss EAP 6 and the HTTP load balancer.	Yes	No	Yes	No
osgi-http	8090		Used by internal components which use the OSGi subsystem. Not configurable using the Management Interfaces.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
remote	4447		Used for remote EJB invocation.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
txn-recover	4712		The JTA transaction recovery manager.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
y-enviro-nment							
txn-status-manager	4713		The JTA / JTS transaction manager.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

## Management Ports

In addition to the socket binding groups, each host controller opens two more ports for management purposes:

- » **9990** - The Web Management Console port
- » **9999** - The port used by the Management Console and Management API

Additionally, if HTTPS is enabled for the Management Console, 9443 is also opened as the default port.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 5.2.4. About Port Offsets for Socket Binding Groups

Port offsets are a numeric offset added to the port values given by the socket binding group for that server. This allows a single server to inherit the socket bindings of the server group that it belongs, with an offset to ensure that it does not clash with the other servers in the group. For instance, if the HTTP port of the socket binding group is 8080, and your server uses a port offset of 100, its HTTP port is 8180.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 5.2.5. Configure Port Offsets

##### » **Configure Port Offsets**

Choose either the Management CLI or the Management Console to configure your port offsets.

##### A. Configure Port Offsets Using the Management CLI

Use the Management CLI to configure port offsets.

###### a. Edit Port Offsets

Use the **write-attribute** operation to write a new value to the port offset attribute. The following example updates the **socket-binding-port-offset** value of server-two to 250. This server is a member of the default local host group. A restart is required for the changes to take effect.

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] /host=master/server-config=server-two/:write-attribute(name=socket-binding-port-offset,value=250)
```

###### b. Confirm Port Offset Attributes

Confirm the values are changed by running the **read-resource** operation with the **include-runtime=true** parameter to expose all current values active in the server model.

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] /host=master/server-config=server-two/:read-resource(include-runtime=true)
```

##### B. Configure Port Offsets Using the Management Console

Use the Management Console to configure port offsets.

**a. Log into the Management Console.**

Log into the Management Console of your Managed Domain.

**b. Select the Domain tab**

Select the **Domain** tab at the top of the screen.

**c. Edit Port Offset Attributes**

- i. Select the server under the **Available Server Configurations** list and click **Edit** at the top of the attributes list below.
- ii. Enter any desired values in the **Port Offset** field.
- iii. Click **Save** to finish.

[Report a bug](#)

## 5.2.6. Configuration of Message Size in Remoting

The remoting subsystem provides the option to limit the size of the messages for remoting protocols. You can set the maximum inbound message size (**MAX\_INBOUND\_MESSAGE\_SIZE**) and the maximum outbound message size (**MAX\_OUTBOUND\_MESSAGE\_SIZE**) to ensure that messages are received and sent within appropriate size limits.

Configuring the size of messages in remoting protocols helps in effective utilization of system memory and prevents it from reaching an out of memory state while performing important operations.

If the sender sends a message which exceeds the maximum allowable limit (**MAX\_OUTBOUND\_MESSAGE\_SIZE**), the server throws an exception and cancels the transmission of data. However the connection remains open and the sender can choose to close the message if needed.

If a message received exceeds the maximum allowable limit (**MAX\_INBOUND\_MESSAGE\_SIZE**) the message is closed asynchronously with the connection still open.

[Report a bug](#)

## 5.3. IPv6

### 5.3.1. Configure JVM Stack Preferences for IPv6 Networking

#### Summary

This topic covers enabling IPv6 networking for the JBoss EAP 6 installation.

#### Procedure 5.1. Disable the IPv4 Stack Java Property

1. Open the relevant file for the installation:

**A. For a Standalone Server:**

Open **EAP\_HOME/bin/standalone.conf**.

**B. For a Managed Domain:**

Open **EAP\_HOME/bin/domain.conf**.

2. Change the IPv4 Stack Java property to false:

```
-Djava.net.preferIPv4Stack=false
```

For example:

```
# Specify options to pass to the Java VM.
#
if [ "x$JAVA_OPTS" = "x" ]; then
    JAVA_OPTS="-Xms64m -Xmx512m -XX:MaxPermSize=256m -
Djava.net.preferIPv4Stack=false
    -Dorg.jboss.resolver.warning=true -
Dsun.rmi.dgc.client.gcInterval=3600000
    -Dsun.rmi.dgc.server.gcInterval=3600000 -
Djava.net.preferIPv6Addresses=true"
fi
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 5.3.2. Configure the Interface Declarations for IPv6 Networking

#### Summary

Follow these steps to configure the interface inet address to the IPv6 default:

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 2.1.1, “Start JBoss EAP 6”](#)
- » [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#)

#### Procedure 5.2. Configure the Interface for IPv6 Networking

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the screen.
2. Expand the **General Configuration** menu and select **Interfaces**.
3. Select the interface from the **Available Interfaces** list.
4. Click **Edit** in the detail list.
5. Set the inet address to:

```
 ${jboss.bind.address.management:[ADDRESS]}
```

6. Click **Save** to finish.
7. Restart the server to implement the changes.

[Report a bug](#)

### 5.3.3. Configure JVM Stack Preferences for IPv6 Addresses

#### Summary

This topic covers configuring the JBoss EAP 6 installation to prefer IPv6 addresses through the configuration files.

### Procedure 5.3. Configure the JBoss EAP 6 Installation to Prefer IPv6 Addresses

1. Open the relevant file for the installation:

**A. For a Standalone Server:**

Open **EAP\_HOME/bin/standalone.conf**.

**B. For a Managed Domain:**

Open **EAP\_HOME/bin/domain.conf**.

2. Append the following Java property to the Java VM options:

**-Djava.net.preferIPv6Addresses=true**

For example:

```
# Specify options to pass to the Java VM.  
#  
if [ "x$JAVA_OPTS" = "x" ]; then  
    JAVA_OPTS="-Xms64m -Xmx512m -XX:MaxPermSize=256m -  
Djava.net.preferIPv4Stack=false  
    -Dorg.jboss.resolver.warning=true -  
Dsun.rmi.dgc.client.gcInterval=3600000  
    -Dsun.rmi.dgc.server.gcInterval=3600000 -  
Djava.net.preferIPv6Addresses=true"  
fi
```

[Report a bug](#)

# Chapter 6. Datasource Management

## 6.1. Introduction

### 6.1.1. About JDBC

The JDBC API is the standard that defines how databases are accessed by Java applications. An application configures a datasource that references a JDBC driver. Application code can then be written against the driver, rather than the database. The driver converts the code to the database language. This means that if the correct driver is installed, an application can be used with any supported database.

The JDBC 4.0 specification is defined here: <http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=221>.

To get started with JDBC and datasources, refer to the JDBC Driver section of the Administration and Configuration Guide for JBoss EAP 6.

[Report a bug](#)

### 6.1.2. JBoss EAP 6 Supported Databases

The list of JDBC compliant databases supported by JBoss EAP 6 is available here:

<https://access.redhat.com/site/articles/111663>

[Report a bug](#)

### 6.1.3. Types of Datasources

The two general types of resources are referred to as **datasources** and **XA datasources**.

Non-XA datasources are used for applications which do not use transactions, or applications which use transactions with a single database.

XA datasources are used by applications whose transactions are distributed across multiple databases. XA datasources introduce additional overhead.

You specify the type of your datasource when you create it in the Management Console or Management CLI.

[Report a bug](#)

### 6.1.4. The Example Datasource

JBoss EAP 6 includes a H2 database. It is a lightweight, relational database management system that provides developers with the ability to quickly build applications, and is the example datasource for the platform.



#### Warning

However, it should not be used in a production environment. It is a very small, self-contained datasource that supports all of the standards needed for testing and building applications, but is not robust or scalable enough for production use.

For a list of supported and certified datasources, refer here: [Section 6.1.2, “JBoss EAP 6 Supported Databases”](#).

[Report a bug](#)

### 6.1.5. Deployment of `-ds.xml` files

In JBoss EAP 6, datasources are defined as a resource of the server subsystem. In previous versions, a `*-ds.xml` datasource configuration file was required in the deployment directory of the server configuration. `*-ds.xml` files can still be deployed in JBoss EAP 6, following the 1.1 data sources schema available under *Schemas* here: <http://www.ironjacamar.org/documentation.html>.



#### Warning

This feature should only be used for development. It is not recommended for production environments, because it is not supported by the JBoss administrative and management tools.



#### Important

It is mandatory to use a reference to an already deployed / defined `<driver>` entry when deploying `*-ds.xml` files.

[Report a bug](#)

## 6.2. JDBC Drivers

### 6.2.1. Install a JDBC Driver with the Management Console

#### Summary

Before your application can connect to a JDBC datasource, your datasource vendor's JDBC drivers need to be installed in a location where JBoss EAP 6 can use them. JBoss EAP 6 allows you to deploy these drivers like any other deployment. This means that you can deploy them across multiple servers in a server group, if you use a managed domain.

#### Prerequisites

Before performing this task, you need to meet the following prerequisites:

- » Download the JDBC driver from your database vendor.



#### Note

Any JDBC 4-compliant driver is automatically recognized and installed in the system by name and version. A JDBC JAR is identified using the Java service provider mechanism. Such JARs contain the META-INF/services/java.sql.Driver text, which contains the name of the Driver classes in that JAR.

## Procedure 6.1. Modify the JDBC Driver JAR

If the JDBC driver JAR is not JDBC 4-compliant, it can be made deployable using the following method.

1. Change to, or create, an empty temporary directory.
2. Create a META-INF subdirectory.
3. Create a META-INF/services subdirectory.
4. Create a META-INF/services/java.sql.Driver file, which contains one line indicating the fully-qualified class name of the JDBC driver.
5. Use the JAR command-line tool to update the JAR like this:

```
jar \uf00d jdbc-driver.jar META-INF/services/java.sql.Driver
```

6. [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#)
7. If you use a managed domain, deploy the JAR file to a server group. Otherwise, deploy it to your server. See [Section 10.2.2, “Enable a Deployed Application Using the Management Console”](#).

### Result:

The JDBC driver is deployed, and is available for your applications to use.

[Report a bug](#)

## 6.2.2. Install a JDBC Driver as a Core Module

### Prerequisites

Before performing this task, you need to meet the following prerequisites:

- » Download the JDBC driver from your database vendor. JDBC driver download locations are listed here: [Section 6.2.3, “JDBC Driver Download Locations”](#).
- » Extract the archive.

### Procedure 6.2. Install a JDBC Driver as a Core Module

1. Create a file path structure under the **EAP\_HOME/modules/** directory. For example, for a MySQL JDBC driver, create a directory structure as follows:  
**EAP\_HOME/modules/com/mysql/main/**.
2. Copy the JDBC driver JAR into the **main/** subdirectory.
3. In the **main/** subdirectory, create a **module.xml** file similar to the example in [Section 7.1.1, “Modules”](#). The **module** XSD is defined in the **EAP\_HOME/docs/schema/module-1\_2.xsd** file.
4. Start the Server.
5. Start the Management CLI.
6. Run the CLI command to add the JDBC driver module to the server configuration.

The command you choose depends on the number of classes listed in the `/META-INF/services/java.sql.Driver` file located in the JDBC driver JAR. For example, the `/META-INF/services/java.sql.Driver` file in the MySQL 5.1.20 JDBC JAR lists two classes:

- » `com.mysql.jdbc.Driver`
- » `com.mysql.fabric.jdbc.FabricMySQLDriver`

When there is more than one entry, you must also specify the name of the driver class. Failure to do so results in an error similar to the following:

```
JBAS014749: Operation handler failed: Service jboss.jdbc-
driver.mysql is already registered
```

- A. Run the CLI command for JDBC JARs containing one class entry.

```
/subsystem=datasources/jdbc-driver=DRIVER_NAME:add(driver-
name=DRIVER_NAME,driver-module-name=MODULE_NAME,driver-xa-
datasource-class-name=XA_DATASOURCE_CLASS_NAME)
```

#### **Example 6.1. Example CLI Command for Standalone Mode for JDBC JARs with one driver class**

```
/subsystem=datasources/jdbc-driver=mysql:add(driver-
name=mysql,driver-module-name=com.mysql,driver-xa-datasource-
class-name=com.mysql.jdbc.jdbc2.optional.MysqlXADatasource)
```

#### **Example 6.2. Example CLI Command for Domain Mode for JDBC JARs with one driver class**

```
/profile=ha/subsystem=datasources/jdbc-driver=mysql:add(driver-
name=mysql,driver-module-name=com.mysql,driver-xa-datasource-
class-name=com.mysql.jdbc.jdbc2.optional.MysqlXADatasource)
```

- B. Run the CLI command for JDBC JARs containing multiple class entries.

```
/subsystem=datasources/jdbc-driver=DRIVER_NAME:add(driver-
name=DRIVER_NAME,driver-module-name=MODULE_NAME,driver-xa-
datasource-class-name=XA_DATASOURCE_CLASS_NAME, driver-class-
name=DRIVER_CLASS_NAME)
```

#### **Example 6.3. Example CLI Command for Standalone Mode for JDBC JARs with multiple driver class entries**

```
/subsystem=datasources/jdbc-driver=mysql:add(driver-
name=mysql,driver-module-name=com.mysql,driver-xa-datasource-
class-name=com.mysql.jdbc.jdbc2.optional.MysqlXADatasource,
driver-class-name=com.mysql.jdbc.Driver)
```

#### Example 6.4. Example CLI Command for Domain Mode for JDBC JARs with multiple driver class entries

```
/profile=ha/subsystem=datasources/jdbc-driver=mysql:add(driver-name=mysql,driver-module-name=com.mysql,driver-xa-datasource-class-name=com.mysql.jdbc.jdbc2.optional.MysqlXADataSource,driver-class-name=com.mysql.jdbc.Driver)
```

#### Result

The JDBC driver is now installed and set up as a core module, and is available to be referenced by application datasources.

[Report a bug](#)

### 6.2.3. JDBC Driver Download Locations

The following table gives the standard download locations for JDBC drivers of common databases used with JBoss EAP 6. These links point to third-party websites which are not controlled or actively monitored by Red Hat. For the most up-to-date drivers for your database, check your database vendor's documentation and website.

**Table 6.1. JDBC driver download locations**

Vendor	Download Location
MySQL	<a href="http://www.mysql.com/products/connector/">http://www.mysql.com/products/connector/</a>
PostgreSQL	<a href="http://jdbc.postgresql.org/">http://jdbc.postgresql.org/</a>
Oracle	<a href="http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/database/features/jdbc/index-091264.html">http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/database/features/jdbc/index-091264.html</a>
IBM	<a href="http://www-306.ibm.com/software/data/db2/java/">http://www-306.ibm.com/software/data/db2/java/</a>
Sybase	<a href="http://www.sybase.com/products/allproducts-a-z/softwaredeveloperkit/jconnect">http://www.sybase.com/products/allproducts-a-z/softwaredeveloperkit/jconnect</a>
Microsoft	<a href="http://msdn.microsoft.com/data/jdbc/">http://msdn.microsoft.com/data/jdbc/</a>

[Report a bug](#)

### 6.2.4. Access Vendor Specific Classes

#### Summary

This topic covers the steps required to use the JDBC specific classes. This is necessary when an application needs to use vendor specific functionality that is not part of the JDBC API.



#### Warning

This is advanced usage. Only applications that need functionality not found in the JDBC API should implement this procedure.



## Important

This process is required when using the reauthentication mechanism, and accessing vendor specific classes.



## Important

Follow the vendor specific API guidelines closely, as the connection is being controlled by the IronJacamar container.

### Prerequisites

- » [Section 6.2.2, “Install a JDBC Driver as a Core Module”.](#)

### Procedure 6.3. Add a Dependency to the Application

- » A. **Configure the MANIFEST.MF file**

- a. Open the application's **META-INF/MANIFEST.MF** file in a text editor.
- b. Add a dependency for the JDBC module and save the file.

**Dependencies:** *MODULE\_NAME*

#### Example 6.5. Example Dependency

**Dependencies:** com.mysql

- B. a. **Create a jboss-deployment-structure.xml file**

Create a file called **jboss-deployment-structure.xml** in the **META-INF/** or **WEB-INF** folder of the application.

#### Example 6.6. Example jboss-deployment-structure.xml file

```
<jboss-deployment-structure>
  <deployment>
    <dependencies>
      <module name="com.mysql" />
    </dependencies>
  </deployment>
</jboss-deployment-structure>
```

#### Example 6.7. Access the Vendor Specific API

The example below accesses the MySQL API.

```

import java.sql.Connection;
import org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.WrappedConnection;

Connection c = ds.getConnection();
WrappedConnection wc = (WrappedConnection)c;
com.mysql.jdbc.Connection mc = wc.getUnderlyingConnection();

```

[Report a bug](#)

## 6.3. Non-XA Datasources

### 6.3.1. Create a Non-XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces

#### Summary

This topic covers the steps required to create a non-XA datasource, using either the Management Console or the Management CLI.

#### Prerequisites

- » The JBoss EAP 6 server must be running.

#### Oracle Datasources

Prior to version 10.2 of the Oracle datasource, the <no-tx-separate-pools/> parameter was required, as mixing non-transactional and transactional connections would result in an error. This parameter may no longer be required for certain applications.

#### Procedure 6.4. Create a Datasource using either the Management CLI or the Management Console

##### A. Management CLI

- a. Launch the CLI tool and connect to your server.
- b. Run the following command to create a non-XA datasource, configuring the variables as appropriate:

```
data-source add --name=DATASOURCE_NAME --jndi-name=JNDI_NAME - -driver-name=DRIVER_NAME --connection-url=CONNECTION_URL
```

- c. Enable the datasource:

```
data-source enable --name=DATASOURCE_NAME
```

##### B. Management Console

- a. Login to the Management Console.
- b. **Navigate to the Datasources panel in the Management Console**

- i. Select the **Configuration** tab from the top of the console.
  - ii. For Domain mode only, select a profile from the drop-down box in the top left.
  - iii. Expand the **Subsystems** menu on the left of the console, then expand the **Connector** menu.
  - iv. Select **Datasources** from the menu on the left of the console.
- c. **Create a new datasource**
- i. Click **Add** at the top of the **Datasources** panel.
  - ii. Enter the new datasource attributes in the **Create Datasource** wizard and proceed with the **Next** button.
  - iii. Enter the JDBC driver details in the **Create Datasource** wizard and click **Next** to continue.
  - iv. Enter the connection settings in the **Create Datasource** wizard.
  - v. Click the **Test Connection** button to test the connection to the datasource and verify the settings are correct.
  - vi. Click **Done** to finish

## Result

The non-XA datasource has been added to the server. It is now visible in either the **standalone.xml** or **domain.xml** file, as well as the management interfaces.

[Report a bug](#)

### 6.3.2. Modify a Non-XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces

#### Summary

This topic covers the steps required to modify a non-XA datasource, using either the Management Console or the Management CLI.

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 2.1.1, “Start JBoss EAP 6”.](#)

#### JTA Integration

Non-XA datasources can be integrated with JTA transactions. To integrate the datasource with JTA, ensure that the **jta** parameter is set to **true**.

#### Procedure 6.5. Modify a Non-XA Datasource

- » A. **Management CLI**

- a. [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”.](#)
- b. Use the **write-attribute** command to configure a datasource attribute:

```
/subsystem=datasources/data-source=DATASOURCE_NAME:write-
attribute(name=ATTRIBUTE_NAME,value=ATTRIBUTE_VALUE)
```

- c. Reload the server to confirm the changes:

```
:reload
```

## B. Management Console

- a. [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”.](#)
- b. **Navigate to the Datasources panel in the Management Console**
  - i. Select the **Configuration** tab from the top of the console.
  - ii. For Domain mode only, select a profile from the drop-down box in the top left.
  - iii. Expand the **Subsystems** menu on the left of the console, then expand the **Connector** menu.
  - iv. Select **Datasources** from expanded menu.
- c. **Edit the datasource**
  - i. Select a datasource from the **Available Datasources** list. The datasource attributes are displayed below.
  - ii. Click **Edit** to edit the datasource attributes.
  - iii. Click **Save** to finish.

## Result

The non-XA datasource has been configured. The changes are now visible in either the **standalone.xml** or **domain.xml** file, as well as the management interfaces.

- » To create a new datasource, refer here: [Section 6.3.1, “Create a Non-XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces”.](#)
- » To remove the datasource, refer here: [Section 6.3.3, “Remove a Non-XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces”.](#)

[Report a bug](#)

### 6.3.3. Remove a Non-XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces

#### Summary

This topic covers the steps required to remove a non-XA datasource from JBoss EAP 6, using either the Management Console or the Management CLI.

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 2.1.1, “Start JBoss EAP 6”.](#)

#### Procedure 6.6. Remove a Non-XA Datasource

» A. Management CLI

- a. [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”.](#)
- b. Run the following command to remove a non-XA datasource:

```
data-source remove --name=DATASOURCE_NAME
```

B. Management Console

- a. [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”.](#)
- b. **Navigate to the Datasources panel in the Management Console**
  - i. Select the **Configuration** tab from the top of the console.
  - ii. For Domain mode only, select a profile from the drop-down box in the top left.
  - iii. Expand the **Subsystems** menu on the left of the console, then expand the **Connector** menu.
  - iv. Select **Datasources**.
- c. Select the datasource to be deleted, then click **Remove**.

**Result**

The non-XA datasource has been removed from the server.

- » To add a new datasource, refer here: [Section 6.3.1, “Create a Non-XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces”.](#)

[Report a bug](#)

## 6.4. XA Datasources

### 6.4.1. Create an XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces

**Prerequisites:**

- » [Section 2.1.1, “Start JBoss EAP 6”](#)

**Summary**

This topic covers the steps required to create an XA datasource, using either the Management Console or the Management CLI.

#### Oracle Datasources

Prior to version 10.2 of the Oracle datasource, the <no-tx-separate-pools/> parameter was required, as mixing non-transactional and transactional connections would result in an error. This parameter may no longer be required for certain applications.

## Procedure 6.7. Create an XA Datasource, Using Either the Management CLI or the Management Console

### » A. Management CLI

- a. [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”.](#)
- b. Run the following command to create an XA datasource, configuring the variables as appropriate:

```
xa-data-source add --name=XA_DATASOURCE_NAME --jndi-name=JNDI_NAME --driver-name=DRIVER_NAME --xa-datasource-class=XA_DATASOURCE_CLASS
```

- c. **Configure the XA datasource properties**

- i. **Set the server name**

Run the following command to configure the server name for the host:

```
/subsystem=datasources/xa-data-source=XA_DATASOURCE_NAME/xa-datasource-properties=ServerName:add(value=HOSTNAME)
```

- ii. **Set the database name**

Run the following command to configure the database name:

```
/subsystem=datasources/xa-data-source=XA_DATASOURCE_NAME/xa-datasource-properties=DatabaseName:add(value=DATABASE_NAME)
```

- d. Enable the datasource:

```
xa-data-source enable --name=XA_DATASOURCE_NAME
```

### B. Management Console

- a. [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”.](#)
- b. **Navigate to the Datasources panel in the Management Console**
  - i. Select the **Configuration** tab from the top of the console.
  - ii. For Domain mode only, select a profile from the drop-down box at the top left.
  - iii. Expand the **Subsystems** menu on the left of the console, then expand the **Connector** menu.
  - iv. Select **Datasources**.
- c. Select the **XA Datasource** tab.
- d. **Create a new XA datasource**

- i. Click **Add**.
- ii. Enter the new XA datasource attributes in the **Create XA Datasource** wizard and click **Next**.
- iii. Enter the JDBC driver details in the **Create XA Datasource** wizard and click **Next**.
- iv. Enter the XA properties and click **Next**.
- v. Enter the connection settings in the **Create XA Datasource** wizard.
- vi. Click the **Test Connection** button to test the connection to the XA datasource and verify the settings are correct.
- vii. Click **Done** to finish

## Result

The XA datasource has been added to the server. It is now visible in either the `standalone.xml` or `domain.xml` file, as well as the management interfaces.

## See Also:

- » [Section 6.4.2, “Modify an XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces”](#)
- » [Section 6.4.3, “Remove an XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces”](#)

## [Report a bug](#)

## 6.4.2. Modify an XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces

### Summary

This topic covers the steps required to modify an XA datasource, using either the Management Console or the Management CLI.

### Prerequisites

- » [Section 2.1.1, “Start JBoss EAP 6”](#).

### Procedure 6.8. Modify an XA Datasource, Using Either the Management CLI or the Management Console

#### » A. Management CLI

- a. [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#).

#### b. Configure XA datasource attributes

Use the `write-attribute` command to configure a datasource attribute:

```
/subsystem=datasources/xa-data-
source=XA_DATASOURCE_NAME:write-
attribute(name=ATTRIBUTE_NAME,value=ATTRIBUTE_VALUE)
```

#### c. Configure XA datasource properties

Run the following command to configure an XA datasource subresource:

```
/subsystem=datasources/xa-data-source=DATASOURCE_NAME/xa-
datasource-properties=PROPERTY_NAME:add(value=PROPERTY_VALUE)
```

- d. Reload the server to confirm the changes:

```
:reload
```

## B. Management Console

- a. [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”.](#)
- b. **Navigate to the Datasources panel in the Management Console**
  - i. Select the **Configuration** tab from the top of the console.
  - ii. For Domain Mode only, select a profile from the drop-down box at top left.
  - iii. Expand the **Subsystems** menu on the left of the console, then expand the **Connector** menu.
  - iv. Select **Datasources**.
- c. Select the **XA Datasource** tab.
- d. **Edit the datasource**
  - i. Select the relevant XA datasource from the **Available XA Datasources** list. The XA datasource attributes are displayed in the **Attributes** panel below it.
  - ii. Select the **Edit** button to edit the datasource attributes.
  - iii. Edit the XA datasource attributes and select the **Save** button when done.

## Result

The XA datasource has been configured. The changes are now visible in either the **standalone.xml** or **domain.xml** file, as well as the management interfaces.

- To create a new datasource, refer here: [Section 6.4.1, “Create an XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces”.](#)
- To remove the datasource, refer here: [Section 6.4.3, “Remove an XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces”.](#)

[Report a bug](#)

## 6.4.3. Remove an XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces

### Summary

This topic covers the steps required to remove an XA datasource from JBoss EAP 6, using either the Management Console or the Management CLI.

### Prerequisites

- » [Section 2.1.1, “Start JBoss EAP 6”.](#)

## Procedure 6.9. Remove an XA Datasource Using Either the Management CLI or the Management Console

- » A. Management CLI

- a. [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”.](#)

- b. Run the following command to remove an XA datasource:

```
xa-data-source remove --name=XA_DATASOURCE_NAME
```

## B. Management Console

- a. [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”.](#)

- b. **Navigate to the Datasources panel in the Management Console**

- i. Select the **Configuration** tab from the top of the console.
- ii. For Domain mode only, select a profile from the drop-down box in the top left.
- iii. Expand the **Subsystems** menu on the left of the console, then expand the **Connector** menu.
- iv. Select **Datasources**.

- c. Select the **XA Datasource** tab.

- d. Select the registered XA datasource to be deleted, and click **Remove** to permanently delete the XA datasource.

## Result

The XA datasource has been removed from the server.

- » To add a new XA datasource, refer here: [Section 6.4.1, “Create an XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces”.](#)

[Report a bug](#)

## 6.4.4. XA Recovery

### 6.4.4.1. About XA Recovery Modules

Each XA resource needs a recovery module associated with its configuration. The recovery module must extend class **com.arjuna.ats.jta.recovery.XAResourceRecovery**.

JBoss EAP 6 provides recovery modules for JDBC and JMS XA resources. For these types of resources, recovery modules are automatically registered. If you need to use a custom module, you can register it in your datasource.

[Report a bug](#)

### 6.4.4.2. Configure XA Recovery Modules

For most JDBC and JMS resources, the recovery module is automatically associated with the resource. In these cases, you only need to configure the options that allow the recovery module to connect to your resource to perform recovery.

For custom resources which are not JDBC or JMS, contact Red Hat Global Support Services for information on supported configurations.

Each of these configuration attributes can be set either during datasource creation, or afterward. You can set them using either the web-based Management Console or the command-line Management CLI. Refer to [Section 6.4.1, “Create an XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces”](#) and [Section 6.4.2, “Modify an XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces”](#) for general information on configuring XA datasources.

Refer to the following tables for general datasource configuration attributes, and for information about configuration details relating to specific database vendors.

**Table 6.2. General Configuration Attributes**

Attribute	Description
recovery-username	The username the recovery module should use to connect to the resource for recovery.
recovery-password	The password the recovery module should use to connect to the resource for recovery.
recovery-security-domain	The security domain the recovery module should use to connect to the resource for recovery.
recovery-plugin-class-name	If you need to use a custom recovery module, set this attribute to the fully-qualified class name of the module. The module should extend class <b>com.arjuna.ats.jta.recovery.XAResourceRecovery</b> .
recovery-plugin-properties	If you use a custom recovery module which requires properties to be set, set this attribute to the list of comma-separated <i>key=value</i> pairs for the properties.

## Vendor-Specific Configuration Information

### Oracle

If the Oracle datasource is configured incorrectly, you may see errors like the following in your log output:

```
WARN [com.arjuna.ats.logging.loggerI18N]
[com.arjuna.ats.internal.jta.recovery.xarecovery1] Local
XARecoveryModule.xaRecovery got XA exception
javax.transaction.xa.XAException, XAException.XAER_RMERR
```

To resolve this error, ensure that the Oracle user configured in **recovery-username** has access to the tables needed for recovery. The following SQL statement shows the correct grants for Oracle 11g or Oracle 10g R2 instances patched for Oracle bug 5945463.

```
GRANT SELECT ON sys.dba_pending_transactions TO recovery-username;
GRANT SELECT ON sys.pending_trans$ TO recovery-username;
GRANT SELECT ON sys.dba_2pc_pending TO recovery-username;
GRANT EXECUTE ON sys.dbms_xa TO recovery-username;
```

If you use an Oracle 11 version prior to 11g, change the final **EXECUTE** statement to the following:

```
GRANT EXECUTE ON sys.dbms_system TO recovery-username;
```

## PostgreSQL

See the PostgreSQL documentation for instructions on enabling prepared (i.e. XA) transactions. Version 8.4-701 of PostgreSQL's JDBC driver has a bug in **org.postgresql.xa.PGXAConnection** which breaks recovery in certain situations. This is fixed in newer versions.

## MySQL

Based on <http://bugs.mysql.com/bug.php?id=12161>, XA transaction recovery did not work in some versions of MySQL 5. This is addressed in MySQL 6.1. Refer to the bug URL or to the MySQL documentation for more information.

## IBM DB2

IBM DB2 expects method **XAResource.recover** to be called only during the designated resynchronization stage which occurs when the application server is restarted after a crash or failure. This is a design decision in the DB2 implementation, and out of the scope of this documentation.

## Sybase

Sybase expects XA transactions to be enabled on the database. Without correct database configuration, XA transactions will not work. **enable xact coordination** enables or disables Adaptive Server transaction coordination services. When this parameter is enabled, Adaptive Server ensures that updates to remote Adaptive Server data commit or roll back with the original transaction. To enable transaction coordination, use:

```
sp_configure 'enable xact coordination', 1
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 6.5. Datasource Security

### 6.5.1. About Datasource Security

Datasource security refers to encrypting or obscuring passwords for datasource connections. These passwords can be stored in plain text in configuration files, however this represents a security risk.

The preferred solution for datasource security is the use of either security domains or password vaults. Examples of each are included below. For more information, refer to:

- » Security domains: [Section 11.6.1, “About Security Domains”](#).
- » Password vaults: [Section 11.13.1, “Password Vault System”](#).

#### Example 6.8. Security Domain Example

```
<security-domain name="DsRealm" cache-type="default">
  <authentication>
    <login-module code="ConfiguredIdentity" flag="required">
      <module-option name="userN&lt;/module-optioname" value="sa"/>
      <module-option name="principal" value="sa"/>
      <module-option name="password" value="sa"/>
    </login-module>
  </authentication>
</security-domain>
```

The DsRealm domain is referenced by a datasource like so:

```
<datasources>
  <datasource jndi-name="java:jboss/datasources/securityDs"
    pool-name="securityDs">
    <connection-url>jdbc:h2:mem:test;DB_CLOSE_DELAY=-1</connection-url>
    <driver>h2</driver>
    <new-connection-sql>select current_user()</new-connection-sql>
    <security>
      <security-domain>DsRealm</security-domain>
    </security>
  </datasource>
</datasources>
```

### Example 6.9. Password Vault Example

```
<security>
  <user-name>admin</user-name>

  <password>${VAULT::ds_ExampleDS::password::N2NhZDYz0T MtNWE00S00ZGQ0LWE4
MmEtMWNlMDMyNDdmNmI2TE10RV9CUkVBS3ZhdWx0}</password>
</security>
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 6.6. Database Connection Validation

### 6.6.1. Configure Database Connection Validation Settings

#### Overview

Database maintenance, network problems, or other outage events may cause JBoss EAP 6 to lose the connection to the database. You enable database connection validation using the **<validation>** element within the **<datasource>** section of the server configuration file. Follow the steps below to configure the datasource settings to enable database connection validation in JBoss EAP 6.

#### Procedure 6.10. Configure Database Connection Validation Settings

1. Choose a Validation Method

Select one of the following validation methods.

#### A. <validate-on-match>true</validate-on-match>

When the `<validate-on-match>` option is set to `true`, the database connection is validated every time it is checked out from the connection pool using the validation mechanism specified in the next step.

If a connection is not valid, a warning is written to the log and it retrieves the next connection in the pool. This process continues until a valid connection is found. If you prefer not to cycle through every connection in the pool, you can use the `<use-fast-fail>` option. If a valid connection is not found in the pool, a new connection is created. If the connection creation fails, an exception is returned to the requesting application.

This setting results in the quickest recovery but creates the highest load on the database. However, this is the safest selection if the minimal performance hit is not a concern.

#### B. <background-validation>true</background-validation>

When the `<background-validation>` option is set to `true`, it is used in combination with the `<background-validation-millis>` value to determine how often background validation runs. The default value for the `<background-validation-millis>` parameter is 0 milliseconds, meaning it is disabled by default. This value should not be set to the same value as your `<idle-timeout-minutes>` setting.

It is a balancing act to determine the optimum `<background-validation-millis>` value for a particular system. The lower the value, the more frequently the pool is validated and the sooner invalid connections are removed from the pool. However, lower values take more database resources. Higher values result in less frequent connection validation checks and use less database resources, but dead connections are undetected for longer periods of time.



#### Note

If the `<validate-on-match>` option is set to `true`, the `<background-validation>` option should be set to `false`. The reverse is also true. If the `<background-validation>` option is set to `true`, the `<validate-on-match>` option should be set to `false`.

## 2. Choose a Validation Mechanism

Select one of the following validation mechanisms.

#### A. Specify a <valid-connection-checker> Class Name

This is the preferred mechanism as it optimized for the particular RDBMS in use. JBoss EAP 6 provides the following connection checkers:

- `org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.db2.DB2ValidConnectionChecker`
- `org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.mssql.MSSQLValidConnectionChecker`
- `org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.mysql.MySQLReplicationValidConnectionCheck`
- `org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.mysql.MySQLValidConnectionChecker`

- org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.novendor.JDBC4ValidConnectionChecker
- org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.novendor.NullValidConnectionChecker
- org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.oracle.OracleValidConnectionChecker
- org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.postgres.PostgreSQLValidConnectionChecker
- org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.sybase.SybaseValidConnectionChecker

## B. Specify SQL for <check-valid-connection-sql>

You provide the SQL statement used to validate the connection.

The following is an example of how you might specify a SQL statement to validate a connection for Oracle:

```
<check-valid-connection-sql>select 1 from dual</check-valid-connection-sql>
```

For MySQL or PostgreSQL, you might specify the following SQL statement:

```
<check-valid-connection-sql>select 1</check-valid-connection-sql>
```

## 3. Set the <exception-sorter> Class Name

When an exception is marked as fatal, the connection is closed immediately, even if the connection is participating in a transaction. Use the exception sorter class option to properly detect and clean up after fatal connection exceptions. JBoss EAP 6 provides the following exception sorters:

- org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.db2.DB2ExceptionSorter
- org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.informix.InformixExceptionSorter
- org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.mysql.MySQLEceptionSorter
- org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.novendor.NullExceptionSorter
- org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.oracle.OracleExceptionSorter
- org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.postgres.PostgreSQLExceptionSorter
- org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.sybase.SybaseExceptionSorter

[Report a bug](#)

## 6.7. Datasource Configuration

### 6.7.1. Datasource Parameters

**Table 6.3. Datasource parameters common to non-XA and XA datasources**

Parameter	Description
jndi-name	The unique JNDI name for the datasource.

Parameter	Description
pool-name	The name of the management pool for the datasource.
enabled	Whether or not the datasource is enabled.
use-java-context	Whether to bind the datasource to global JNDI.
spy	Enable <b>spy</b> functionality on the JDBC layer. This logs all JDBC traffic to the datasource. Note that the logging category <b>jboss.jdbc.spy</b> must also be set to the log level <b>DEBUG</b> in the logging subsystem.
use-ccm	Enable the cached connection manager.
new-connection-sql	A SQL statement which executes when the connection is added to the connection pool.
transaction-isolation	One of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» TRANSACTION_READ_UNCOMMITTED</li> <li>» TRANSACTION_READ_COMMITTED</li> <li>» TRANSACTION_REPEATABLE_READ</li> <li>» TRANSACTION_SERIALIZABLE</li> <li>» TRANSACTION_NONE</li> </ul>
url-selector-strategy-class-name	A class that implements interface <b>org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.URLSelectorStrategy</b> .
security	Contains child elements which are security settings. See <a href="#">Table 6.8, “Security parameters”</a> .
validation	Contains child elements which are validation settings. See <a href="#">Table 6.9, “Validation parameters”</a> .
timeout	Contains child elements which are timeout settings. See <a href="#">Table 6.10, “Timeout parameters”</a> .
statement	Contains child elements which are statement settings. See <a href="#">Table 6.11, “Statement parameters”</a> .

**Table 6.4. Non-XA datasource parameters**

Parameter	Description
jta	Enable JTA integration for non-XA datasources. Does not apply to XA datasources.
connection-url	The JDBC driver connection URL.
driver-class	The fully-qualified name of the JDBC driver class.
connection-property	Arbitrary connection properties passed to the method <b>Driver.connect(url, props)</b> . Each connection-property specifies a string name/value pair. The property name comes from the name, and the value comes from the element content.
pool	Contains child elements which are pooling settings. See <a href="#">Table 6.6, “Pool parameters common to non-XA and XA datasources”</a> .
url-delimiter	The delimiter for URLs in a connection-url for High Availability (HA) clustered databases.

**Table 6.5. XA datasource parameters**

Parameter	Description
xa-datasource-property	A property to assign to implementation class <b>XADatasource</b> . Specified by <i>name=value</i> . If a setter method exists, in the format <b>setName</b> , the property is set by calling a setter method in the format of <b>setName(value)</b> .
xa-datasource-class	The fully-qualified name of the implementation class <b>javax.sql.XADatasource</b> .
driver	A unique reference to the classloader module which contains the JDBC driver. The accepted format is <i>driverName#majorVersion.minorVersion</i> .
xa-pool	Contains child elements which are pooling settings. See <a href="#">Table 6.6, “Pool parameters common to non-XA and XA datasources”</a> and <a href="#">Table 6.7, “XA pool parameters”</a> .
recovery	Contains child elements which are recovery settings. See <a href="#">Table 6.12, “Recovery parameters”</a> .

**Table 6.6. Pool parameters common to non-XA and XA datasources**

Parameter	Description
min-pool-size	The minimum number of connections a pool holds.
max-pool-size	The maximum number of connections a pool can hold.
prefill	Whether to try to prefill the connection pool. An empty element denotes a <b>true</b> value. The default is <b>false</b> .
use-strict-min	Whether the pool-size is strict. Defaults to <b>false</b> .
flush-strategy	Whether the pool is flushed in the case of an error. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» <b>FailingConnectionOnly</b></li> <li>» <b>IdleConnections</b></li> <li>» <b>EntirePool</b></li> </ul> The default is <b>FailingConnectionOnly</b> .
allow-multiple-users	Specifies if multiple users will access the datasource through the <code>getConnection(user, password)</code> method, and whether the internal pool type accounts for this behavior.

**Table 6.7. XA pool parameters**

Parameter	Description
is-same-rm-override	Whether the <code>javax.transaction.xa.XAResource.isSameRM(XAResource)</code> class returns <b>true</b> or <b>false</b> .

Parameter	Description
interleaving	Whether to enable interleaving for XA connection factories.
no-tx-separate-pools	Whether to create separate sub-pools for each context. This is required for Oracle datasources, which do not allow XA connections to be used both inside and outside of a JTA transaction.
	Using this option will cause your total pool size to be twice <b>max-pool-size</b> , because two actual pools will be created.
pad-xid	Whether to pad the Xid.
wrap-xa-resource	Whether to wrap the XAResource in an <b>org.jboss.tm.XAResourceWrapper</b> instance.

**Table 6.8. Security parameters**

Parameter	Description
user-name	The username to use to create a new connection.
password	The password to use to create a new connection.
security-domain	Contains the name of a JAAS security-manager which handles authentication. This name correlates to the application-policy/name attribute of the JAAS login configuration.
reauth-plugin	Defines a reauthentication plug-in to use to reauthenticate physical connections.

**Table 6.9. Validation parameters**

Parameter	Description
valid-connection-checker	An implementation of interface <b>org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.ValidConnectionChecker</b> which provides a <b>SQLException.isValidConnection(Connection e)</b> method to validate a connection. An exception means the connection is destroyed. This overrides the parameter <b>check-valid-connection-sql</b> if it is present.
check-valid-connection-sql	An SQL statement to check validity of a pool connection. This may be called when a managed connection is taken from a pool for use.

Parameter	Description
validate-on-match	Indicates whether connection level validation is performed when a connection factory attempts to match a managed connection for a given set.  Specifying "true" for <b>validate-on-match</b> is typically not done in conjunction with specifying "true" for <b>background-validation</b> . <b>Validate-on-match</b> is needed when a client must have a connection validated prior to use. This parameter is false by default.
background-validation	Specifies that connections are validated on a background thread. Background validation is a performance optimization when not used with <b>validate-on-match</b> . If <b>validate-on-match</b> is true, using <b>background-validation</b> could result in redundant checks. Background validation does leave open the opportunity for a bad connection to be given to the client for use (a connection goes bad between the time of the validation scan and prior to being handed to the client), so the client application must account for this possibility.
background-validation-millis	The amount of time, in milliseconds, that background validation runs.
use-fast-fail	If true, fail a connection allocation on the first attempt, if the connection is invalid. Defaults to <b>false</b> .
stale-connection-checker	An instance of <b>org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.StaleConnectionChecker</b> which provides a Boolean <b>isStaleConnection(SQLException e)</b> method. If this method returns <b>true</b> , the exception is wrapped in an <b>org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.StaleConnectionException</b> , which is a subclass of <b>SQLException</b> .
exception-sorter	An instance of <b>org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.ExceptionSorter</b> which provides a Boolean <b>isExceptionFatal(SQLException e)</b> method. This method validates whether an exception is broadcast to all instances of <b>javax.resource.spi.ConnectionEventListener</b> as a <b>connectionErrorOccurred</b> message.

**Table 6.10. Timeout parameters**

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------

Parameter	Description
use-try-lock	Uses <code>tryLock()</code> instead of <code>lock()</code> . This attempts to obtain the lock for the configured number of seconds, before timing out, rather than failing immediately if the lock is unavailable. Defaults to <b>60</b> seconds. As an example, to set a timeout of 5 minutes, set <code>&lt;use-try-lock&gt;300&lt;/use-try-lock&gt;</code> .
blocking-timeout-millis	The maximum time, in milliseconds, to block while waiting for a connection. After this time is exceeded, an exception is thrown. This blocks only while waiting for a permit for a connection, and does not throw an exception if creating a new connection takes a long time. Defaults to 30000, which is 30 seconds.
idle-timeout-minutes	The maximum time, in minutes, before an idle connection is closed. The actual maximum time depends upon the idleRemover scan time, which is half of the smallest <b>idle-timeout-minutes</b> of any pool.
set-tx-query-timeout	Whether to set the query timeout based on the time remaining until transaction timeout. Any configured query timeout is used if no transaction exists. Defaults to <b>false</b> .
query-timeout	Timeout for queries, in seconds. The default is no timeout.
allocation-retry	The number of times to retry allocating a connection before throwing an exception. The default is <b>0</b> , so an exception is thrown upon the first failure.
allocation-retry-wait-millis	How long, in milliseconds, to wait before retrying to allocate a connection. The default is 5000, which is 5 seconds.
xa-resource-timeout	If non-zero, this value is passed to method <code>XAResource.setTransactionTimeout</code> .

**Table 6.11. Statement parameters**

Parameter	Description
track-statements	<p>Whether to check for unclosed statements when a connection is returned to a pool and a statement is returned to the prepared statement cache. If false, statements are not tracked.</p> <p><b>Valid values</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>true</b>: statements and result sets are tracked, and a warning is issued if they are not closed.</li> <li>➤ <b>false</b>: neither statements or result sets are tracked.</li> <li>➤ <b>nowarn</b>: statements are tracked but no warning is issued. This is the default.</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
prepared-statement-cache-size	The number of prepared statements per connection, in a Least Recently Used (LRU) cache.
share-prepared-statements	Whether asking for the same statement twice without closing it uses the same underlying prepared statement. The default is <b>false</b> .

**Table 6.12. Recovery parameters**

Parameter	Description
recover-credential	A username/password pair or security domain to use for recovery.
recover-plugin	An implementation of the <code>org.jboss.jca.core.spi.recoveryRecoverablePlugin</code> class, to be used for recovery.

[Report a bug](#)

## 6.7.2. Datasource Connection URLs

**Table 6.13. Datasource Connection URLs**

Datasource	Connection URL
PostgreSQL	<code>jdbc:postgresql://SERVER_NAME:PORT/DATABASE_NAME</code>
MySQL	<code>jdbc:mysql://SERVER_NAME:PORT/DATABASE_NAME</code>
Oracle	<code>jdbc:oracle:thin:@ORACLE_HOST:PORT:ORACLE_SID</code>
IBM DB2	<code>jdbc:db2://SERVER_NAME:PORT/DATABASE_NAME</code>
Microsoft SQLServer	<code>jdbc:microsoft:sqlserver://SERVER_NAME:PORT;DatabaseName=DATABASE_NAME</code>

[Report a bug](#)

## 6.7.3. Datasource Extensions

Datasource deployments can use several extensions in the JDBC resource adapter to improve the connection validation, and check whether an exception should reestablish the connection. Those extensions are:

**Table 6.14. Datasource Extensions**

Datasource Extension	Configuration Parameter	Description
<code>org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.spi.ExceptionSorter</code>	<code>&lt;exception-sorter&gt;</code>	Checks whether an <code>SQLException</code> is fatal for the connection on which it was thrown

Datasource Extension	Configuration Parameter	Description
org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.spi .StaleConnection	<stale-connection-checker>	Wraps stale SQLExceptions in a <b>org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.StaleConnectionException</b>
org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.spi .ValidConnection	<valid-connection-checker>	Checks whether a connection is valid for use by the application

JBoss EAP 6 also features implementations of these extensions for several supported databases.

## Extension Implementations

### Generic

- » org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.novendor.NullExceptionSorter
- » org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.novendor.NullStaleConnectionChecker
- » org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.novendor.NullValidConnectionChecker
- » org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.novendor.JDBC4ValidConnectionChecker

### PostgreSQL

- » org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.postgres.PostSQLExceptionSorter
- » org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.postgres.PostgreSQLValidConnectionChecker

### MySQL

- » org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.mysql.MySQLEceptionSorter
- » org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.mysql.MySQLReplicationValidConnectionChecker
- » org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.mysql.MySQLValidConnectionChecker

### IBM DB2

- » org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.db2.DB2ExceptionSorter
- » org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.db2.DB2StaleConnectionChecker
- » org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.db2.DB2ValidConnectionChecker

### Sybase

- » org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.sybase.SybaseExceptionSorter
- » org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.sybase.SybaseValidConnectionChecker

### Microsoft SQLServer

- » org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.mssql.MSSQLValidConnectionChecker

### Oracle

- » org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.oracle.OracleExceptionSorter
- » org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.oracle.OracleStaleConnectionChecker

- ✖ org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.oracle.OracleValidConnectionChecker

[Report a bug](#)

#### 6.7.4. View Datasource Statistics

You can view statistics from defined datasources for both the **jdbc** and **pool** using appropriately modified versions of the commands below:

##### Procedure 6.11.

```
✖ /subsystem=datasources/data-source=ExampleDS/statistics=jdbc:read-resource(include-runtime=true)
```

```
/subsystem=datasources/data-source=ExampleDS/statistics=pool:read-resource(include-runtime=true)
```



##### Note

Ensure you specify the **include-runtime=true** argument, as all statistics are runtime only information and the default is **false**.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 6.7.5. Datasource Statistics

##### Core Statistics

The following table contains a list of the supported datasource core statistics:

**Table 6.15. Core Statistics**

Name	Description
<b>ActiveCount</b>	The number of active connections. Each of the connections is either in use by an application or available in the pool
<b>AvailableCount</b>	The number of available connections in the pool.
<b>AverageBlockingTime</b>	The average time spent blocking on obtaining an exclusive lock on the pool. The value is in milliseconds.
<b>AverageCreationTime</b>	The average time spent creating a connection. The value is in milliseconds.
<b>CreatedCount</b>	The number of connections created.
<b>DestroyedCount</b>	The number of connections destroyed.
<b>InUseCount</b>	The number of connections currently in use.
<b>MaxCreationTime</b>	The maximum time it took to create a connection. The value is in milliseconds.
<b>MaxUsedCount</b>	The maximum number of connections used.
<b>MaxWaitCount</b>	The maximum number of requests waiting for a connection at the same time.
<b>MaxWaitTime</b>	The maximum time spent waiting for an exclusive lock on the pool.
<b>TimedOut</b>	The number of timed out connections.

Name	Description
<b>TotalBlockingTime</b>	The total time spent waiting for an exclusive lock on the pool. The value is in milliseconds.
<b>TotalCreationTime</b>	The total time spent creating connections. The value is in milliseconds.
<b>WaitCount</b>	The number of requests that had to wait for a connection.

## JDBC Statistics

The following table contains a list of the supported datasource JDBC statistics:

**Table 6.16. JDBC Statistics**

Name	Description
<b>PreparedStatementCacheAccessCount</b>	The number of times that the statement cache was accessed.
<b>PreparedStatementCacheAddCount</b>	The number of statements added to the statement cache.
<b>PreparedStatementCacheCurrentSize</b>	The number of prepared and callable statements currently cached in the statement cache.
<b>PreparedStatementCacheDeleteCount</b>	The number of statements discarded from the cache.
<b>PreparedStatementCacheHitCount</b>	The number of times that statements from the cache were used.
<b>PreparedStatementCacheMissCount</b>	The number of times that a statement request could not be satisfied with a statement from the cache.

You can enable **Core** and **JDBC** statistics using appropriately modified versions of the following commands:

- » `/subsystem=datasources/data-source=ExampleDS/statistics=pool:write-attribute(name=statistics-enabled,value=true)`
  
- » `/subsystem=datasources/data-source=ExampleDS/statistics=jdbc:write-attribute(name=statistics-enabled,value=true)`

[Report a bug](#)

## 6.8. Example Datasources

### 6.8.1. Example PostgreSQL Datasource

#### Example 6.10.

The example below is a PostgreSQL datasource configuration. The datasource has been enabled, a user has been added, and validation options have been set.

```
<datasources>
  <datasource jndi-name="java:jboss/PostgresDS" pool-name="PostgresDS">
    <connection-
url>jdbc:postgresql://localhost:5432/postgresdb</connection-url>
```

```

<driver>postgresql</driver>
<security>
    <user-name>admin</user-name>
    <password>admin</password>
</security>
<validation>
    <background-validation>true</background-validation>
    <valid-connection-checker class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.postgres.PostgreSQLValidCo
nectionChecker"></valid-connection-checker>
    <exception-sorter class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.postgres.PostgreSQLExcepti
onSorter"></exception-sorter>
</validation>
</datasource>
<drivers>
    <driver name="postgresql" module="org.postgresql">
        <xa-datasource-class>org.postgresql.xa.PGXDataSource</xa-
datasource-class>
    </driver>
</drivers>
</datasources>

```

The example below is a **module.xml** file for the PostgreSQL datasource above.

```

<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.1" name="org.postgresql">
    <resources>
        <resource-root path="postgresql-9.1-902.jdbc4.jar"/>
    </resources>
    <dependencies>
        <module name="javax.api"/>
        <module name="javax.transaction.api"/>
    </dependencies>
</module>

```

[Report a bug](#)

## 6.8.2. Example PostgreSQL XA Datasource

### Example 6.11.

The example below is a PostgreSQL XA datasource configuration. The datasource has been enabled, a user has been added, and validation options have been set.

```

<datasources>
    <xa-datasource jndi-name="java:jboss/PostgresXADS" pool-
name="PostgresXADS">
        <driver>postgresql</driver>
        <xa-datasource-property name="ServerName">localhost</xa-
datasource-property>
        <xa-datasource-property name="PortNumber">5432</xa-datasource-
property>
        <xa-datasource-property name="DatabaseName">postgresdb</xa-

```

```

datasource-property>
<security>
  <user-name>admin</user-name>
  <password>admin</password>
</security>
<validation>
  <background-validation>true</background-validation>
  <valid-connection-checker class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.postgres.PostgreSQLValidCo
nectionChecker">
    </valid-connection-checker>
    <exception-sorter class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.postgres.PostgreSQLExcepti
onSorter">
      </exception-sorter>
    </validation>
  </xa-datasource>
  <drivers>
    <driver name="postgresql" module="org.postgresql">
      <xa-datasource-class>org.postgresql.xa.PGXADatasource</xa-
datasource-class>
    </driver>
  </drivers>
</datasources>

```

The example below is a **module.xml** file for the PostgreSQL XA datasource above.

```

<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.1" name="org.postgresql">
  <resources>
    <resource-root path="postgresql-9.1-902.jdbc4.jar"/>
  </resources>
  <dependencies>
    <module name="javax.api"/>
    <module name="javax.transaction.api"/>
  </dependencies>
</module>

```

[Report a bug](#)

### 6.8.3. Example MySQL Datasource

#### Example 6.12.

The example below is a MySQL datasource configuration. The datasource has been enabled, a user has been added, and validation options have been set.

```

<datasources>
  <datasource jndi-name="java:jboss/MySqlDS" pool-name="MySqlDS">
    <connection-url>jdbc:mysql://mysql-
localhost:3306/jbossdb</connection-url>
    <driver>mysql</driver>
    <security>
      <user-name>admin</user-name>

```

```

<password>admin</password>
</security>
<validation>
    <background-validation>true</background-validation>
    <valid-connection-checker class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.mysql.MySQLValidConnection
Checker"></valid-connection-checker>
    <exception-sorter class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.mysql.MySQLExceptionSorter
"></exception-sorter>
    </validation>
</datasource>
<drivers>
    <driver name="mysql" module="com.mysql">
        <xa-datasource-
class>com.mysql.jdbc.jdbc2.optional.MysqlXADataSource</xa-datasource-
class>
    </driver>
</drivers>
</datasources>
```

The example below is a **module.xml** file for the MySQL datasource above.

```

<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.1" name="com.mysql">
    <resources>
        <resource-root path="mysql-connector-java-5.0.8-bin.jar"/>
    </resources>
    <dependencies>
        <module name="javax.api"/>
        <module name="javax.transaction.api"/>
    </dependencies>
</module>
```

[Report a bug](#)

#### 6.8.4. Example MySQL XA Datasource

##### Example 6.13.

The example below is a MySQL XA datasource configuration. The datasource has been enabled, a user has been added, and validation options have been set.

```

<datasources>
    <xa-datasource jndi-name="java:jboss/MysqlXADS" pool-
name="MysqlXADS">
        <driver>mysql</driver>
        <xa-datasource-property name="ServerName">localhost</xa-
datasource-property>
        <xa-datasource-property name="DatabaseName">mysqldb</xa-datasource-
property>
        <security>
            <user-name>admin</user-name>
            <password>admin</password>
```

```

</security>
<validation>
    <background-validation>true</background-validation>
    <valid-connection-checker class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.mysql.MySQLValidConnection
Checker"></valid-connection-checker>
    <exception-sorter class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.mysql.MySQLExceptionSorter
"></exception-sorter>
</validation>
</xa-datasource>
<drivers>
    <driver name="mysql" module="com.mysql">
        <xa-datasource-
class>com.mysql.jdbc.jdbc2.optional.MysqlXADataSource</xa-datasource-
class>
    </driver>
</drivers>
</datasources>

```

The example below is a **module.xml** file for the MySQL XA datasource above.

```

<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.1" name="com.mysql">
    <resources>
        <resource-root path="mysql-connector-java-5.0.8-bin.jar"/>
    </resources>
    <dependencies>
        <module name="javax.api"/>
        <module name="javax.transaction.api"/>
    </dependencies>
</module>

```

[Report a bug](#)

### 6.8.5. Example Oracle Datasource

#### Oracle Datasources

Prior to version 10.2 of the Oracle datasource, the `<no-tx-separate-pools/>` parameter was required, as mixing non-transactional and transactional connections would result in an error. This parameter may no longer be required for certain applications.

#### Example 6.14.

The example below is an Oracle datasource configuration. The datasource has been enabled, a user has been added, and validation options have been set.

```

<datasources>
    <datasource jndi-name="java:/OracleDS" pool-name="OracleDS">
        <connection-url>jdbc:oracle:thin:@localhost:1521:XE</connection-
url>

```

```

<driver>oracle</driver>
<security>
    <user-name>admin</user-name>
    <password>admin</password>
</security>
<validation>
    <background-validation>true</background-validation>
    <valid-connection-checker class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.oracle.OracleValidConnecti
onChecker"></valid-connection-checker>
    <stale-connection-checker class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.oracle.OracleStaleConnecti
onChecker"></stale-connection-checker>
    <exception-sorter class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.oracle.OracleExceptionSort
er"></exception-sorter>
</validation>
</datasource>
<drivers>
    <driver name="oracle" module="com.oracle">
        <xa-datasource-
class>oracle.jdbc.xa.client.OracleXADataSource</xa-datasource-class>
    </driver>
</drivers>
</datasources>

```

The example below is a **module.xml** file for the Oracle datasource above.

```

<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.1" name="com.oracle">
    <resources>
        <resource-root path="ojdbc6.jar"/>
    </resources>
    <dependencies>
        <module name="javax.api"/>
        <module name="javax.transaction.api"/>
    </dependencies>
</module>

```

[Report a bug](#)

#### 6.8.6. Example Oracle XA Datasource



#### Oracle Datasources

Prior to version 10.2 of the Oracle datasource, the `<no-tx-separate-pools/>` parameter was required, as mixing non-transactional and transactional connections would result in an error. This parameter may no longer be required for certain applications.



## Important

The following settings must be applied for the user accessing an Oracle XA datasource in order for XA recovery to operate correctly. The value **user** is the user defined to connect from JBoss to Oracle:

- » GRANT SELECT ON sys.dba\_pending\_transactions TO user;
- » GRANT SELECT ON sys.pending\_trans\$ TO user;
- » GRANT SELECT ON sys.dba\_2pc\_pending TO user;
- » GRANT EXECUTE ON sys.dbms\_xa TO user; (If using Oracle 10g R2 (patched) or Oracle 11g)

OR

GRANT EXECUTE ON sys.dbms\_system TO user; (If using an unpatched Oracle version prior to 11g)

### Example 6.15.

The example below is an Oracle XA datasource configuration. The datasource has been enabled, a user has been added, and validation options have been set.

```
<datasources>
  <xa-datasource jndi-name="java:/XAOracleDS" pool-name="XAOracleDS">
    <driver>oracle</driver>
    <xa-datasource-property name="URL">jdbc:oracle:oci8:@tc</xa-
datasource-property>
    <security>
      <user-name>admin</user-name>
      <password>admin</password>
    </security>
    <xa-pool>
      <is-same-rm-override>false</is-same-rm-override>
      <no-tx-separate-pools />
    </xa-pool>
    <validation>
      <background-validation>true</background-validation>
      <valid-connection-checker class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.oracle.OracleValidConnecti
onChecker"></valid-connection-checker>
      <stale-connection-checker class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.oracle.OracleStaleConnecti
onChecker"></stale-connection-checker>
      <exception-sorter class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.oracle.OracleExceptionSort
er"></exception-sorter>
    </validation>
  </xa-datasource>
  <drivers>
    <driver name="oracle" module="com.oracle">
      <xa-datasource-
```

```

<class>oracle.jdbc.xa.client.OracleXADataSource</xa-datasource-class>
  </driver>
</drivers>
</datasources>

```

The example below is a **module.xml** file for the Oracle XA datasource above.

```

<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.1" name="com.oracle">
  <resources>
    <resource-root path="ojdbc6.jar"/>
  </resources>
  <dependencies>
    <module name="javax.api"/>
    <module name="javax.transaction.api"/>
  </dependencies>
</module>

```

[Report a bug](#)

### 6.8.7. Example Microsoft SQLServer Datasource

#### Example 6.16.

The example below is a Microsoft SQLServer datasource configuration. The datasource has been enabled, a user has been added, and validation options have been set.

```

<datasources>
  <datasource jndi-name="java:/MSSQLDS" pool-name="MSSQLDS">
    <connection-
url>jdbc:microsoft:sqlserver://localhost:1433;DatabaseName=MyDatabase</
connection-url>
    <driver>sqlserver</driver>
    <security>
      <user-name>admin</user-name>
      <password>admin</password>
    </security>
    <validation>
      <background-validation>true</background-validation>
      <valid-connection-checker class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.mssql.MSSQLValidConnection
Checker"></valid-connection-checker>
    </validation>
  </datasource>
  <drivers>
    <driver name="sqlserver" module="com.microsoft">
      <xa-datasource-
class>com.microsoft.sqlserver.jdbc.SQLServerXADataSource</xa-
datasource-class>
    </driver>
  </datasources>

```

The example below is a **module.xml** file for the Microsoft SQLServer datasource above.

```
<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.1" name="com.microsoft">
  <resources>
    <resource-root path="sqljdbc4.jar"/>
  </resources>
  <dependencies>
    <module name="javax.api"/>
    <module name="javax.transaction.api"/>
  </dependencies>
</module>
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 6.8.8. Example Microsoft SQLServer XA Datasource

#### Example 6.17.

The example below is a Microsoft SQLServer XA datasource configuration. The datasource has been enabled, a user has been added, and validation options have been set.

```
<datasources>
  <xa-datasource jndi-name="java:/MSSQLXADS" pool-name="MSSQLXADS">
    <driver>sqlserver</driver>
    <xa-datasource-property name="ServerName">localhost</xa-
datasource-property>
    <xa-datasource-property name="DatabaseName">mssqldb</xa-datasource-
property>
    <xa-datasource-property name="SelectMethod">cursor</xa-datasource-
property>
    <security>
      <user-name>admin</user-name>
      <password>admin</password>
    </security>
    <xa-pool>
      <is-same-rm-override>false</is-same-rm-override>
    </xa-pool>
    <validation>
      <background-validation>true</background-validation>
      <valid-connection-checker class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.mssql.MSSQLValidConnection
Checker"></valid-connection-checker>
    </validation>
  </xa-datasource>
  <drivers>
    <driver name="sqlserver" module="com.microsoft">
      <xa-datasource-
class>com.microsoft.sqlserver.jdbc.SQLServerXADataSource</xa-
datasource-class>
    </driver>
  </drivers>
</datasources>
```

The example below is a **module.xml** file for the Microsoft SQLServer XA datasource above.

```
<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.1" name="com.microsoft">
  <resources>
    <resource-root path="sqljdbc4.jar"/>
  </resources>
  <dependencies>
    <module name="javax.api"/>
    <module name="javax.transaction.api"/>
  </dependencies>
</module>
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 6.8.9. Example IBM DB2 Datasource

#### Example 6.18.

The example below is an IBM DB2 datasource configuration. The datasource has been enabled, a user has been added, and validation options have been set.

```
<datasources>
  <datasource jndi-name="java:/DB2DS" pool-name="DB2DS">
    <connection-url>jdbc:db2:ibmdb2db</connection-url>
    <driver>ibmdb2</driver>
    <pool>
      <min-pool-size>0</min-pool-size>
      <max-pool-size>50</max-pool-size>
    </pool>
    <security>
      <user-name>admin</user-name>
      <password>admin</password>
    </security>
    <validation>
      <background-validation>true</background-validation>
      <valid-connection-checker class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.db2.DB2ValidConnectionChe-
cker"></valid-connection-checker>
      <stale-connection-checker class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.db2.DB2StaleConnectionChe-
cker"></stale-connection-checker>
      <exception-sorter class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.db2.DB2ExceptionSorter">
    </exception-sorter>
    </validation>
  </datasource>
  <drivers>
    <driver name="ibmdb2" module="com.ibm">
      <xa-datasource-class>com.ibm.db2.jdbc.DB2XADataSource</xa-
datasource-class>
    </driver>
  </drivers>
</datasources>
```

The example below is a **module.xml** file for the IBM DB2 datasource above.

```
<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.1" name="com.ibm">
  <resources>
    <resource-root path="db2jcc4.jar"/>
  </resources>
  <dependencies>
    <module name="javax.api"/>
    <module name="javax.transaction.api"/>
  </dependencies>
</module>
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 6.8.10. Example IBM DB2 XA Datasource

### Example 6.19.

The example below is an IBM DB2 XA datasource configuration. The datasource has been enabled, a user has been added and validation options have been set.

```
<datasources>
  <xa-datasource jndi-name="java:/DB2XADS" pool-name="DB2XADS">
    <driver>ibmdb2</driver>
    <xa-datasource-property name="DatabaseName">ibmdb2db</xa-
datasource-property>
    <xa-datasource-property name="ServerName">hostname</xa-datasource-
property>
    <xa-datasource-property name="PortNumber">port</xa-datasource-
property>
    <security>
      <user-name>admin</user-name>
      <password>admin</password>
    </security>
    <xa-pool>
      <is-same-rm-override>false</is-same-rm-override>
    </xa-pool>
    <validation>
      <background-validation>true</background-validation>
      <valid-connection-checker class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.db2.DB2ValidConnectionChec
ker"></valid-connection-checker>
      <stale-connection-checker class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.db2.DB2StaleConnectionChec
ker"></stale-connection-checker>
      <exception-sorter class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.db2.DB2ExceptionSorter">
    </exception-sorter>
    </validation>
    <recovery>
      <recover-plugin class-
name="org.jboss.jca.core.recovery.ConfigurableRecoveryPlugin">
        <config-property name="EnableIsValid">false</config-property>
        <config-property name="IsValidOverride">false</config-property>
        <config-property name="EnableClose">false</config-property>
      </recover-plugin>
    </recovery>
  </xa-datasource>
</datasources>
```

```

        </recover-plugin>
    </recovery>
</xa-datasource>
<drivers>
    <driver name="ibmdb2" module="com.ibm">
        <xa-datasource-class>com.ibm.db2.jcc.DB2XADataSource</xa-
datasource-class>
    </driver>
</drivers>
</datasources>

```

The example below is a **module.xml** file for the IBM DB2 XA datasource above.

```

<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.1" name="com.ibm">
    <resources>
        <resource-root path="db2jcc4.jar"/>
        <resource-root path="db2jcc_license_cisuz.jar"/>
        <resource-root path="db2jcc_license_cu.jar"/>
    </resources>
    <dependencies>
        <module name="javax.api"/>
        <module name="javax.transaction.api"/>
    </dependencies>
</module>

```

[Report a bug](#)

### 6.8.11. Example Sybase Datasource

#### Example 6.20.

The example below is a Sybase datasource configuration. The datasource has been enabled, a user has been added, and validation options have been set.

```

<datasources>
    <datasource jndi-name="java:jboss/SybaseDB" pool-name="SybaseDB"
enabled="true">
        <connection-url>jdbc:sybase:Tds:localhost:5000/DATABASE?
JCONNECT_VERSION=6</connection-url>
        <security>
            <user-name>admin</user-name>
            <password>admin</password>
        </security>
        <validation>
            <background-validation>true</background-validation>
            <valid-connection-checker class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.sybase.SybaseValidConnecti
onChecker"></valid-connection-checker>
            <exception-sorter class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.sybase.SybaseExceptionSort
er"></exception-sorter>
        </validation>
    </datasource>

```

```

<drivers>
  <driver name="sybase" module="com.sybase">
    <datasource-
class>com.sybase.jdbc4.jdbc.SybDataSource</datasource-class>
    <xa-datasource-class>com.sybase.jdbc4.jdbc.SybXADatasource</xa-
datasource-class>
  </driver>
</drivers>
</datasources>

```

The example below is a **module.xml** file for the Sybase datasource above.

```

<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.1" name="com.sybase">
  <resources>
    <resource-root path="jconn2.jar"/>
  </resources>
  <dependencies>
    <module name="javax.api"/>
    <module name="javax.transaction.api"/>
  </dependencies>
</module>

```

[Report a bug](#)

### 6.8.12. Example Sybase XA Datasource

#### Example 6.21.

The example below is a Sybase XA datasource configuration. The datasource has been enabled, a user has been added, and validation options have been set.

```

<datasources>
  <xa-datasource jndi-name="java:jboss/SybaseXADS" pool-
name="SybaseXADS" enabled="true">
    <xa-datasource-property name="NetworkProtocol">Tds</xa-datasource-
property>
    <xa-datasource-property name="ServerName">myserver</xa-datasource-
property>
    <xa-datasource-property name="PortNumber">4100</xa-datasource-
property>
    <xa-datasource-property name="DatabaseName">mydatabase</xa-
datasource-property>
    <security>
      <user-name>admin</user-name>
      <password>admin</password>
    </security>
    <validation>
      <background-validation>true</background-validation>
      <valid-connection-checker class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.sybase.SybaseValidConnecti
onChecker"></valid-connection-checker>
      <exception-sorter class-
name="org.jboss.jca.adapters.jdbc.extensions.sybase.SybaseExceptionSort
er"></exception-sorter>
    </validation>
  </xa-datasource>
</datasources>

```

```
er"></exception-sorter>
    </validation>
</xa-datasource>
<drivers>
    <driver name="sybase" module="com.sybase">
        <datasource-
class>com.sybase.jdbc4.jdbc.SybDataSource</datasource-class>
        <xa-datasource-class>com.sybase.jdbc4.jdbc.SybXADataSource</xa-
datasource-class>
    </driver>
</drivers>
</datasources>
```

The example below is a **module.xml** file for the Sybase XA datasource above.

```
<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.1" name="com.sybase">
    <resources>
        <resource-root path="jconn2.jar"/>
    </resources>
    <dependencies>
        <module name="javax.api"/>
        <module name="javax.transaction.api"/>
    </dependencies>
</module>
```

[Report a bug](#)

# Chapter 7. Configuring Modules

## 7.1. Introduction

### 7.1.1. Modules

A Module is a logical grouping of classes used for class loading and dependency management. JBoss EAP 6 identifies two different types of modules, sometimes called static and dynamic modules. However the only difference between the two is how they are packaged. All modules provide the same features.

#### Static Modules

Static Modules are predefined in the **EAP\_HOME/modules/** directory of the application server. Each sub-directory represents one module and defines a **main/** subdirectory that contains a configuration file (**module.xml**) and any required JAR files. The name of the module is defined in the **module.xml** file. All the application server provided APIs are provided as static modules, including the Java EE APIs as well as other APIs such as JBoss Logging.

#### Example 7.1. Example module.xml file

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.0" name="com.mysql">
    <resources>
        <resource-root path="mysql-connector-java-5.1.15.jar"/>
    </resources>
    <dependencies>
        <module name="javax.api"/>
        <module name="javax.transaction.api"/>
    </dependencies>
</module>
```

The module name, **com.mysql**, should match the directory structure for the module, excluding the **main/** subdirectory name.

The modules provided in JBoss EAP distributions are located in a **system** directory within the **JBOSS\_HOME/modules** directory. This keeps them separate from any modules provided by third parties.

Any Red Hat provided layered products that layer on top of JBoss EAP 6.1 or later will also install their modules within the **system** directory.

Creating custom static modules can be useful if many applications are deployed on the same server that use the same third party libraries. Instead of bundling those libraries with each application, a module containing these libraries can be created and installed by the JBoss administrator. The applications can then declare an explicit dependency on the custom static modules.

Users must ensure that custom modules are installed into the **JBOSS\_HOME/modules** directory, using a one directory per module layout. This ensures that custom versions of modules that already exist in the **system** directory are loaded instead of the shipped versions. In this way, user provided modules will take precedence over system modules.

If you use the **JBOSS\_MODULEPATH** environment variable to change the locations in which JBoss EAP searches for modules, then the product will look for a **system** subdirectory structure within one of the locations specified. A **system** structure must exist somewhere in the locations specified with **JBOSS\_MODULEPATH**.

## Dynamic Modules

Dynamic Modules are created and loaded by the application server for each JAR or WAR deployment (or subdeployment in an EAR). The name of a dynamic module is derived from the name of the deployed archive. Because deployments are loaded as modules, they can configure dependencies and be used as dependencies by other deployments.

Modules are only loaded when required. This usually only occurs when an application is deployed that has explicit or implicit dependencies.

[Report a bug](#)

### 7.1.2. Global Modules

A global module is a module that JBoss EAP 6 provides as a dependency to every application. Any module can be made global by adding it to the application server's list of global modules. It does not require changes to the module.

[Report a bug](#)

### 7.1.3. Module Dependencies

A module dependency is a declaration that one module requires the classes of another module in order to function. Modules can declare dependencies on any number of other modules. When the application server loads a module, the modular class loader parses the dependencies of that module and adds the classes from each dependency to its class path. If a specified dependency cannot be found, the module will fail to load.

Deployed applications (JAR and WAR) are loaded as dynamic modules and make use of dependencies to access the APIs provided by JBoss EAP 6.

There are two types of dependencies: explicit and implicit.

Explicit dependencies are declared in configuration by the developer. Static modules can declare dependencies in the modules.xml file. Dynamic modules can have dependencies declared in the MANIFEST.MF or jboss-deployment-structure.xml deployment descriptors of the deployment.

Explicit dependencies can be specified as optional. Failure to load an optional dependency will not cause a module to fail to load. However if the dependency becomes available later it will NOT be added to the module's class path. Dependencies must be available when the module is loaded.

Implicit dependencies are added automatically by the application server when certain conditions or meta-data are found in a deployment. The Java EE 6 APIs supplied with JBoss EAP 6 are examples of modules that are added by detection of implicit dependencies in deployments.

Deployments can also be configured to exclude specific implicit dependencies. This is done with the jboss-deployment-structure.xml deployment descriptor file. This is commonly done when an application bundles a specific version of a library that the application server will attempt to add as an implicit dependency.

A module's class path contains only its own classes and that of its immediate dependencies. A module is not able to access the classes of the dependencies of one of its dependencies. However a module can specify that an explicit dependency is exported. An exported dependency is provided to any module that depends on the module that exports it.

### Example 7.2. Module dependencies

Module A depends on Module B and Module B depends on Module C. Module A can access the classes of Module B, and Module B can access the classes of Module C. Module A cannot access the classes of Module C unless:

- ▀ Module A declares an explicit dependency on Module C, or
- ▀ Module B exports its dependency on Module C.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 7.1.4. Subdeployment Class Loader Isolation

Each subdeployment in an Enterprise Archive (EAR) is a dynamic module with its own class loader. By default a subdeployment can access the resources of other subdeployments.

If a subdeployment should not access the resources of other subdeployments (strict subdeployment isolation is required) then this can be enabled.

[Report a bug](#)

## 7.2. Disable Subdeployment Module Isolation for All Deployments

This task shows server administrators how to disable Subdeployment Module Isolation on the application server. This affects all deployments.



### Warning

This task requires you to edit the XML configuration files of the server. The server must be halted before doing this. This is temporary as the final release administration tools will support this type of configuration.

#### 1. Stop the server

Halt the JBoss EAP 6 server.

#### 2. Open the server configuration file

Open the server configuration file in a text editor.

This file will be different for a managed domain or standalone server. In addition, non-default locations and file names may be used. The default configuration files are

**domain/configuration/domain.xml** and

**standalone/configuration/standalone.xml** for managed domains and standalone servers respectively.

### 3. Locate the EE Subsystem Configuration

Locate the EE Subsystem configuration element in the configuration file. The **<profile>** element of the configuration file contains several subsystem elements. The EE Subsystem element has the namespace of **urn:jboss:domain:ee:1.2**.

```
<profile>
  ...
  <subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:ee:1.2" />
  ...

```

The default configuration has a single self-closing tag but a custom configuration may have separate open and closing tags (possibly with other elements within) like this:

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:ee:1.2" ></subsystem>
```

### 4. Replace self-closing tags if necessary

If the EE Subsystem element is a single self-closing tag then replace with appropriate opening and closing tags like this:

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:ee:1.2" ></subsystem>
```

### 5. Add ear-subdeployments-isolated element

Add the **ear-subdeployments-isolated** element as a child of the EE Subsystem element and add the content of **false** like this:

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:ee:1.2" ><ear-subdeployments-isolated>false</ear-subdeployments-isolated></subsystem>
```

### 6. Start the server

Relaunch the JBoss EAP 6 server to start it running with the new configuration.

#### Result:

The server will now be running with Subdeployment Module Isolation disabled for all deployments.

[Report a bug](#)

## 7.3. Add a module to all deployments

This task shows how JBoss administrators can define a list of global modules.

#### Prerequisites

1. You must know the name of the modules that are to be configured as global modules. Refer to [Section 7.6.1, “Included Modules”](#) for the list of static modules included with JBoss EAP 6. If the module is in another deployment, refer to [Section 7.6.2, “Dynamic Module Naming”](#) to determine the module name.

## Procedure 7.1. Add a module to the list of global modules

1. Login to the management console. [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#)
2. Navigate to the **EE Subsystem** panel.
  - a. Select the **Configuration** tab from the top of the console.
  - b. **Domain Mode Only**
    - i. Select the appropriate profile from the drop-down box in the top left.
    - c. Expand the **Subsystems** menu on the left of the console.
    - d. Select **Container** → **EE** from the menu on the left of the console.
3. Click **Add** in the **Subsystem Defaults** section. The **Create Module** dialog appears.
4. Type in the name of the module and optionally the module slot.
5. Click **Save** to add the new global module, or click **Cancel** to abort.
  - ✖ If you click **Save**, the dialog will close and the specified module will be added to the list of global modules.
  - ✖ If you click **Cancel**, the dialog will close and no changes will be made.

## Result

The modules added to the list of global modules will be added as dependencies to every deployment.

## [Report a bug](#)

## 7.4. Create a Custom Module

The following procedure describes how to create a custom module in order to make properties files and other resources available to all applications running on the JBoss EAP server.

### Procedure 7.2. Create a Custom Module

1. Create and populate the **module**/ directory structure.
  - a. Create a directory structure under the **EAP\_HOME/module** directory to contain the files and JARs. For example:
 

```
$ cd EAP_HOME/modules/
$ mkdir -p myorg-conf/main/properties
```
  - b. Move the properties files to the **EAP\_HOME/modules/myorg-conf/main/properties** directory you created in the previous step.
  - c. Create a **module.xml** file in the **EAP\_HOME/modules/myorg-conf/main/** directory containing the following XML:

```
<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.1" name="myorg-conf">
  <resources>
    <resource-root path="properties"/>
```

```
</resources>
</module>
```

2. Modify the **ee** subsystem in the server configuration file. You can use the JBoss CLI or you can manually edit the file.

- A. Follow these steps to modify the server configuration file using the JBoss CLI.

- a. Start the server and connect to the Management CLI.

- A. For Linux, enter the following at the command line:

```
$ EAP_HOME/bin/jboss-cli.sh --connect
```

- B. For Windows, enter the following at a command line:

```
C:\>EAP_HOME\bin\jboss-cli.bat --connect
```

You should see the following response:

```
Connected to standalone controller at localhost:9999
```

- b. To create the **myorg-conf** <global-modules> element in the **ee** subsystem, type the following in the command line:

```
/subsystem=ee:write-attribute(name=global-modules, value=[{"name"=>"myorg-conf", "slot"=>"main"}])
```

You should see the following result:

```
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

- B. Follow these steps if you prefer to manually edit the server configuration file.

- a. Stop the server and open the server configuration file in a text editor. If you are running a standalone server, this is the **EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone.xml** file, or the **EAP\_HOME/domain/configuration/domain.xml** file if you are running a managed domain.
- b. Find the **ee** subsystem and add the global module for **myorg-conf**. The following is an example of the **ee** subsystem element, modified to include the **myorg-conf** element:

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:ee:1.0" >
  <global-modules>
    <module name="myorg-conf" slot="main" />
  </global-modules>
</subsystem>
```

3. Assuming you copied a file named **my.properties** into the correct module location, you are now able to load properties files using code similar to the following:

```
Thread.currentThread().getContextClassLoader().getResource("my.properties");
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 7.5. Define an External JBoss Module Directory

### Summary

By default, JBoss EAP looks for modules in the **EAP\_HOME/modules/** directory. You can direct JBoss EAP to look in one or more external directories by defining a **JBOSS\_MODULEPATH** environment variable or by setting the variable in the startup configuration file. This topic describes both methods.

### Procedure 7.3. Set the JBOSS\_MODULEPATH Environment Variable

- To specify one or more external module directories, define the **JBOSS\_MODULEPATH** environment variable.

For Linux, use a colon to delimit a list of directories. For example:

```
export
JBOSS_MODULEPATH=EAP_HOME/modules/:/home/username/external/modules/directory/
```

For Windows, use a semicolon to delimit a list of directories. For example:

```
SET JBOSS_MODULEPATH=EAP_HOME\modules\;D:\JBoss-Modules\
```

### Procedure 7.4. Set the JBOSS\_MODULEPATH Variable in the Startup Configuration File

- If you prefer not to set a global environment variable, you can set the **JBOSS\_MODULEPATH** variable in the JBoss EAP startup configuration file. If you are running a standalone server, this is the **EAP\_HOME/bin/standalone.conf** file. If the server is running in a managed domain, this is the **EAP\_HOME/bin/domain.conf** file.

The following is an example of the command that sets the **JBOSS\_MODULEPATH** variable in the **standalone.conf** file

```
JBOSS_MODULEPATH="EAP_HOME/modules/:/home/username/external/modules/directory/"
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 7.6. Reference

### 7.6.1. Included Modules

A table listing the JBoss EAP 6 included modules and whether they are supported can be found on the Customer Portal at <https://access.redhat.com/articles/1122333>.

[Report a bug](#)

## 7.6.2. Dynamic Module Naming

All deployments are loaded as modules by JBoss EAP 6 and named according to the following conventions.

1. Deployments of WAR and JAR files are named with the following format:

`deployment.DEPLOYMENT_NAME`

For example, `inventory.war` and `store.jar` will have the module names of `deployment.inventory.war` and `deployment.store.jar` respectively.

2. Subdeployments within an Enterprise Archive are named with the following format:

`deployment.EAR_NAME.SUBDEPLOYMENT_NAME`

For example, the subdeployment of `reports.war` within the enterprise archive `accounts.ear` will have the module name of `deployment.accounts.ear.reports.war`.

[Report a bug](#)

# Chapter 8. Jsvc

## 8.1. Introduction

### 8.1.1. About Jsvc

Jsvc is a set of libraries and applications which allow Java applications run on UNIX and UNIX-like platforms as a background service. It allows an application to perform operations as a privileged user, and then switch identity to a non-privileged user.

Jsvc uses three processes: a launcher process, a controller process and a controlled process. The controlled process is also the main Java thread. If the JVM crashes the controller process will restart it within 60 seconds. Jsvc is a daemon process and for JBoss EAP 6 it must be started by a privileged user.



#### Note

Jsvc is for use on Red Hat Enterprise Linux, Solaris and HP-UX only. For similar functionality on Microsoft Windows, see **prunsrv.exe** in the **Native Utilities for Windows Server** download available from the Red Hat Customer Portal.

[Report a bug](#)

### 8.1.2. Start and Stop JBoss EAP using Jsvc

The instructions for starting and stopping JBoss EAP using Jsvc vary, depending on which mode it is operating: standalone or domain. Be aware that if JBoss EAP is run in domain mode, Jsvc handles the process of the domain controller only. Whichever command you use to start JBoss EAP using Jsvc, it must be run by a privileged user.

#### Prerequisites

- » If JBoss EAP was installed using the Zip method:
  - Install the *Native Utilities* package for your operating system, available for download from the Red Hat Customer Portal. See *Install Native Components and Native Utilities (Zip, Installer)* in the *Installation Guide*.
  - Create the user account under which the JBoss EAP 6 instance will run. The account used to start and stop the server must have read and write access to the directory in which JBoss EAP was installed.
- » If JBoss EAP was installed using the RPM method, install the *apache-commons-daemon-jsvc-eap* package. See *Install Native Components and Native Utilities (RPM Installation)* in the *Installation Guide*.

The following commands are to start and stop JBoss EAP in either standalone or domain modes. Note that file locations are different depending on the method used to install Jsvc in JBoss EAP 6. Use the tables below to determine which files to use to resolve the variables in the commands.

#### Standalone Mode

The following instructions are to start or stop JBoss EAP in standalone mode.

**Table 8.1. Jsvc File locations For Zip installations - Standalone Mode**

<b>File Reference in Instructions</b>	<b>File Location</b>
EAP-HOME	<code> \${eap-installation-location}/jboss-eap-\${version}</code>
JSVC-BIN	<code>EAP_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/native/sbin/jsvc</code>
JSVC-JAR	<code>EAP_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/native/sbin/commons-daemon.jar</code>
CONF-DIR	<code>EAP_HOME/standalone/configuration</code>
LOG-DIR	<code>EAP_HOME/standalone/log</code>

**Table 8.2. Jsvc File Locations for RPM Installations - Standalone Mode**

<b>File Reference in Instructions</b>	<b>File Location</b>
EAP-HOME	<code>/usr/share/jbossas</code>
JSVC-BIN	<code>/usr/bin/jsvc-eap6/jsvc</code>
JSVC-JAR	<code>EAP_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/native/sbin/commons-daemon.jar</code>
CONF-DIR	<code>/etc/jbossas/standalone</code>
LOG-DIR	<code>/var/log/jbossas/standalone</code>

**Start JBoss EAP in Standalone Mode**

```
» JSVC_BIN \
  -outfile LOG_DIR/jsvc.out.log \
  -errfile LOG_DIR/jsvc.err.log \
  -pidfile LOG_DIR/jsvc.pid \
  -user jboss \
  -D[Standalone] -XX:+UseCompressedOops -Xms1303m \
  -Xmx1303m -XX:MaxPermSize=256m \
  -Djava.net.preferIPv4Stack=true \
  -Djboss.modules.system.pkgs=org.jboss.byteman \
  -Djava.awt.headless=true \
  -Dorg.jboss.boot.log.file=LOG_DIR/server.log \
  -Dlogging.configuration=file:CONF_DIR/logging.properties \
  -Djboss.modules.policy-permissions \
  -cp EAP_HOME/jboss-modules.jar:JSVC_JAR \
  -Djboss.home.dir=EAP_HOME \
  -Djboss.server.base.dir=EAP_HOME/standalone \
  @org.jboss.modules.Main -start-method main \
  -mp EAP_HOME/modules \
  -jaxpmodule javax.xml.jaxp-provider \
  org.jboss.as.standalone
```

**Stop JBoss EAP in Standalone Mode**

```
» JSVC_BIN \
  -stop \
  -outfile LOG_DIR/jsvc.out.log \
  -errfile LOG_DIR/jsvc.err.log \
  -pidfile LOG_DIR/jsvc.pid \
  -user jboss \
```

```

-D[Standalone] -XX:+UseCompressedOops -Xms1303m \
-Xmx1303m -XX:MaxPermSize=256m \
-Djava.net.preferIPv4Stack=true \
-Djboss.modules.system.pkgs=org.jboss.byteman \
-Djava.awt.headless=true \
-Dorg.jboss.boot.log.file=LOG_DIR/server.log \
-Dlogging.configuration=file:CONF_DIR/logging.properties \
-Djboss.modules.policy-permissions \
-cp EAP_HOME/jboss-modules.jar:JSVC_JAR \
-Djboss.home.dir=EAP_HOME \
-Djboss.server.base.dir=EAP_HOME/standalone \
@org.jboss.modules.Main -start-method main \
-mp EAP_HOME/modules \
-jaxpmodule javax.xml.jaxp-provider \
org.jboss.as.standalone

```

## Domain Mode

The following instructions are to start or stop JBoss EAP in domain mode. Note that for domain mode, you must replace the `JAVA_HOME` variable with the Java home directory.

**Table 8.3. Jsvc File Locations for Zip Installations - Domain Mode**

File Reference in Instructions	File Location
EAP-HOME	<code> \${eap-installation-location}/jboss-eap-\${version}</code>
JSVC-BIN	<code>EAP_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/native/sbin/jsvc</code>
JSVC-JAR	<code>EAP_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/native/sbin/commons-daemon.jar</code>
CONF-DIR	<code>EAP_HOME/domain/configuration</code>
LOG-DIR	<code>EAP_HOME/domain/log</code>

**Table 8.4. Jsvc File Locations for RPM Installations - Domain Mode**

File Reference in Instructions	File Location
EAP-HOME	<code>/usr/share/jbossas</code>
JSVC-BIN	<code>/usr/bin/jsvc-eap6/jsvc</code>
JSVC-JAR	<code>EAP_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/native/sbin/commons-daemon.jar</code>
CONF-DIR	<code>/etc/jbossas/domain</code>
LOG-DIR	<code>/var/log/jbossas/domain</code>

## Start JBoss EAP in Domain Mode

```

JSVC_BIN \
-outfile LOG_DIR/jsvc.out.log \
-errfile LOG_DIR/jsvc.err.log \
-pidfile LOG_DIR/jsvc.pid \
-user jboss \
-nodetach -D"[Process Controller]" -server -Xms64m \
-Xmx512m -XX:MaxPermSize=256m \
-Djava.net.preferIPv4Stack=true \

```

```

-Djboss.modules.system.pkgs=org.jboss.byteman \
-Djava.awt.headless=true \
-Dorg.jboss.boot.log.file=LOG_DIR/process-controller.log \
-Dlogging.configuration=file:CONF_DIR/logging.properties \
-Djboss.modules.policy-permissions \
-cp "EAP_HOME/jboss-modules.jar:JSVC_JAR" \
org.apache.commons.daemon.support.DaemonWrapper \
-start org.jboss.modules.Main -start-method main \
-mp EAP_HOME/modules org.jboss.as.process-controller \
-jboss-home EAP_HOME -jvm $JAVA_HOME/bin/java \
-mp EAP_HOME/modules -- \
-Dorg.jboss.boot.log.file=LOG_DIR/host-controller.log \
-Dlogging.configuration=file:CONF_DIR/logging.properties \
-Djboss.modules.policy-permissions \
-server -Xms64m -Xmx512m -XX:MaxPermSize=256m \
-Djava.net.preferIPv4Stack=true \
-Djboss.modules.system.pkgs=org.jboss.byteman \
-Djava.awt.headless=true -- -default-jvm $JAVA_HOME/bin/java

```

## Stop JBoss EAP in Domain Mode

```

> JSVC_BIN \
  -stop \
  -outfile LOG_DIR/jsvc.out.log \
  -errfile LOG_DIR/jsvc.err.log \
  -pidfile LOG_DIR/jsvc.pid \
  -user jboss \
  -nodetach -D"[Process Controller]" -server -Xms64m \
  -Xmx512m -XX:MaxPermSize=256m \
  -Djava.net.preferIPv4Stack=true \
  -Djboss.modules.system.pkgs=org.jboss.byteman \
  -Djava.awt.headless=true \
  -Dorg.jboss.boot.log.file=LOG_DIR/process-controller.log \
  -Dlogging.configuration=file:CONF_DIR/logging.properties \
  -Djboss.modules.policy-permissions \
  -cp "EAP_HOME/jboss-modules.jar:JSVC_JAR" \
  org.apache.commons.daemon.support.DaemonWrapper \
  -start org.jboss.modules.Main -start-method main \
  -mp EAP_HOME/modules org.jboss.as.process-controller \
  -jboss-home EAP_HOME -jvm $JAVA_HOME/bin/java \
  -mp EAP_HOME/modules -- \
  -Dorg.jboss.boot.log.file=LOG_DIR/host-controller.log \
  -Dlogging.configuration=file:CONF_DIR/logging.properties \
  -Djboss.modules.policy-permissions \
  -server -Xms64m -Xmx512m -XX:MaxPermSize=256m \
  -Djava.net.preferIPv4Stack=true \
  -Djboss.modules.system.pkgs=org.jboss.byteman \
  -Djava.awt.headless=true -- -default-jvm $JAVA_HOME/bin/java

```



### Note

If JBoss EAP 6 is terminated abnormally, such as a JVM crash, Jsvc will automatically restart it. If JBoss EAP 6 is terminated correctly, Jsvc will also stop.

[Report a bug](#)

## Chapter 9. Global Valves

### 9.1. About Valves

A Valve is a Java class that gets inserted into the request processing pipeline for an application. It is inserted in the pipeline before servlet filters. Valves can make changes to the request before passing it on or perform other processing such as authentication or even canceling the request.

Valves can be configured at the server level or at the application level. The only difference is in how they are configured and packaged.

- » Global Valves are configured at the server level and apply to all applications deployed to the server. Instructions to configure Global Valves are located in the *Administration and Configuration Guide* for JBoss EAP.
- » Valves configured at the application level are packaged with the application deployment and only affect the specific application. Instructions to configure Valves at the application level are located in the *Development Guide* for JBoss EAP.

Version 6.1.0 and later supports global valves.

[Report a bug](#)

### 9.2. About Global Valves

A Global Valve is a valve that is inserted into the request processing pipeline of all deployed applications. A valve is made global by being packaged and installed as a static module in JBoss EAP 6. Global valves are configured in the web subsystem.

Only version 6.1.0 and later supports global valves.

For instructions on how to configure Global Valves, see [Section 9.5, “Configure a Global Valve”](#).

[Report a bug](#)

### 9.3. About Authenticator Valves

An authenticator valve is a valve that authenticates the credentials of a request. Such valve is a sub-class of `org.apache.catalina.authenticator.AuthenticatorBase` and overrides the `authenticate(Request request, Response response, LoginConfig config)` method.

This can be used to implement additional authentication schemes.

[Report a bug](#)

### 9.4. Install a Global Valve

Global valves must be packaged and installed as static modules in JBoss EAP 6. This task shows how to install the module.

#### Pre-requisites:

- » The valve must already be created and packaged in a JAR file.

- » A **module.xml** file must already be created for the module.

Refer to [Section 7.1.1, “Modules”](#) for an example of **module.xml** file.

### Procedure 9.1. Install a Global Module

#### 1. Create module installation directory

A directory for the module to be installed in must be created in the modules directory of the application server.

```
EAP_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/MODULENAME/main
```

```
$ mkdir -P EAP_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/MODULENAME/main
```

#### 2. Copy files

Copy the JAR and **module.xml** files to the directory created in step 1.

```
$ cp MyValves.jar module.xml  
EAP_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/MODULENAME/main
```

The valve classes declared in the module are now available to be configured in the web subsystem.

[Report a bug](#)

## 9.5. Configure a Global Valve

Global valves are enabled and configured in the web subsystem. This is done using the JBoss CLI tool.

### Procedure 9.2. Configure a Global Valve

#### 1. Enable the Valve

Use the **add** operation to add a new valve entry.

```
/subsystem=web/valve=VALVENAME:add(module="MODULENAME", class-name="CLASSNAME")
```

You need to specify the following values:

- » **VALVENAME**, the name that is used to refer to this valve in application configuration.
- » **MODULENAME**, the module that contains the value being configured.
- » **CLASSNAME**, the classname of the specific valve in the module.

```
/subsystem=web/valve=clientlimiter:add(module="clientlimitermodule", class-name="org.jboss.samplevalves.RestrictedUserAgentsValve")
```

#### 2. Optionally: Specify Parameters

If the valve has configuration parameters, specify these with the **add-param** operation.

```
/subsystem=web/valve=testvalve:add-param(param-name="NAME", param-value="VALUE")
```

```
/subsystem=web/valve=testvalve:add-param(
    param-name="restrictedUserAgents",
    param-value="^.*MS Web Services Client Protocol.*$"
)
```

The valve is now enabled and configured for all deployed applications.

[Report a bug](#)

# Chapter 10. Application Deployment

## 10.1. About Application Deployment

JBoss EAP 6 features a range of application deployment and configuration options to cater to both administrative and development environments. For administrators, the Management Console and the Management CLI offer the ideal graphical and command line interfaces to manage application deployments in a production environment. For developers, the range of application deployment testing options include a highly configurable filesystem deployment scanner, the use of an IDE such as JBoss Developer Studio, or deployment and undeployment via Maven.

### Administration

#### » Management Console

- [Section 10.2.2, “Enable a Deployed Application Using the Management Console”](#)
- [Section 10.2.3, “Disable a Deployed Application Using the Management Console”](#)

#### » Management CLI

- [Section 10.3.4, “Deploy an Application in a Managed Domain Using the Management CLI”](#)
- [Section 10.3.2, “Deploy an Application in a Standalone Server Using the Management CLI”](#)
- [Section 10.3.5, “Undeploy an Application in a Managed Domain Using the Management CLI”](#)
- [Section 10.3.3, “Undeploy an Application in a Standalone Server Using the Management CLI”](#)
- [Section 10.3.1, “Manage Application Deployment in the Management CLI”](#)

### Development

#### » Deployment Scanner

- [Section 10.5.7, “Configure the Deployment Scanner”](#)
- [Section 10.5.2, “Deploy an Application to a Standalone Server Instance with the Deployment Scanner”](#)
- [Section 10.5.3, “Undeploy an Application from a Standalone Server Instance with the Deployment Scanner”](#)
- [Section 10.5.4, “Redeploy an Application to a Standalone Server Instance with the Deployment Scanner”](#)
- [Section 10.5.8, “Configure the Deployment Scanner with the Management CLI”](#)
- [Section 10.5.6, “Reference for Deployment Scanner Attributes”](#)
- [Section 10.5.5, “Reference for Deployment Scanner Marker Files”](#)

#### » Maven

- [Section 10.6.2, “Deploy an Application with Maven”](#)
- [Section 10.6.3, “Undeploy an Application with Maven”](#)

[Report a bug](#)

## 10.2. Deploy with the Management Console

### 10.2.1. Manage Application Deployment in the Management Console

Deploying applications via the Management Console gives you the benefit of a graphical interface that is easy to use. You can see at a glance what applications are deployed to your server or server groups, and you can disable or delete applications from the content repository as required.

[Report a bug](#)

### 10.2.2. Enable a Deployed Application Using the Management Console

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#)
- » [Section 3.4.7, “Add a Deployment in the Management Console”](#)

#### Procedure 10.1. Enable a Deployed Application using the Management Console

1. Select the **Runtime** tab from the top of the console.
2. A. For a Managed Domain, expand the **Domain** menu.
  - B. For a Standalone server expand the **Server** menu.
3. Select **Manage Deployments**.
4. The deployment method for applications will differ depending on whether you are deploying to a standalone server instance or a managed domain.

##### A. Enable an application on a standalone server instance

The **Available Deployments** table shows all available application deployments and their status.

- a. To enable an application in a standalone server instance, select the application, then click **En/Disable**.
- b. Click **confirm** to confirm that the application will be enabled on the server instance.

##### B. Enable an application in a managed domain

The **Content Repository** tab contains an **Available Deployment Content** table showing all available application deployments and their status.

- a. To enable an application in a Managed Domain, select the application to be deployed. Click **Assign** above the **Available Deployment Content** table.
- b. Check the boxes for each of the server groups that you want the application to be added to and click **Save** to finish.
- c. Select **Server Groups** tab to view the **Server Groups** table. Your application is now deployed to the server groups that you have selected.

## Result

The application is deployed on the relevant server or server group.

[Report a bug](#)

### 10.2.3. Disable a Deployed Application Using the Management Console

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#)
- » [Section 3.4.7, “Add a Deployment in the Management Console”](#)
- » [Section 10.2.2, “Enable a Deployed Application Using the Management Console”](#)

#### Procedure 10.2. Disable a Deployed Application using the Management Console

1.
  - a. Select the **Runtime** tab from the top of the console.
  - b. A. For a Managed Domain, expand the **Domain** menu.  
B. For a Standalone server, expand the **Server** Menu.
  - c. Select **Manage Deployments**.
2. The method used to disable an application will differ depending on whether you are deploying to a standalone server instance or a managed domain.

##### A. Disable a deployed application on a Standalone server instance

The **Available Deployments** table shows all available application deployments and their status.

- a. Select the application to be disabled. Click **En/Disable** to disable the selected application.
- b. Click **Confirm** to confirm that the application will be disabled on the server instance.

##### B. Disable a deployed application on a managed domain

The **Manage Deployments Content** screen contains a **Content Repository** tab. The **Available Deployment Content** table shows all available application deployments and their status.

- a. Select the **Server Groups** tab to view the server groups and the status of their deployed applications.
- b. Select the name of the server in the **Server Group** table to undeploy an application from. Click **View** to see the applications.
- c. Select the application and click **En/Disable** to disable the application for the selected server.
- d. Click **Confirm** to confirm that the application will be disabled on the server instance.

- e. Repeat as required for other server groups. The application status is confirmed for each server group in the **Group Deployments** table for that server group.

## Result

The application is undeployed from the relevant server or server group.

[Report a bug](#)

### 10.2.4. Undeploy an Application Using the Management Console

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#)
- » [Section 3.4.7, “Add a Deployment in the Management Console”](#)
- » [Section 10.2.2, “Enable a Deployed Application Using the Management Console”](#)
- » [Section 10.2.3, “Disable a Deployed Application Using the Management Console”](#)

#### Procedure 10.3. Undeploy an Application Using the Management Console

1.
  - a. Select the **Runtime** tab from the top of the console.
  - b. A. For a Managed Domain, expand the **Domain** menu.
    - B. For a Standalone server, expand the **Server** Menu.
  - c. Select **Manage Deployments**.
2. The method used to undeploy an application will differ depending on whether you are undeploying from a standalone server instance or a managed domain.

##### A. Undeploy a deployed application from a Standalone server instance

The **Available Deployments** table shows all available application deployments and their status.

- a. Select the application to be undeployed. Click **Remove** to undeploy the selected application.
- b. Click **Confirm** to confirm that the application will be undeployed on the server instance.

##### B. Undeploy a deployed application from a managed domain

The **Manage Deployments Content** screen contains a **Content Repository** tab. The **Available Deployment Content** table shows all available application deployments and their status.

- a. Select the **Server Groups** tab to view the server groups and the status of their deployed applications.
- b. Select the name of the server in the **Server Group** table to undeploy an application from. Click **View** to see the applications.
- c. Select the application and click **Remove** to undeploy the application for the selected server.

- d. Click **Confirm** to confirm that the application will be undeployed on the server instance.
- e. Repeat as required for other server groups. The application status is confirmed for each server group in the **Group Deployments** table for that server group.

## Result

The application is undeployed from the relevant server or server group. On a standalone instance the deployment content is also removed. On a managed domain, the deployment content remains in the content repository and is only undeployed from the server group.

[Report a bug](#)

## 10.3. Deploy with the Management CLI

### 10.3.1. Manage Application Deployment in the Management CLI

Deploying applications via the Management CLI gives you the benefit of single command line interface with the ability to create and run deployment scripts. You can use this scripting ability to configure specific application deployment and management scenarios. You can manage the deployment status of a single server in the case of a standalone instance, or an entire network of servers in the case of a managed domain.

[Report a bug](#)

### 10.3.2. Deploy an Application in a Standalone Server Using the Management CLI

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)
- » [Section 3.5.4, “Connect to a Managed Server Instance Using the Management CLI”](#)

#### Procedure 10.4. Deploy an Application in a Standalone Server

##### » Run the `deploy` command

From the Management CLI, enter the `deploy` command with the path to the application deployment.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] deploy /path/to/test-application.war
```

Note that a successful deploy does not produce any output to the CLI.

## Result

The specified application is now deployed in the standalone server.

[Report a bug](#)

### 10.3.3. Undeploy an Application in a Standalone Server Using the Management CLI

## Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)
- » [Section 3.5.4, “Connect to a Managed Server Instance Using the Management CLI”](#)
- » [Section 10.3.2, “Deploy an Application in a Standalone Server Using the Management CLI”](#)

## Procedure 10.5. Undeploy an Application in a Standalone Server

By default the **undeploy** command will undeploy *and* delete the deployment content from a standalone instance of JBoss EAP. To retain the deployment content, add the parameter **--keep-content**.

### » Run the undeploy command

To undeploy the application and delete the deployment content, enter the Management CLI **undeploy** command with the filename of the application deployment.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] undeploy test-application.war
```

To undeploy the application, but retain the deployment content, enter the Management CLI **undeploy** command with the filename of the application deployment and the parameter **--keep-content**.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] undeploy test-application.war --keep-content
```

## Result

The specified application is now undeployed. Note that the **undeploy** command does not produce any output to the Management CLI if it is successful.

[Report a bug](#)

## 10.3.4. Deploy an Application in a Managed Domain Using the Management CLI

## Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)
- » [Section 3.5.4, “Connect to a Managed Server Instance Using the Management CLI”](#)

## Procedure 10.6. Deploy an Application in a Managed Domain

### » Run the deploy command

From the Management CLI, enter the **deploy** command with the path to the application deployment. Include the **--all-server-groups** parameter to deploy to all server groups.

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] deploy /path/to/test-application.war --all-server-groups
```

- A. Alternatively, define specific server groups for the deployment with the **--server-groups** parameter.

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] deploy /path/to/test-application.war --server-groups=server_group_1,server_group_2
```

Note that a successful deploy does not produce any output to the CLI.

## Result

The specified application is now deployed to a server group in your managed domain.

[Report a bug](#)

### 10.3.5. Undeploy an Application in a Managed Domain Using the Management CLI

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)
- » [Section 3.5.4, “Connect to a Managed Server Instance Using the Management CLI”](#)
- » [Section 10.3.4, “Deploy an Application in a Managed Domain Using the Management CLI”](#)

#### Procedure 10.7. Undeploy an Application in a Managed Domain

- » **Run the undeploy command**

From the Management CLI, enter the **undeploy** command with the filename of the application deployment. The application can be undeployed from any server group that it was originally deployed to with the addition of the **--all-relevant-server-groups** parameter.

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] undeploy test-application.war --all-relevant-server-groups
```

Note that a successful undeploy does not produce any output to the CLI.

## Result

The specified application is now undeployed.

[Report a bug](#)

### 10.4. Deploy with the HTTP API

#### 10.4.1. Deploy an application using the HTTP API

##### Summary

Applications can be deployed via the HTTP API using the following instructions.

#### Procedure 10.8. Deploy an application using `DeployDmrToJson.java`

1. Use `DeployDmrToJson.java` to generate a request to JSON to deploy your application.

**Example 10.1. `DeployDmrToJson.java` class**

```

import org.jboss.dmr.ModelNode;
import java.net.URL;

public class DeployDmrToJson
{
    public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception
    {
        if(args.length < 1)
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("The first argument must
be a URL");

        URL url = new URL(args[0]);
        String[] pathElements = url.getFile().split("/");
        String name = pathElements[pathElements.length-1];

        ModelNode deploy = getDeploy(url.toExternalForm(), name);
        ModelNode undeploy = getUndeploy(name);

        System.out.println("Deploy\n-----
-\n");
        System.out.println("Formatted:\n" +
deploy.toJSONString(false));
        System.out.println("Unformatted:\n" +
deploy.toJSONString(true));
        System.out.println("\nUndeploy\n-----
--\n");
        System.out.println("Formatted:\n" +
undeploy.toJSONString(false));
        System.out.println("Unformatted:\n" +
undeploy.toJSONString(true));
    }

    public static ModelNode getUndeploy(String name)
    {
        ModelNode undeployRequest = new ModelNode();
        undeployRequest.get("operation").set("undeploy");
        undeployRequest.get("address", "deployment").set(name);

        ModelNode removeRequest = new ModelNode();
        removeRequest.get("operation").set("remove");
        removeRequest.get("address", "deployment").set(name);

        ModelNode composite = new ModelNode();
        composite.get("operation").set("composite");
        composite.get("address").setEmptyList();
        final ModelNode steps = composite.get("steps");
        steps.add(undeployRequest);
        steps.add(removeRequest);
        return composite;
    }

    public static ModelNode getDeploy(String url, String name)
    {
        ModelNode deployRequest = new ModelNode();

```

```

deployRequest.get("operation").set("deploy");
deployRequest.get("address", "deployment").set(name);

ModelNode addRequest = new ModelNode();
addRequest.get("operation").set("add");
addRequest.get("address", "deployment").set(name);
addRequest.get("content").get(0).get("url").set(url);

ModelNode composite = new ModelNode();
composite.get("operation").set("composite");
composite.get("address").setEmptyList();
final ModelNode steps = composite.get("steps");
steps.add(addRequest);
steps.add(deployRequest);
return composite;
}
}

```

2. Run the class using a command based on the following instructions:

#### **Example 10.2. Execute command**

```

java -cp .:$JBoss_HOME/modules/org/jboss/dmr/main/jboss-
dmr-1.1.1.Final-redhat-1.jar DeployDmrToJson \
file:///Users/username/support/helloWorld.war/dist/helloWorld.war

```

3. When the class is run the following command formats will be displayed. Use either the **deploy** or **undeploy** command relevant to your requirements.

#### **Example 10.3. Deploy and undeploy command**

Deploy

-----

Formatted:

```

{
    "operation" : "composite",
    "address" : [],
    "steps" : [
        {
            "operation" : "add",
            "address" : {"deployment" : "helloWorld.war"},
            "content" : [{"url" :
"file:/Users/username/support/helloWorld.war/dist/helloWorld.war"
}]
        },
        {
            "operation" : "deploy",
            "address" : {"deployment" : "helloWorld.war"}
        }
    ]
}

```

```

        ]
    }
Unformatted:
{"operation" : "composite", "address" : [], "steps" :
[{"operation" : "add", "address" : {"deployment" :
"helloWorld.war"}, "content" : [{"url" :
"file:/Users/username/support/helloworld.war/dist/helloworld.war"
}]}], {"operation" : "deploy", "address" : {"deployment" :
"helloWorld.war"}]}]

Undeploy
-----
Formatted:
{
    "operation" : "composite",
    "address" : [],
    "steps" : [
        {
            "operation" : "undeploy",
            "address" : {"deployment" : "helloWorld.war"}
        },
        {
            "operation" : "remove",
            "address" : {"deployment" : "helloWorld.war"}
        }
    ]
}
Unformatted:
{"operation" : "composite", "address" : [], "steps" :
[{"operation" : "undeploy", "address" : {"deployment" :
"helloWorld.war"}}, {"operation" : "remove", "address" :
{"deployment" : "helloWorld.war"}]}]

```

4. Use the following command to deploy or undeploy an application. Replace **json request** with the request outlined above.

#### Example 10.4. Execute command

```
curl -f --digest -u "<user>:<pass>" -H Content-Type:\napplication/json -d '<json request>'\"http://localhost:9990/management"
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 10.5. Deploy with the Deployment Scanner

### 10.5.1. Manage Application Deployment in the Deployment Scanner

Deploying applications to a standalone server instance via the deployment scanner allows you to build and test applications in a manner suited for rapid development cycles. You can configure the

deployment scanner to suit your needs for deployment frequency and behavior for a variety of application types.

[Report a bug](#)

## 10.5.2. Deploy an Application to a Standalone Server Instance with the Deployment Scanner

### Prerequisites

- » [Section 2.1.1, “Start JBoss EAP 6”](#)

### Summary

This task shows a method for deploying applications to a standalone server instance with the deployment scanner. As indicated in the [Section 10.1, “About Application Deployment”](#) topic, this method is retained for the convenience of developers, where the Management Console and Management CLI methods are recommended for application management under production environments.

### Procedure 10.9. Use the Deployment Scanner to Deploy Applications

#### 1. Copy content to the deployment folder

Copy the application file to the deployment folder found at `EAP_HOME/standalone/deployments/`.

#### 2. Deployment scanning modes

There are two application deployment methods. You can choose between automatic and manual deployment scanner modes. Before starting either of the deployment methods, read [Section 10.5.8, “Configure the Deployment Scanner with the Management CLI”](#).

##### A. Automatic deployment

The deployment scanner picks up a change to the state of the folder and creates a marker file as defined in [Section 10.5.8, “Configure the Deployment Scanner with the Management CLI”](#).

##### B. Manual deployment

The deployment scanner requires a marker file to trigger the deployment process. The following example uses the Unix `touch` command to create a new `.dodeploy` file.

#### Example 10.5. Deploy with the touch command

```
[user@host bin]$ touch
$EAP_HOME/standalone/deployments/example.war.dodeploy
```

### Result

The application file is deployed to the application server. A marker file is created in the deployment folder to indicate the successful deployment, and the application is flagged as **Enabled** in the Management Console.

**Example 10.6. Deployment folder contents after deployment**

```
example.war
example.war.deployed
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 10.5.3. Undeploy an Application from a Standalone Server Instance with the Deployment Scanner

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 2.1.1, “Start JBoss EAP 6”](#)
- » [Section 10.5.2, “Deploy an Application to a Standalone Server Instance with the Deployment Scanner”](#)

#### Summary

This task shows a method for undeploying applications from a standalone server instance that have been deployed with the deployment scanner. As indicated in the [Section 10.1, “About Application Deployment”](#) topic, this method is retained for the convenience of developers, where the Management Console and Management CLI methods are recommended for application management under production environments.



#### Note

The deployment scanner should not be used in conjunction with other deployment methods for application management. Applications removed from the application server by the management console will be removed from the runtime without affecting the marker files or application contained in the deployment directory. To minimize the risk of accidental redeployment or other errors, use the Management CLI and Management Console for administration in production environments.

### Procedure 10.10. Undeploy an Application using one of these Methods

#### » Undeploy the application

There are two methods to undeploy the application depending on whether you want to delete the application from the deployment folder or only alter its deployment status.

##### A. Undeploy by deleting the marker file

Delete the deployed application's **example.war.deployed** marker file to trigger the deployment scanner to begin undeploying the application from the runtime.

#### Result

The deployment scanner undeploys the application and creates a **example.war.undeployed** marker file. The application remains in the deployment folder.

## B. Undeploy by removing the application

Remove the application from the deployment directory to trigger the deployment scanner to begin undeploying the application from the runtime.

### Result

The deployment scanner undeploys the application and creates a **filename.filetype.undeployed** marker file. The application is not present in the deployment folder.

### Result

The application file is undeployed from the application server and is not visible in the **Deployments** screen of the Management Console.

[Report a bug](#)

## 10.5.4. Redeploy an Application to a Standalone Server Instance with the Deployment Scanner

### Prerequisites

- » [Section 2.1.1, “Start JBoss EAP 6”](#)
- » [Section 10.5.2, “Deploy an Application to a Standalone Server Instance with the Deployment Scanner”](#)

### Summary

This task shows a method for redeploying applications to a standalone server instance that have been deployed with the deployment scanner. As indicated in the [Section 10.1, “About Application Deployment”](#) topic, this method is retained for the convenience of developers, where the Management Console and Management CLI methods are recommended for application management under production environments.

## Procedure 10.11. Redeploy an Application to a Standalone Server

### » Redeploy the application

There are three possible methods to redeploy an application deployed with the deployment scanner. These methods trigger the deployment scanner to initiate a deployment cycle, and can be chosen to suit personal preference.

#### A. Redeploy by altering the marker file

Trigger the deployment scanner redeployment by altering the marker file's access and modification timestamp. In the following Linux example, a Unix **touch** command is used.

#### Example 10.7. Redeploy with the Unix touch command

```
[user@host bin]$ touch
EAP_HOME/standalone/deployments/example.war.dodeploy
```

## Result

The deployment scanner detects a change in the marker file and redeloys the application. A new `.deployed` file marker replaces the previous.

### B. Redeploy by creating a new `.dodeploy` marker file

Trigger the deployment scanner redeployment by creating a new `.dodeploy` marker file. Refer to the manual deployment instructions in [Section 10.5.2, “Deploy an Application to a Standalone Server Instance with the Deployment Scanner”](#).

### C. Redeploy by deleting the marker file

As described in [Section 10.5.5, “Reference for Deployment Scanner Marker Files”](#), deleting a deployed application's `.deployed` marker file will trigger an undeployment and create an `.undeployed` marker. Deleting the undeployment marker will trigger the deployment cycle again. Refer to [Section 10.5.3, “Undeploy an Application from a Standalone Server Instance with the Deployment Scanner”](#) for further information.

## Result

The application file is redeployed.

[Report a bug](#)

## 10.5.5. Reference for Deployment Scanner Marker Files

### Marker files

Marker files are a part of the deployment scanner subsystem. These files mark the status of an application within the deployment directory of the standalone server instance. A marker file has the same name as the application, with the file suffix indicating the state of the application's deployment. The following table defines the types and responses for each marker file.

#### Example 10.8. Marker file example

The following example shows the marker file for a successfully deployed instance of an application called `testapplication.war`.

`testapplication.war.deployed`

**Table 10.1. Marker filetype definitions**

Filename Suffix	Origin	Description
<code>.dodeploy</code>	User generated	Indicates that the content should be deployed or redeployed into the runtime.
<code>.skipdeploy</code>	User generated	Disables auto-deploy of an application while present. Useful as a method of temporarily blocking the auto-deployment of exploded content, preventing the risk of incomplete content edits pushing live. Can be used with zipped content, although the scanner detects in-progress changes to zipped content and waits until completion.

Filename Suffix	Origin	Description
.isdeploying	System generated	Indicates the initiation of deployment. The marker file will be deleted when the deployment process completes.
.deployed	System generated	Indicates that the content has been deployed. The content will be undeployed if this file is deleted.
.failed	System generated	Indicates deployment failure. The marker file contains information about the cause of failure. If the marker file is deleted, the content will be visible to the auto-deployment again.
.isundeploying	System generated	Indicates a response to a .deployed file deletion. The content will be undeployed and the marker will be automatically deleted upon completion.
.undeployed	System generated	Indicates that the content has been undeployed. Deletion of the marker file has no impact to content redeployment.
.pending	System generated	Indicates that deployment instructions will be sent to the server pending resolution of a detected issue. This marker serves as a global deployment road-block. The scanner will not instruct the server to deploy or undeploy any other content while this condition exists.

[Report a bug](#)

### 10.5.6. Reference for Deployment Scanner Attributes

The deployment scanner contains the following attributes that are exposed to the Management CLI and able to be configured using the **write-attribute** operation. For more information on configuration options, refer to the topic [Section 10.5.8, “Configure the Deployment Scanner with the Management CLI”](#).

**Table 10.2. Deployment Scanner Attributes**

Name	Description	Type	Default Value
auto-deploy-exploded	Allows the automatic deployment of exploded content without requiring a .dodeploy marker file. Recommended for only basic development scenarios to prevent exploded application deployment from occurring during changes by the developer or operating system.	Boolean	False
auto-deploy-xml	Allows the automatic deployment of XML content without requiring a .dodeploy marker file.	Boolean	True
auto-deploy-zipped	Allows the automatic deployment of zipped content without requiring a .dodeploy marker file.	Boolean	True
deployment-timeout	The time value in seconds for the deployment scanner to allow a deployment attempt before being cancelled.	Long	600

Name	Description	Type	Default Value
<b>path</b>	Defines the actual filesystem path to be scanned. If the <b>relative-to</b> attribute is specified, the <b>path</b> value acts as a relative addition to that directory or path.	String	deployment.s
<b>relative-to</b>	Reference to a filesystem path defined in the <b>paths</b> section of the server configuration XML file.	String	jboss.server.base.dir
<b>scan-enabled</b>	Allows the automatic scanning for applications by <b>scan-interval</b> and at startup.	Boolean	True
<b>scan-interval</b>	The time interval in milliseconds between scans of the repository. A value of less than 1 restricts the scanner to operate only at startup.	Int	5000

[Report a bug](#)

### 10.5.7. Configure the Deployment Scanner

The deployment scanner can be configured using the Management Console or the Management CLI. You can create a new deployment scanner or manage the existing scanner attributes. These include the scanning interval, the location of the deployment folder, and the application file types that will trigger a deployment.

[Report a bug](#)

### 10.5.8. Configure the Deployment Scanner with the Management CLI

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

#### Summary

While there are multiple methods of configuring the deployment scanner, the Management CLI can be used to expose and modify the attributes by use of batch scripts or in real time. You can modify the behavior of the deployment scanner by use of the **read-attribute** and **write-attribute** global command line operations. Further information about the deployment scanner attributes are defined in the topic [Section 10.5.6, “Reference for Deployment Scanner Attributes”](#).

The deployment scanner is a subsystem of JBoss EAP 6, and can be viewed in the `standalone.xml`.

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:deployment-scanner:1.1">
    <deployment-scanner path="deployments" relative-
        to="jboss.server.base.dir" scan-interval="5000"/>
</subsystem>
```

### Procedure 10.12. Configure the Deployment Scanner

1. **Determine the deployment scanner attributes to configure**

Configuring the deployment scanner via the Management CLI requires that you first expose the correct attribute names. You can do this with the **read-resources** operation at either the root node, or by using the **cd** command to change into the subsystem child node. You can also display the attributes with the **ls** command at this level.

#### A. Expose the deployment scanner attributes with the read-resource operation

Use the **read-resource** operation to expose the attributes defined by the default deployment scanner resource.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]/subsystem=deployment-
scanner/scanner=default:read-resource
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "auto-deploy-expoded" => false,
        "auto-deploy-xml" => true,
        "auto-deploy-zipped" => true,
        "deployment-timeout" => 600,
        "path" => "deployments",
        "relative-to" => "jboss.server.base.dir",
        "scan-enabled" => true,
        "scan-interval" => 5000
    }
}
```

#### B. Expose the deployment scanner attributes with the ls command

Use the **ls** command with the **-l** optional argument to display a table of results that include the subsystem node attributes, values, and type. You can learn more about the **ls** command and its arguments by exposing the CLI help entry by typing **ls --help**. For more information about the help menu in the Management CLI, refer to the topic [Section 3.5.5, “Obtain Help with the Management CLI”](#).

ATTRIBUTE	VALUE	TYPE
auto-deploy-expoded	false	BOOLEAN
auto-deploy-xml	true	BOOLEAN
auto-deploy-zipped	true	BOOLEAN
deployment-timeout	600	LONG
path	deployments	STRING
relative-to	jboss.server.base.dir	STRING
scan-enabled	true	BOOLEAN
scan-interval	5000	INT

#### 2. Configure the deployment scanner with the write-attribute operation

Once you have determined the name of the attribute to modify, use the **write-attribute** to specify the attribute name and the new value to write to it. The following examples are all run at the child node level, which can be accessed by using the **cd** command and tab completion to expose and change into the default scanner node.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] cd subsystem=deployment-
scanner/scanner=default
```

### a. Enable automatic deployment of exploded content

Use the **write-attribute** operation to enable the automatic deployment of exploded application content.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 scanner=default] :write-attribute(name=auto-deploy-exploded,value=true)
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

### b. Disable the automatic deployment of XML content

Use the **write-attribute** operation to disable the automatic deployment of XML application content.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 scanner=default] :write-attribute(name=auto-deploy-xml,value=false)
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

### c. Disable the automatic deployment of zipped content

Use the **write-attribute** command to disable the automatic deployment of zipped application content.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 scanner=default] :write-attribute(name=auto-deploy-zipped,value=false)
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

### d. Configure the path attribute

Use the **write-attribute** operation to modify the path attribute, substituting the example **newpathname** value for the new path name for the deployment scanner to monitor. Note that the server will require a reload to take effect.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 scanner=default] :write-attribute(name=path,value=newpathname)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "response-headers" => {
        "operation-requires-reload" => true,
        "process-state" => "reload-required"
    }
}
```

### e. Configure the relative path attribute

Use the **write-attribute** operation to modify the relative reference to the filesystem path defined in the paths section of the configuration XML file. Note that the server will require a reload to take effect.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 scanner=default] :write-attribute(name=relative-to,value=new.relative.dir)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "response-headers" => {
```

```

        "operation-requires-reload" => true,
        "process-state" => "reload-required"
    }
}

```

#### f. Disable the deployment scanner

Use the **write-attribute** operation to disable the deployment scanner by setting the **scan-enabled** value to false.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 scanner=default] :write-
attribute(name=scan-enabled,value=false)
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

#### g. Change the scan interval

Use the **write-attribute** operation to modify the scan interval time from 5000 milliseconds to 10000 milliseconds.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 scanner=default] :write-
attribute(name=scan-interval,value=10000)
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

### Result

Your configuration changes are saved to the deployment scanner.

[Report a bug](#)

## 10.6. Deploy with Maven

### 10.6.1. Manage Application Deployment with Maven

Deploying applications via Maven allows you to incorporate a deployment cycle as part of your existing development workflow.

[Report a bug](#)

### 10.6.2. Deploy an Application with Maven

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 2.1.1, “Start JBoss EAP 6”](#)

#### Summary

This task shows a method for deploying applications with Maven. The example provided uses the **jboss-helloworld.war** application found in the JBoss EAP 6 Quickstarts collection. The **helloworld** project contains a POM file which initializes the **jboss-as-maven-plugin**. This plug-in provides simple operations to deploy and undeploy applications to and from the application server.

#### Procedure 10.13. Deploy an application with Maven

1. Open a terminal session and navigate to the directory containing the quickstart examples.

**Example 10.9. Change into the helloworld application directory**

```
[localhost]$ cd /QUICKSTART_HOME/helloworld
```

2. Run the Maven deploy command to deploy the application. If the application is already running, it will be redeployed.

```
[localhost]$ mvn package jboss-as:deploy
```

3. View the results.

- A. The deployment can be confirmed by viewing the operation logs in the terminal window.

**Example 10.10. Maven confirmation for helloworld application**

```
[INFO] -----  
-----  
[INFO] BUILD SUCCESS  
[INFO] -----  
-----  
[INFO] Total time: 32.629s  
[INFO] Finished at: Fri Mar 14 09:09:50 EDT 2014  
[INFO] Final Memory: 23M/204M  
[INFO] -----  
-----
```

- B. The deployment can also be confirmed in the status stream of the active application server instance.

**Example 10.11. Application server confirmation for helloworld application**

```
09:09:49,167 INFO [org.jboss.as.repository] (management-handler-thread - 1) JBAS014900: Content added at location /home/username/EAP_HOME/standalone/data/content/32/4b4ef9a4bbe7206d3674a89807203a2092fc70/content  
09:09:49,175 INFO [org.jboss.as.server.deployment] (MSC service thread 1-7) JBAS015876: Starting deployment of "jboss-helloworld.war" (runtime-name: "jboss-helloworld.war")  
09:09:49,563 INFO [org.jboss.weld.deployer] (MSC service thread 1-8) JBAS016002: Processing weld deployment jboss-helloworld.war  
09:09:49,611 INFO [org.jboss.weld.deployer] (MSC service thread 1-1) JBAS016005: Starting Services for CDI deployment: jboss-helloworld.war  
09:09:49,680 INFO [org.jboss.weld.Version] (MSC service thread 1-1) WELD-000900 1.1.17 (redhat)  
09:09:49,705 INFO [org.jboss.weld.deployer] (MSC service
```

```

thread 1-2) JBoss EAP 6.3.0.Final-20140922_1255 (JBoss Seam 3.0.0.Final)
JBAS016008: Starting weld service for deployment jboss-helloworld.war
09:09:50,080 INFO [org.jboss.web] (ServerService Thread Pool -- 55) JBAS018210: Register web context: /jboss-helloworld
09:09:50,425 INFO [org.jboss.as.server] (management-handler-thread - 1) JBAS018559: Deployed "jboss-helloworld.war"
(runtime-name : "jboss-helloworld.war")

```

## Result

The application is deployed to the application server.

[Report a bug](#)

### 10.6.3. Undeploy an Application with Maven

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 2.1.1, “Start JBoss EAP 6”](#)

#### Summary

This task shows a method for undeploying applications with Maven. The example provided uses the **jboss-helloworld.war** application found in the JBoss EAP 6 Quickstarts collection. The **helloworld** project contains a POM file which initializes the **jboss-as-maven-plugin**. This plug-in provides simple operations to deploy and undeploy applications to and from the application server.

#### Procedure 10.14. Undeploy an Application with Maven

1. Open a terminal session and navigate to the directory containing the quickstart examples.

##### Example 10.12. Change into the helloworld application directory

```
[localhost]$ cd /QUICKSTART_HOME/helloworld
```

2. Run the Maven undeploy command to undeploy the application.

```
[localhost]$ mvn jboss-as:undeploy
```

3. View the results.

- A. The undeployment can be confirmed by viewing the operation logs in the terminal window.

##### Example 10.13. Maven confirmation for undeploy of helloworld application

```

[INFO] -----
-----
[INFO] BUILD SUCCESSFUL
[INFO] -----
-----
```

```
[INFO] Total time: 1 second
[INFO] Finished at: Mon Oct 10 17:33:02 EST 2011
[INFO] Final Memory: 11M/212M
[INFO] -----
-----
```

- B. The undeployment can also be confirmed in the status stream of the active application server instance.

#### **Example 10.14. Application server confirmation for undeploy of helloworld application**

```
09:51:40,512 INFO [org.jboss.web] (ServerService Thread Pool - - 69) JBAS018224: Unregister web context: /jboss-helloworld
09:51:40,522 INFO [org.jboss.weld.deployer] (MSC service thread 1-3) JBAS016009: Stopping weld service for deployment jboss-helloworld.war
09:51:40,536 INFO [org.jboss.as.server.deployment] (MSC service thread 1-1) JBAS015877: Stopped deployment jboss-helloworld.war (runtime-name: jboss-helloworld.war) in 27ms
09:51:40,621 INFO [org.jboss.as.repository] (management-handler-thread - 10) JBAS014901: Content removed from location /home/username/EAP_HOME/jboss-eap-6.3/standalone/data/content/44/e1f3c55c84b777b0fc201d69451223c09c9da5/content
09:51:40,621 INFO [org.jboss.as.server] (management-handler-thread - 10) JBAS018558: Undeployed "jboss-helloworld.war" (runtime-name: "jboss-helloworld.war")
```

#### **Result**

The application is undeployed from the application server.

[Report a bug](#)

## **10.7. Control the order of Deployed Applications on JBoss EAP 6**

JBoss EAP 6 offers fine grained control over the order of deployment of applications when the server is started. Strict order of deployment of applications present in multiple ear files can be enabled along with persistence of the order after a restart.

#### **Procedure 10.15. Control the order of deployment in EAP 6.0.X**

1. Create CLI scripts that will deploy and undeploy the applications in sequential order when the server is started/stopped.
2. CLI also supports the concept of batch mode which allows you to group commands and operations and execute them together as an atomic unit. If at least one of the commands or operations fails, all the other successfully executed commands and operations in the batch are rolled back.

#### **Procedure 10.16. Control the order of deployment in EAP 6.1.X and later**

A new feature in EAP 6.1.X and later named Inter Deployment Dependencies allows you to declare dependencies between top level deployments.

1. Create (if it doesn't exist) a **jboss-all.xml** file in the **app.ear/META-INF** folder, where **app.ear** is the application archive that depends on another application archive to be deployed before it is.
2. Make a **jboss-deployment-dependencies** entry in this file as shown below. Note that in the listing below, **framework.ear** is the dependency application archive that should be deployed before **app.ear** application archive.

```
<jboss xmlns="urn:jboss:1.0">
  <jboss-deployment-dependencies xmlns="urn:jboss:deployment-
dependencies:1.0">
    <dependency name="framework.ear" />
  </jboss-deployment-dependencies>
</jboss>
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 10.8. Deployment Descriptor Overrides

A new feature in EAP 6.1.x allows you to override deployment descriptors, JARs, classes, JSP pages, and other files at runtime. A *deployment overlay* represents a ruleset of files that must be overridden in the archive. It also provides links to the new files that must be used instead of the overridden ones. If the file being overridden is not present in the deployment archive, it will be added back to the deployment.

### Procedure 10.17. Override the deployment descriptor using the Management CLI

The following steps assume that you already have a deployed application called **app.war** and you wish to override its **WEB-INF/web.xml** file with another **web.xml** file located in **/home/user/web.xml**.

1. Add a deployment overlay and add content to it. You can achieve this in the following two ways:

#### A. Using DMR tree

- a. **/deployment-overlay=myoverlay:add**
- b. **/deployment-overlay=myoverlay/content=WEB-
INF\web.xml:add(content={url=file:///home/user/web.xml})**

You can also add more content rules using the second statement.

#### B. Using convenience methods

```
deployment-overlay add --name=myoverlay --content=WEB-
INF/web.xml=/home/user/web.xml
```

2. Link the overlay to a deployment archive. You can achieve this in the following two ways:

#### A. Using DMR tree

```
/deployment-overlay=myoverlay/deployment=app.war: add
```

## B. Using convenience methods

```
deployment-overlay link --name=myoverlay --deployments=app.war
```

You may specify multiple archive names separated by commas.

Note that the deployment archive name need not exist on the server. You are specifying the name, but not yet linking it to an actual deployment.

## 3. Redeploy the application

```
/deployment=app.war: redeploy
```

[Report a bug](#)

# Chapter 11. Securing JBoss EAP 6

## 11.1. About the Security Subsystem

The **security** subsystem provides security infrastructure for applications. The subsystem uses a security context associated with the current request to expose the capabilities of the authentication manager, authorization manager, audit manager, and mapping manager to the relevant container.

The **security** subsystem is preconfigured by default, so security elements rarely need to be changed. The only security element that may need to be changed is whether to use *deep-copy-subject-mode*. In most cases, administrators will focus on the configuration of *security domains*.

### Deep Copy Mode

See [Section 11.4, “About Deep Copy Subject Mode”](#) for details about deep copy subject mode.

### Security Domain

A security domain is a set of *Java Authentication and Authorization Service (JAAS)* declarative security configurations which one or more applications use to control authentication, authorization, auditing, and mapping. Three security domains are included by default: **jboss-ejb-policy**, **jboss-web-policy**, and **other**. You can create as many security domains as you need to accommodate your application requirements. See [Section 11.6.12, “Use a Security Domain in Your Application”](#) for details about security domain.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.2. About the Structure of the Security Subsystem

The security subsystem is configured in the managed domain or standalone configuration file. Most of the configuration elements can be configured using the web-based management console or the console-based management CLI. The following is the XML representing an example security subsystem.

### Example 11.1. Example Security Subsystem Configuration

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:security:1.2">
    <security-management>
        ...
    </security-management>
    <security-domains>
        <security-domain name="other" cache-type="default">
            <authentication>
                <login-module code="Remoting" flag="optional">
                    <module-option name="password-stacking"
value="useFirstPass"/>
                </login-module>
                <login-module code="RealmUsersRoles" flag="required">
                    <module-option name="usersProperties"
value="${jboss.domain.config.dir}/application-users.properties"/>
                    <module-option name="rolesProperties"
value="${jboss.domain.config.dir}/application-roles.properties"/>
            </authentication>
        </security-domain>
    </security-domains>
</subsystem>
```

```

        <module-option name="realm"
value="ApplicationRealm"/>
        <module-option name="password-stacking"
value="useFirstPass"/>
    </login-module>
</authentication>
</security-domain>
<security-domain name="jboss-web-policy" cache-type="default">
    <authorization>
        <policy-module code="Delegating" flag="required"/>
    </authorization>
</security-domain>
<security-domain name="jboss-ejb-policy" cache-type="default">
    <authorization>
        <policy-module code="Delegating" flag="required"/>
    </authorization>
</security-domain>
</security-domains>
<vault>
    ...
</vault>
</subsystem>

```

The **<security-management>**, **<subject-factory>** and **<security-properties>** elements are not present in the default configuration. The **<subject-factory>** and **<security-properties>** elements have been deprecated in JBoss EAP 6.1 onwards.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.3. Configure the Security Subsystem

You can configure the security subsystem using the Management CLI or web-based Management Console.

Each top-level element within the security subsystem contains information about a different aspect of the security configuration. Refer to [Section 11.2, “About the Structure of the Security Subsystem”](#) for an example of security subsystem configuration.

### **<security-management>**

This section overrides high-level behaviors of the security subsystem. It contains an optional setting **deep-copy-subject-mode**, that specifies whether to copy or link to security tokens, for additional thread safety.

### **<security-domains>**

A container element which holds multiple security domains. A security domain may contain information about authentication, authorization, mapping, and auditing modules, as well as JASPI authentication and JSSE configuration. Your application would specify a security domain to manage its security information.

### **<security-properties>**

Contains names and values of properties which are set on the `java.security.Security` class.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.4. About Deep Copy Subject Mode

If *deep copy subject mode* is disabled (the default), copying a security data structure makes a reference to the original, rather than copying the entire data structure. This behavior is more efficient, but is prone to data corruption if multiple threads with the same identity clear the subject by means of a flush or logout operation.

Deep copy subject mode causes a complete copy of the data structure and all its associated data to be made, as long as they are marked cloneable. This is more thread-safe, but less efficient.

Deep copy subject mode is configured as part of the security subsystem.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.5. Enable Deep Copy Subject Mode

You can enable deep copy security mode from the web-based management console or the management CLI.

### Procedure 11.1. Enable Deep Copy Security Mode from the Management Console

- 1. Log into the Management Console.**

See [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#).

- 2. Managed Domain: Select the appropriate profile.**

In a managed domain, the security subsystem is configured per profile, and you can enable or disable the deep copy security mode independently in each profile.

To select a profile, click **Configuration** at the top of the screen, and then select a profile from the **Profile** drop down box at the top left.

- 3. Open the Security Subsystem configuration menu.**

Expand the **Security** menu, then select **Security Subsystem**.

- 4. Enable Deep Copy Subject mode.**

Click **Edit**. Check the box beside **Deep Copy Subjects** to enable deep copy subject mode.

### Enable Deep Copy Subject Mode Using the Management CLI

If you prefer to use the management CLI to enable this option, use one of the following commands.

#### Example 11.2. Managed Domain

```
/profile=full/subsystem=security/:write-attribute(name=deep-copy-subject-mode,value=TRUE)
```

### Example 11.3. Standalone Server

```
/subsystem=security/:write-attribute(name=deep-copy-subject-mode,value=TRUE)
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.6. Security Domains

### 11.6.1. About Security Domains

Security domains are part of the JBoss EAP 6 security subsystem. All security configuration is now managed centrally, by the domain controller of a managed domain, or by the standalone server.

A security domain consists of configurations for authentication, authorization, security mapping, and auditing. It implements *Java Authentication and Authorization Service* (JAAS) declarative security.

Authentication refers to verifying the identity of a user. In security terminology, this user is referred to as a *principal*. Although authentication and authorization are different, many of the included authentication modules also handle authorization.

Authorization is a process by which the server determines if an authenticated user has permission or privileges to access specific resources in the system or operation.

Security mapping refers to the ability to add, modify, or delete information from a principal, role, or attribute before passing the information to your application.

The auditing manager allows you to configure *provider modules* to control the way that security events are reported.

If you use security domains, you can remove all specific security configuration from your application itself. This allows you to change security parameters centrally. One common scenario that benefits from this type of configuration structure is the process of moving applications between testing and production environments.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.6.2. About Picketbox

Picketbox is the foundational security framework that provides the authentication, authorization, audit and mapping capabilities to Java applications running in JBoss EAP 6. It provides the following capabilities, in a single framework with a single configuration:

- » [Section 11.6.3, “About Authentication”](#)
- » [Section 11.6.5, “About Authorization” and access control](#)
- » [Section 11.6.7, “About Security Auditing”](#)
- » [Section 11.6.10, “About Security Mapping” of principals, roles, and attributes](#)

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.6.3. About Authentication

Authentication refers to identifying a subject and verifying the authenticity of the identification. The most common authentication mechanism is a username and password combination. Other common authentication mechanisms use shared keys, smart cards, or fingerprints. The outcome of a successful authentication is referred to as a principal, in terms of Java Enterprise Edition declarative security.

JBoss EAP 6 uses a pluggable system of authentication modules to provide flexibility and integration with the authentication systems you already use in your organization. Each security domain contains one or more configured authentication modules. Each module includes additional configuration parameters to customize its behavior. The easiest way to configure the authentication subsystem is within the web-based management console.

Authentication is not the same as authorization, although they are often linked. Many of the included authentication modules can also handle authorization.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 11.6.4. Configure Authentication in a Security Domain

To configure authentication settings for a security domain, log into the management console and follow this procedure.

##### Procedure 11.2. Setup Authentication Settings for a Security Domain

**1. Open the security domain's detailed view.**

- a. Click the **Configuration** label at the top of the management console.
- b. Select the profile to modify from the **Profile** selection box at the top left of the Profile view.
- c. Expand the **Security** menu, and select **Security Domains**.
- d. Click the **View** link for the security domain you want to edit.

**2. Navigate to the Authentication subsystem configuration.**

Select the **Authentication** label at the top of the view if it is not already selected.

The configuration area is divided into two areas: **Login Modules** and **Details**. The login module is the basic unit of configuration. A security domain can include several login modules, each of which can include several attributes and options.

**3. Add an authentication module.**

Click **Add** to add a JAAS authentication module. Fill in the details for your module.

The **Code** is the class name of the module. The **Flag** setting controls how the module relates to other authentication modules within the same security domain.

#### Explanation of the Flags

The Java Enterprise Edition 6 specification provides the following explanation of the flags for security modules. The following list is taken from

<http://docs.oracle.com/javase/6/docs/technotes/guides/security/jaas/JAASRefGuide.html#AppendixA>. Refer to that document for more detailed information.

Flag	Details
required	The LoginModule is required to succeed. If it succeeds or fails, authentication still continues to proceed down the LoginModule list.
requisite	LoginModule is required to succeed. If it succeeds, authentication continues down the LoginModule list. If it fails, control immediately returns to the application (authentication does not proceed down the LoginModule list).
sufficient	The LoginModule is not required to succeed. If it does succeed, control immediately returns to the application (authentication does not proceed down the LoginModule list). If it fails, authentication continues down the LoginModule list.
optional	The LoginModule is not required to succeed. If it succeeds or fails, authentication still continues to proceed down the LoginModule list.

#### 4. Edit authentication settings

After you have added your module, you can modify its **Code** or **Flags** by clicking **Edit** in the **Details** section of the screen. Be sure the **Attributes** tab is selected.

#### 5. Optional: Add or remove module options.

If you need to add options to your module, click its entry in the **Login Modules** list, and select the **Module Options** tab in the **Details** section of the page. Click the **Add** button, and provide the key and value for the option. Use the **Remove** button to remove an option.

#### Result

Your authentication module is added to the security domain, and is immediately available to applications which use the security domain.

#### The `jboss.security.security_domain` Module Option

By default, each login module defined in a security domain has the `jboss.security.security_domain` module option added to it automatically. This option causes problems with login modules which check to make sure that only known options are defined. The IBM Kerberos login module, `com.ibm.security.auth.module.Krb5LoginModule` is one of these.

You can disable the behavior of adding this module option by setting the system property to `true` when starting JBoss EAP 6. Add the following to your start-up parameters.

```
-Djboss.security.disable.secdomain.option=true
```

You can also set this property using the web-based Management Console. In a standalone server, you can set system properties in the **Profile** section of the configuration. In a managed domain, you can set system properties for each server group.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.6.5. About Authorization

Authorization is a mechanism for granting or denying access to a resource based on identity. It is implemented as a set of declarative security roles which can be added to principals.

JBoss EAP 6 uses a modular system to configure authorization. Each security domain can contain one or more authorization policies. Each policy has a basic module which defines its behavior. It is configured through specific flags and attributes. The easiest way to configure the authorization subsystem is by using the web-based management console.

Authorization is different from authentication, and usually happens after authentication. Many of the authentication modules also handle authorization.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.6.6. Configure Authorization in a Security Domain

To configure authorization settings for a security domain, log into the management console and follow this procedure.

#### Procedure 11.3. Setup Authorization in a Security Domain

1. Open the security domain's detailed view.
  - a. Click the **Configuration** label at the top of the management console.
  - b. In a managed domain, select the profile to modify from the **Profile** drop down box at the top left.
  - c. Expand the **Security** menu item, and select **Security Domains**.
  - d. Click the **View** link for the security domain you want to edit.

2. Navigate to the Authorization subsystem configuration.

Select the **Authorization** label at the top of the screen.

The configuration area is divided into two areas: **Policies** and **Details**. The **Login** module is the basic unit of configuration. A security domain can include several authorization policies, each of which can include several attributes and options.

3. Add a policy.

Click **Add** to add a JAAS authorization policy module. Fill in the details for your module.

The **Code** is the class name of the module. The **Flag** controls how the module relates to other authorization policy modules within the same security domain.

#### Explanation of the Flags

The Java Enterprise Edition 6 specification provides the following explanation of the flags for security modules. The following list is taken from <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/6/docs/technotes/guides/security/jaas/JAASRefGuide.html#AppendixA>. Refer to that document for more detailed information.

Flag	Details
required	The LoginModule is required to succeed. If it succeeds or fails, authorization still continues to proceed down the LoginModule list.
requisite	LoginModule is required to succeed. If it succeeds, authorization continues down the LoginModule list. If it fails, control immediately returns to the application (authorization does not proceed down the LoginModule list).
sufficient	The LoginModule is not required to succeed. If it does succeed, control immediately returns to the application (authorization does not proceed down the LoginModule list). If it fails, authorization continues down the LoginModule list.
optional	The LoginModule is not required to succeed. If it succeeds or fails, authorization still continues to proceed down the LoginModule list.

#### 4. Edit authorization settings

After you have added your module, you can modify its **Code** or **Flags** by clicking **Edit** in the **Details** section of the screen. Be sure the **Attributes** tab is selected.

#### 5. Optional: Add or remove module options.

If you need to add options to your module, click its entry in the **Policies** list, and select the **Module Options** tab in the **Details** section of the page. Click **Add** and provide the key and value for the option. Use the **Remove** button to remove an option.

#### Result

Your authorization policy module is added to the security domain, and is immediately available to applications which use the security domain.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 11.6.7. About Security Auditing

Security auditing refers to triggering events, such as writing to a log, in response to an event that happens within the security subsystem. Auditing mechanisms are configured as part of a security domain, along with authentication, authorization, and security mapping details.

Auditing uses *provider modules*. You can use one of the included ones, or implement your own.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 11.6.8. Configure Security Auditing

To configure security auditing settings for a security domain, log into the management console and follow this procedure.

## Procedure 11.4. Setup Security Auditing for a Security Domain

1. Open the security domain's detailed view.
  - a. Click **Configuration** at the top of the screen.
  - b. In a managed domain, select a profile to modify from the **Profile** selection box at the top left.
  - c. Expand the **Security** menu and select **Security Domains**.
  - d. Click **View** for the security domain you want to edit.

### 2. Navigate to the Auditing subsystem configuration.

Select the **Audit** tab at the top of the screen.

The configuration area is divided into two areas: **Provider Modules** and **Details**. The provider module is the basic unit of configuration. A security domain can include several provider modules each of which can include attributes and options.

### 3. Add a provider module.

Click **Add**. Fill in the **Code** section with the classname of the provider module.

### 4. Verify if your module is working

The goal of an audit module is to provide a way to monitor the events in the security subsystem. This monitoring can be done by means of writing to a log file, email notifications or any other measurable auditing mechanism.

For example, JBoss EAP 6 includes the **LogAuditProvider** module by default. If enabled following the steps above, this audit module writes security notifications to a **audit.log** file in the **log** subfolder within the **EAP\_HOME** directory.

To verify if the steps above have worked in the context of the **LogAuditProvider**, perform an action that is likely to trigger a notification and then check the audit log file.

For a full list of included security auditing provider modules, see here: [Section 12.4, “Included Security Auditing Provider Modules”](#)

### 5. Optional: Add, edit, or remove module options.

To add options to your module, click its entry in the **Modules** list, and select the **Module Options** tab in the **Details** section of the page. Click **Add**, and provide the key and value for the option.

To edit an option that already exists, click **Remove** to remove it, and click **Add** to add it again with the correct options.

## Result

Your security auditing module is added to the security domain, and is immediately available to applications which use the security domain.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.6.9. About the Audit Log

If the **LogAuditProvider** module is enabled, JBoss EAP 6 maintains an audit log which records authentication and authorization in applications and login modules. The file is named **audit.log** by default and stored in the **log** subdirectory of the *EAP\_HOME* directory. This behavior is determined by the configuration of the logging subsystem's log handlers. The output of the **LogAuditProvider** module could be sent to a **syslog** server in addition to or instead of a file, by using the **syslog** log handler.

By default, the **LogAuditProvider** module outputs only to cumulative **audit.log** file. To implement a periodic rotating file handler called **AUDIT**, enter the following management CLI command.

```
/subsystem=logging/periodic-rotating-file-
handler=AUDIT/:add(suffix=.yyyy-MM-dd,formatter=%d{HH:mm:ss,SSS} %-5p
[%c] (%t) %s%E%n,level=TRACE,file={"relative-to" =>
"jboss.server.log.dir","path" => "audit.log"})
```

#### See Also:

- » [Section 14.1.12, “About Log Handlers”](#)

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.6.10. About Security Mapping

Security mapping allows you to combine authentication and authorization information after the authentication or authorization happens, but before the information is passed to your application.

You can map principals (authentication), roles (authorization), or credentials (attributes which are not principals or roles).

Role Mapping is used to add, replace, or remove roles to the subject after authentication.

Principal mapping is used to modify a principal after authentication.

Attribute mapping is used to convert attributes from an external system to be used by your application, and vice versa.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.6.11. Configure Security Mapping in a Security Domain

To configure security mapping settings for a security domain, log into the management console and follow this procedure.

#### Procedure 11.5. Setup Security Mapping Settings in a Security Domain

1. Open the security domain's detailed view.
  - a. Click the **Configuration** label at the top of the management console.
  - b. In a managed domain, select a profile from the **Profile** selection box at the top left.
  - c. Expand the **Security** menu, and select **Security Domains**.
  - d. Click **View** for the security domain you want to edit.
2. Navigate to the Mapping subsystem configuration.

Select the **Mapping** label at the top of the screen.

The configuration area is divided into two areas: **Modules** and **Details**. The mapping module is the basic unit of configuration. A security domain can include several mapping modules, each of which can include several attributes and options.

### 3. Add a security mapping module.

Click **Add**.

Fill in the details for your module. The **Code** is the class name of the module. The **Type** field refers to the type of mapping this module performs. Allowed values are principal, role, attribute or credential.

### 4. Edit a security mapping module

After you have added your module, you can modify its **Code** or **Type**.

- a. Select the **Attributes** tab.
- b. Click **Edit** in the **Details** section of the screen.

### 5. Optional: Add, edit, or remove module options.

To add options to your module, click its entry in the **Modules** list, and select the **Module Options** tab in the **Details** section of the page. Click **Add**, and provide the key and value for the option.

To edit an option that already exists, click **Remove** to remove it, and add it again with the new value.

Use the **Remove** button to remove an option.

## Result

Your security mapping module is added to the security domain, and is immediately available to applications which use the security domain.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.6.12. Use a Security Domain in Your Application

#### Overview

To use a security domain in your application, first you need to define the security domain in the server's configuration and then enable it for an application in the application's deployment descriptor. Then you must add the required annotations to the EJB that uses it. This topic covers the steps required to use a security domain in your application.



#### Warning

If an application is part of a security domain that uses an authentication cache, user authentications for that application will also be available to other applications in that security domain.

## Procedure 11.6. Configure Your Application to Use a Security Domain

### 1. Define the Security Domain

You need to define the security domain in the server's configuration file, and then enable it for an application in the application's descriptor file.

#### a. Configure the security domain in the server's configuration file

The security domain is configured in the **security** subsystem of the server's configuration file. If the JBoss EAP 6 instance is running in a managed domain, this is the **domain/configuration/domain.xml** file. If the JBoss EAP 6 instance is running as a standalone server, this is the **standalone/configuration/standalone.xml** file.

The **other**, **jboss-web-policy**, and **jboss-ejb-policy** security domains are provided by default in JBoss EAP 6. The following XML example was copied from the **security** subsystem in the server's configuration file.

The **cache-type** attribute of a security domain specifies a cache for faster authentication checks. Allowed values are **default** to use a simple map as the cache, or **infinispan** to use an Infinispan cache.

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:security:1.2">
    <security-domains>
        <security-domain name="other" cache-type="default">
            <authentication>
                <login-module code="Remoting"
flag="optional">
                    <module-option name="password-stacking"
value="useFirstPass"/>
                </login-module>
                <login-module code="RealmDirect"
flag="required">
                    <module-option name="password-stacking"
value="useFirstPass"/>
                </login-module>
            </authentication>
        </security-domain>
        <security-domain name="jboss-web-policy" cache-
type="default">
            <authorization>
                <policy-module code="Delegating"
flag="required"/>
            </authorization>
        </security-domain>
        <security-domain name="jboss-ejb-policy" cache-
type="default">
            <authorization>
                <policy-module code="Delegating"
flag="required"/>
            </authorization>
        </security-domain>
    </security-domains>
</subsystem>
```

You can configure additional security domains as needed using the Management Console or CLI.

### b. Enable the security domain in the application's descriptor file

The security domain is specified in the `<security-domain>` child element of the `<jboss-web>` element in the application's `WEB-INF/jboss-web.xml` file. The following example configures a security domain named `my-domain`.

```
<jboss-web>
    <security-domain>my-domain</security-domain>
</jboss-web>
```

This is only one of many settings which you can specify in the `WEB-INF/jboss-web.xml` descriptor.

## 2. Add the Required Annotation to the EJB

You configure security in the EJB using the `@SecurityDomain` and `@RolesAllowed` annotations. The following EJB code example limits access to the `other` security domain by users in the `guest` role.

```
package example.ejb3;

import java.security.Principal;

import javax.annotation.Resource;
import javax.annotation.security.RolesAllowed;
import javax.ejb.SessionContext;
import javax.ejb.Stateless;

import org.jboss.ejb3.annotation.SecurityDomain;

/**
 * Simple secured EJB using EJB security annotations
 * Allow access to "other" security domain by users in a "guest"
role.
 */
@Stateless
@RolesAllowed({ "guest" })
@SecurityDomain("other")
public class SecuredEJB {

    // Inject the Session Context
    @Resource
    private SessionContext ctx;

    /**
     * Secured EJB method using security annotations
     */
    public String getSecurityInfo() {
        // Session context injected using the resource annotation
        Principal principal = ctx.getCallerPrincipal();
        return principal.toString();
    }
}
```

For more code examples, see the **ejb-security** quickstart in the JBoss EAP 6 Quickstarts bundle, which is available from the Red Hat Customer Portal.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.6.13. Java Authorization Contract for Containers (JACC)

### 11.6.13.1. About Java Authorization Contract for Containers (JACC)

Java Authorization Contract for Containers (JACC) is a standard which defines a contract between containers and authorization service providers, which results in the implementation of providers for use by containers. It was defined in JSR-115, which can be found on the Java Community Process website at <http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=115>. It has been part of the core Java Enterprise Edition (Java EE) specification since Java EE version 1.3.

JBoss EAP 6 implements support for JACC within the security functionality of the security subsystem.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.6.13.2. Configure Java Authorization Contract for Containers (JACC) Security

To configure Java Authorization Contract for Containers (JACC), you need to configure your security domain with the correct module, and then modify your **jboss-web.xml** to include the correct parameters.

#### Add JACC Support to the Security Domain

To add JACC support to the security domain, add the **JACC** authorization policy to the authorization stack of the security domain, with the **required** flag set. The following is an example of a security domain with JACC support. However, the security domain is configured in the Management Console or Management CLI, rather than directly in the XML.

```
<security-domain name="jacc" cache-type="default">
    <authentication>
        <login-module code="UsersRoles" flag="required">
            </login-module>
    </authentication>
    <authorization>
        <policy-module code="JACC" flag="required"/>
    </authorization>
</security-domain>
```

#### Configure a Web Application to Use JACC

The **jboss-web.xml** is located in the **WEB-INF/** directory of your deployment, and contains overrides and additional JBoss-specific configuration for the web container. To use your JACC-enabled security domain, you need to include the **<security-domain>** element, and also set the **<use-jboss-authorization>** element to **true**. The following application is properly configured to use the JACC security domain above.

```
<jboss-web>
    <security-domain>jacc</security-domain>
```

```
<use-jboss-authorization>true</use-jboss-authorization>
</jboss-web>
```

## Configure an EJB Application to Use JACC

Configuring EJBs to use a security domain and to use JACC differs from Web Applications. For an EJB, you can declare *method permissions* on a method or group of methods, in the **ejb-jar.xml** descriptor. Within the **<ejb-jar>** element, any child **<method-permission>** elements contain information about JACC roles. Refer to the example configuration for more details. The **EJBMethodPermission** class is part of the Java Enterprise Edition 6 API, and is documented at <http://docs.oracle.com/javaee/6/api/javax/security/jacc/EJBMethodPermission.html>.

### Example 11.4. Example JACC Method Permissions in an EJB

```
<ejb-jar>
  <assembly-descriptor>
    <method-permission>
      <description>The employee and temp-employee roles may access any
method of the EmployeeService bean </description>
      <role-name>employee</role-name>
      <role-name>temp-employee</role-name>
      <method>
        <ejb-name>EmployeeService</ejb-name>
        <method-name>*</method-name>
      </method>
    </method-permission>
  </assembly-descriptor>
</ejb-jar>
```

You can also constrain the authentication and authorization mechanisms for an EJB by using a security domain, just as you can do for a web application. Security domains are declared in the **jboss-ejb3.xml** descriptor, in the **<security>** child element. In addition to the security domain, you can also specify the *run-as principal*, which changes the principal the EJB runs as.

### Example 11.5. Example Security Domain Declaration in an EJB

```
<ejb-jar>
  <assembly-descriptor>
    <security>
      <ejb-name>*</ejb-name>
      <security-domain>myDomain</security-domain>
      <run-as-principal>myPrincipal</run-as-principal>
    </security>
  </assembly-descriptor>
</ejb-jar>
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.6.14. Java Authentication SPI for Containers (JASPI)

### 11.6.14.1. About Java Authentication SPI for Containers (JASPI) Security

Java Authentication SPI for Containers (JASPI or JASPIC) is a pluggable interface for Java applications. It is defined in JSR-196 of the Java Community Process. Refer to <http://www.jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=196> for details about the specification.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.6.14.2. Configure Java Authentication SPI for Containers (JASPI) Security

To authenticate against a JASPI provider, add a `<authentication-jaspi>` element to your security domain. The configuration is similar to a standard authentication module, but login module elements are enclosed in a `<login-module-stack>` element. The structure of the configuration is:

#### Example 11.6. Structure of the `authentication-jaspi` element

```
<authentication-jaspi>
  <login-module-stack name="...">
    <login-module code="..." flag="...">
      <module-option name="..." value="..."/>
    </login-module>
  </login-module-stack>
  <auth-module code="..." login-module-stack-ref="...">
    <module-option name="..." value="..."/>
  </auth-module>
</authentication-jaspi>
```

The login module itself is configured in exactly the same way as a standard authentication module.

Because the web-based management console does not expose the configuration of JASPI authentication modules, you need to stop JBoss EAP 6 completely before adding the configuration directly to `EAP_HOME/domain/configuration/domain.xml` or `EAP_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone.xml`.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.7. Securing IIOP

### 11.7.1. About JBoss IIOP

IIOP (Internet Inter-ORB Protocol) is the communications protocol used by CORBA clients to call remote functions on a CORBA server. JBoss IIOP supports CORBA/IIOP access to enterprise beans deployed on an JBoss EAP server, as defined by the EJB specification. It makes enterprise bean methods available to RMI and IIOP clients written in Java and CORBA clients written in Java, C++, or other languages. The IIOP engine can be replaced with another, providing it is fully CORBA compliant. The default engine is JacORB, a free implementation of the CORBA standard.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.7.2. About IOR

An Interoperable Object Reference (IOR) is used in a CORBA system to identify objects. It consists of several pieces:

- » Object type.
- » Host name of the server.
- » Port number of the server.
- » An object key, which identifies the object.

The host name and port number are used to communicate with the server and the object key is used by the server to identify the object.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.7.3. IOR Security Parameters

#### Prerequisites

- » Enable IOR settings with the following management CLI command.

```
/subsystem=jacorb/ior-settings=default:add
```

- » Ensure the JacORB subsystem is enabled. For example, it is already enabled in the **full** profile, but not in the default (**web**) profile. For details on how to enable the JacORB subsystem see [Section 21.4.2, “Configure the ORB for JTS Transactions”](#).

The iorSASContextType specifies the attributes used to setup the IOR Secure Attribute Service settings. These parameters can only be set using the management CLI.

**Table 11.1. iorSASContextType**

Parameter	Description	Valid Values
<b>caller-propagation</b>	Indicates whether or not the caller should be propagated in the SAS context	<b>none, supported</b>

```
/subsystem=jacorb/ior-settings=default/setting=sas-context:add
/subsystem=jacorb/ior-settings=default/setting=sas-context:write-
attribute(name=caller-propagation, value=NONE|SUPPORTED)
```

The iorASContextType specifies the attributes used to setup the IOR Authentication Service settings. Each of the following parameters are optional.

**Table 11.2. iorASContextType**

Parameter	Description	Type	Valid Values
<b>auth-method</b>	Authentication method.	String	<b>none,</b> <b>username_password</b>
<b>realm</b>	Authentication Service realm name.	String	Default value: <b>Default</b>
<b>required</b>	Indicates if authentication is required.	Boolean	<b>true, false</b>

```
/subsystem=jacorb/ior-settings=default/setting=as-context:add
/subsystem=jacorb/ior-settings=default/setting=as-context:write-
attribute(name=ATTRIBUTE, value=VALUE)
```

The iorTransportconfigType specifies the attributes used to set up the IOR transport settings.

**Table 11.3. iorTransportconfigType**

Parameter	Description	Valid Values
<b>integrity</b>	Indicates whether or not the transport must require integrity protection.	<b>none, supported, or required.</b>
<b>confidentiality</b>	Indicates whether or not the transport must require confidentiality protection.	<b>none, supported, or required.</b>
<b>trust-in-target</b>	Indicates if the transport must require trust in target to be established.	<b>none, supported</b>
<b>trust-in-client</b>	Indicates if the transport must require trust in client to be established.	<b>none, supported, or required.</b>
<b>detect-replay</b>	Indicates whether the transport must require replay detection or not.	<b>none, supported, or required.</b>
<b>detect-misordering</b>	Indicates whether or not the transport must require misordering detection.	<b>none, supported, or required.</b>

```
/subsystem=jacorb/ior-settings=default/setting=transport-config:add
/subsystem=jacorb/ior-settings=default/setting=transport-config:write-
attribute(name=ATTRIBUTE, value=VALUE)
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.8. Management Interface Security

### 11.8.1. Default User Security Configuration

#### Introduction

All management interfaces in JBoss EAP 6 are secured by default. This security takes two different forms:

- » Local interfaces are secured by a SASL contract between local clients and the server they connect to. This security mechanism is based on the client's ability to access the local filesystem. This is because access to the local filesystem would allow the client to add a user or otherwise change the configuration to thwart other security mechanisms. This adheres to the principle that if physical access to the filesystem is achieved, other security mechanisms are superfluous. The mechanism happens in four steps:



## Note

HTTP access is considered to be remote, even if you connect to the localhost using HTTP.

- The client sends a message to the server which includes a request to authenticate with the local SASL mechanism.
  - The server generates a one-time token, writes it to a unique file, and sends a message to the client with the full path of the file.
  - The client reads the token from the file and sends it to the server, verifying that it has local access to the filesystem.
  - The server verifies the token and then deletes the file.
- Remote clients, including local HTTP clients, use realm-based security. The default realm with the permissions to configure the JBoss EAP 6 instance remotely using the management interfaces is **ManagementRealm**. A script is provided which allows you to add users to this realm (or realms you create). For more information on adding users, see the *Getting Started* chapter of the *JBoss EAP 6 Installation Guide*. For each user, the username and a hashed password are stored in a file.

### Managed domain

**EAP\_HOME/domain/configuration/mgmt-users.properties**

### Standalone server

**EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/mgmt-users.properties**

Even though the contents of the **mgmt-users.properties** are masked, the file must still be treated as a sensitive file. It is recommended that it be set to the file mode of **600**, which gives no access other than read and write access by the file owner.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.8.2. Overview of Advanced Management Interface Configuration

The Management interface configuration in the **EAP\_HOME/domain/configuration/host.xml** or **EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone.xml** controls which network interfaces the host controller process binds to, which types of management interfaces are available at all, and which type of authentication system is used to authenticate users on each interface. This topic discusses how to configure the Management Interfaces to suit your environment.

The Management subsystem consists of a **<management>** element that includes the following four configurable child elements. The security realms and outbound connections are each first defined, and then applied to the management interfaces as attributes.

- **<security-realms>**
- **<outbound-connections>**
- **<management-interfaces>**
- **<audit-log>**



## Note

Refer to the *Management Interface Audit Logging* section of the *Administration and Configuration Guide* for more information on audit logging.

## Security Realms

The security realm is responsible for the authentication and authorization of users allowed to administer JBoss EAP 6 via the Management API, Management CLI, or web-based Management Console.

Two different file-based security realms are included in a default installation: **ManagementRealm** and **ApplicationRealm**. Each of these security realms uses a **-users.properties** file to store users and hashed passwords, and a **-roles.properties** to store mappings between users and roles. Support is also included for an LDAP-enabled security realm.



## Note

Security realms can also be used for your own applications. The security realms discussed here are specific to the management interfaces.

## Outbound Connections

Some security realms connect to external interfaces, such as an LDAP server. An outbound connection defines how to make this connection. A pre-defined connection type, **ldap-connection**, sets all of the required and optional attributes to connect to the LDAP server and verify the credential.

For more information on how to configure LDAP authentication see [Section 11.8.4, “Use LDAP to Authenticate to the Management Interfaces”](#).

## Management Interfaces

A management interface includes properties about how connect to and configure JBoss EAP. Such information includes the named network interface, port, security realm, and other configurable information about the interface. Two interfaces are included in a default installation:

- » **http-interface** is the configuration for the web-based Management Console.
- » **native-interface** is the configuration for the command-line Management CLI and the REST-like Management API.

Each of the main configurable elements of the host management subsystem are interrelated. A security realm refers to an outbound connection, and a management interface refers to a security realm.

Associated information can be found in [Section 11.10.1, “Secure the Management Interfaces”](#).

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.8.3. About LDAP

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a protocol for storing and distributing directory information across a network. This directory information includes information about users, hardware devices, access roles and restrictions, and other information.

Some common implementations of LDAP include OpenLDAP, Microsoft Active Directory, IBM Tivoli Directory Server, Oracle Internet Directory, and others.

JBoss EAP 6 includes several authentication and authorization modules which allow you to use a LDAP server as the authentication and authorization authority for your Web and EJB applications.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 11.8.4. Use LDAP to Authenticate to the Management Interfaces

To use an LDAP directory server as the authentication source for the Management Console, Management CLI, or Management API, you need to perform the following procedures:

1. Create an outbound connection to the LDAP server.
2. Create an LDAP-enabled security realm.
3. Reference the new security domain in the Management Interface.

##### Create an Outbound Connection to an LDAP Server

The LDAP outbound connection allows the following attributes:

**Table 11.4. Attributes of an LDAP Outbound Connection**

Attribute	Required	Description
<b>url</b>	yes	The URL address of the directory server.
<b>search-dn</b>	no	The fully distinguished name (DN) of the user authorized to perform searches.
<b>search-credentials</b>	no	The password of the user authorized to perform searches.
<b>initial-context-factory</b>	no	The initial context factory to use when establishing the connection. Defaults to <b>com.sun.jndi.ldap.LdapCtxFactory</b> .
<b>security-realm</b>	no	The security realm to reference to obtain a configured <b>SSLContext</b> to use when establishing the connection.

##### Example 11.7. Add an LDAP Outbound Connection

This example adds an outbound connection with the following properties set:

- Search DN: **cn=search,dc=acme,dc=com**
- Search Credential: **myPass**
- URL: **ldap://127.0.0.1:389**

The first command adds the security realm.

```
/host=master/core-service=management/security-
realm=ldap_security_realm:add
```

The second command adds the LDAP connection.

```
/host=master/core-service=management/ldap-
connection=ldap_connection/:add(search-
credential=myPass,url=ldap://127.0.0.1:389,search-
dn="cn=search,dc=acme,dc=com")
```

## Create an LDAP-Enabled Security Realm

The Management Interfaces can authenticate against LDAP server instead of the property-file based security realms configured by default. The LDAP authenticator operates by first establishing a connection to the remote directory server. It then performs a search using the username which the user passed to the authentication system, to find the fully-qualified distinguished name (DN) of the LDAP record. A new connection is established, using the DN of the user as the credential, and password supplied by the user. If this authentication to the LDAP server is successful, the DN is verified to be valid.

The LDAP security realm uses the following configuration attributes:

### **connection**

The name of the connection defined in ***outbound-connections*** to use to connect to the LDAP directory.

### **advanced-filter**

The fully defined filter used to search for a user based on the supplied user ID. The filter must contain a variable in the following format: **{0}**. This is later replaced with the user name supplied by the user.

### **base-dn**

The distinguished name of the context to begin searching for the user.

### **recursive**

Whether the search should be recursive throughout the LDAP directory tree, or only search the specified context. Defaults to **false**.

### **user-dn**

The attribute of the user that holds the distinguished name. This is subsequently used to test authentication as the user can complete. Defaults to **dn**.

### **username-attribute**

The name of the attribute to search for the user. This filter performs a simple search where the user name entered by the user matches the specified attribute.

### **allow-empty-passwords**

This attribute determines whether an empty password is accepted. The default value for this attribute is **false**.

**Either `username-filter` or `advanced-filter` must be specified**

The **`advanced-filter`** attribute contains a filter query in the standard LDAP syntax, for example:

```
(&(sAMAccountName={0})
(memberOf=cn=admin,cn=users,dc=acme,dc=com))
```

**Example 11.8. XML Representing an LDAP-enabled Security Realm**

This example uses the following parameters:

- » `connection - ldap_connection`
- » `base-dn - cn=users,dc=acme,dc=com.`
- » `username-filter - attribute="sambaAccountName"`

```
<security-realm name="ldap_security_realm">
    <authentication>
        <ldap connection="ldap_connection" base-
dn="cn=users,dc=acme,dc=com">
            <username-filter attribute="sambaAccountName" />
        </ldap>
    </authentication>
</security-realm>
```

**Warning**

It is important to ensure that you do not allow empty LDAP passwords; unless you specifically desire this in your environment, it is a serious security concern.

EAP 6.1 includes a patch for CVE-2012-5629, which sets the `allowEmptyPasswords` option for the LDAP login modules to false if the option is not already configured. For older versions, this option should be configured manually

**Example 11.9. Add an LDAP Security Realm**

The command below adds an LDAP authentication to a security realm and sets its attributes for a host named master in the domain.

```
/host=master/core-service=management/security-
realm=ldap_security_realm/authentication=ldap:add(base-
dn="DC=mycompany,DC=org", recursive=true, username-
attribute="MyAccountName", connection="ldap_connection")
```

**Apply the New Security Realm to the Management Interface**

After you create a security realm, you need to reference it in the configuration of your management interface. The management interface will use the security realm for HTTP digest authentication.

#### Example 11.10. Apply the Security Realm to the HTTP Interface

After this configuration is in place, and you restart the host controller, the web-based Management Console will use LDAP to authenticate its users.

```
/host=master/core-service=management/management-interface=http-
interface/:write-attribute(name=security-
realm,value=ldap_security_realm)
```

#### Example 11.11. Apply the Security Realm to the Native Interface

Use the following command to apply the same settings to the native interface:

```
/host=master/core-service=management/management-interface=native-
interface/:write-attribute(name=security-
realm,value=ldap_security_realm)
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.8.5. Disable the HTTP Management Interface

In a managed domain, you only need access to the HTTP interface on the domain controller, rather than on domain member servers. In addition, on a production server, you may decide to disable the web-based Management Console altogether.

#### Note

Other clients, such as JBoss Operations Network, also operate using the HTTP interface. If you want to use these services, and simply disable the Management Console itself, you can set the **console-enabled** attribute of the HTTP interface to **false**, instead of disabling the interface completely.

```
/host=master/core-service=management/management-interface=http-
interface/:write-attribute(name=console-enabled,value=false)
```

To disable access to the HTTP interface, which also disables access to the web-based Management Console, you can delete the HTTP interface altogether.

The following JBoss CLI command allows you to read the current contents of your HTTP interface, in case you decide to add it again.

#### Example 11.12. Read the Configuration of the HTTP Interface

```
/host=master/core-service=management/management-interface=http-
interface/:read-resource(recursive=true,proxies=false,include-
```

```
runtime=false,include-defaults=true)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "console-enabled" => true,
        "interface" => "management",
        "port" => expression "${jboss.management.http.port:9990}",
        "secure-port" => undefined,
        "security-realm" => "ManagementRealm"
    }
}
```

To remove the HTTP interface, issue the following command:

#### Example 11.13. Remove the HTTP Interface

```
/host=master/core-service=management/management-interface=http-
interface/:remove
```

To re-enable access, issue the following commands to re-create the HTTP Interface with the default values.

#### Example 11.14. Re-Create the HTTP Interface

```
/host=master/core-service=management/management-interface=http-
interface:add(console-
enabled=true,interface=management,port="${jboss.management.http.port:9
990}",security-realm=ManagementRealm)
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.8.6. Remove Silent Authentication from the Default Security Realm

#### Summary

The default installation of JBoss EAP 6 contains a method of silent authentication for a local Management CLI user. This allows the local user the ability to access the Management CLI without username or password authentication. This functionality is enabled as a convenience, and to assist local users running Management CLI scripts without requiring authentication. It is considered a useful feature given that access to the local configuration typically also gives the user the ability to add their own user details or otherwise disable security checks.

The convenience of silent authentication for local users can be disabled where greater security control is required. This can be achieved by removing the **local** element within the **security-realm** section of the configuration file. This applies to both the **standalone.xml** for a Standalone Server instance, or **host.xml** for a Managed Domain. You should only consider the removal of the **local** element if you understand the impact that it might have on your particular server configuration.

The preferred method of removing silent authentication is by use of the Management CLI, which directly removes the **local** element visible in the following example.

**Example 11.15. Example of the local element in the security-realm**

```
<security-realms>
    <security-realm name="ManagementRealm">
        <authentication>
            <local default-user="$local"/>
            <properties path="mgmt-users.properties" relative-
to="jboss.server.config.dir"/>
        </authentication>
    </security-realm>
    <security-realm name="ApplicationRealm">
        <authentication>
            <local default-user="$local" allowed-users="*"/>
            <properties path="application-users.properties" relative-
to="jboss.server.config.dir"/>
        </authentication>
        <authorization>
            <properties path="application-roles.properties" relative-
to="jboss.server.config.dir"/>
        </authorization>
    </security-realm>
</security-realms>
```

**Prerequisites**

- » [Section 2.1.1, “Start JBoss EAP 6”](#)
- » [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#)

**Procedure 11.7. Remove Silent Authentication from the Default Security Realm**

- » **Remove silent authentication with the Management CLI**

Remove the **local** element from the Management Realm and Application Realm as required.

- » Remove the **local** element from the Management Realm.

**A. For Standalone Servers**

```
/core-service=management/security-
realm=ManagementRealm/authentication=local:remove
```

**B. For Managed Domains**

```
/host=HOST_NAME/core-service=management/security-
realm=ManagementRealm/authentication=local:remove
```

- » Remove the **local** element from the Application Realm.

**A. For Standalone Servers**

```
/core-service=management/security-
realm=ApplicationRealm/authentication=local:remove
```

## B. For Managed Domains

```
/host=HOST_NAME/core-service=management/security-
realm=ApplicationRealm/authentication=local:remove
```

### Result

The silent authentication mode is removed from the **ManagementRealm** and the **ApplicationRealm**.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.8.7. Disable Remote Access to the JMX Subsystem

Remote access to the JMX subsystem allows you to trigger JDK and application management operations remotely. In order to secure an installation, disable this function either by removing the remoting connector or removing the JMX subsystem. The example Management CLI commands are suitable for a managed domain. For a standalone server, remove the **/profile=default** prefix from the commands.



#### Note

In a managed domain the remoting connector is removed from the JMX subsystem by default. This command is provided for your information, in case you add it during development.

#### Example 11.16. Remove the Remoting Connector from the JMX Subsystem

```
/profile=default/subsystem=jmx/remoting-connector=jmx/:remove
```

#### Example 11.17. Remove the JMX Subsystem

For a managed domain, run this command for each profile.

```
/profile=default/subsystem=jmx/:remove
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.8.8. Configure Security Realms for the Management Interfaces

The management interfaces use security realms to control authentication and access to the configuration mechanisms of JBoss EAP 6. A Security Realm is similar to a Unix group. It is effectively a database of usernames and passwords that can be used to authenticate users.

#### Default Management Realm

The management interfaces are configured to use the **ManagementRealm** security realm by default. The ManagementRealm stores its user password combinations in the file **mgmt-users.properties**.

#### Example 11.18. Default ManagementRealm

```
/host=master/core-service=management/security-
realm=ManagementRealm/: read-
resource(recursive=true,proxies=false,include-runtime=false,include-
defaults=true)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "authorization" => undefined,
        "server-identity" => undefined,
        "authentication" => {"properties" => {
            "path" => "mgmt-users.properties",
            "plain-text" => false,
            "relative-to" => "jboss.domain.config.dir"
        }}
    }
}
```

#### Create a new Security Realm

The following commands create a new security realm called **TestRealm** and set the directory for the relevant properties file.

#### Example 11.19. Create a new Security Realm

```
/host=master/core-service=management/security-realm=TestRealm/: add
/host=master/core-service=management/security-
realm=TestRealm/authentication=properties/: add(path=TestUsers.prop-
erties, relative-to=jboss.domain.config.dir)
```

#### Configure Security Realm authentication through an existing Security Domain

To use Security Domain to authenticate to the Management interfaces:

First, create a Security Realm. Then, set specify it as the value for the **security-realm** attribute of the management interface:

#### Example 11.20. Specify a Security Realm to use for the HTTP Management Interface

```
/host=master/core-service=management/management-interface=http-
interface/: write-attribute(name=security-realm,value=TestRealm)
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.9. Securing the Management Interfaces with Role-Based Access Control

### 11.9.1. About Role-Based Access Control (RBAC)

Role-Based Access Control (RBAC) is a mechanism for specifying a set of permissions for management users. It allows multiple users to share responsibility for managing JBoss EAP 6.3 servers without each of them requiring unrestricted access. By providing "separation of duties" for management users, JBoss EAP 6.3 makes it easy for an organization to spread responsibility between individuals or groups without granting unnecessary privileges. This ensures the maximum possible security of your servers and data while still providing flexibility for configuration, deployment, and management.

Role-Based Access Control in JBoss EAP 6.3 works through a combination of role permissions and constraints.

Seven predefined roles are provided that each have different fixed permissions. The predefined roles are: Monitor, Operator, Maintainer, Deployer, Auditor, Administrator, and SuperUser. Each management user is assigned one or more roles, which specify what the user is permitted to do when managing the server.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.9.2. Role-Based Access Control in the Management Console and CLI

When Role-Based Access Control (RBAC) is enabled, the role assigned to a user determines the resources to which they have access and what operations they can conduct with a resource's attributes.

#### The Management Console

In the management console some controls and views are disabled (greyed out) or not visible at all depending on the permissions of the role to which the user has been assigned.

If you do not have read permissions to a resource attribute, that attribute will appear blank in the console. For example, most roles cannot read the username and password fields for datasources.

If you do not have write permissions to a resource attribute, that attribute will be disabled (greyed-out) in the edit form for the resource. If you do not have write permissions to the resource, then the edit button for the resource will not appear.

If a user does not have permissions to access a resource or attribute (it is "unaddressable" for that role), it will not appear in the console for that user. An example of that is the access control system itself which is only visible to a few roles by default.

#### The Management CLI or API

Users of the Management CLI or management API will encounter slightly different behavior in the API when RBAC is enabled.

Resources and attributes that cannot be read are filtered from results. If the filtered items are addressable by the role, their names are listed as **filtered-attributes** in the **response-headers** section of the result. If a resource or attribute is not addressable by the role, it is not listed.

Attempting to access a resource that is not addressable will result in a **resource not found** error.

If a user attempts to write or read a resource that they can address but lack the appropriate write or read permissions, a **Permission Denied** error is returned.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.9.3. Supported Authentication Schemes

Role-Based Access Control works with the standard authentication providers that are included with JBoss EAP 6.3. The standard authentication providers are: **username/password**, **client certificate**, and **local user**.

#### Username/Password

Users are authenticated using a username and password combination which is verified against either the **mgmt-users.properties** file, or an LDAP server.

#### Client Certificate

Using the Trust Store.

#### Local User

**jboss-cli.sh** authenticates automatically as Local User if the server that is running on the same machine. By default Local User is a member of the **SuperUser** group.

Regardless of which provider is used, JBoss EAP is responsible for the assignment of roles to users. However when authenticating with the **mgmt-users.properties** file or an LDAP server, those systems can supply user group information. This information can also be used by JBoss EAP to assign roles to users.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.9.4. The Standard Roles

JBoss EAP 6 provides seven predefined user roles: Monitor, Operator, Maintainer, Deployer, Auditor, Administrator, and SuperUser. Each of these roles has a different set of permissions and is designed for specific use cases. The Monitor, Operator, Maintainer, Administrator, and SuperUser role each build upon each other, with each having more permissions than the previous. The Auditor and Deployer roles are similar to the Monitor and Maintainer roles respectively but have some additional special permissions and restrictions.

#### Monitor

Users of the Monitor role have the fewest permissions and can only read the current configuration and state of the server. This role is intended for users who need to track and report on the performance of the server.

Monitors cannot modify server configuration nor can they access sensitive data or operations.

#### Operator

The Operator role extends the Monitor role by adding the ability to modify the runtime state of the server. This means that Operators can reload and shutdown the server as well as pause and resume JMS destinations. The Operator role is ideal for users who are responsible for the physical or virtual hosts of the application server so they can ensure

that servers can be shutdown and restarted correctly when needed.

Operators cannot modify server configuration or access sensitive data or operations.

### Maintainer

The Maintainer role has access to view and modify runtime state and all configuration except sensitive data and operations. The Maintainer role is the general purpose role that doesn't have access to sensitive data and operation. The Maintainer role allows users to be granted almost complete access to administer the server without giving those users access to passwords and other sensitive information.

Maintainers cannot access sensitive data or operations.

### Administrator

The Administrator role has unrestricted access to all resources and operations on the server except the audit logging system. The Administrator role has access to sensitive data and operations. This role can also configure the access control system. The Administrator role is only required when handling sensitive data or configuring users and roles.

Administrators cannot access the audit logging system and cannot change themselves to the Auditor or SuperUser role.

### SuperUser

The SuperUser role has no restrictions and has complete access to all resources and operations of the server including the audit logging system. This role is equivalent to the administrator users of earlier versions of JBoss EAP 6 (6.0 and 6.1). If RBAC is disabled, all management users have permissions equivalent to the SuperUser role.

### Deployer

The Deployer role has the same permissions as the Monitor, but can modify configuration and state for deployments and any other resource type enabled as an application resource.

### Auditor

The Auditor role has all the permissions of the Monitor role and can also view (but not modify) sensitive data, and has full access to the audit logging system. The Auditor role is the only role other than SuperUser that can access the audit logging system.

Auditors cannot modify sensitive data or resources. Only read access is permitted.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.9.5. About Role Permissions

What each role is allowed to do is defined by what permissions it has. Not every role has every permission. Notably SuperUser has every permission and Monitor has the least.

Each permission can grant read and/or write access for a single category of resources.

The categories are: runtime state, server configuration, sensitive data, the audit log, and the access control system.

[Table 11.5, “Role Permissions Matrix”](#) summarizes the permissions of each role.

### Table 11.5. Role Permissions Matrix

	Monitor	Operator	Maintain er	Deployer	Auditor	Administrat or	SuperUs er
Read Config and State	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Read Sensitive Data [2]					X	X	X
Modify Sensitive Data [2]						X	X
Read/Modify Audit Log					X		X
Modify Runtime State		X	X	X[1]		X	X
Modify Persistent Config			X	X[1]		X	X
Read/Modify Access Control						X	X

[1] permissions are restricted to application resources.

[2] What resources are considered to be "sensitive data" are configured using Sensitivity Constraints.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.9.6. About Constraints

Constraints are named sets of access-control configuration for a specified list of resources. The RBAC system uses the combination of constraints and role permissions to determine if any specific user can perform a management action.

Constraints are divided into three classifications: application, sensitivity and vault expression.

#### Application Constraints

Application Constraints define sets of resources and attributes that can be accessed by users of the Deployer role. By default the only enabled Application Constraint is core which includes deployments, deployment overlays. Application Constraints are also included (but not enabled by default) for datasources, logging, mail, messaging, naming, resource-adapters and security. These constraints allow Deployer users to not only deploy applications but also configure and maintain the resources that are required by those applications.

Application constraint configuration is in the Management API at **/core-service=management/access=authorization/constraint=application-classification**.

#### Sensitivity Constraints

Sensitivity Constraints define sets of resources that are considered "sensitive". A sensitive resource is generally one that is either secret, like a password, or one that will have serious impact on the operation of the server, like networking, JVM configuration, or system properties. The access control system itself is also considered sensitive.

The only roles permitted to write to sensitive resources are Administrator and SuperUser. The Auditor role is only able to read sensitive resources. No other roles have access.

Sensitivity constraint configuration is in the Management API at **/core-service=management/access=authorization/constraint=sensitivity-classification**.

### Vault Expression Constraint

The Vault Expression constraint defines if reading or writing vault expressions is consider a sensitive operation. By default both reading and writing vault expressions is a sensitive operation.

Vault Expression constraint configuration is in the Management API at **/core-service=management/access=authorization/constraint=vault-expression**.

Constraints can not be configured in the Management Console at this time.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.9.7. About JMX and Role-Based Access Control

Role-Based Access Control applies to JMX in three ways:

1. The Management API of JBoss EAP 6 is exposed as JMX Management Beans. These Management Beans are referred to as "core mbeans" and access to them is controlled and filtered exactly the same as the underlying Management API itself.
2. The JMX subsystem is configured with write permissions being "sensitive". This means only users of the Administrator and SuperUser roles can make changes to that subsystem. Users of the Auditor role can also read this subsystem configuration.
3. By default Management Beans registered by deployed applications and services (non-core mbeans) can be accessed by all management users, but only users of the Maintainer, Operator, Administrator, SuperUser roles can write to them.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.9.8. Configuring Role-Based Access Control

### 11.9.8.1. Overview of RBAC Configuration Tasks

When RBAC is enabled only users of the Administration or SuperUser role can view and make changes to the Access Control system.

The management console provides an interface for the following common RBAC tasks:

- » View and configure what roles are assigned to (or excluded from) each user
- » View and configure what roles are assigned to (or excluded from) each group
- » View group and user membership per role.
- » Configure default membership per role.
- » Create a scoped role

The management CLI provides access to the complete access control system. This means that everything that can be done in the management console can be done there, but a number of additional tasks can be performed with the management CLI that cannot be done with the management console.

The following additional tasks can be performed in the CLI:

- » Enable and disable RBAC
- » Change permission combination policy
- » Configuring Application Resource and Resource Sensitivity Constraints

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.9.8.2. Enabling Role-Based Access Control

By default the Role-Based Access Control (RBAC) system is disabled. It is enabled by changing the provider attribute from **simple** to **rbac**. This can be done using the Management CLI or by editing the server configuration XML file if the server is offline. When RBAC is disabled or enabled on a running server, the server configuration must be reloaded before it takes effect.

Once enabled it can only be disabled by a user of the Administrator or SuperUser roles. By default the Management CLI runs as the **SuperUser** role if it is run on the same machine as the server.

#### Procedure 11.8. Enabling RBAC

- » To enable RBAC with the Management CLI, use the **write-attribute** operation of the access authorization resource to set the provider attribute to **rbac**.

```
/core-service=management/access=authorization:write-attribute(name=provider, value=rbac)
```

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /core-service=management/access=authorization:write-attribute(name=provider, value=rbac)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "response-headers" => {
        "operation-requires-reload" => true,
        "process-state" => "reload-required"
    }
}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /:reload
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => undefined
}
```

#### Procedure 11.9. Disabling RBAC

- » To disable RBAC with the Management CLI, use the **write-attribute** operation of the access authorization resource to set the provider attribute to **simple**.

```
/core-service=management/access=authorization:write-attribute(name=provider, value=simple)
```

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /core-service=management/access=authorization:write-attribute(name=provider, value=simple)
```

```
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "response-headers" => {
        "operation-requires-reload" => true,
        "process-state" => "reload-required"
    }
}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /:reload
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => undefined
}
```

If the server is offline the XML configuration can be edited to enable or disable RBAC. To do this, edit the **provider** attribute of the **access-control** element of the management element. Set the value to **rbac** to enable, and **simple** to disable.

```
<management>

    <access-control provider="rbac">
        <role-mapping>
            <role name="SuperUser">
                <include>
                    <user name="$local"/>
                </include>
            </role>
        </role-mapping>
    </access-control>

</management>
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.9.8.3. Changing the Permission Combination Policy

The Permission Combination Policy determines how permissions are determined if a user is assigned more than one role. This can be set to **permissive** or **rejecting**. The default is **permissive**.

When set to **permissive**, if any role is assigned to the user that permits an action, then the action is allowed.

When set to **rejecting**, if multiple roles are assigned to a user, then no action is allowed. This means that when the policy is set to **rejecting** each user should only be assigned one role. Users with multiple roles will not be able to use the Management Console or the Management CLI when the policy is set to **rejecting**.

The Permission Combination Policy is configured by setting the **permission-combination-policy** attribute to either **permissive** or **rejecting**. This can be done using the Management CLI or by editing the server configuration XML file if the server is offline.

#### Procedure 11.10. Set the Permission Combination Policy

- » Use the **write-attribute** operation of the access authorization resource to set the **permission-combination-policy** attribute to the required policy name.

```
/core-service=management/access=authorization:write-
attribute(name=permission-combination-policy, value=POLICYNAME)
```

The valid policy names are rejecting and permissive.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /core-
service=management/access=authorization:write-
attribute(name=permission-combination-policy, value=rejecting)
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization]
```

If the server is offline the XML configuration can be edited to change the permission combination policy value. To do this, edit the **permission-combination-policy** attribute of the access-control element.

```
<access-control provider="rbac" permission-combination-
policy="rejecting">
<role-mapping>
<role name="SuperUser">
<include>
<user name="$local"/>
</include>
</role>
</role-mapping>
</access-control>
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.9.9. Managing Roles

### 11.9.9.1. About Role Membership

When Role-Based Access Control (RBAC) is enabled, what a management user is permitted to do is determined by the roles to which the user is assigned. JBoss EAP 6.3 uses a system of includes and excludes based on both the user and group membership to determine to which role a user belongs.

A user is considered to be assigned to a role if:

1. The user is:
  - ✖ listed as a user to be included in the role, or
  - ✖ a member of a group that is listed to be included in the role.
2. The user is not:
  - ✖ listed as a user to exclude from the role, or
  - ✖ a member of a group that is listed to be excluded from the role.

Exclusions take priority over inclusions.

Role include and exclude settings for users and groups can be configured using both the management console and the management CLI.

Only users of the SuperUser or Administrator roles can perform this configuration.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.9.9.2. Configure User Role Assignment

Roles for a user to be included in and excluded from can be configured in the Management Console and the Management CLI. This topic only shows using the Management Console.

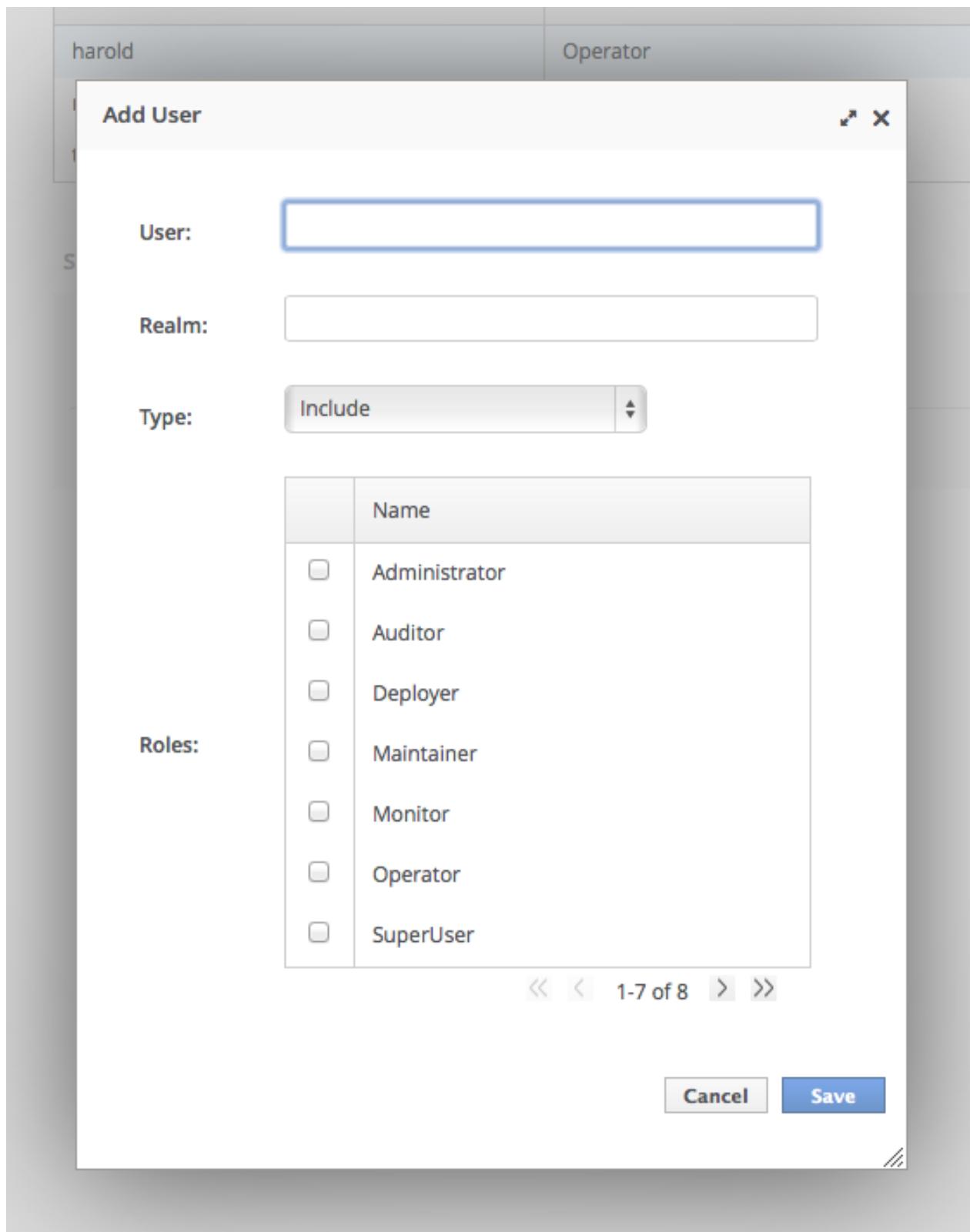
Only users in the **SuperUser** or **Administrator** roles can perform this configuration.

The User roles configuration in the management console can be found by following these steps:

1. Login to the Management Console.
2. Click on the **Administration** tab.
3. Expand the **Access Control** menu and select **Role Assignment**.
4. Select the **USERS** tab.

#### Procedure 11.11. Create a new role assignment for a user

1. Login to the Management console.
2. Navigate to the **Users** tab of the **Role Assignment** section.
3. Click the **Add** button at the top right of the user list. **Add User** dialog appears.



**Figure 11.1. Add User Dialog**

4. Specify user name, and optionally realm.
5. Set the type menu to include or exclude.
6. Click the checkbox of the roles to include or exclude. To check multiple items, hold down the Control key (Command key on OSX).
7. Click **Save** to finish.

When successful, the **Add User** dialog closes, and the list of users is updated to reflect the changes made. If unsuccessful a **Failed to save role assignment** message is displayed.

#### Procedure 11.12. Update the role assignment for a user

1. Login to the Management console.
2. Navigate to the **Users** tab of the **Role Assignment** section.
3. Select user from the list.
4. Click **Edit**. The selection panel enters edit mode.

User	Roles
harold	Operator
max	Auditor
theboss	Administrator

« < 1-3 of 3 > »

**Selection**

Edit

User: harold

Available roles

- Administrator
- Auditor
- Deployer
- Maintainer
- Monitor
- SuperUser
- monitor-main-sg

Assigned roles

- Operator

Excluded roles

Roles:

« < 1-7 of 7 > »

**Cancel** **Save**

**Figure 11.2. Selection Edit View**

Here you can add and remove assigned and excluded roles for the user.

- a. To add an assigned role, select the required role from the list of available roles on the left and click button with the right-facing arrow next to the assigned roles list. The role moves from the available list to the assigned list.

- b. To remove an assigned role, select the required role from the assigned roles list on the right and click the button with the left-facing arrow next to the assigned roles list. The role moves from the assigned list to the available list.
  - c. To add an excluded role, select the required role from the list of available roles on the left and click button with the right-facing arrow next to the excluded roles list. The role moves from the available list to the excluded list.
  - d. To remove an excluded role, selected the required role from the excluded roles list on the right and click the button with the left-facing arrow next to the excluded roles list. The role moves from the excluded list to the available list.
5. Click **Save** to finish.

When successful, the edit view closes, and the list of users is updated to reflect the changes made. If unsuccessful a **Failed to save role assignment** message is displayed.

#### **Procedure 11.13. Remove role assignment for a user**

1. Login to the Management console.
2. Navigate to the **Users** tab of the Role Assignment section.
3. Select the user from the list.
4. Click **Remove**. The **Remove Role Assignment** confirmation prompt appears.
5. Click **Confirm**.

When successful, the user will no longer appear in the list of user role assignments.



#### **Important**

Removing the user from the list of role assignments does not remove the user from the system, nor does it guarantee that no roles will be assigned to the user. Roles might still be assigned from group membership.

[Report a bug](#)

#### **11.9.9.3. Configure User Role Assignment using the Management CLI**

Roles for a user to be included in and excluded from can be configured in the Management Console and the Management CLI. This topic only shows using the Management CLI.

The configuration of mapping users and groups to roles is located in the management API at: **/core-service=management/access=authorization** as **role-mapping** elements.

Only users of the SuperUser or Administrator roles can perform this configuration.

For easier access to the commands, in the Management CLI change to the **/core-service=management/access=authorization** location:

```
[standalone@localhost:9999] cd /core-service=management/access=authorization
```

#### **Procedure 11.14. Viewing Role Assignment Configuration**

1. Use the :read-children-names operation to get a complete list of the configured roles:

```
/core-service=management/access=authorization:read-children-
names(child-type=role-mapping)
```

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization] :read-children-
names(child-type=role-mapping)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => [
        "Administrator",
        "Deployer",
        "Maintainer",
        "Monitor",
        "Operator",
        "SuperUser"
    ]
}
```

2. Use the **read-resource** operation of a specified role-mapping to get the full details of a specific role:

```
/core-service=management/access=authorization/role-
mapping=ROLENAME:read-resource(recursive=true)
```

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization] ./role-
mapping=Administrator:read-resource(recursive=true)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "include-all" => false,
        "exclude" => undefined,
        "include" => {
            "user-theboss" => {
                "name" => "theboss",
                "realm" => undefined,
                "type" => "USER"
            },
            "user-harold" => {
                "name" => "harold",
                "realm" => undefined,
                "type" => "USER"
            },
            "group-SysOps" => {
                "name" => "SysOps",
                "realm" => undefined,
                "type" => "GROUP"
            }
        }
    }
}
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization]
```

#### Procedure 11.15. Add a new role

This procedure shows how to add a role-mapping entry for a role. This must be done before the role can be configured.

- » Use the **add** operation to add a new role configuration.

```
/core-service=management/access=authorization/role-
mapping=ROLENAME:add
```

*ROLENAME* is the name of the role that the new mapping is for.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization] ./role-
mapping=Auditor:add
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization]
```

#### Procedure 11.16. Add a user as included in a role

This procedure shows how to add a user to the included list of a role.

If no configuration for a role has been done, then a role-mapping entry for it must be done first.

- » Use the **add** operation to add a user entry to the includes list of the role.

```
/core-service=management/access=authorization/role-
mapping=ROLENAME/include=ALIAS:add(name=USERNAME, type=USER)
```

*ROLENAME* is the name of the role being configured.

**ALIAS** is a unique name for this mapping. Red Hat recommends that you use a naming convention for your aliases such as **user-USERNAME**.

*USERNAME* is the name of the user being added to the include list.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization] ./role-
mapping=Auditor/include=user-max:add(name=max, type=USER)
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization]
```

#### Procedure 11.17. Add a user as excluded in a role

This procedure shows how to add a user to the excluded list of a role.

If no configuration for a role has been done, then a role-mapping entry for it must be done first.

- » Use the **add** operation to add a user entry to the excludes list of the role.

```
/core-service=management/access=authorization/role-
mapping=ROLENAME/exclude=ALIAS:add(name=USERNAME, type=USER)
```

*ROLENAME* is the name of the role being configured.

*USERNAME* is the name of the user being added to the exclude list.

**ALIAS** is a unique name for this mapping. Red Hat recommends that you use a naming convention for your aliases such as **user-USERNAME**.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization] ./role-
mapping=Auditor/exclude=user-max:add(name=max, type=USER)
>{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization]
```

### Procedure 11.18. Remove user role include configuration

This procedure shows how to remove a user include entry from a role mapping.

- » Use the **remove** operation to remove the entry.

```
/core-service=management/access=authorization/role-
mapping=ROLENAME/include=ALIAS:remove
```

*ROLENAME* is the name of the role being configured

**ALIAS** is a unique name for this mapping. Red Hat recommends that you use a naming convention for your aliases such as **user-*USERNAME***.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization] ./role-
mapping=Auditor/include=user-max:remove
>{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization]
```

Removing the user from the list of includes does not remove the user from the system, nor does it guarantee that the role won't be assigned to the user. The role might still be assigned based on group membership.

### Procedure 11.19. Remove user role exclude configuration

This procedure shows how to remove an user exclude entry from a role mapping.

- » Use the **remove** operation to remove the entry.

```
/core-service=management/access=authorization/role-
mapping=ROLENAME/exclude=ALIAS:remove
```

*ROLENAME* is the name of the role being configured.

**ALIAS** is a unique name for this mapping. Red Hat recommends that you use a naming convention for your aliases such as **user-*USERNAME***.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization] ./role-
mapping=Auditor/exclude=user-max:remove
>{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization]
```

Removing the user from the list of excludes does not remove the user from the system, nor does it guarantee the role will be assigned to the user. Roles might still be excluded based on group membership.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 11.9.9.4. About Roles and User Groups

Users authenticated using either the **mgmt-users.properties** file or an LDAP server, can be members of user groups. A user group is an arbitrary label that can be assigned to one or more users.

The RBAC system can be configured to automatically assign roles to users depending on what user groups they are members of. It can also exclude users from roles based on group membership.

When using the **mgmt-users.properties** file, group information is stored in the **mgmt-groups.properties** file. When using LDAP the group information is stored in the LDAP sever and maintained by those responsible for the LDAP server.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 11.9.9.5. Configure Group Role Assignment

Roles can be assigned to a user based on the user's membership of a user group.

Groups to be included or excluded from a role can be configured in the Management Console and the Management CLI. This topic only shows using the Management Console.

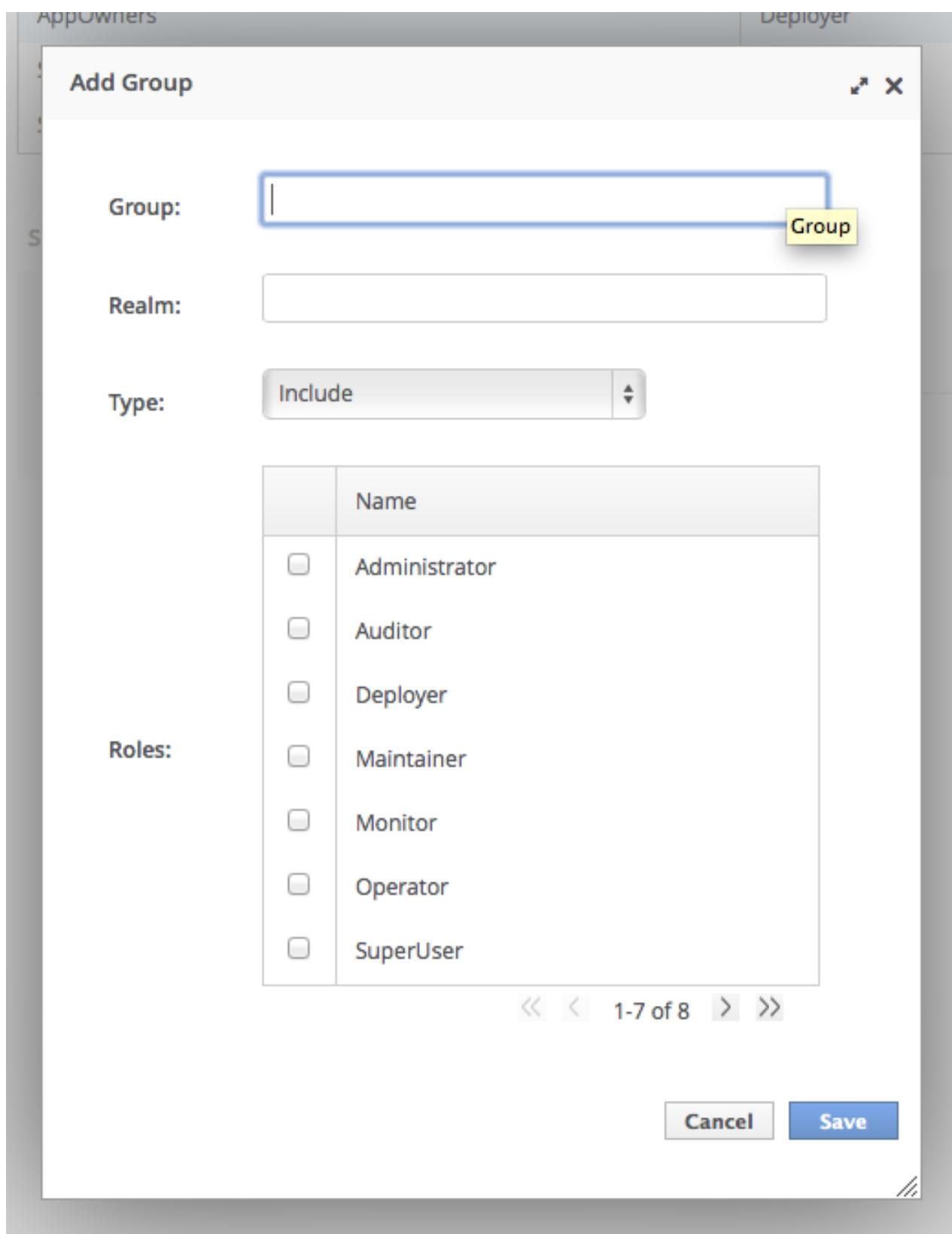
Only users in the **SuperUser** or **Administrator** roles can perform this configuration.

The Group roles configuration in the management console can be found by following these steps:

1. Login to the Management Console.
2. Click on the **Administration** tab.
3. Expand the **Access Control** menu and select **Role Assignment**.
4. Select the **GROUPS** tab.

#### Procedure 11.20. Create a new role assignment for a group

1. Login to the Management console
2. Navigate to the **GROUPS** tab of the **Role Assignment** section.
3. Click the **Add** button at the top right of the user list. **Add Group** dialog appears.



**Figure 11.3. Add Group Dialog**

4. Specify the group name, and optionally the realm.
5. Set the type menu to include or exclude.
6. Click the checkbox of the roles to include or exclude. To check multiple items, hold down the Control key (Command key on OSX).
7. Click **Save** to finish.

When successful, the **Add Group** dialog closes, and the list of groups is updated to reflect the changes made. If unsuccessful a **Failed to save role assignment** message is displayed.

#### Procedure 11.21. Update a role assignment for a group

1. Login to the Management console.
2. Navigate to the **GROUPS** tab of the Role Assignment section.
3. Select the group from the list.
4. Click Edit. The Selection view enters Edit mode.

#### Groups

Assign roles to groups.

**Add** **Remove**

Group	Roles
AppOwners	Deployer
Supervisors	Monitor
SysOps	Operator

« < 1-3 of 3 > »

#### Selection

Edit

Group:

AppOwners

Available roles

Administrator  
Auditor  
Maintainer  
Monitor  
Operator  
SuperUser  
monitor-main-sg

Assigned roles

Deployer

Roles:



Excluded roles



« < 1-7 of 7 > »

**Cancel** **Save**

**Figure 11.4. Selection View Edit Mode**

Here you can add and remove assigned and excluded roles from the group:

- To add assigned role, select the required role from the list of available roles on the left and click button with the right-facing arrow next to the assigned roles list. The role moves from the available list to the assigned list.

- To remove an assigned role, select the required role from the assigned roles list on the right and click the button with the left-facing arrow next to the assigned roles list. The role moves from the assigned list to the available list.
  - To add an excluded role, select the required role from the list of available roles on the left and click button with the right-facing arrow next to the excluded roles list. The role moves from the available list to the excluded list.
  - To remove an excluded role, selected the required role from the excluded roles list on the right and click the button with the left-facing arrow next to the excluded roles list. The role moves from the excluded list to the available list.
5. Click **Save** to finish.

When successful, the edit view closes, and the list of groups is updated to reflect the changes made. If unsuccessful a **Failed to save role assignment** message is displayed.

#### **Procedure 11.22. Remove role assignment for a group**

1. Login to the Management console.
2. Navigate to the **GROUPS** tab of the **Role Assignment** section.
3. Select the group from the list.
4. Click **Remove**. The **Remove Role Assignment** confirmation prompt appears.
5. Click **Confirm**.

When successful, the role will no longer appear in the list of group role assignments.

Removing the group from the list of role assignments does not remove the user group from the system, nor does it guarantee that no roles will be assigned to members of that group. Each group member might still have a role assigned to them directly.

[Report a bug](#)

#### **11.9.9.6. Configure Group Role Assignment using the Management CLI**

Groups to be included or excluded from a role can be configured in the Management Console and the Management CLI. This topic only shows using the Management CLI.

The configuration of mapping users and groups to roles is located in the management API at: **/core-service=management/access=authorization** as role-mapping elements.

Only users in the SuperUser or Administrator roles can perform this configuration.

For easier access to the commands, in the Management CLI change to the **/core-service=management/access=authorization** location:

```
[standalone@localhost:9999] cd /core-service=management/access=authorization
```

#### **Procedure 11.23. Viewing Group Role Assignment Configuration**

1. Use the **read-children-names** operation to get a complete list of the configured roles:

```
/core-service=management/access=authorization:read-children-
names(child-type=role-mapping)
```

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization] :read-children-
names(child-type=role-mapping)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => [
        "Administrator",
        "Deployer",
        "Maintainer",
        "Monitor",
        "Operator",
        "SuperUser"
    ]
}
```

2. Use the **read-resource** operation of a specified role-mapping to get the full details of a specific role:

```
/core-service=management/access=authorization/role-
mapping=ROLENAME:read-resource(recursive=true)
```

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization] ./role-
mapping=Administrator:read-resource(recursive=true)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "include-all" => false,
        "exclude" => undefined,
        "include" => {
            "user-theboss" => {
                "name" => "theboss",
                "realm" => undefined,
                "type" => "USER"
            },
            "user-harold" => {
                "name" => "harold",
                "realm" => undefined,
                "type" => "USER"
            },
            "group-SysOps" => {
                "name" => "SysOps",
                "realm" => undefined,
                "type" => "GROUP"
            }
        }
    }
}
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization]
```

#### Procedure 11.24. Add a new role

This procedure shows how to add a role-mapping entry for a role. This must be done before the role can be configured.

- » Use the **add** operation to add a new role configuration.

```
/core-service=management/access=authorization/role-
mapping=ROLENAME:add
```

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization] ./role-
mapping=Auditor:add
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization]
```

#### **Procedure 11.25. Add a Group as included in a role**

This procedure shows how to add a Group to the included list of a role.

If no configuration for a role has been done, then a role-mapping entry for it must be done first.

- » Use the **add** operation to add a Group entry to the includes list of the role.

```
/core-service=management/access=authorization/role-
mapping=ROLENAME/include=ALIAS:add(name=GROUPNAME, type=GROUP)
```

*ROLENAME* is the name of the role being configured.

*GROUPNAME* is the name of the group being added to the include list.

**ALIAS** is a unique name for this mapping. Red Hat recommends that you use a naming convention for your aliases such as **group-GROUPNAME**.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization] ./role-
mapping=Auditor/include=group-investigators:add(name=investigators,
type=GROUP)
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization]
```

#### **Procedure 11.26. Add a group as excluded in a role**

This procedure shows how to add a group to the excluded list of a role.

If no configuration for a role has been done, then a role-mapping entry for it must be created first.

- » Use the **add** operation to add a group entry to the excludes list of the role.

```
/core-service=management/access=authorization/role-
mapping=ROLENAME/exclude=ALIAS:add(name=GROUPNAME, type=GROUP)
```

*ROLENAME* is the name of the role being configured

*GROUPNAME* is the name of the group being added to the exclude list

**ALIAS** is a unique name for this mapping. Red Hat recommends that you use a naming convention for your aliases such as **group-GROUPNAME**.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization] ./role-
mapping=Auditor/exclude=group-supervisors:add(name=supervisors,
type=GROUP)
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization]
```

### Procedure 11.27. Remove group role include configuration

This procedure shows how to remove a group include entry from a role mapping.

- » Use the **remove** operation to remove the entry.

```
/core-service=management/access=authorization/role-
mapping=ROLENAME/include=ALIAS:remove
```

*ROLENAME* is the name of the role being configured

**ALIAS** is a unique name for this mapping. Red Hat recommends that you use a naming convention for your aliases such as **group-*GROUPNAME***.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization] ./role-
mapping=Auditor/include=group-investigators:remove
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization]
```

Removing the group from the list of includes does not remove the group from the system, nor does it guarantee that the role won't be assigned to users in this group. The role might still be assigned to users in the group individually.

### Procedure 11.28. Remove a user group exclude entry

This procedure shows how to remove a group exclude entry from a role mapping.

- » Use the **remove** operation to remove the entry.

```
/core-service=management/access=authorization/role-
mapping=ROLENAME/exclude=ALIAS:remove
```

*ROLENAME* is the name of the role being configured.

**ALIAS** is a unique name for this mapping. Red Hat recommends that you use a naming convention for your aliases such as **group-*GROUPNAME***.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization] ./role-
mapping=Auditor/exclude=group-supervisors:remove
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 access=authorization]
```

Removing the group from the list of excludes does not remove the group from the system. It also does not guarantee the role will be assigned to members of the group. Roles might still be excluded based on group membership.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.9.9.7. About Authorization and Group Loading with LDAP

An LDAP directory contains entries for user accounts and groups, cross referenced by attributes. Depending on the LDAP server configuration, a user entity may map the groups the user belongs to through **memberof** attributes; a group entity may map which users belong to it through **uniqueMember** attributes; or both mappings may be maintained by the LDAP server.

Users generally authenticate against the server using a simple user name. When searching for group membership information, depending on the directory server in use, searches could be performed using this simple name or using the distinguished name of the user's entry in the directory.

The authentication step of a user connecting to the server always happens first. Once the user is successfully authenticated the server loads the user's groups. The authentication step and the authorization step each require a connection to the LDAP server. The realm optimizes this process by reusing the authentication connection for the group loading step. As will be shown within the configuration steps below it is possible to define rules within the authorization section to convert a user's simple user name to their distinguished name. The result of a "user name to distinguished name mapping" search during authentication is cached and reused during the authorization query when the **force** attribute is set to "false". When **force** is true, the search is performed again during authorization (while loading groups). This is typically done when different servers perform authentication and authorization.

```
<authorization>
    <ldap connection="...">
        <!-- OPTIONAL -->
        <username-to-dn force="true">
            <!-- Only one of the following. -->
            <username-is-dn />
            <username-filter base-dn="..." recursive="..." user-dn-
attribute="..." attribute="..." />
            <advanced-filter base-dn="..." recursive="..." user-dn-
attribute="..." filter="..." />
        </username-to-dn>

        <group-search group-name="..." iterative="..." group-dn-
attribute="..." group-name-attribute="..." >
            <!-- One of the following -->
            <group-to-principal base-dn="..." recursive="..." search-
by="...">
                <membership-filter principal-attribute="..." />
            </group-to-principal>
            <principal-to-group group-attribute="..." />
        </group-search>
    </ldap>
</authorization>
```



## Important

These examples specify some attributes with their default values. This is done for demonstration. Attributes that specify their default values are removed from the configuration when it is persisted by the server. The exception is the **force** attribute. It is required, even when set to the default value of **false**.

### username-to-dn

The **username-to-dn** element specifies how to map the user name to the distinguished name of their entry in the LDAP directory. This element is only required when *both* of the following are true:

- » The authentication and authorization steps are against different LDAP servers.
- » The group search uses the distinguished name.

### **1:1 username-to-dn**

This specifies that the user name entered by the remote user is the user's distinguished name.

```
<username-to-dn force="false">
    <username-is-dn />
</username-to-dn>
```

This defines a 1:1 mapping and there is no additional configuration.

### **username-filter**

The next option is very similar to the simple option described above for the authentication step. A specified attribute is searched for a match against the supplied user name.

```
<username-to-dn force="true">
    <username-filter base-
dn="dc=people,dc=harold,dc=example,dc=com" recursive="false"
attribute="sn" user-dn-attribute="dn" />
</username-to-dn>
```

The attributes that can be set here are:

- » **base-dn**: The distinguished name of the context to begin the search.
- » **recursive**: Whether the search will extend to sub contexts. Defaults to **false**.
- » **attribute**: The attribute of the users entry to try and match against the supplied user name. Defaults to **uid**.
- » **user-dn-attribute**: The attribute to read to obtain the users distinguished name. Defaults to **dn**.

### **advanced-filter**

The final option is to specify an advanced filter, as in the authentication section this is an opportunity to use a custom filter to locate the users distinguished name.

```
<username-to-dn force="true">
    <advanced-filter base-
dn="dc=people,dc=harold,dc=example,dc=com" recursive="false"
filter="sAMAccountName={0}" user-dn-attribute="dn" />
</username-to-dn>
```

For the attributes that match those in the *username-filter* example, the meaning and default values are the same. There is one new attribute:

- » **filter**: Custom filter used to search for a user's entry where the user name will be substituted in the **{0}** place holder.



## Important

The XML must remain valid after the filter is defined so if any special characters are used such as & ensure the proper form is used. For example &amp; for the & character.

### The Group Search

There are two different styles that can be used when searching for group membership information. The first style is where the user's entry contains an attribute that references the groups the user is a member of. The second style is where the group contains an attribute referencing the users entry.

When there is a choice of which style to use Red Hat recommends that the configuration for a user's entry referencing the group is used. This is because with this method group information can be loaded by reading attributes of known distinguished names without having to perform any searches. The other approach requires extensive searches to identify the groups that reference the user.

Before describing the configuration here are some LDIF examples to illustrate this.

#### Example 11.21. Principal to Group - LDIF example.

This example illustrates where we have a user **TestUserOne** who is a member of **GroupOne**, **GroupOne** is in turn a member of **GroupFive**. The group membership is shown by the use of a **memberOf** attribute which is set to the distinguished name of the group of which the user (or group) is a member.

It is not shown here but a user could potentially have multiple **memberOf** attributes set, one for each group of which the user is directly a member.

```

dn: uid=TestUserOne,ou=users,dc=principal-to-group,dc=example,dc=org
objectClass: extensibleObject
objectClass: top
objectClass: groupMember
objectClass: inetOrgPerson
objectClass: uidObject
objectClass: person
objectClass: organizationalPerson
cn: Test User One
sn: Test User One
uid: TestUserOne
distinguishedName: uid=TestUserOne,ou=users,dc=principal-to-
group,dc=example,dc=org
memberOf: uid=GroupOne,ou=groups,dc=principal-to-
group,dc=example,dc=org
memberOf: uid=Slashy/Group,ou=groups,dc=principal-to-
group,dc=example,dc=org
userPassword:: e1NTSEF9WFpURzhLVjc4WVZBQUJNbEI3Ym96UVAv
a0RTNlFNWUpLOTdTmUE9PQ==

dn: uid=GroupOne,ou=groups,dc=principal-to-group,dc=example,dc=org
objectClass: extensibleObject
objectClass: top
objectClass: groupMember
objectClass: group

```

```

objectClass: uidObject
uid: GroupOne
distinguishedName: uid=GroupOne,ou=groups,dc=principal-to-
group,dc=example,dc=org
memberOf: uid=GroupFive,ou=subgroups,ou=groups,dc=principal-to-
group,dc=example,dc=org

dn: uid=GroupFive,ou=subgroups,ou=groups,dc=principal-to-
group,dc=example,dc=org
objectClass: extensibleObject
objectClass: top
objectClass: groupMember
objectClass: group
objectClass: uidObject
uid: GroupFive
distinguishedName: uid=GroupFive,ou=subgroups,ou=groups,dc=principal-
to-group,dc=example,dc=org

```

### Example 11.22. Group to Principal - LDIF Example

This example shows the same user **TestUserOne** who is a member of **GroupOne** which is in turn a member of **GroupFive** - however in this case it is an attribute **uniqueMember** from the group to the user being used for the cross reference.

Again the attribute used for the group membership cross reference can be repeated, if you look at *GroupFive* there is also a reference to another user *TestUserFive* which is not shown here.

```

dn: uid=TestUserOne,ou=users,dc=group-to-principal,dc=example,dc=org
objectClass: top
objectClass: inetOrgPerson
objectClass: uidObject
objectClass: person
objectClass: organizationalPerson
cn: Test User One
sn: Test User One
uid: TestUserOne
userPassword:::  
e1NTSEF9SjR00TRDR1ltaHc1VVZQOEJvbXhUYjl1dkFVd1lQTmRLSEdzaWc9PQ==

dn: uid=GroupOne,ou=groups,dc=group-to-principal,dc=example,dc=org
objectClass: top
objectClass: groupOfUniqueNames
objectClass: uidObject
cn: Group One
uid: GroupOne
uniqueMember: uid=TestUserOne,ou=users,dc=group-to-
principal,dc=example,dc=org

dn: uid=GroupFive,ou=subgroups,ou=groups,dc=group-to-
principal,dc=example,dc=org
objectClass: top
objectClass: groupOfUniqueNames
objectClass: uidObject
cn: Group Five
uid: GroupFive

```

```
uniqueMember: uid=TestUserFive,ou=users,dc=group-to-
principal,dc=example,dc=org
uniqueMember: uid=GroupOne,ou=groups,dc=group-to-
principal,dc=example,dc=org
```

## General Group Searching

Before looking at the examples for the two approaches shown above we first need to define the attributes common to both of these.

```
<group-search group-name="..." iterative="..." group-dn-attribute="..."
group-name-attribute="..." >
...
</group-search>
```

- » **group-name**: This attribute is used to specify the form that should be used for the group name returned as the list of groups of which the user is a member. This can either be the simple form of the group name or the group's distinguished name. If the distinguished name is required this attribute can be set to **DISTINGUISHED\_NAME**. Defaults to **SIMPLE**.
- » **iterative**: This attribute is used to indicate if, after identifying the groups a user is a member of, we should also iteratively search based on the groups to identify which groups the groups are a member of. If iterative searching is enabled we keep going until either we reach a group that is not a member of any other groups or a cycle is detected. Defaults to **false**.

Cyclic group membership is not a problem. A record of each search is kept to prevent groups that have already been searched from being searched again.



### Important

For iterative searching to work the group entries need to look the same as user entries. The same approach used to identify the groups a user is a member of is then used to identify the groups of which the group is a member. This would not be possible if for group to group membership the name of the attribute used for the cross reference changes or if the direction of the reference changes.

- » **group-dn-attribute**: On an entry for a group which attribute is its distinguished name. Defaults to **dn**.
- » **group-name-attribute**: On an entry for a group which attribute is its simple name. Defaults to **uid**.

### Example 11.23. Principal to Group Example Configuration

Based on the example LDIF from above here is an example configuration iteratively loading a user's groups where the attribute used to cross reference is the **memberOf** attribute on the user.

```
<authorization>
    <ldap connection="LocalLdap">
        <username-to-dn>
            <username-filter base-dn="ou=users,dc=principal-to-
group,dc=example,dc=org" recursive="false" attribute="uid" user-dn-
```

```

        attribute="dn" />
    </username-to-dn>
    <group-search group-name="SIMPLE" iterative="true" group-dn-
attribute="dn" group-name-attribute="uid">
        <principal-to-group group-attribute="memberOf" />
    </group-search>
</ldap>
</authorization>
```

The most important aspect of this configuration is that the **principal-to-group** element has been added with a single attribute.

- » **group-attribute:** The name of the attribute on the user entry that matches the distinguished name of the group the user is a member of. Defaults to **memberOf**.

#### Example 11.24. Group to Principal Example Configuration

This example shows an iterative search for the group to principal LDIF example shown above.

```

<authorization>
    <ldap connection="LocalLdap">
        <username-to-dn>
            <username-filter base-dn="ou=users,dc=group-to-
principal,dc=example,dc=org" recursive="false" attribute="uid" user-dn-
attribute="dn" />
        </username-to-dn>
        <group-search group-name="SIMPLE" iterative="true" group-dn-
attribute="dn" group-name-attribute="uid">
            <group-to-principal base-dn="ou=groups,dc=group-to-
principal,dc=example,dc=org" recursive="true" search-
by="DISTINGUISHED_NAME">
                <membership-filter principal-
attribute="uniqueMember" />
            </group-to-principal>
        </group-search>
    </ldap>
</authorization>
```

Here an element **group-to-principal** is added. This element is used to define how searches for groups that reference the user entry will be performed. The following attributes are set:

- » **base-dn:** The distinguished name of the context to use to begin the search.
- » **recursive:** Whether sub-contexts also be searched. Defaults to **false**.
- » **search-by:** The form of the role name used in searches. Valid values are **SIMPLE** and **DISTINGUISHED\_NAME**. Defaults to **DISTINGUISHED\_NAME**.

Within the *group-to-principal* element there is a *membership-filter* element to define the cross reference.

- » **principal-attribute:** The name of the attribute on the group entry that references the user entry. Defaults to **member**.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.9.9.8. About Scoped Roles

Scoped Roles are user-defined roles that grant the permissions of one of the standard roles but only for one or more specified server groups or hosts. Scoped roles allow for management users to be granted permissions that are limited to only those server groups or hosts that are required.

Scoped roles can be created by users assigned the Administrator or SuperUser roles.

They are defined by five characteristics:

1. A unique name.
2. Which of the standard roles it is based on.
3. If it applies to Server Groups or Hosts
4. The list of server groups or hosts that it is restricted to.
5. If all users are automatically include. This defaults to false.

Once created a scoped role can be assigned to users and groups the same way that the standard roles are.

Creating a scoped role does not let you define new permissions. Scoped roles can only be used to apply the permissions of an existing role in a limited scope. For example, you could create a scoped role based on the Deployer role which is restricted to a single server group.

There are only two scopes that roles can be limited to, host and server group.

#### **Host-scoped roles**

A role that is host-scoped restricts the permissions of that role to one or more hosts. This means access is provided to the relevant `/host= */` resource trees but resources that are specific to other hosts are hidden.

#### **Server-Group-scoped roles**

A role that is server-group-scoped restricts the permissions of that role to one or more server groups. Additionally the role permissions will also apply to the profile, socket binding group, server config and server resources that are associated with the specified server-groups. Any sub-resources within any of those that are not logically related to the server-group will not be visible to the user.

Both host and server-group scoped roles have permissions of the Monitor role for the remainder of the managed domain configuration.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.9.9.9. Creating Scoped Roles

Scoped Roles are user-defined roles that grant the permissions of one of the standard roles but only for one or more specified server groups or hosts. This topic shows how to create scoped roles.

Only users in the **SuperUser** or **Administrator** roles can perform this configuration.

Scoped Role configuration in the management console can be found by following these steps:

1. Login to the Management Console
2. Click on the **Administration** tab

3. Expand the **Access Control** menu and select **Role Assignment**.

4. Select **ROLES** tab, and then the **Scoped Roles** tab within it.

The **Scoped Roles** section of the Management Console consists of two main areas, a table containing a list of the currently configured scoped roles, and the **Selection** panel which displays the details of the role currently selected in the table.

The following procedures show how to perform configuration tasks for Scoped Roles.

#### Procedure 11.29. Add a New Scoped Role

1. Login to the Management Console

2. Navigate to the **Scoped Roles** area of the **Roles** tab.

3. Click **Add**. The **Add Scoped Role** dialog appears.

4. Specify the following details:

- **Name**, the unique name for the new scoped role.
- **Base Role**, the role which this role will base its permissions on.
- **Type**, whether this role will be restricted to hosts or server groups.
- **Scope**, the list of hosts or server groups that the role is restricted to. Multiple entries can be selected.
- **Include All**, should this role automatically include all users. Defaults to no.

5. Click **Save** and the dialog will close and the newly created role will appear in the table.

#### Procedure 11.30. Edit a Scoped Role

1. Login to the Management Console

2. Navigate to the **Scoped Roles** area of the **Roles** tab.

3. Click on the scoped role you want to edit in the table. The details of that role appears in the **Selection** panel below the table.

4. Click **Edit** in the **Selection** panel. The **Selection** panel enters edit mode.

5. Update the details you need to change and click the **Save** button. The **Selection** panel returns to its previous state. Both the **Selection** panel and table show the newly updated details.

#### Procedure 11.31. View Scoped Role Members

1. Login to the Management Console

2. Navigate to the **Scoped Roles** area of the **Roles** tab.

3. Click on the scoped role in the table that you want to view the **Members** of, then click **Members**. The **Members of role** dialog appears. It shows users and groups that are included or excluded from the role.

4. Click **Done** when you have finished reviewing this information.

#### Procedure 11.32. Delete a Scoped Role



## Important

A **Scoped Role** cannot be deleted if users or groups are assigned to it. Remove the role assignments first, and then delete it.

1. Login to the Management Console
2. Navigate to the **Scoped Roles** area of the **Roles** tab.
3. Select the scoped role to be removed in the table.
4. Click the **Remove** button. The **Remove Scoped Role** dialog appears.
5. Click **Confirm**.The dialog closes and the role is removed.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.9.10. Configuring Constraints

#### 11.9.10.1. Configure Sensitivity Constraints

Each Sensitivity Constraint defines a set of resources that are considered "sensitive". A sensitive resource is generally one that either should be secret, like passwords, or one that will have serious impact on the server, like networking, JVM configuration, or system properties. The access control system itself is also considered sensitive. Resource sensitivity limits which roles are able to read, write or address a specific resource.

Sensitivity constraint configuration is in the Management API at `/core-service=management/access=authorization/constraint=sensitivity-classification`.

Within the management model each Sensitivity Constraint is identified as a **classification**. The classifications are then grouped into **types**. There are 39 included classifications that are arranged into 13 types.

To configure a sensitivity constraint, use the **write-attribute** operation to set the **configured-requires-read**, **configured-requires-write**, or **configured-requires-addressable** attribute. To make that type of operation sensitive set the value of the attribute to **true**, otherwise to make it nonsensitive set it to **false**. By default these attributes are not set and the values of **default-requires-read**, **default-requires-write**, and **default-requires-addressable** are used. Once the configured attribute is set it is that value that is used instead of the default. The default values cannot be changed.

#### Example 11.25. Make reading system properties a sensitive operation

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] cd /core-service=management/access=authorization/constraint=sensitivity-classification/type=core/classification=system-property
[domain@localhost:9999 classification=system-property] :write-attribute(name=configured-requires-read, value=true)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => undefined,
```

```

"server-groups" => {"main-server-group" => {"host" => {"master" =>
{
    "server-one" => {"response" => {"outcome" => "success"}},
    "server-two" => {"response" => {"outcome" => "success"}}
}}}
}
[domain@localhost:9999 classification=system-property] :read-resource
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "configured-requires-addressable" => undefined,
        "configured-requires-read" => true,
        "configured-requires-write" => undefined,
        "default-requires-addressable" => false,
        "default-requires-read" => false,
        "default-requires-write" => true,
        "applies-to" => {
            "/host=master/system-property=*" => undefined,
            "/host=master/core-service=platform-mbean/type=runtime" =>
undefined,
            "/server-group=*/system-property=*" => undefined,
            "/host=master/server-config=*/system-property=*" =>
undefined,
            "/host=master" => undefined,
            "/system-property=*" => undefined,
            "/" => undefined
        }
    }
}
[domain@localhost:9999 classification=system-property]

```

What roles will be able to perform what operations depending on the configuration of these attributes is summarized in [Table 11.6, “Sensitivity Constraint Configuration outcomes”](#).

**Table 11.6. Sensitivity Constraint Configuration outcomes**

Value	requires-read	requires-write	requires-addressable
<b>true</b>	Read is sensitive.  Only <b>Auditor</b> , <b>Administrator</b> , <b>SuperUser</b> can read.	Write is sensitive.  Only <b>Administrator</b> and <b>SuperUser</b> can write	Addressing is sensitive.  Only <b>Auditor</b> , <b>Administrator</b> , <b>SuperUser</b> can address.
<b>false</b>	Read is not sensitive.  Any management user can read.	Write is not sensitive.  Only <b>Maintainer</b> , <b>Administrator</b> and <b>SuperUser</b> can write. <b>Deployers</b> can also write the resource is an application resource.	Addressing is not sensitive.  Any management user can address.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 11.9.10.2. Configure Application Resource Constraints

### [11.3.1.2.1. Configuring Application Resource Constraints](#)

Each Application Resource Constraint defines a set of resources, attributes and operations that are usually associated with the deployment of applications and services. When an application resource constraint is enabled management users of the Deployer role are granted access to the resources that it applies to.

Application constraint configuration is in the Management Model at **/core-service=management/access=authorization/constraint=application-classification/**.

Within the management model each Application Resource Constraint is identified as a **classification**. The classifications are then grouped into **types**. There are 14 included classifications that are arranged into 8 types. Each classification has an **applies-to** element which is a list of resource path patterns to which the classifications configuration applies.

By default the only Application Resource classification that is enabled is **core**. Core includes deployments, deployment overlays, and the deployment operations.

To enable an Application Resource, use the **write-attribute** operation to set the **configured-application attribute** of the classification to **true**. To disable an Application Resource, set this attribute to **false**. By default these attributes are not set and the value of **default-application attribute** is used. The default value cannot be changed.

#### **Example 11.26. Enabling the logger-profile application resource classification**

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] cd /core-
service=management/access=authorization/constraint=application-
classification/type=logging/classification=logging-profile
[domain@localhost:9999 classification=logging-profile] :write-
attribute(name=configured-application, value=true)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => undefined,
    "server-groups" => {"main-server-group" => {"host" => {"master" =>
{
    "server-one" => {"response" => {"outcome" => "success"}},
    "server-two" => {"response" => {"outcome" => "success"}}
}}}}
}
[domain@localhost:9999 classification=logging-profile] :read-resource
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "configured-application" => true,
        "default-application" => false,
        "applies-to" => {""/profile=*/subsystem=logging/logging-
profile=*" => undefined}
    }
}
[domain@localhost:9999 classification=logging-profile]
```



## Important

Application Resource Constraints apply to all resources that match its configuration. For example, it is not possible to grant a **Deployer** user access to one datasource resource but not another. If this level of separation is required then it is recommended to configure the resources in different server groups and create different scoped **Deployer** roles for each group.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.9.10.3. Configure the Vault Expression Constraint

By default, reading and writing vault expressions are sensitive operations. Configuring the Vault Expression Constraint allows you to set either or both of those operations to being nonsensitive. Changing this constraint allows a greater number of roles to read and write vault expressions.

The vault expression constraint is found in the management model at **/core-service=management/access=authorization/constraint=vault-expression**.

To configure the vault expression constraint, use the **write-attribute** operation to set the attributes of **configured-requires-write** and **configured-requires-read** to **true** or **false**. By default these are not set and the values of **default-requires-read** and **default-requires-write** are used. The default values cannot be changed.

#### Example 11.27. Making writing to vault expressions a nonsensitive operation

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /] cd /core-
service=management/access=authorization/constraint=vault-expression
[domain@localhost:9999 constraint=vault-expression] :write-
attribute(name=configured-requires-write, value=false)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => undefined,
    "server-groups" => {"main-server-group" => {"host" => {"master" =>
{
        "server-one" => {"response" => {"outcome" => "success"}},
        "server-two" => {"response" => {"outcome" => "success"}}
    }}}
}
[domain@localhost:9999 constraint=vault-expression] :read-resource
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "configured-requires-read" => undefined,
        "configured-requires-write" => false,
        "default-requires-read" => true,
        "default-requires-write" => true
    }
}
[domain@localhost:9999 constraint=vault-expression]
```

What roles will be able to read and write to vault expressions depending on this configuration is summarized in [Table 11.7, “Vault Expression Constraint Configuration outcomes”](#).

**Table 11.7. Vault Expression Constraint Configuration outcomes**

Value	requires-read	requires-write
<b>true</b>	Read operation is sensitive.  Only <b>Auditor</b> , <b>Administrator</b> , and <b>SuperUser</b> can read.	Write operation is sensitive.  Only <b>Administrator</b> , and <b>SuperUser</b> can write.
<b>false</b>	Read operation is not sensitive.  All management users can read.	Write operation is not sensitive.  <b>Monitor</b> , <b>Administrator</b> , and <b>SuperUser</b> can write. <b>Deployers</b> can also write if the vault expression is in an Application Resource.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.9.11. Constraints Reference

### 11.9.11.1. Application Resource Constraints Reference

Type: **core**

#### Classification: deployment-overlay

- default: true
  - PATH: /deployment-overlay=\*
  - PATH: /deployment=\*
  - PATH: /
- Operation:
- upload-deployment-stream, full-replace-deployment, upload-deployment-url, upload-deployment-bytes

Type: **datasources**

#### Classification: datasource

- default: false
- PATH: /deployment=\*/subdeployment=\*/subsystem=datasources/data-source=\*
- PATH: /subsystem=datasources/data-source=\*
- PATH: /subsystem=datasources/data-source=ExampleDS
- PATH: /deployment=\*/subsystem=datasources/data-source=\*

#### Classification: jdbc-driver

- default: false

- » PATH: /subsystem=datasources/jdbc-driver=\*

#### **Classification: xa-data-source**

- » default: false
- » PATH: /subsystem=datasources/xa-data-source=\*
- » PATH: /deployment=\*/subsystem=datasources/xa-data-source=\*
- » PATH: /deployment=\*/subdeployment=\*/subsystem=datasources/xa-data-source=\*

### Type: logging

#### **Classification: logger**

- » default: false
- » PATH: /subsystem=logging/logger=\*
- » PATH: /subsystem=logging/logging-profile=\*/logger=\*

#### **Classification: logging-profile**

- » default: false
- » PATH: /subsystem=logging/logging-profile=\*

### Type: mail

#### **Classification: mail-session**

- » default: false
- » PATH: /subsystem=mail/mail-session=\*

### Type: naming

#### **Classification: binding**

- » default: false
- » PATH: /subsystem=naming/binding=\*

### Type: resource-adapters

#### **Classification: resource-adapters**

- » default: false
- » PATH: /subsystem=resource-adapters/resource-adapter=\*

### Type: security

#### **Classification: security-domain**

- » default: false
- » PATH: /subsystem=security/security-domain=\*

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.9.11.2. Sensitivity Constraints Reference

Type: core

### Classification: access-control

- » requires-addressable: true
- » requires-read: true
- » requires-write: true
- » PATH: /core-service=management/access=authorization
- » PATH: /subsystem=jmx ATTRIBUTE: non-core-mbean-sensitivity

### Classification: credential

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: true
- » requires-write: true
- » PATH: /subsystem=mail/mail-session=\*/server=pop3 ATTRIBUTE: username , password
- » PATH: /subsystem=mail/mail-session=\*/server=imap ATTRIBUTE: username , password
- » PATH: /subsystem=datasources/xa-data-source=\* ATTRIBUTE: user-name, recovery-username, password, recovery-password
- » PATH: /subsystem=mail/mail-session=\*/custom=\* ATTRIBUTE: username, password
- » PATH: /subsystem=datasources/data-source=\*" ATTRIBUTE: user-name, password
- » PATH: /subsystem=remoting/remote-outbound-connection=\*" ATTRIBUTE: username
- » PATH: /subsystem=mail/mail-session=\*/server=smtp ATTRIBUTE: username, password
- » PATH: /subsystem=web/connector=\*/configuration=ssl ATTRIBUTE: key-alias, password
- » PATH: /subsystem=resource-adapters/resource-adapter=\*/connection-definitions=\*" ATTRIBUTE: recovery-username, recovery-password

### Classification: domain-controller

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: false
- » requires-write: true

### Classification: domain-names

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: false
- » requires-write: true

### Classification: extensions

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: false
- » requires-write: true
- » PATH: /extension=\*

#### **Classification: jvm**

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: false
- » requires-write: true
- » PATH: /core-service=platform-mbean/type=runtime ATTRIBUTE: input-arguments, boot-class-path, class-path, boot-class-path-supported, library-path

#### **Classification: management-interfaces**

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: false
- » requires-write: true
- » /core-service=management/management-interface=native-interface
- » /core-service=management/management-interface=http-interface

#### **Classification: module-loading**

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: false
- » requires-write: true
- » PATH: /core-service=module-loading

#### **Classification: patching**

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: false
- » requires-write: true
- » PATH: /core-service=patching/addon=\*
- » PATH: /core-service=patching/layer=\*\*
- » PATH: /core-service=patching

#### **Classification: read-whole-config**

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: true
- » requires-write: true

- » PATH: / OPERATION: read-config-as-xml

### **Classification: security-domain**

- » requires-addressable: true
- » requires-read: true
- » requires-write: true
- » PATH: /subsystem=security/security-domain=\*

### **Classification: security-domain-ref**

- » requires-addressable: true
- » requires-read: true
- » requires-write: true
- » PATH: /subsystem=datasources/xa-data-source=\* ATTRIBUTE: security-domain
- » PATH: /subsystem=datasources/data-source=\* ATTRIBUTE: security-domain
- » PATH: /subsystem=ejb3 ATTRIBUTE: default-security-domain
- » PATH: /subsystem=resource-adapters/resource-adapter=\*/connection-definitions=\* ATTRIBUTE: security-domain, recovery-security-domain, security-application, security-domain-and-application

### **Classification: security-realm**

- » requires-addressable: true
- » requires-read: true
- » requires-write: true
- » PATH: /core-service=management/security-realm=\*

### **Classification: security-realm-ref**

- » requires-addressable: true
- » requires-read: true
- » requires-write: true
- » PATH: /subsystem=remoting/connector=\* ATTRIBUTE: security-realm
- » PATH: /core-service=management/management-interface=native-interface ATTRIBUTE: security-realm
- » PATH: /core-service=management/management-interface=http-interface ATTRIBUTE: security-realm
- » PATH: /subsystem=remoting/remote-outbound-connection=\* ATTRIBUTE: security-realm

### **Classification: security-vault**

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: false

- `requires-write: true`
- `PATH: /core-service=vault`

#### **Classification: service-container**

- `requires-addressable: false`
- `requires-read: false`
- `requires-write: true`
- `PATH: /core-service=service-container`

#### **Classification: snapshots**

- `requires-addressable: false`
- `requires-read: false`
- `requires-write: false`
- `PATH: / ATTRIBUTE: take-snapshot, list-snapshots, delete-snapshot`

#### **Classification: socket-binding-ref**

- `requires-addressable: false`
- `requires-read: false`
- `requires-write: false`
- `PATH: /subsystem=mail/mail-session=*/server=pop3 ATTRIBUTE: outbound-socket-binding-ref`
- `PATH: /subsystem=mail/mail-session=*/server=imap ATTRIBUTE: outbound-socket-binding-ref`
- `PATH: /subsystem=remoting/connector=* ATTRIBUTE: socket-binding`
- `PATH: /subsystem=web/connector=* ATTRIBUTE: socket-binding`
- `PATH: /subsystem=remoting/local-outbound-connection=* ATTRIBUTE: outbound-socket-binding-ref`
- `PATH: /socket-binding-group=*/local-destination-outbound-socket-binding=* ATTRIBUTE: socket-binding-ref`
- `PATH: /subsystem=remoting/remote-outbound-connection=* ATTRIBUTE: outbound-socket-binding-ref`
- `PATH: /subsystem=mail/mail-session=*/server=smtp ATTRIBUTE: outbound-socket-binding-ref`
- `PATH: /subsystem=transactions ATTRIBUTE: process-id-socket-binding, status-socket-binding, socket-binding`

#### **Classification: socket-config**

- `requires-addressable: false`

- » requires-read: false
- » requires-write: true
- » PATH: /interface=\* OPERATION: resolve-internet-address
- » PATH: /core-service=management/management-interface=native-interface ATTRIBUTE: port, interface, socket-binding
- » PATH: /socket-binding-group=\*
- » PATH: /core-service=management/management-interface=http-interface ATTRIBUTE: port, secure-port, interface, secure-socket-binding, socket-binding
- » PATH: / OPERATION: resolve-internet-address
- » PATH: /subsystem=transactions ATTRIBUTE: process-id-socket-max-ports

#### **Classification: system-property**

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: false
- » requires-write: true
- » PATH: /core-service=platform-mbean/type=runtime ATTRIBUTE: system-properties
- » PATH: /system-property=\*
- » PATH: / OPERATION: resolve-expression

#### **Type: datasources**

##### **Classification: data-source-security**

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: true
- » requires-write: true
- » PATH: /subsystem=datasources/xa-data-source=\* ATTRIBUTE: user-name, security-domain, password
- » PATH: /subsystem=datasources/data-source=\* ATTRIBUTE: user-name, security-domain, password

#### **Type: jdr**

##### **Classification: jdr**

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: false
- » requires-write: true
- » PATH: /subsystem=jdr OPERATION: generate-jdr-report

#### **Type: jmx**

**Classification: jmx**

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: false
- » requires-write: true
- » PATH: /subsystem=jmx

**Type: mail****Classification: mail-server-security**

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: false
- » requires-write: true
- » PATH: /subsystem=mail/mail-session=\*/server=pop3 ATTRIBUTE: username, tls, ssl, password
- » PATH: /subsystem=mail/mail-session=\*/server=imap ATTRIBUTE: username, tls, ssl, password
- » PATH: /subsystem=mail/mail-session=\*/custom=\* ATTRIBUTE: username, tls, ssl, password
- » PATH: /subsystem=mail/mail-session=\*/server=smtp ATTRIBUTE: username, tls, ssl, password

**Type: naming****Classification: jndi-view**

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: true
- » requires-write: true
- » PATH: /subsystem=naming OPERATION: jndi-view

**Classification: naming-binding**

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: false
- » requires-write: false
- » PATH: /subsystem=naming/binding=\*

**Type: remoting****Classification: remoting-security**

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: true

- ⌘ requires-write: true
- ⌘ PATH: /subsystem=remoting/connector=\* ATTRIBUTE: authentication-provider, security-realm
- ⌘ PATH: /subsystem=remoting/remote-outbound-connection=\* ATTRIBUTE: username, security-realm
- ⌘ PATH: /subsystem=remoting/connector=\*/security=sasl

**Type: resource-adapters****Classification: resource-adapter-security**

- ⌘ requires-addressable: false
- ⌘ requires-read: true
- ⌘ requires-write: true
- ⌘ PATH: /subsystem=resource-adapters/resource-adapter=\*/connection-definitions=\* ATTRIBUTE: security-domain, recovery-username, recovery-security-domain, security-application, security-domain-and-application, recovery-password

**Type: security****Classification: misc-security**

- ⌘ requires-addressable: false
- ⌘ requires-read: true
- ⌘ requires-write: true
- ⌘ PATH: /subsystem=security ATTRIBUTE: deep-copy-subject-mode

**Type: web****Classification: web-access-log**

- ⌘ requires-addressable: false
- ⌘ requires-read: false
- ⌘ requires-write: false
- ⌘ PATH: /subsystem=web/virtual-server=\*/configuration=access-log

**Classification: web-connector**

- ⌘ requires-addressable: false
- ⌘ requires-read: false
- ⌘ requires-write: false
- ⌘ PATH: /subsystem=web/connector=\*

**Classification: web-ssl**

- ⌘ requires-addressable: false

- » requires-read: true
- » requires-write: true
- » PATH: /subsystem=web/connector=\*/configuration=ssl

#### Classification: web-sso

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: true
- » requires-write: true
- » PATH: /subsystem=web/virtual-server=\*/configuration=sso

#### Classification: web-valve

- » requires-addressable: false
- » requires-read: false
- » requires-write: false
- » PATH: /subsystem=web/valve=\*

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.10. Network Security

### 11.10.1. Secure the Management Interfaces

A common development scenario is to run JBoss EAP 6 with no security on the management interfaces to allow rapid configuration changes.

In production deployment, secure the management interfaces by at least the following methods:

- » [Section 11.10.2, “Specify Which Network Interface JBoss EAP 6 Uses”](#)
- » [Section 11.10.4, “Configure Network Firewalls to Work with JBoss EAP 6”](#)

Additionally, the default silent local authentication mode allows local clients (on the server machine) to connect to the Management CLI without requiring a username or password. This is a convenience for local users and Management CLI scripts. To disable this, refer to [Section 11.8.6, “Remove Silent Authentication from the Default Security Realm”](#).

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.10.2. Specify Which Network Interface JBoss EAP 6 Uses

#### Overview

Isolating services so that they are accessible only to the clients who need them increases the security of your network. JBoss EAP 6 includes two interfaces in its default configuration, both of which bind to the IP address **127.0.0.1**, or **localhost**, by default. One of the interfaces is called **management**, and is used by the Management Console, CLI, and API. The other is called **public**, and is used to deploy applications. These interfaces are not special or significant, but are provided as a starting point.

The **management** interface uses ports **9990** and **9999** by default, and the **public** interface uses port **8080**, or port **8443** if you use HTTPS.

You can change the IP address of the management interface, public interface, or both.



### Be cautious when exposing the management interfaces.

If you expose the management interfaces to other network interfaces which are accessible from remote hosts, be aware of the security implications. Most of the time, it is not advisable to provide remote access to the management interfaces.

#### 1. Stop JBoss EAP 6.

Stop JBoss EAP 6 by sending an interrupt in the appropriate way for your operating system. If you are running JBoss EAP 6 as a foreground application, the typical way to do this is to press **Ctrl+C**.

#### 2. Restart JBoss EAP 6, specifying the bind address.

Use the **-b** command-line switch to start JBoss EAP 6 on a specific interface.

##### Example 11.28. Specify the public interface.

```
EAP_HOME/bin/domain.sh -b 10.1.1.1
```

##### Example 11.29. Specify the management interface.

```
EAP_HOME/bin/domain.sh -bmanagement=10.1.1.1
```

##### Example 11.30. Specify different addresses for each interface.

```
EAP_HOME/bin/domain.sh -bmanagement=127.0.0.1 -b 10.1.1.1
```

##### Example 11.31. Bind the public interface to all network interfaces.

```
EAP_HOME/bin/domain.sh -b 0.0.0.0
```

It is possible to edit your XML configuration file directly, to change the default bind addresses. However, if you do this, you will no longer be able to use the **-b** command-line switch to specify an IP address at runtime, so this is not recommended. If you do decide to do this, be sure to stop JBoss EAP 6 completely before editing the XML file.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.10.3. Network Ports Used By JBoss EAP 6

The ports used by the JBoss EAP 6 default configuration depend on several factors:

- » Whether your server groups use one of the default socket binding groups, or a custom group.
- » The requirements of your individual deployments.



## Numerical port offsets

A numerical port offset can be configured, to alleviate port conflicts when you run multiple servers on the same physical server. If your server uses a numerical port offset, add the offset to the default port number for its server group's socket binding group. For instance, if the HTTP port of the socket binding group is **8080**, and your server uses a port offset of **100**, its HTTP port is **8180**.

Unless otherwise stated, the ports use the TCP protocol.

### The default socket binding groups

- » **full-ha-sockets**
- » **full-sockets**
- » **ha-sockets**
- » **standard-sockets**

**Table 11.8. Reference of the default socket bindings**

Name	Port	Multicast Port	Description	full-ha-sockets	full-sockets	ha-socket	standard-socket
ajp	8009		Apache JServ Protocol. Used for HTTP clustering and load balancing.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
http	8080		The default port for deployed web applications.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
https	8443		SSL-encrypted connection between deployed web applications and clients.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
jacorb	3528		CORBA services for JTS transactions and other ORB-dependent services.	Yes	Yes	No	No
jacorb-ssl	3529		SSL-encrypted CORBA services.	Yes	Yes	No	No
jgroup-s-diagnistics	7500		Multicast. Used for peer discovery in HA clusters. Not configurable using the Management Interfaces.	Yes	No	Yes	No

Name	Port	Multicast Port	Description	full-ha-sockets	full-sockets	ha-socket	standard-socket
jgroup-s-mping		45700	Multicast. Used to discover initial membership in a HA cluster.	Yes	No	Yes	No
jgroup-s-tcp	7600		Unicast peer discovery in HA clusters using TCP.	Yes	No	Yes	No
jgroup-s-tcp-fd	57600		Used for HA failure detection over TCP.	Yes	No	Yes	No
jgroup-s-udp	55200	45688	Multicast peer discovery in HA clusters using UDP.	Yes	No	Yes	No
jgroup-s-udp-fd	54200		Used for HA failure detection over UDP.	Yes	No	Yes	No
messaging	5445		JMS service.	Yes	Yes	No	No
messaging-group			Referenced by HornetQ JMS broadcast and discovery groups.	Yes	Yes	No	No
messaging-throughput	5455		Used by JMS Remoting.	Yes	Yes	No	No
mod_cluster		23364	Multicast port for communication between JBoss EAP 6 and the HTTP load balancer.	Yes	No	Yes	No
osgi-http	8090		Used by internal components which use the OSGi subsystem. Not configurable using the Management Interfaces.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
remote-ning	4447		Used for remote EJB invocation.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
txn-recover-y-enviro-nment	4712		The JTA transaction recovery manager.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
txn-status-manage-r	4713		The JTA / JTS transaction manager.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

## Management Ports

In addition to the socket binding groups, each host controller opens two more ports for management purposes:

- » **9990** - The Web Management Console port
- » **9999** - The port used by the Management Console and Management API

Additionally, if HTTPS is enabled for the Management Console, 9443 is also opened as the default port.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.10.4. Configure Network Firewalls to Work with JBoss EAP 6

### Summary

Most production environments use firewalls as part of an overall network security strategy. If you need multiple server instances to communicate with each other or with external services such as web servers or databases, your firewall must take this into account. A well-managed firewall only opens the ports which are necessary for operation, and limits access to the ports to specific IP addresses, subnets, and network protocols.

A full discussion of firewalls is out of the scope of this documentation.

### Prerequisites

- » Determine the ports you need to open.
- » An understanding of your firewall software is required. This procedure uses the **system-config-firewall** command in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6. Microsoft Windows Server includes a built-in firewall, and several third-party firewall solutions are available for each platform. On Microsoft Windows Server, you can use PowerShell to configure the firewall.

### Assumptions

This procedure configures a firewall in an environment with the following assumptions:

- » The operating system is Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.
- » JBoss EAP 6 runs on host **10 . 1 . 1 . 2**. Optionally, the server has its own firewall.
- » The network firewall server runs on host **10 . 1 . 1 . 1** on interface **eth0**, and has an external interface **eth1**.
- » You want traffic on port **5445** (a port used by JMS) forwarded to JBoss EAP 6. No other traffic should be allowed through the network firewall.

### Procedure 11.33. Manage Network Firewalls and JBoss EAP 6 to work together

#### 1. Log into the Management Console.

Log into the Management Console. By default, it runs on <http://localhost:9990/console/>.

#### 2. Determine the socket bindings used by the socket binding group.

- a. Click the **Configuration** label at the top of the Management Console.
- b. Expand the **General Configuration** menu. Select the **Socket Binding**.

- c. The **Socket Binding Declarations** screen appears. Initially, the **standard - sockets** group is shown. Choose a different group by selecting it from the combo box on the right-hand side.



### Note

If you use a standalone server, it has only one socket binding group.

The list of socket names and ports is shown, eight values per page. You can go through the pages by using the arrow navigation below the table.

### 3. Determine the ports you need to open.

Depending on the function of the particular port and the requirements of your environment, some ports may need to be opened on your firewall.

### 4. Configure your firewall to forward traffic to JBoss EAP 6.

Perform these steps to configure your network firewall to allow traffic on the desired port.

- a. Log into your firewall machine and access a command prompt, as the root user.
- b. Issue the command **system-config-firewall** to launch the firewall configuration utility. A GUI or command-line utility launches, depending on the way you are logged into the firewall system. This task makes the assumption that you are logged in via SSH and using the command-line interface.
- c. Use the **TAB** key on your keyboard to navigate to the **Customize** button, and press the **ENTER** key. The **Trusted Services** screen appears.
- d. Do not change any values, but use the **TAB** key to navigate to the **Forward** button, and press **ENTER** to advanced to the next screen. The **Other Ports** screen appears.
- e. Use the **TAB** key to navigate to the **<Add>** button, and press **ENTER**. The **Port and Protocol** screen appears.
- f. Enter **5445** in the **Port / Port Range** field, then use the **TAB** key to move to the **Protocol** field, and enter **tcp**. Use the **TAB** key to navigate to the **OK** button, and press **ENTER**.
- g. Use the **TAB** key to navigate to the **Forward** button until you reach the **Port Forwarding** screen.
- h. Use the **TAB** key to navigate to the **<Add>** button, and press the **ENTER** key.
- i. Fill in the following values to set up port forwarding for port **5445**.
  - ✳ Source interface: **eth1**
  - ✳ Protocol: **tcp**
  - ✳ Port / Port Range: **5445**
  - ✳ Destination IP address: **10 . 1 . 1 . 2**
  - ✳ Port / Port Range: **5445**

Use the **TAB** key to navigate to the **OK** button, and press **ENTER**.

- j. Use the **TAB** key to navigate to the **Close** button, and press **ENTER**.
- k. Use the **TAB** key to navigate to the **OK** button, and press **ENTER**. To apply the changes, read the warning and click **Yes**.

## 5. Configure a firewall on your JBoss EAP 6 host.

Some organizations choose to configure a firewall on the JBoss EAP 6 server itself, and close all ports that are not necessary for its operation. See [Section 11.10.3, “Network Ports Used By JBoss EAP 6”](#) and determine which ports to open, then close the rest. The default configuration of Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 closes all ports except **22** (used for Secure Shell (SSH) and **5353** (used for multicast DNS). While you are configuring ports, ensure you have physical access to your server so that you do not inadvertently lock yourself out.

## Result

Your firewall is configured to forward traffic to your internal JBoss EAP 6 server in the way you specified in your firewall configuration. If you chose to enable a firewall on your server, all ports are closed except the ones needed to run your applications.

### Procedure 11.34. Configuring Firewall on Microsoft Windows using PowerShell

1. Switch off firewall for debug purpose to determine whether the current network behavior is related to the firewall configuration.

```
Start-Process "$psHome\powershell.exe" -Verb Runas -ArgumentList '-command "NetSh Advfirewall set allprofiles state off"
```

2. Allow UDP connections on port 23364. For example:

```
Start-Process "$psHome\powershell.exe" -Verb Runas -ArgumentList '-command "NetSh Advfirewall firewall add rule name="UDP Port 23364" dir=in action=allow protocol=UDP localport=23364"
Start-Process "$psHome\powershell.exe" -Verb Runas -ArgumentList '-command "NetSh Advfirewall firewall add rule name="UDP Port 23364" dir=out action=allow protocol=UDP localport=23364"
```

### Procedure 11.35. Configure the Firewall on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 to Allow mod\_cluster Advertising

- To allow mod\_cluster advertising on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7, you must enable the UDP port in the firewall as follows:

```
firewall-cmd --permanent --zone=public --add-port=23364/udp
```

#### Note

224.0.1.105:23364 is the default address and port for mod\_cluster balancer advertising UDP multicast.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.11. Java Security Manager

### 11.11.1. About the Java Security Manager

#### Java Security Manager

The Java Security Manager is a class that manages the external boundary of the Java Virtual Machine (JVM) sandbox, controlling how code executing within the JVM can interact with resources outside the JVM. When the Java Security Manager is activated, the Java API checks with the security manager for approval before executing a wide range of potentially unsafe operations.

The Java Security Manager uses a security policy to determine whether a given action will be permitted or denied.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.11.2. Run JBoss EAP 6 Within the Java Security Manager

To specify a Java Security Manager policy, you need to edit the Java options passed to the domain or server instance during the bootstrap process. For this reason, you cannot pass the parameters as options to the `domain.sh` or `standalone.sh` scripts. The following procedure guides you through the steps of configuring your instance to run within a Java Security Manager policy.

#### Prerequisites

- » Before you following this procedure, you need to write a security policy, using the `policytool` command which is included with your Java Development Kit (JDK). This procedure assumes that your policy is located at `EAP_HOME/bin/server.policy`. As an alternative, write the security policy using any text editor and manually save it as `EAP_HOME/bin/server.policy`
- » The domain or standalone server must be completely stopped before you edit any configuration files.

Perform the following procedure for each physical host or instance in your domain, if you have domain members spread across multiple systems.

#### Procedure 11.36. Configure the Security Manager for JBoss EAP 6

##### 1. Open the configuration file.

Open the configuration file for editing. This file is located in one of two places, depending on whether you use a managed domain or standalone server. This is not the executable file used to start the server or domain.

###### A. Managed Domain

- For Linux: `EAP_HOME/bin/domain.conf`
- For Windows: `EAP_HOME\bin\domain.conf.bat`

###### B. Standalone Server

- For Linux: `EAP_HOME/bin/standalone.conf`
- For Windows: `EAP_HOME\bin\standalone.conf.bat`

## 2. Add the Java options to the file.

To ensure the Java options are used, add them to the code block that begins with:

```
if [ "x$JAVA_OPTS" = "x" ]; then
```

You can modify the **-Djava.security.policy** value to specify the exact location of your security policy. It should go onto one line only, with no line break. Using **==** when setting the **-Djava.security.policy** property specifies that the security manager will use *only* the specified policy file. Using **=** specifies that the security manager will use the specified policy *combined with* the policy set in the **policy.url** section of **JAVA\_HOME/lib/security/java.security**.



### Important

JBoss Enterprise Application Platform releases from 6.2.2 onwards require that the system property **jboss.modules.policy-permissions** is set to *true*.

#### Example 11.32. domain.conf

```
JAVA_OPTS="$JAVA_OPTS -Djava.security.manager -  
Djava.security.policy==$PWD/server.policy -  
Djboss.home.dir=/path/to/EAP_HOME -Djboss.modules.policy-  
permissions=true"
```

#### Example 11.33. domain.conf.bat

```
set "JAVA_OPTS=%JAVA_OPTS% -Djava.security.manager -  
Djava.security.policy==\path\to\server.policy -  
Djboss.home.dir=\path\to\EAP_HOME -Djboss.modules.policy-  
permissions=true"
```

#### Example 11.34. standalone.conf

```
JAVA_OPTS="$JAVA_OPTS -Djava.security.manager -  
Djava.security.policy==$PWD/server.policy -  
Djboss.home.dir=$JBOSS_HOME -Djboss.modules.policy-  
permissions=true"
```

#### Example 11.35. standalone.conf.bat

```
set "JAVA_OPTS=%JAVA_OPTS% -Djava.security.manager -  
Djava.security.policy==\path\to\server.policy -  
Djboss.home.dir=%JBOSS_HOME% -Djboss.modules.policy-  
permissions=true"
```

### 3. Start the domain or server.

Start the domain or server as normal.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.11.3. About Java Security Manager Policies

### Security Policy

A set of defined permissions for different classes of code. The Java Security Manager compares actions requested by applications against the security policy. If an action is allowed by the policy, the Security Manager will permit that action to take place. If the action is not allowed by the policy, the Security Manager will deny that action. The security policy can define permissions based on the location of code, on the code's signature, or based on the subject's principals.

The Java Security Manager and the security policy used are configured using the Java Virtual Machine options **java.security.manager** and **java.security.policy**.

### Basic Information

A security policy's entry consists of the following configuration elements, which are connected to the **policytool**:

#### CodeBase

The URL location (excluding the host and domain information) where the code originates from. This parameter is optional.

#### SignedBy

The alias used in the keystore to reference the signer whose private key was used to sign the code. This can be a single value or a comma-separated list of values. This parameter is optional. If omitted, presence or lack of a signature has no impact on the Java Security Manager.

#### Principals

A list of **principal\_type/principal\_name** pairs, which must be present within the executing thread's principal set. The Principals entry is optional. If it is omitted, it signifies that the principals of the executing thread will have no impact on the Java Security Manager.

#### Permissions

A permission is the access which is granted to the code. Many permissions are provided as part of the Java Enterprise Edition 6 (Java EE 6) specification.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.11.4. Write a Java Security Manager Policy

### Introduction

An application called **policytool** is included with most JDK and JRE distributions, for the purpose of creating and editing Java Security Manager security policies. Detailed information about **policytool** is linked from <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/6/docs/technotes/tools/>.

## Procedure 11.37. Setup a new Java Security Manager Policy

### 1. Start **policytool**.

Start the **policytool** tool in one of the following ways.

#### A. Red Hat Enterprise Linux

From your GUI or a command prompt, run **/usr/bin/policytool**.

#### B. Microsoft Windows Server

Run **policytool.exe** from your Start menu or from the **bin\** of your Java installation.  
The location can vary.

### 2. Create a policy.

To create a policy, select **Add Policy Entry**. Add the parameters you need, then click **Done**.

### 3. Edit an existing policy

Select the policy from the list of existing policies, and select the **Edit Policy Entry** button. Edit the parameters as needed.

### 4. Delete an existing policy.

Select the policy from the list of existing policies, and select the **Remove Policy Entry** button.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.11.5. Debug Security Manager Policies

You can enable debugging information to help you troubleshoot security policy-related issues. The **java.security.debug** option configures the level of security-related information reported. The command **java -Djava.security.debug=help** will produce help output with the full range of debugging options. Setting the debug level to **all** is useful when troubleshooting a security-related failure whose cause is completely unknown, but for general use it will produce too much information. A sensible general default is **access:failure**.

## Procedure 11.38. Enable general debugging

- » **This procedure will enable a sensible general level of security-related debug information.**

Add the following line to the server configuration file.

- If the JBoss EAP 6 instance is running in a managed domain, the line is added to the **bin/domain.conf** file for Linux or the **bin\domain.conf.bat** file for Windows.
- If the JBoss EAP 6 instance is running as a standalone server, the line is added to the **bin/standalone.conf** file for Linux, or the **bin\standalone.conf.bat** file for Windows.

**Linux**

```
JAVA_OPTS="$JAVA_OPTS -Djava.security.debug=access:failure"
```

## Windows

```
set "JAVA_OPTS=%JAVA_OPTS% -Djava.security.debug=access:failure"
```

## Result

A general level of security-related debug information has been enabled.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.12. SSL Encryption

### 11.12.1. Implement SSL Encryption for the JBoss EAP 6 Web Server

#### Introduction

Many web applications require an SSL-encrypted connection between clients and server, also known as a **HTTPS** connection. You can use this procedure to enable **HTTPS** on your server or server group.



#### Warning

Red Hat recommends that you explicitly disable SSL in favor of TLSv1.1 or TLSv1.2 in all affected packages.

#### Prerequisites

- » A set of SSL encryption keys and an SSL encryption certificate. You may purchase these from a certificate-signing authority, or you can generate them yourself using command-line utilities. To generate encryption keys using utilities available on Red Hat Enterprise Linux, see [Section 11.12.2, “Generate a SSL Encryption Key and Certificate”](#).
- » The following details about your specific environment and setup:
  - The full directory name where the certificate files are stored.
  - The encryption password for your encryption keys.
- » Management CLI running and connected to your domain controller or standalone server.
- » Select appropriate cipher suites.

#### Cipher Suites

There are a number of available cryptographic primitives used as building blocks to form cipher suites. The first table lists recommended cryptographic primitives. The second lists cryptographic primitives which, while they *may* be used for compatibility with existing software, are not considered as secure as those recommended.



## Warning

Red Hat recommends selectively whitelisting a set of strong ciphers to use for **cipher-suite**. Enabling weak ciphers is a significant security risk. Consult your JDK vendor's documentation before deciding on particular cipher suites as there may be compatibility issues.

**Table 11.9. Recommended Cryptographic Primitives**

RSA with 2048 bit keys and OAEP
AES-128 in CBC mode
SHA-256
HMAC-SHA-256
HMAC-SHA-1

**Table 11.10. Other Cryptographic Primitives**

RSA with key sizes larger than 1024 and legacy padding
AES-192
AES-256
3DES (triple DES, with two or three 56 bit keys)
RC4 (strongly discouraged)
SHA-1
HMAC-MD5

For a full listing of parameters you can set for the SSL properties of the connector, see [Section 11.12.3, “SSL Connector Reference”](#).



## Note

This procedure uses commands appropriate for a JBoss EAP 6 configuration that uses a managed domain. If you use a standalone server, modify Management CLI commands by removing the **/profile=default** from the beginning of any management CLI commands.



## Warning

Red Hat recommends that you explicitly disable SSL in favor of TLSv1.1 or TLSv1.2 in all affected packages.

**Procedure 11.39. Configure the JBoss Web Server to use HTTPS****1. Add a new HTTPS connector.**

Create a secure connector, named **HTTPS**, which uses the **https** scheme, the **https** socket binding (which defaults to **8443**), and is set to be secure.

```
/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=HTTPS/:add(socket-binding=https,scheme=https,protocol=HTTP/1.1,secure=true)
```

## 2. Configure the SSL encryption certificate and keys.

Configure your SSL certificate, substituting your own values for the example ones. This example assumes that the keystore is copied to the server configuration directory, which is **EAP\_HOME/domain/configuration/** for a managed domain.

```
/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=HTTPS/ssl=configuration:ad
d(name=https,certificate-key-
file="${jboss.server.config.dir}/keystore.jks",password=SECRET, key-
alias=KEY_ALIAS, cipher-suite=CIPHERS)
```

## 3. Set the protocol to TLSv1.

```
/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=HTTPS/ssl=configuration/:w
rite-attribute(name=protocol,value=TLSv1)
```

## 4. Deploy an application.

Deploy an application to a server group which uses the profile you have configured. If you use a standalone server, deploy an application to your server. HTTPS requests to it use the new SSL-encrypted connection.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.12.2. Generate a SSL Encryption Key and Certificate

To use a SSL-encrypted HTTP connection (HTTPS), as well as other types of SSL-encrypted communication, you need a signed encryption certificate. You can purchase a certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA), or you can use a self-signed certificate. Self-signed certificates are not considered trustworthy by many third parties, but are appropriate for internal testing purposes.

This procedure enables you to create a self-signed certificate using utilities which are available on Red Hat Enterprise Linux.

#### Prerequisites

- » You need the **keytool** utility, which is provided by any Java Development Kit implementation. OpenJDK on Red Hat Enterprise Linux installs this command to **/usr/bin/keytool**.
- » Understand the syntax and parameters of the **keytool** command. This procedure uses extremely generic instructions, because further discussion of the specifics of SSL certificates or the **keytool** command are out of scope for this documentation.

#### Procedure 11.40. Generate a SSL Encryption Key and Certificate

##### 1. Generate a keystore with public and private keys.

Run the following command to generate a keystore named **server.keystore** with the alias **jboss** in your current directory.

```
keytool -genkeypair -alias jboss -keyalg RSA -keystore
server.keystore -storepass mykeystorepass --dname
"CN=jsmith, OU=Engineering, O=mycompany.com, L=Raleigh, S=NC, C=US"
```

The following table describes the parameters used in the keytool command:

Parameter	Description
<b>-genkeypair</b>	The <b>keytool</b> command to generate a key pair containing a public and private key.
<b>-alias</b>	The alias for the keystore. This value is arbitrary, but the alias <b>jboss</b> is the default used by the JBoss Web server.
<b>-keyalg</b>	The key pair generation algorithm. In this case it is <b>RSA</b> .
<b>-keystore</b>	The name and location of the keystore file. The default location is the current directory. The name you choose is arbitrary. In this case, the file will be named <b>server.keystore</b> .
<b>-storepass</b>	This password is used to authenticate to the keystore so that the key can be read. The password must be at least 6 characters long and must be provided when the keystore is accessed. In this case, we used <b>mykeystorepass</b> . If you omit this parameter, you will be prompted to enter it when you execute the command.
<b>-keypass</b>	This is the password for the actual key.

- If you did not use the **-keypass** parameter on the command line, you are asked to enter the key password. Press **Enter** to set this to the same value as the keystore password.

When the command completes, the file **server.keystore** now contains the single key with the alias **jboss**.

## 2. Verify the key.

Verify that the key works properly by using the following command.

```
keytool -list -keystore server.keystore
```

You are prompted for the keystore password. The contents of the keystore are displayed (in this case, a single key called **jboss**). Notice the type of the **jboss** key, which is **PrivateKeyEntry**. This indicates that the keystore contains both a public and private entry for this key.

## 3. Generate a certificate signing request.

Run the following command to generate a certificate signing request using the public key from the keystore you created in step 1.

```
keytool -certreq -keyalg RSA -alias jboss -keystore server.keystore  
-file certreq.csr
```

You are prompted for the password in order to authenticate to the keystore. The **keytool** command then creates a new certificate signing request called **certreq.csr** in the current working directory.

## 4. Test the newly generated certificate signing request.

Test the contents of the certificate by using the following command.

```
openssl req -in certreq.csr -noout -text
```

The certificate details are shown.

## 5. Optional: Submit your certificate signing request to a Certificate Authority (CA).

A Certificate Authority (CA) can authenticate your certificate so that it is considered trustworthy by third-party clients. The CA supplies you with a signed certificate, and optionally with one or more intermediate certificates.

## 6. Optional: Export a self-signed certificate from the keystore.

If you only need it for testing or internal purposes, you can use a self-signed certificate. You can export one from the keystore you created in step 1 as follows:

```
keytool -export -alias jboss -keystore server.keystore -file  
server.crt
```

You are prompted for the password in order to authenticate to the keystore. A self-signed certificate, named **server.crt**, is created in the current working directory.

## 7. Import the signed certificate, along with any intermediate certificates.

Import each certificate, in the order that you are instructed by the CA. For each certificate to import, replace **intermediate.ca** or **server.crt** with the actual file name. If your certificates are not provided as separate files, create a separate file for each certificate, and paste its contents into the file.



### Note

Your signed certificate and certificate keys are valuable assets. Be cautious with how you transport them between servers.

```
keytool -import -keystore server.keystore -alias intermediateCA -file intermediate.ca
```

```
keytool -importcert -alias jboss -keystore server.keystore -file server.crt
```

#### 8. Test that your certificates imported successfully.

Run the following command, and enter the keystore password when prompted. The contents of your keystore are displayed, and the certificates are part of the list.

```
keytool -list -keystore server.keystore
```

### Result

Your signed certificate is now included in your keystore and is ready to be used to encrypt SSL connections, including HTTPS web server communications.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.12.3. SSL Connector Reference

JBoss Web connectors may include the following SSL configuration attributes. The CLI commands provided are designed for a managed domain using profile **default**. Change the profile name to the one you wish to configure, for a managed domain, or omit the **/profile=default** portion of the command, for a standalone server.

**Table 11.11. SSL Connector Attributes**

Attribute	Description	CLI Command
name	The display name of the SSL connector. Attribute <b>name</b> is read-only.	

Attribute	Description	CLI Command
verify-client	<p>The possible values of <b>verify-client</b> differ, based upon whether the HTTP/HTTPS connector is used, or the native APR connector is used.</p> <p><b>HTTP/HTTPS Connector</b></p> <p>Possible values are <b>true</b>, <b>false</b>, or <b>want</b>. Set to <b>true</b> to require a valid certificate chain from the client before accepting a connection. Set to <b>want</b> if you want the SSL stack to request a client Certificate, but not fail if one is not presented. Set to <b>false</b> (the default) to not require a certificate chain unless the client requests a resource protected by a security constraint that uses <b>CLIENT-CERT</b> authentication.</p> <p><b>Native APR Connector</b></p> <p>Possible values are <b>optional</b>, <b>require</b>, <b>optionalNoCA</b>, and <b>none</b> (or any other string, which will have the same effect as <b>none</b>). These values determine whether a certification is optional, required, optional without a Certificate Authority, or not required at all. The default is <b>none</b>, meaning the client will not have the opportunity to submit a certificate.</p>	<p>The first example command uses the HTTPS connector.</p> <pre>/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=HTTPS/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=verify-client,value=want)</pre> <p>The second example command uses the APR connector.</p> <pre>/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=APR/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=verify-client,value=require)</pre>
verify-depth	The maximum number of intermediate certificate issuers checked before deciding that the clients do not have a valid certificate. The default value is <b>10</b> .	<pre>/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=HTTPS/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=verify-depth,value=10)</pre>

Attribute	Description	CLI Command
certificate-key-file	<p>The full file path and file name of the keystore file where the signed server certificate is stored. With JSSE encryption, this certificate file will be the only one, while OpenSSL uses several files. The default value is the <code>.keystore</code> file in the home directory of the user running JBoss EAP 6. If your <code>keystoreType</code> does not use a file, set the parameter to an empty string.</p>	<pre>/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=HTTPS/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=certificate-key-file,value=../domain/configuration/server.keystore)</pre>
certificate-file	<p>If you use OpenSSL encryption, set the value of this parameter to the path to the file containing the server certificate.</p>	<pre>/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=HTTPS/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=certificate-file,value=server.crt)</pre>
password	<p>The password for both the truststore and keystore. In the following example, replace <code>PASSWORD</code> with your own password.</p>	<pre>/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=HTTPS/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=password,value=PASSWORD)</pre>

Attribute	Description	CLI Command
protocol	<p>The version of the SSL protocol to use. Supported values depend on the underlying SSL implementation (whether JSSE or OpenSSL). Refer to the <a href="#">Java SSE Documentation</a>.</p> <p>You can also specify a combination of protocols, which is comma separated. For example, TLSv1, TLSv1.1,TLSv1.2.</p> <div>  <p><b>Warning</b></p> <p>Red Hat recommends that you explicitly disable SSL in favor of TLSv1.1 or TLSv1.2 in all affected packages.</p> </div>	<pre>/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=HTTPS/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=protocol,value=ALL)</pre> <pre>/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=HTTPS/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=protocol,value="TLSv1,TLSv1.1,TLSv1.2")</pre>

Attribute	Description	CLI Command
cipher-suite	<p>A list of the encryption ciphers which are allowed. For JSSE syntax, it must be a comma-separated list. For OpenSSL syntax, it must be a colon-separated list. Ensure that you only use one syntax.</p> <p>The default is  <b>HIGH:!aNULL:!eNULL:!EXPORT:!DES:!RC4:!MD5.</b></p> <p>The example only lists two possible ciphers, but real-world examples will likely use more.</p>	<pre>/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=HTTPS/ssl=configuration:/write-attribute(name=cipher-suite, value="TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA, TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA")</pre>
	 <b>Important</b> <p>Using weak ciphers is a significant security risk. See <a href="http://www.nist.gov/management-publication-search.cfm?pub_id=915295">http://www.nist.gov/management-publication-search.cfm?pub_id=915295</a> for NIST recommendations on cipher suites.</p>	
key-alias	<p>For a list of available OpenSSL ciphers, see <a href="https://www.openssl.org/docs/apps/ciphers.html#CIPHER_STRIINGS">https://www.openssl.org/docs/apps/ciphers.html#CIPHER_STRIINGS</a>. Note that the following are not supported:</p> <p><b>@SECLEVEL, SUITEB128, SUITEB128ONLY, SUITEB192.</b></p>	<pre>/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=HTTPS/ssl=configuration:/write-attribute(name=key-alias, value=KEY_ALIAS)</pre>

Attribute	Description	CLI Command
truststore-type	The type of the truststore. Various types of truststores are available, including <b>PKCS12</b> and Java's standard <b>JKS</b> .	<pre>/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=HTTPS/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=trust-store-type,value=jks)</pre>
keystore-type	The type of the keystore. Various types of keystores are available, including <b>PKCS12</b> and Java's standard <b>JKS</b> .	<pre>/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=HTTPS/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=keystore-type,value=jks)</pre>
ca-certificate-file	The file containing the CA certificates. This is the <b>truststoreFile</b> , in the case of JSSE, and uses the same password as the keystore. The <b>ca-certificate-file</b> file is used to validate client certificates.	<pre>/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=HTTPS/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=certificate-file,value=ca.crt)</pre>
ca-certificate-password	The Certificate password for the <b>ca-certificate-file</b> . In the following example, replace the <b>MASKED_PASSWORD</b> with your own masked password.	<pre>/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=HTTPS/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=ca-certificate-password,value=MASKED_PASSWORD)</pre>
ca-revocation-url	A file or URL which contains the revocation list. It refers to the <b>crlFile</b> for JSSE or the <b>SSLCARevocationFile</b> for SSL.	<pre>/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=HTTPS/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=ca-revocation-url,value=ca.crl)</pre>

Attribute	Description	CLI Command
session-cache-size	The size of the SSLSession cache. This attribute applies only to JSSE connectors. The default is <b>0</b> , which specifies an unlimited cache size.	/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=HTTPS/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=session-cache-size,value=100)
session-timeout	The number of seconds before a cached SSLSession expires. This attribute applies only to JSSE connectors. The default is <b>86400</b> seconds, which is 24 hours.	/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=HTTPS/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=session-timeout,value=43200)

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.13. Password Vaults for Sensitive Strings

### 11.13.1. Password Vault System

JBoss EAP 6 has a Password Vault to encrypt sensitive strings, store them in an encrypted keystore, and decrypt them for applications and verification systems.

Plain-text configuration files, such as XML deployment descriptors, need to specify passwords and other sensitive information.

Use the JBoss EAP Password Vault to securely store sensitive strings in plain-text files.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.13.2. Create a Java Keystore to Store Sensitive Strings

#### Prerequisites

- ▶ The **keytool** utility, provided by the Java Runtime Environment (JRE). Locate the path for the file, which on Red Hat Enterprise Linux is **/usr/bin/keytool**.



## Warning

JCEKS keystore implementations differ between Java vendors so you must generate the keystore using the **keytool** utility from the same vendor as the JDK you use.

Using a keystore generated by the **keytool** from one vendor's JDK in a JBoss EAP instance running on a JDK from a different vendor results in the following exception:

```
java.io.IOException:  
com.sun.crypto.provider.SealedObjectForKeyProtector
```

### Procedure 11.41. Set up a Java Keystore

#### 1. Create a directory to store your keystore and other encrypted information.

Create a directory to store your keystore and other important information. The rest of this procedure assumes that the directory is **EAP\_HOME/vault/**. Since this directory will contain sensitive information it should be accessible to only limited users. At a minimum the user account under which JBoss EAP is running requires read-write access.

#### 2. Determine the parameters to use with keytool utility.

Decide on values for the following parameters:

##### **alias**

The alias is a unique identifier for the vault or other data stored in the keystore. Aliases are case-insensitive.

##### **storetype**

The storetype specifies the keystore type. The value **jceks** is recommended.

##### **keyalg**

The algorithm to use for encryption. Use the documentation for your JRE and operating system to see which other choices may be available to you.

##### **keysize**

The size of an encryption key impacts how difficult it is to decrypt through brute force. For information on appropriate values, see the documentation distributed with the **keytool** utility.

##### **storepass**

The value of **storepass** is the password used to authenticate to the keystore so that the key can be read. The password must be at least 6 characters long and must be provided when the keystore is accessed. If you omit this parameter, you will be prompted to enter it when you execute the command.

##### **keypass**

The value of **keypass** is the password used to access the specific key and must match the value of the **storepass** parameter.

## validity

The value of **validity** is the period (in days) for which the key will be valid.

## keystore

The value of **keystore** is the filepath and filename in which the keystore's values are to be stored. The keystore file is created when data is first added to it.

Ensure you use the correct file path separator: / (forward slash) for Red Hat Enterprise Linux and similar operating systems, \ (backslash) for Microsoft Windows Server.

The **keytool** utility has many other options. See the documentation for your JRE or your operating system for more details.

### 3. Run the **keytool** command

Launch your operating system's command line interface and run the **keytool** utility, supplying the information that you gathered.

#### Example 11.36. Create a Java Keystore

```
$ keytool -genseckeckey -alias vault -storetype jceks -keyalg AES -keysize 128 -storepass vault22 -keypass vault22 -validity 730 -keystore EAP_HOME/vault/vault.keystore
```

## Result

In this a keystore has been created in the file **EAP\_HOME/vault/vault.keystore**. It stores a single key, with the alias **vault**, which will be used to store encrypted strings, such as passwords, for JBoss EAP.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.13.3. Mask the Keystore Password and Initialize the Password Vault

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 11.13.2, “Create a Java Keystore to Store Sensitive Strings”](#)

1. **Run the `vault.sh` command.**

Run **EAP\_HOME/bin/vault.sh**. Start a new interactive session by typing **0**.

2. **Enter the directory where encrypted files will be stored.**

This directory should be accessible to only limited users. At a minimum the user account under which JBoss EAP is running requires read-write access. If you followed [Section 11.13.2, “Create a Java Keystore to Store Sensitive Strings”](#), your keystore is in a directory called **EAP\_HOME/vault/**.



## Include the trailing slash on the directory name.

Do not forget to include the trailing slash on the directory name. Either use / or \, depending on your operating system.

### 3. Enter the path to the keystore.

Enter the full path to the keystore file. This example uses **EAP\_HOME/vault/vault.keystore**.

### 4. Encrypt the keystore password.

The following steps encrypt the keystore password, so that you can use it in configuration files and applications securely.

#### a. Enter the keystore password.

When prompted, enter the keystore password.

#### b. Enter a salt value.

Enter an 8-character salt value. The salt value, together with the iteration count (below), are used to create the hash value.

#### c. Enter the iteration count.

Enter a number for the iteration count.

#### d. Make a note of the masked password information.

The masked password, the salt, and the iteration count are printed to standard output. Make a note of them in a secure location. An attacker could use them to decrypt the password.

#### e. Enter the alias of the vault.

When prompted, enter the alias of the vault. If you followed [Section 11.13.2, “Create a Java Keystore to Store Sensitive Strings”](#) to create your vault, the alias is **vault**.

### 5. Exit the interactive console.

Type **2** to exit the interactive console.

## Result

Your keystore password has been masked for use in configuration files and deployments. In addition, your vault is fully configured and ready to use.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.13.4. Configure JBoss EAP 6 to Use the Password Vault

## Overview

Before you can mask passwords and other sensitive attributes in configuration files, you need to

make JBoss EAP 6 aware of the password vault which stores and decrypts them. Follow this procedure to enable this functionality.

## Prerequisites

- » [Section 11.13.2, “Create a Java Keystore to Store Sensitive Strings”](#)
- » [Section 11.13.3, “Mask the Keystore Password and Initialize the Password Vault”](#)

## Procedure 11.42. Setup a Password Vault

### 1. Determine the correct values for the command.

Determine the values for the following parameters, which are determined by the commands used to create the keystore itself. For information on creating a keystore, refer the following topics: [Section 11.13.2, “Create a Java Keystore to Store Sensitive Strings”](#) and [Section 11.13.3, “Mask the Keystore Password and Initialize the Password Vault”](#).

Parameter	Description
KEYSTORE_URL	The file system path or URI of the keystore file, usually called something like <b>vault.keystore</b>
KEYSTORE_PASSWORD	The password used to access the keystore. This value should be masked.
KEYSTORE_ALIAS	The name of the keystore alias.
SALT	The salt used to encrypt and decrypt keystore values.
ITERATION_COUNT	The number of times the encryption algorithm is run.
ENC_FILE_DIR	The path to the directory from which the keystore commands are run. Typically the directory containing the password vault.
host (managed domain only)	The name of the host you are configuring

### 2. Use the Management CLI to enable the password vault.

Run one of the following commands, depending on whether you use a managed domain or standalone server configuration. Substitute the values in the command with the ones from the first step of this procedure.

### Note

If you use Microsoft Windows Server, in the CLI command, escape each \ character in a directory path with an additional \ character. For example, **C:\\data\\\\vault\\\\vault.keystore**. This is because single \ character is used for character escaping.

#### A. Managed Domain

```
/host=YOUR_HOST/core-service=vault:add(vault-options=
[("KEYSTORE_URL" => "PATH_TO_KEYSTORE"), ("KEYSTORE_PASSWORD" =>
"MASKED_PASSWORD"), ("KEYSTORE_ALIAS" => "ALIAS"), ("SALT" =>
```

```
"SALT"), ("ITERATION_COUNT" => "ITERATION_COUNT"),
("ENC_FILE_DIR" => "ENC_FILE_DIR"))
```

## B. Standalone Server

```
/core-service=vault:add(vault-options=[("KEYSTORE_URL" =>
"PATH_TO_KEYSTORE"), ("KEYSTORE_PASSWORD" => "MASKED_PASSWORD"),
("KEYSTORE_ALIAS" => "ALIAS"), ("SALT" => "SALT"),
("ITERATION_COUNT" => "ITERATION_COUNT"), ("ENC_FILE_DIR" =>
"ENC_FILE_DIR")])
```

The following is an example of the command with hypothetical values:

```
/core-service=vault:add(vault-options=[("KEYSTORE_URL" =>
"/home/user/vault/vault.keystore"), ("KEYSTORE_PASSWORD" => "MASK-
3y28rCZlcKR"), ("KEYSTORE_ALIAS" => "vault"), ("SALT" =>
"12438567"), ("ITERATION_COUNT" => "50"), ("ENC_FILE_DIR" =>
"/home/user/vault/")])
```

## Result

JBoss EAP 6 is configured to decrypt masked strings using the password vault. To add strings to the vault and use them in your configuration, refer to the following topic: [Section 11.13.6, “Store and Retrieve Encrypted Sensitive Strings in the Java Keystore”](#).

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.13.5. Configure JBoss EAP 6 to Use a Custom Implementation of the Password Vault

### Summary

You can use your own implementation of **SecurityVault** to mask passwords and other sensitive attributes in configuration files.

### Procedure 11.43. Use a Custom Implementation of the Password Vault

1. Create a class that implements the interface **SecurityVault**.
2. Create a module containing the class from the previous step, and specify a dependency on **org.picketbox** where the interface is **SecurityVault**.
3. Enable the custom Password Vault in the JBoss EAP server configuration by adding the **vault** element with the following attributes:

#### code

The fully qualified name of class that implements **SecurityVault**.

#### module

The name of the module that contains the custom class.

Optionally, you can use **vault-options** parameters to initialize the custom class for a Password Vault. For example:

```
/core-
service=vault:add(code="custom.vault.implementation.CustomSecurity
Vault", module="custom.vault.module", vault-options=
[("KEYSTORE_URL" => "PATH_TO_KEYSTORE"), ("KEYSTORE_PASSWORD" =>
"MASKED_PASSWORD"), ("KEYSTORE_ALIAS" => "ALIAS"), ("SALT" =>
"SALT"), ("ITERATION_COUNT" => "ITERATION_COUNT"), ("ENC_FILE_DIR"
=> "ENC_FILE_DIR")])
```

## Result

JBoss EAP 6 is configured to decrypt masked strings using a custom implementation of the password vault.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.13.6. Store and Retrieve Encrypted Sensitive Strings in the Java Keystore

#### Summary

Including passwords and other sensitive strings in plain-text configuration files is insecure. JBoss EAP 6 includes the ability to store and mask these sensitive strings in an encrypted keystore, and use masked values in configuration files.

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 11.13.2, “Create a Java Keystore to Store Sensitive Strings”](#)
- » [Section 11.13.3, “Mask the Keystore Password and Initialize the Password Vault”](#)
- » [Section 11.13.4, “Configure JBoss EAP 6 to Use the Password Vault”](#)
- » The `EAP_HOME/bin/vault.sh` application must be accessible via a command-line interface.

#### Procedure 11.44. Setup the Java Keystore

1. **Run the `vault.sh` command.**

Run `EAP_HOME/bin/vault.sh`. Start a new interactive session by typing `0`.

2. **Enter the directory where encrypted files will be stored.**

If you followed [Section 11.13.2, “Create a Java Keystore to Store Sensitive Strings”](#), your keystore is in the directory `EAP_HOME/vault`. In most cases, it makes sense to store all of your encrypted information in the same place as the key store. Since this directory will contain sensitive information it should be accessible to only limited users. At a minimum the user account under which JBoss EAP is running requires read-write access.



#### Note

Do not forget to include the trailing slash on the directory name. Either use `/` or `\`, depending on your operating system.

3. **Enter the path to the keystore.**

Enter the full path to the keystore file. This example uses **EAP\_HOME/vault/vault.keystore**.

#### 4. Enter the keystore password, vault name, salt, and iteration count.

When prompted, enter the keystore password, vault name, salt, and iteration count. A handshake is performed.

#### 5. Select the option to store a password.

Select option **0** to store a password or other sensitive string.

#### 6. Enter the value.

When prompted, enter the value twice. If the values do not match, you are prompted to try again.

#### 7. Enter the vault block.

Enter the vault block, which is a container for attributes which pertain to the same resource. An example of an attribute name would be **ds\_ExampleDS**. This will form part of the reference to the encrypted string, in your datasource or other service definition.

#### 8. Enter the attribute name.

Enter the name of the attribute you are storing. An example attribute name would be **password**.

### Result

A message such as the one below shows that the attribute has been saved.

Secured attribute value has been stored in vault.

#### 9. Make note of the information about the encrypted string.

A message prints to standard output, showing the vault block, attribute name, shared key, and advice about using the string in your configuration. Make note of this information in a secure location. Example output is shown below.

```
*****
Vault Block:ds_ExampleDS
Attribute Name:password
Configuration should be done as follows:
VAULT::ds_ExampleDS::password::1
*****
```

#### 10. Use the encrypted string in your configuration.

Use the string from the previous step in your configuration, in place of a plain-text string. A datasource using the encrypted password above is shown below.

```
...
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:datasources:1.0">
    <datasources>
```

```

<datasource jndi-name="java:jboss/datasources/ExampleDS"
enabled="true" use-java-context="true" pool-name="H2DS">
    <connection-url>jdbc:h2:mem:test;DB_CLOSE_DELAY=-1</connection-url>
    <driver>h2</driver>
    <pool></pool>
    <security>
        <user-name>sa</user-name>
        <password>${VAULT::ds_ExampleDS::password::1}</password>
    </security>
</datasource>
<drivers>
    <driver name="h2" module="com.h2database.h2">
        <xa-datasource-class>org.h2.jdbcx.JdbcDataSource</xa-
datasource-class>
    </driver>
</drivers>
</datasources>
</subsystem>
...

```

You can use an encrypted string anywhere in your domain or standalone configuration file where expressions are allowed.

### Note

To check if expressions are allowed within a particular subsystem, run the following CLI command against that subsystem:

```
/host=master/core-service=management/security-
realm=TestRealm:read-resource-description(recursive=true)
```

From the output of running this command, look for the value for the **expressions-allowed** parameter. If this is true, then you can use expressions within the configuration of this particular subsystem.

After you store your string in the keystore, use the following syntax to replace any clear-text string with an encrypted one.

```
 ${VAULT::VAULT_BLOCK::ATTRIBUTE_NAME::ENCRYPTED_VALUE}
```

Here is a sample real-world value, where the vault block is **ds\_ExampleDS** and the attribute is **password**.

```
<password>${VAULT::ds_ExampleDS::password::1}</password>
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.13.7. Store and Resolve Sensitive Strings In Your Applications

## Overview

Configuration elements of JBoss EAP 6 support the ability to resolve encrypted strings against values stored in a Java Keystore, via the Security Vault mechanism. You can add support for this feature to your own applications.

First, add the password to the vault. Second, replace the clear-text password with the one stored in the vault. You can use this method to obscure any sensitive string in your application.

## Prerequisites

Before performing this procedure, make sure that the directory for storing your vault files exists. It does not matter where you place them, as long as the user who executes JBoss EAP 6 has permission to read and write the files. This example places the **vault/** directory into the **/home/USER/vault/** directory. The vault itself is a file called **vault.keystore** inside the **vault/** directory.

### Example 11.37. Adding the Password String to the Vault

Add the string to the vault using the **EAP\_HOME/bin/vault.sh** command. The full series of commands and responses is included in the following screen output. Values entered by the user are emphasized. Some output is removed for formatting. In Microsoft Windows, the name of the command is **vault.bat**. Note that in Microsoft Windows, file paths use the \ character as a directory separator, rather than the / character.

```
[user@host bin]$ ./vault.sh
*****
**** JBoss Vault ****
*****
Please enter a Digit:: 0: Start Interactive Session 1: Remove
Interactive Session 2: Exit
0
Starting an interactive session
Enter directory to store encrypted files:/home/user/vault/
Enter Keystore URL:/home/user/vault/vault.keystore
Enter Keystore password: ...
Enter Keystore password again: ...
Values match
Enter 8 character salt:12345678
Enter iteration count as a number (Eg: 44):25

Enter Keystore Alias:vault
Vault is initialized and ready for use
Handshake with Vault complete
Please enter a Digit:: 0: Store a password 1: Check whether password
exists 2: Exit
0
Task: Store a password
Please enter attribute value: sa
Please enter attribute value again: sa
Values match
Enter Vault Block:DS
Enter Attribute Name:thePass
Secured attribute value has been stored in vault.

Please make note of the following:
```

```
*****
Vault Block:DS
Attribute Name:thePass
Configuration should be done as follows:
VAULT::DS::thePass::1
*****  

Please enter a Digit:: 0: Store a password 1: Check whether password
exists 2: Exit
2
```

The string that will be added to the Java code is the last value of the output, the line beginning with **VAULT**.

The following servlet uses the vaulted string instead of a clear-text password. The clear-text version is commented out so that you can see the difference.

#### **Example 11.38. Servlet Using a Vaulted Password**

```
package vaulterror.web;  

import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.Writer;  

import javax.annotation.Resource;
import javax.annotation.sql.DataSourceDefinition;
import javax.servlet.ServletException;
import javax.servlet.annotation.WebServlet;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServlet;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServletRequest;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServletResponse;
import javax.sql.DataSource;  

/*@DataSourceDefinition(
    name = "java:jboss/datasources/LoginDS",
    user = "sa",
    password = "sa",
    className = "org.h2.jdbcx.JdbcDataSource",
    url = "jdbc:h2:tcp://localhost/mem:test"
)*/
@DataSourceDefinition(
    name = "java:jboss/datasources/LoginDS",
    user = "sa",
    password = "VAULT::DS::thePass::1",
    className = "org.h2.jdbcx.JdbcDataSource",
    url = "jdbc:h2:tcp://localhost/mem:test"
)
@WebServlet(name = "MyTestServlet", urlPatterns = { "/my/" },
loadOnStartup = 1)
public class MyTestServlet extends HttpServlet {  

    private static final long serialVersionUID = 1L;
```

```

@Resource(lookup = "java:jboss/datasources/LoginDS")
private DataSource ds;

@Override
protected void doGet(HttpServletRequest req, HttpServletResponse
resp) throws ServletException, IOException {
    Writer writer = resp.getWriter();
    writer.write((ds != null) + "");
}
}

```

Your servlet is now able to resolve the vaulted string.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.14. FIPS 140-2 Compliant Encryption

### 11.14.1. About FIPS 140-2 Compliance

The Federal Information Processing Standard 140-2 (FIPS 140-2) is a US government computer security standard for the accreditation of cryptographic software modules. FIPS 140-2 compliance is often a requirement of software systems used by government agencies and private sector business.

JBoss EAP 6 uses external modules encryption and can be configured to use a FIPS 140-2 compliant cryptography module.

[Report a bug](#)

### 11.14.2. FIPS 140-2 Compliant Passwords

A FIPS compliant password must have the following characteristics:

1. Must be at least seven (7) characters in length.
2. Must include characters from at least three (3) of the following character classes:
  - ✖ ASCII digits,
  - ✖ lowercase ASCII,
  - ✖ uppercase ASCII,
  - ✖ non-alphanumeric ASCII, and
  - ✖ non-ASCII.

If the first character of the password is an uppercase ASCII letter, then it is not counted as an uppercase ASCII letter for restriction 2.

If the last character of the password is an ASCII digit, then it does not count as an ASCII digit for restriction 2.

[Report a bug](#)

## 11.14.3. Enable FIPS 140-2 Cryptography for SSL on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6

This task describes how to configure the web container (JBoss Web) of JBoss EAP 6 to FIPS 140-2 compliant cryptography for SSL. This task only covers the steps to do this on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.

This task uses the Mozilla NSS library in FIPS mode for this feature.

### Prerequisites

- » Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 must already be configured to be FIPS 140-2 compliant. Refer to <https://access.redhat.com/knowledge/solutions/137833>.

### Procedure 11.45. Enable FIPS 140-2 Compliant Cryptography for SSL

#### 1. Create the database

Create the NSS database in a directory own by the **jboss** user.

```
$ mkdir -p /usr/share/jboss-as/nssdb
$ chown jboss /usr/share/jboss-as/nssdb
$ modutil -create -dbdir /usr/share/jboss-as/nssdb
```

#### 2. Create NSS configuration file

Create a new text file with the name **nss\_pkcs11\_fips.cfg** in the **/usr/share/jboss-as** directory with the following contents:

```
name = nss-fips
nssLibraryDirectory=/usr/lib64
nssSecmodDirectory=/usr/share/jboss-as/nssdb
nssModule = fips
```

The NSS configuration file must specify:

- » a name,
- » the directory where the NSS library is located, and
- » the directory where the NSS database was created as per step 1.

If you are not running a 64bit version of Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 then set **nssLibraryDirectory** to **/usr/lib** instead of **/usr/lib64**.

#### 3. Enable SunPKCS11 provider

Edit the **java.security** configuration file for your JRE (**\$JAVA\_HOME/jre/lib/security/java.security**) and add the following line:

```
security.provider.1=sun.security.pkcs11.SunPKCS11 /usr/share/jboss-
as/nss_pkcs11_fips.cfg
```

Note that the configuration file specified in this line is the file created in step 2.

Any other **security.provider.X** lines in this file must have the value of their X increased by one to ensure that this provider is given priority.

#### 4. Enable FIPS mode for the NSS library

Run the **modutil** command as shown to enable FIPS mode:

```
modutil -fips true -dbdir /usr/share/jboss-as/nssdb
```

Note that the directory specified here is the one created in step 1.

You may get a security library error at this point requiring you to regenerate the library signatures for some of the NSS shared objects.

#### 5. Change the password on the FIPS token

Set the password on the FIPS token using the following command. Note that the name of the token must be **NSS FIPS 140-2 Certificate DB**.

```
modutil -changepw "NSS FIPS 140-2 Certificate DB" -dbdir /usr/share/jboss-as/nssdb
```

The password used for the FIPS token must be a FIPS compliant password.

#### 6. Create certificate using NSS tools

Enter the following command to create a certificate using the NSS tools.

```
certutil -S -k rsa -n jbossweb -t "u,u,u" -x -s "CN=localhost, OU=MYOU, O=MYORG, L=MYCITY, ST=MYSTATE, C=MY" -d /usr/share/jboss-as/nssdb
```

#### 7. Configure the HTTPS connector to use the PKCS11 keystore

Add a HTTPS connector using the following command in the JBoss CLI Tool:

```
/subsystem=web/connector=https/:add(socket-binding=https,scheme=https,protocol=HTTP/1.1,secure=true)
```

Then add the SSL configuration with the following command, replacing **PASSWORD** with the FIPS compliant password from step 5.

```
/subsystem=web/connector=https/ssl=configuration:add(name=https,password=PASSWORD,keystore-type=PKCS11,cipher-suite="SSL_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA,SSL_DHE_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA,TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA,TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA,TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA,TLS_ECDH_ECDSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA,TLS_ECDH_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,TLS_ECDH_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA,TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA")
```

```

BC_SHA,
TLS_ECDH_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA, TLS_ECDH_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,
TLS_ECDH_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA, TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA,
TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA, TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA,
TLS_ECDH_anon_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA, TLS_ECDH_anon_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,
TLS_ECDH_anon_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA")

```

## 8. Verify

Verify that the JVM can read the private key from the PKCS11 keystore by running the following command:

```
keytool -list -storetype pkcs11
```

### Example 11.39. XML configuration for HTTPS connector using FIPS 140-2 compliance

```

<connector name="https" protocol="HTTP/1.1" scheme="https" socket-
binding="https" secure="true">
    <ssl name="https" password="*****"
        cipher-
        suite="SSL_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA, SSL_DHE_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA
        ,
        TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,
        TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,
        TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA, TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA,
        TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA, TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA,
        TLS_ECDH_ECDSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA, TLS_ECDH_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_S
        HA,
        TLS_ECDH_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA, TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_
        SHA,
        TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA, TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_
        SHA,
        TLS_ECDH_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA, TLS_ECDH_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,
        TLS_ECDH_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA, TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA,
        TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA, TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA,
        TLS_ECDH_anon_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA, TLS_ECDH_anon_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA
        ,
        TLS_ECDH_anon_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA"
        keystore-type="PKCS11"/>
</connector>

```

Note that the **cipher-suite** attribute has linebreaks inserted to make it easier to read.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 11.14.4. Enable FIPS 140-2 Cryptography in Apache HTTP Server

You can enable FIPS 140-2 cryptography in Apache HTTP server by inserting **SSLFIPS on** directive to Apache HTTP server configuration file: **httpd.conf** or **ssl.conf**. This directive must be used outside a **VirtualHost** configuration section.

The **SSLFIPS on** directive activates the SSL library FIPS\_mode flag. This mode applies to all SSL library operations. After adding this directive, you need to restart Apache HTTP server for the changes to become active.



#### Note

To enable FIPS you must have a FIPS capable OpenSSL (which supports the **FIPS\_mode** flag) installed on your system.

[Report a bug](#)

## Chapter 12. Security Administration Reference

### 12.1. Included Authentication Modules

The following authentication modules are included in JBoss EAP 6. Some of these handle authorization as well as authentication. These usually include the word **Role** within the **Code** name.

When you configure these modules, use the **Code** value or the full (package qualified) name to refer to the module.

#### Authentication Modules

- » [Table 12.1, “\*\*RealmDirect\*\*”](#)
- » [Table 12.2, “\*\*RealmDirect\*\* Module Options”](#)
- » [Table 12.3, “\*\*Client\*\*”](#)
- » [Table 12.4, “\*\*Client\*\* Module Options”](#)
- » [Table 12.5, “\*\*Remoting\*\*”](#)
- » [Table 12.6, “\*\*Remoting\*\* Module Options”](#)
- » [Table 12.7, “\*\*Certificate\*\*”](#)
- » [Table 12.8, “\*\*Certificate\*\* Module Options”](#)
- » [Table 12.9, “\*\*CertificateRoles\*\*”](#)
- » [Table 12.10, “\*\*CertificateRoles\*\* Module Options”](#)
- » [Table 12.11, “\*\*Database\*\*”](#)
- » [Table 12.12, “\*\*Database\*\* Module Options”](#)
- » [Table 12.13, “\*\*DatabaseCertificate\*\*”](#)
- » [Table 12.14, “\*\*DatabaseCertificate\*\* Module Options”](#)
- » [Table 12.15, “\*\*Identity\*\*”](#)
- » [Table 12.16, “\*\*Identity\*\* Module Options”](#)
- » [Table 12.17, “\*\*Ldap\*\*”](#)
- » [Table 12.18, “\*\*Ldap\*\* Module Options”](#)
- » [Table 12.19, “\*\*LdapExtended\*\*”](#)
- » [Table 12.20, “\*\*LdapExtended\*\* Module Options”](#)
- » [Table 12.21, “\*\*RoleMapping\*\*”](#)
- » [Table 12.22, “\*\*RoleMapping\*\* Module Options”](#)
- » [Table 12.23, “\*\*RunAs\*\*”](#)
- » [Table 12.24, “\*\*RunAs\*\* Options”](#)

- » [Table 12.25, “Simple”](#)
- » [Table 12.26, “ConfiguredIdentity”](#)
- » [Table 12.27, “ConfiguredIdentity Module Options”](#)
- » [Table 12.28, “SecureIdentity”](#)
- » [Table 12.29, “SecureIdentity Module Options”](#)
- » [Table 12.30, “PropertiesUsers”](#)
- » [Table 12.31, “SimpleUsers”](#)
- » [Table 12.32, “LdapUsers”](#)
- » [Table 12.33, “Kerberos”](#)
- » [Table 12.34, “Kerberos Module Options”](#)
- » [Table 12.35, “SPNEGO”](#)
- » [Table 12.36, “SPNEGO Module Options”](#)
- » [Table 12.37, “AdvancedLdap”](#)
- » [Table 12.38, “AdvancedLdap Module Options”](#)
- » [Table 12.39, “AdvancedADLdap”](#)
- » [Table 12.40, “UsersRoles”](#)
- » [Table 12.41, “UsersRoles Module Options”](#)
- » [Custom Authentication Modules](#)

**Table 12.1. RealmDirect**

Code	<b>RealmDirect</b>
Class	<b>org.jboss.as.security.RealmDirectLoginModule</b>
Description	A login module implementation to interface directly with the security realm. This login module allows all interactions with the backing store to be delegated to the realm removing the need for any duplicate and synchronized definitions. Used for remoting calls and management interface.

**Table 12.2. RealmDirect Module Options**

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>realm</b>	string	<b>ApplicationRealm</b>	Name of the desired realm.

**Table 12.3. Client**

Code	<b>Client</b>
------	---------------

Class	<b>org.jboss.security.ClientLoginModule</b>
Description	This login module is designed to establish caller identity and credentials when JBoss EAP 6 is acting as a client. It should never be used as part of a security domain used for server authentication.

**Table 12.4. Client Module Options**

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>multi-threaded</b>	<b>true or false</b>	<b>false</b>	Set to true if each thread has its own principal and credential storage. Set to false to indicate that all threads in the VM share the same identity and credential.
<b>password-stacking</b>	<b>useFirstPass or false</b>	<b>false</b>	Set to <b>useFirstPass</b> to indicate that this login module should look for information stored in the <b>LoginContext</b> to use as the identity. This option can be used when stacking other login modules with this one.
<b>restore-login-identity</b>	<b>true or false</b>	<b>false</b>	Set to true if the identity and credential seen at the start of the <b>login()</b> method should be restored after the <b>logout()</b> method is invoked.

**Table 12.5. Remoting**

Code	<b>Remoting</b>
Class	<b>org.jboss.as.security.remoting.RemotingLoginModule</b>
Description	This login module is used to check if the request currently being authenticated is a request received over a Remoting connection, and if so the identity that was created during the Remoting authentication process is used and associated with the current request. If the request did not arrive over a Remoting connection this module does nothing and allows the JAAS based login to continue to the next module.

**Table 12.6. Remoting Module Options**

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>password-stacking</b>	<code>useFirstPass</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>	A value of <code>useFirstPass</code> indicates that this login module should first look to the information stored in the <code>LoginContext</code> for the identity. This option can be used when stacking other login modules with this one.
<b>principalClass</b>	A fully-qualified classname.	none	A <code>Principal</code> implementation class which contains a constructor that takes String arguments for the principal name.
<b>unauthenticatedId entity</b>	A principal name.	none	Defines the principal name assigned to requests which contain no authentication information. This can allow unprotected servlets to invoke methods on EJBs that do not require a specific role. Such a principal has no associated roles and can only access unsecured EJBs or EJB methods that are associated with the <code>unchecked permission</code> constraint.

**Table 12.7. Certificate**

Code	<b>Certificate</b>
Class	<code>org.jboss.security.auth.spi.BaseCertificateLoginModule</code>
Description	This login module is designed to authenticate users based on <b>X509 Certificates</b> . A use case for this is <b>CLIENT-CERT</b> authentication of a web application.

**Table 12.8. Certificate Module Options**

Option	Type	Default	Description
--------	------	---------	-------------

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>securityDomain</b>	string	<b>other</b>	Name of the security domain that has the JSSE configuration for the truststore holding the trusted certificates.
<b>verifier</b>	class	none	The class name of the <b>org.jboss.security.auth.certs.X509CertificateVerifier</b> to use for verification of the login certificate.

**Table 12.9. CertificateRoles**

Code	<b>CertificateRoles</b>
Class	<b>org.jboss.security.auth.spi.CertRolesLoginModule</b>
Description	This login module extends the Certificate login module to add role mapping capabilities from a properties file. It takes all of the same options as the Certificate login module, and adds the following options.

**Table 12.10. CertificateRoles Module Options**

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>rolesProperties</b>	string	<b>roles.properties</b>	<p>The name of the resource or file containing the roles to assign to each user. The role properties file must be in the format <b>username=role1, role2</b> where the username is the DN of the certificate, escaping any = (equals) and space characters. The following example is in the correct format:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px; width: fit-content;"> CN\=unit-tests-client,\OU\=Red\ Hat\ Inc.,\O\=Red\ Hat\ Inc.,\ST\=North\ Carolina,\C\=US </div>

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>defaultRolesProperties</b>	string	<b>defaultRoles.properties</b>	Name of the resource or file to fall back to if the <b>rolesProperties</b> file cannot be found.
<b>roleGroupSeparator</b>	A single character.	.	(a single period) Which character to use as the role group separator in the <b>rolesProperties</b> file.

**Table 12.11. Database**

Code	<b>Database</b>
Class	<b>org.jboss.security.auth.spi.DatabaseServerLoginModule</b>
Description	<p>A JDBC-based login module that supports authentication and role mapping. It is based on two logical tables, with the following definitions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Principals:</b> <code>PrincipalID</code> (text), <code>Password</code> (text)</li> <li>➤ <b>Roles:</b> <code>PrincipalID</code> (text), <code>Role</code> (text), <code>RoleGroup</code> (text)</li> </ul>

**Table 12.12. Database Module Options**

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>digestCallback</b>	A fully-qualified classname	none	The class name of the <b>DigestCallback</b> implementation that includes pre/post digest content like salts for hashing the input password. Only used if <b>hashAlgorithm</b> has been specified.
<b>dsJndiName</b>	A JNDI resource	<code>java:/DefaultDS</code>	The name of the JNDI resource storing the authentication information. This option is required.
<b>hashAlgorithm</b>	String	Use plain passwords	The message digest algorithm used to hash passwords. Supported algorithms depend on the Java Security Provider, but the following are supported: <b>MD5</b> , <b>SHA-1</b> , and <b>SHA-256</b> .
<b>hashCharset</b>	String	The platform's default encoding	The name of the charset/encoding to use when converting the password String to a byte array. This includes all supported Java charset names.
<b>hashEncoding</b>	String	Base64	The string encoding format to use.
<b>ignorePasswordCase</b>	boolean	false	A flag indicating if the password comparison should ignore case.

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>inputValidator</b>	A fully-qualified classname	none	The instance of the InputValidator implementation used to validate the username and password supplied by the client.
<b>principalsQuery</b>	prepared SQL statement	<b>select Password from Principals where PrincipalID=?</b>	The prepared SQL query to obtain the information about the principal.
<b>rolesQuery</b>	prepared SQL statement	none	The prepared SQL query to obtain the information about the roles. It should be equivalent to <b>select Role, RoleGroup from Roles where PrincipalID=?</b> , where Role is the role name and the RoleGroup column value should always be either <b>Roles</b> with a capital R or <b>CallerPrincipal</b> .
<b>storeDigestCallback</b>	A fully-qualified classname	none	The class name of the <b>DigestCallback</b> implementation that includes pre/post digest content like salts for hashing the store/expected password. Only used if <b>hashStorePassword</b> or <b>hashUserPassword</b> is <b>true</b> and <b>hashAlgorithm</b> has been specified.
<b>suspendResume</b>	boolean	true	Whether any existing JTA transaction should be suspended during database operations.
<b>throwValidatorError</b>	boolean	false	A flag that indicates whether validation errors should be exposed to clients or not
<b>transactionManagerJndiName</b>	JNDI Resource	java:/Transaction Manager	The JNDI name of the transaction manager used by the login module.

**Table 12.13. DatabaseCertificate**

Code	<b>DatabaseCertificate</b>
Class	<b>org.jboss.security.auth.spi.DatabaseCertLoginModule</b>
Description	This login module extends the Certificate login module to add role mapping capabilities from a database table. It has the same options plus these additional options:

**Table 12.14. DatabaseCertificate Module Options**

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>dsJndiName</b>	A JNDI resource	<b>java:/DefaultDS</b>	The name of the JNDI resource storing the authentication information. This option is required.

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>rolesQuery</b>	prepared SQL statement	<b>select Role,RoleGroup from Roles where PrincipalID=?</b>	SQL prepared statement to be executed in order to map roles. It should be an equivalent to <b>select Role, RoleGroup from Roles where PrincipalID=?</b> , where Role is the role name and the RoleGroup column value should always be either <b>Roles</b> with a capital R or <b>CallerPrincipal</b> .
<b>suspendResume</b>	<b>true</b> or <b>false</b>	<b>true</b>	Whether any existing JTA transaction should be suspended during database operations.

**Table 12.15. Identity**

Code	<b>Identity</b>
Class	<b>org.jboss.security.auth.spi.IdentityLoginModule</b>
Description	Associates the principal specified in the module options with any subject authenticated against the module. The type of Principal class used is <b>org.jboss.security.SimplePrincipal</b> . If no principal option is specified a principal with the name of <b>guest</b> is used.

**Table 12.16. Identity Module Options**

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>principal</b>	String	<b>guest</b>	The name to use for the principal.
<b>roles</b>	comma-separated list of strings	<b>none</b>	A comma-delimited list of roles which will be assigned to the subject.

**Table 12.17. Ldap**

Code	<b>Ldap</b>
Class	<b>org.jboss.security.auth.spi.LdapLoginModule</b>

Description	Authenticates against an LDAP server, when the username and password are stored in an LDAP server that is accessible using a JNDI LDAP provider. Many of the options are not required, because they are determined by the LDAP provider or the environment.
-------------	---

**Table 12.18. Ldap Module Options**

Option	Type	Default	Description
<code>java.naming.factory.initial</code>	class name	<code>com.sun.jndi.ldap.provider.LdapCtxFactory</code>	<code>InitialContextFactory</code> implementation class name.
<code>java.naming.provider.url</code>	<code>ldap://</code> URL	If the value of <code>java.naming.security.protocol</code> is <code>SSL</code> , <code>ldap://localhost:636</code> , otherwise <code>ldap://localhost:389</code>	URL for the LDAP server.
<code>java.naming.security.authentication</code>	<code>none</code> , <code>simple</code> , or the name of a SASL mechanism	<code>simple</code>	The security level to use to bind to the LDAP server.
<code>java.naming.security.protocol</code>	transport protocol	If unspecified, determined by the provider.	The transport protocol to use for secure access, such as SSL.
<code>java.naming.security.principal</code>	string	none	The name of the principal for authenticating the caller to the service. This is built from other properties described below.
<code>java.naming.security.credentials</code>	credential type	none	The type of credential used by the authentication scheme. Some examples include hashed password, clear-text password, key, or certificate. If this property is unspecified, the behavior is determined by the service provider.

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>principalDNPrefix</b>	string		Prefix added to the username to form the user DN. You can prompt the user for a username and build the fully-qualified DN by using the <b>principalDNPrefix</b> and <b>principalDNSuffix</b> .
<b>principalDNSuffix</b>	string		Suffix added to the username to form the user DN. You can prompt the user for a username and build the fully-qualified DN by using the <b>principalDNPrefix</b> and <b>principalDNSuffix</b> .
<b>useObjectCredential</b>	true or false	false	Whether the credential should be obtained as an opaque Object using the <b>org.jboss.security.auth.callback.ObjectCallback</b> type of Callback rather than as a <b>char[]</b> password using a JAAS PasswordCallback. This allows for passing <b>non-char[]</b> credential information to the LDAP server.
<b>rolesCtxDN</b>	fully-qualified DN	none	The fully-qualified DN for the context to search for user roles.
<b>userRolesCtxDNAttribute</b>	attribute	none	The attribute in the user object that contains the DN for the context to search for user roles. This differs from <b>rolesCtxDN</b> in that the context to search for a user's roles may be unique for each user.
<b>roleAttributeID</b>	attribute	<b>roles</b>	Name of the attribute containing the user roles.

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>roleAttributeIsDN</b>	true or false	false	Whether or not the <b>roleAttributeID</b> contains the fully-qualified DN of a role object. If false, the role name is taken from the value of the <b>roleNameAttributeId</b> attribute of the context name. Certain directory schemas, such as Microsoft Active Directory, require this attribute to be set to <b>true</b> .
<b>roleNameAttributeID</b>	attribute	name	Name of the attribute within the <b>roleCtxDN</b> context which contains the role name. If the <b>roleAttributeIsDN</b> property is set to <b>true</b> , this property is used to find the role object's name attribute.
<b>uidAttributeID</b>	attribute	uid	Name of the attribute in the <b>UserRolesAttributeDN</b> that corresponds to the user ID. This is used to locate the user roles.
<b>matchOnUserDN</b>	true or false	false	Whether or not the search for user roles should match on the user's fully-distinguished DN or the username only. If <b>true</b> , the full user DN is used as the match value. If <b>false</b> , only the username is used as the match value against the <b>uidAttributeName</b> attribute.
<b>allowEmptyPasswords</b>	true or false	false	Whether to allow empty passwords. Most LDAP servers treat empty passwords as anonymous login attempts. To reject empty passwords, set this to <b>false</b> .

**Table 12.19. LdapExtended**

Code	<b>LdapExtended</b>
Class	<b>org.jboss.security.auth.spi.LdapExtLoginModule</b>
Description	<p>An alternate LDAP login module implementation that uses searches to locate the bind user and associated roles. The roles query recursively follows DNs to navigate a hierarchical role structure. It uses the same <b>java.naming</b> options as the Ldap module, and uses the following options instead of the other options of the Ldap module.</p> <p>The authentication happens in 2 steps:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. An initial bind to the LDAP server is done using the <b>bindDN</b> and <b>bindCredential</b> options. The <b>bindDN</b> is a LDAP user with the ability to search both the <b>baseCtxDN</b> and <b>rolesCtxDN</b> trees for the user and roles. The user DN to authenticate against is queried using the filter specified by the <b>baseFilter</b> attribute.</li> <li>2. The resulting user DN is authenticated by binding to the LDAP server using the user DN as the <b>InitialLdapContext</b> environment <b>Context.SECURITY_PRINCIPAL</b>. The <b>Context.SECURITY_CREDENTIALS</b> property is set to the String password obtained by the callback handler.</li> </ol>

**Table 12.20. LdapExtended Module Options**

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>baseCtxDN</b>	fully-qualified DN	none	The fixed DN of the top-level context to begin the user search.
<b>bindCredential</b>	string, optionally encrypted	none	See the <i>JBoss EAP Security Guide</i> for more information.
<b>bindDN</b>	fully-qualified DN	none	The DN used to bind against the LDAP server for the user and roles queries. This DN needs read and search permissions on the <b>baseCtxDN</b> and <b>rolesCtxDN</b> values.

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>baseFilter</b>	LDAP filter string	none	A search filter used to locate the context of the user to authenticate. The input username or <b>userDN</b> obtained from the login module callback is substituted into the filter anywhere a <b>{0}</b> expression is used. A common example for the search filter is <b>(uid={0})</b> .
<b>rolesCtxDN</b>	fully-qualified DN	none	The fixed DN of the context to search for user roles. This is not the DN where the actual roles are, but the DN where the objects containing the user roles are. For example, in a Microsoft Active Directory server, this is the DN where the user account is.
<b>roleFilter</b>	LDAP filter string	none	A search filter used to locate the roles associated with the authenticated user. The input username or <b>userDN</b> obtained from the login module callback is substituted into the filter anywhere a <b>{0}</b> expression is used. The authenticated <b>userDN</b> is substituted into the filter anywhere a <b>{1}</b> is used. An example search filter that matches on the input username is <b>(member={0})</b> . An alternative that matches on the authenticated <b>userDN</b> is <b>(member={1})</b> .

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>roleAttributeIsDN</b>	<b>true or false</b>	<b>false</b>	Whether or not the <b>roleAttributeID</b> contains the fully-qualified DN of a role object. If false, the role name is taken from the value of the <b>roleNameAttributeId</b> attribute of the context name. Certain directory schemas, such as Microsoft Active Directory, require this attribute to be set to <b>true</b> .
<b>defaultRole</b>	Role name	none	A role included for all authenticated users
<b>parseRoleNameFrom DN</b>	<b>true or false</b>	<b>false</b>	A flag indicating if the DN returned by a query contains the <b>roleNameAttributeID</b> . If set to <b>true</b> , the DN is checked for the <b>roleNameAttributeID</b> . If set to <b>false</b> , the DN is not checked for the <b>roleNameAttributeID</b> . This flag can improve the performance of LDAP queries.
<b>parseUsername</b>	<b>true or false</b>	<b>false</b>	A flag indicating if the DN is to be parsed for the username. If set to <b>true</b> , the DN is parsed for the username. If set to <b>false</b> the DN is not parsed for the username. This option is used together with <b>usernameBeginString</b> and <b>usernameEndString</b> .
<b>usernameBeginString</b>	string	none	Defines the string which is to be removed from the start of the DN to reveal the username. This option is used together with <b>usernameEndString</b> .

Option	Type	Default	Description
<code>usernameEndString</code>	string	none	Defines the string which is to be removed from the end of the DN to reveal the username. This option is used together with <code>usernameBeginString</code> .
<code>roleNameAttributeID</code>	attribute	<code>name</code>	Name of the attribute within the <code>roleCtxDN</code> context which contains the role name. If the <code>roleAttributeIsDN</code> property is set to <code>true</code> , this property is used to find the role object's name attribute.
<code>distinguishedNameAttribute</code>	attribute	<code>distinguishedName</code>	The name of the attribute in the user entry that contains the DN of the user. This may be necessary if the DN of the user itself contains special characters (backslash for example) that prevent correct user mapping. If the attribute does not exist, the entry's DN is used.
<code>roleRecursion</code>	integer	<code>0</code>	The numbers of levels of recursion the role search will go below a matching context. Disable recursion by setting this to <code>0</code> .
<code>searchTimeLimit</code>	integer	<code>10000</code> (10 seconds)	The timeout in milliseconds for user or role searches.
<code>searchScope</code>	One of: <code>OBJECT_SCOPE</code> , <code>ONELEVEL_SCOPE</code> , <code>SUBTREE_SCOPE</code>	<code>SUBTREE_SCOPE</code>	The search scope to use.
<code>allowEmptyPasswords</code>	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>	Whether to allow empty passwords. Most LDAP servers treat empty passwords as anonymous login attempts. To reject empty passwords, set this to <code>false</code> .

Option	Type	Default	Description
<code>referralUserAttributeIDToCheck</code>	attribute	none	If you are not using referrals, this option can be ignored. When using referrals, this option denotes the attribute name which contains users defined for a certain role (for example, <code>member</code> ), if the role object is inside the referral. Users are checked against the content of this attribute name. If this option is not set, the check will always fail, so role objects cannot be stored in a referral tree.

**Table 12.21. RoleMapping**

Code	<b>RoleMapping</b>
Class	<code>org.jboss.security.auth.spi.RoleMappingLoginModule</code>
Description	Maps a role which is the end result of the authentication process to a declarative role. This module must be flagged as <code>optional</code> when you add it to the security domain.

**Table 12.22. RoleMapping Module Options**

Option	Type	Default	Description
<code>rolesProperties</code>	The fully-qualified file path and name of a properties file or resource	<code>none</code>	The fully-qualified file path and name of a properties file or resource which maps roles to replacement roles. The format is <code>original_role=role1,role2,role3</code>
<code>replaceRole</code>	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>	Whether to add to the current roles, or replace the current roles with the mapped ones. Replaces if set to <code>true</code> .

 **Note**

The `rolesProperties` module option is required for RoleMapping.

**Table 12.23. RunAs**

Code	<b>RunAs</b>
Class	<code>org.jboss.security.auth.spi.RunAsLoginModule</code>
Description	A helper module that pushes a <b>run as</b> role onto the stack for the duration of the login phase of authentication, and pops the <b>run as</b> role off the stack in either the commit or abort phase. This login module provides a role for other login modules that must access secured resources in order to perform their authentication, such as a login module which accesses a secured EJB. <b>RunAsLoginModule</b> must be configured before the login modules that require a <b>run as</b> role to be established.

**Table 12.24. RunAs Options**

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>roleName</b>	role name	<b>nobody</b>	The name of the role to use as the <b>run as</b> role during the login phase.
<b>principalName</b>	principal name	<b>nobody</b>	Name of the principal to use as the <b>run as</b> principal during login phase. If not specified a default of <b>nobody</b> is used.
<b>principalClass</b>	A fully-qualified classname.	none	A <b>Principal</b> implementation class which contains a constructor that takes String arguments for the principal name.

**Table 12.25. Simple**

Code	<b>Simple</b>
Class	<code>org.jboss.security.auth.spi.SimpleServerLoginModule</code>
Description	<p>A module for quick setup of security for testing purposes. It implements the following simple algorithm:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ If the password is null, authenticate the user and assign an identity of <b>guest</b> and a role of <b>guest</b>.</li> <li>➤ Otherwise, if the password is equal to the user, assign an identity equal to the username and both <b>admin</b> and <b>guest</b> roles.</li> <li>➤ Otherwise, authentication fails.</li> </ul>

### Simple Module Options

The **Simple** module has no options.

**Table 12.26. ConfiguredIdentity**

Code	<b>ConfiguredIdentity</b>
Class	<b>org.picketbox.datasource.security.ConfiguredIdentityLoginModule</b>
Description	Associates the principal specified in the module options with any subject authenticated against the module. The type of Principal class used is <b>org.jboss.security.SimplePrincipal</b> .

**Table 12.27. ConfiguredIdentity Module Options**

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>username</b>	string	none	The username for authentication.
<b>password</b>	encrypted string	""	The password to use for authentication. To encrypt the password, use the module directly at the command line.
			<pre>java org.picketbox .datasource.s ecurity.Secure IdentityLogin Module password_to_en crypt</pre>
			Paste the result of this command into the module option's value field. The default value is an empty string.
<b>principal</b>	Name of a principal	<b>none</b>	The principal which will be associated with any subject authenticated against the module.

**Table 12.28. SecureIdentity**

Code	<b>SecureIdentity</b>
Class	<b>org.picketbox.datasource.security.SecureIdentityLoginModule</b>

Description	This module is provided for legacy purposes. It allows you to encrypt a password and then use the encrypted password with a static principal. If your application uses <b>SecureIdentity</b> , consider using a password vault mechanism instead.
-------------	---

**Table 12.29. SecureIdentity Module Options**

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>username</b>	string	none	The username for authentication.
<b>password</b>	encrypted string	""	The password to use for authentication. To encrypt the password, use the module directly at the command line.
			<pre>java org.picketbox .datasource.s ecurity.Secure IdentityLogin Module password_to_en crypt</pre>
			Paste the result of this command into the module option's value field. The default value is an empty string.
<b>managedConnectionFactoryName</b>	JCA resource	none	The name of the JCA connection factory for your datasource.

**Table 12.30. PropertiesUsers**

Code	<b>PropertiesUsers</b>
Class	<b>org.jboss.security.auth.spi.PropertiesUsersLoginModule</b>
Description	Uses a properties file to store usernames and passwords for authentication. No authorization (role mapping) is provided. This module is only appropriate for testing.

**Table 12.31. SimpleUsers**

Code	<b>SimpleUsers</b>
Class	<b>org.jboss.security.auth.spi.SimpleUsersLoginModule</b>

Description	This login module stores the username and clear-text password using <b><i>module-option</i></b> . <b><i>module-option</i></b> 's <b><i>name</i></b> and <b><i>value</i></b> attributes specify a username and password. It is included for testing only, and is not appropriate for a production environment.
-------------	---

**Table 12.32. LdapUsers**

Code	<b>LdapUsers</b>
Class	<b>org.jboss.security.auth.spi.LdapUsersLoginModule</b>
Description	The <b>LdapUsers</b> module is superseded by the <b>ExtendedLDAP</b> and <b>AdvancedLdap</b> modules.

**Table 12.33. Kerberos**

Code	<b>Kerberos</b>
Class	<b>com.sun.security.auth.module.Krb5LoginModule</b> . In the IBM JDK the classname is <b>com.ibm.security.auth.module.Krb5LoginModule</b> .
Description	Performs Kerberos login authentication, using GSSAPI. This module is part of the security framework from the API provided by Sun Microsystems. Details can be found at <a href="http://docs.oracle.com/javase/7/docs/jre/api/security/jaas/spec/com/sun/security/auth/module/Krb5LoginModule.html">http://docs.oracle.com/javase/7/docs/jre/api/security/jaas/spec/com/sun/security/auth/module/Krb5LoginModule.html</a> . This module needs to be paired with another module which handles the authentication and roles mapping.

**Table 12.34. Kerberos Module Options**

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>storekey</b>	<b>true or false</b>	false	Whether or not to add the <b>KerberosKey</b> to the subject's private credentials.
<b>doNotPrompt</b>	<b>true or false</b>	false	If set to <b>true</b> , the user is not prompted for the password.
<b>useTicketCache</b>	Boolean value of <b>true</b> or <b>false</b> .	false	If <b>true</b> , the TGT is obtained from the ticket cache. If <b>false</b> , the ticket cache is not used.

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>ticketcache</b>	A file or resource representing a Kerberos ticket cache.	The default depends on which operating system you use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ Red Hat Enterprise Linux / Solaris: <code>/tmp/krb5cc_uid</code>, using the numeric UID value of the operating system.</li><li>➤ Microsoft Windows Server: uses the Local Security Authority (LSA) API to find the ticketcache.</li></ul>	The location of the ticket cache.
<b>useKeyTab</b>	<b>true or false</b>	false	Whether to obtain the principal's key from a key table file.
<b>keytab</b>	A file or resource representing a Kerberos keytab.	the location in the operating system's Kerberos configuration file, or <code>/home/user/krb5.keytab</code>	The location of the key table file.
<b>principal</b>	string	none	The name of the principal. This can either be a simple user name or a service name such as <code>host/testserver.acme.com</code> . Use this instead of obtaining the principal from the key table, or when the key table contains more than one principal.
<b>useFirstPass</b>	<b>true or false</b>	false	Whether to retrieve the username and password from the module's shared state, using <code>javax.security.auth.login.name</code> and <code>javax.security.auth.login.password</code> as the keys. If authentication fails, no retry attempt is made.

Option	Type	Default	Description
<code>tryFirstPass</code>	<code>true or false</code>	false	Same as <code>useFirstPass</code> , but if authentication fails, the module uses the <code>CallbackHandler</code> to retrieve a new username and password. If the second authentication fails, the failure is reported to the calling application.
<code>storePass</code>	<code>true or false</code>	false	Whether to store the username and password in the module's shared state. This does not happen if the keys already exist in the shared state, or if authentication fails.
<code>clearPass</code>	<code>true or false</code>	false	Set this to <code>true</code> to clear the username and password from the shared state after both phases of authentication complete.

**Table 12.35. SPNEGO**

Code	<b>SPNEGO</b>
Class	<code>org.jboss.security.negotiation.spnego.SPNEGOLoginModule</code>
Description	Allows SPNEGO authentication to a Microsoft Active Directory server or other environment which supports SPNEGO. SPNEGO can also carry Kerberos credentials. This module needs to be paired with another module which handles authentication and role mapping.

**Table 12.36. SPNEGO Module Options**

Option	Type	Default	Description
<code>serverSecurityDomain</code>	<code>string</code>	<code>null</code> .	Defines the domain that is used to retrieve the identity of the server service through the kerberos login module. This property must be set.

Option	Type	Default	Description
<code>removeRealmFromPrincipal</code>	<code>boolean</code>	<code>false</code>	Specifies that the Kerberos realm should be removed from the principal before further processing.
<code>usernamePasswordDomain</code>	<code>string</code>	<code>null</code>	Specifies another security domain within the configuration that should be used as a failover login when Kerberos fails.

**Table 12.37. AdvancedLdap**

Code	<b>AdvancedLdap</b>
Class	<code>org.jboss.security.negotiation.AdvancedLdapLoginModule</code>
Description	A module which provides additional functionality, such as SASL and the use of a JAAS security domain.

**Table 12.38. AdvancedLdap Module Options**

Option	Type	Default	Description
<code>bindAuthentication</code>	<code>string</code>	<code>none</code>	The type of SASL authentication to use for binding to the directory server.
<code>java.naming.provider.url</code>	<code>string</code>	If the value of <code>java.naming.security.protocol</code> is SSL, <code>ldap://localhost:686</code> , otherwise <code>ldap://localhost:389</code>	The URI of the directory server.
<code>baseCtxDN</code>	fully-qualified DN	<code>none</code>	The distinguished name to use as the base for searches.
<code>baseFilter</code>	String representing a LDAP search filter.	<code>none</code>	The filter to use to narrow down search results.
<code>roleAttributeID</code>	String value representing an LDAP attribute.	<code>none</code>	The LDAP attribute which contains the names of authorization roles.
<code>roleAttributeIsDN</code>	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>	Whether the role attribute is a Distinguished Name (DN).

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>roleNameAttributeID</b>	String representing an LDAP attribute.	none	The attribute contained within the <b>RoleAttributeId</b> which contains the actual role attribute.
<b>recurseRoles</b>	<b>true or false</b>	<b>false</b>	Whether to recursively search the <b>RoleAttributeId</b> for roles.
<b>referralUserAttributeIDToCheck</b>	attribute	none	If you are not using referrals, this option can be ignored. When using referrals, this option denotes the attribute name which contains users defined for a certain role (for example, <b>member</b> ), if the role object is inside the referral. Users are checked against the content of this attribute name. If this option is not set, the check will always fail, so role objects cannot be stored in a referral tree.

**Table 12.39. AdvancedADLdap**

Code	<b>AdvancedADLdap</b>
Class	<b>org.jboss.security.negotiation.AdvancedADLoginModule</b>
Description	This module extends the <b>AdvancedLdap</b> login module, and adds extra parameters that are relevant to Microsoft Active Directory.

**Table 12.40. UsersRoles**

Code	<b>UsersRoles</b>
Class	<b>org.jboss.security.auth.spi.UsersRolesLoginModule</b>
Description	A simple login module that supports multiple users and user roles stored in two different properties files.

**Table 12.41. UsersRoles Module Options**

Option	Type	Default	Description
--------	------	---------	-------------

Option	Type	Default	Description
<b>usersProperties</b>	Path to a file or resource.	<b>users.properties</b>	The file or resource which contains the user-to-password mappings. The format of the file is <b>username=password</b>
<b>rolesProperties</b>	Path to a file or resource.	<b>roles.properties</b>	The file or resource which contains the user-to-role mappings. The format of the file is <b>username=role1, role2, role3</b>
<b>password-stacking</b>	<b>useFirstPass</b> or <b>false</b>	<b>false</b>	A value of <b>useFirstPass</b> indicates that this login module should first look to the information stored in the <b>LoginContext</b> for the identity. This option can be used when stacking other login modules with this one.
<b>hashAlgorithm</b>	String representing a password hashing algorithm.	<b>none</b>	The name of the <b>java.security.MessageDigest</b> algorithm to use to hash the password. There is no default so this option must be explicitly set to enable hashing. When <b>hashAlgorithm</b> is specified, the clear text password obtained from the <b>CallbackHandler</b> is hashed before it is passed to <b>UsernamePasswordLoginModule.authenticatePassword</b> as the <b>inputPassword</b> argument. The password stored in the <b>users.properties</b> file must be comparably hashed.
<b>hashEncoding</b>	<b>base64</b> or <b>hex</b>	<b>base64</b>	The string format for the hashed password, if <b>hashAlgorithm</b> is also set.

Option	Type	Default	Description
<code>hashCharset</code>	string	The default encoding set in the container's runtime environment	The encoding used to convert the clear-text password to a byte array.
<code>unauthenticatedId</code> <code>entity</code>	principal name	none	Defines the principal name assigned to requests which contain no authentication information. This can allow unprotected servlets to invoke methods on EJBs that do not require a specific role. Such a principal has no associated roles and can only access unsecured EJBs or EJB methods that are associated with the <b>unchecked permission</b> constraint.

## Custom Authentication Modules

Authentication modules are implementations of `javax.security.auth.spi.LoginModule`. Refer to the API documentation for more information about creating a custom authentication module.

[Report a bug](#)

## 12.2. Included Authorization Modules

The following modules provide authorization services.

Code	Class
DenyAll	org.jboss.security.authorization.modules.AllDenyAuthorizationModule
PermitAll	org.jboss.security.authorization.modules.AllPermitAuthorizationModule
Delegating	org.jboss.security.authorization.modules.DelegatingAuthorizationModule
Web	org.jboss.security.authorization.modules.web.WebAuthorizationModule
JACC	org.jboss.security.authorization.modules.JACCAuthorizationModule
XACML	org.jboss.security.authorization.modules.XACMLAuthorizationModule

### AllDenyAuthorizationModule

This is a simple authorization module that always denies an authorization request. No configuration options are available.

## AllPermitAuthorizationModule

This is a simple authorization module that always permits an authorization request. No configuration options are available.

## DelegatingAuthorizationModule

This is the default authorization module that delegates decision making to the configured delegates.

## WebAuthorizationModule

This is the default web authorization module with the default Tomcat authorization logic (permit all).

## JACCAuthorizationModule

This module enforces JACC semantics using two delegates (WebJACCPolicyModuleDelegate for web container authorization requests and EJBJACCPolicyModuleDelegate for EJB container requests). No configuration options available.

## XACMLAuthorizationModule

This module enforces XACML authorization using two delegates for web and EJB containers (WebXACMLPolicyModuleDelegate and EJBXACMLPolicyModuleDelegate). It creates a PDP object based on registered policies and evaluates web or EJB requests against it.

## AbstractAuthorizationModule

This is the base authorization module which has to be overridden and provides a facility for delegating to other authorization modules.

[Report a bug](#)

## 12.3. Included Security Mapping Modules

The following security mapping roles are provided in JBoss EAP 6.

Code	Class
PropertiesRoles	<code>org.jboss.security.mapping.providers.role.PropertiesRolesMappingProvider</code>
SimpleRoles	<code>org.jboss.security.mapping.providers.role.SimpleRolesMappingProvider</code>
DeploymentRoles	<code>org.jboss.security.mapping.providers.DeploymentRolesMappingProvider</code>
DatabaseRoles	<code>org.jboss.security.mapping.providers.role.DatabaseRolesMappingProvider</code>
LdapRoles	<code>org.jboss.security.mapping.providers.role.LdapRolesMappingProvider</code>
LdapAttributes	<code>org.jboss.security.mapping.providers.attribute.LdapAttributeMappingProvider</code>

## DeploymentRolesMappingProvider

A Role Mapping Module that takes into consideration a principal to roles mapping that can be done in **jboss-web.xml** and **jboss-app.xml** deployment descriptors.

#### Example 12.1. Example

```
<jboss-web>
...
<security-role>
    <role-name>Support</role-name>
    <principal-name>Mark</principal-name>
    <principal-name>Tom</principal-name>
</security-role>
...
</jboss-web>
```

#### **org.jboss.security.mapping.providers.DeploymentRoleToRolesMappingProvider**

A Role to Roles Mapping Module that takes into consideration a principal to roles mapping that can be done in the deployment descriptors **jboss-web.xml** and **jboss-app.xml**. In this case principal-name denotes role to map other roles.

#### Example 12.2. Example

```
<jboss-web>
...
<security-role>
    <role-name>Employee</role-name>
    <principal-name>Support</principal-name>
    <principal-name>Sales</principal-name>
</security-role>
...
</jboss-web>
```

Which means that each principal having role Support or Sales will also have role Employee assigned.

#### **org.jboss.security.mapping.providers.OptionsRoleMappingProvider**

Role Mapping Provider that picks up the roles from the options and then appends them to the passed Group. Takes the properties style mapping of role name (key) with a comma separated list of roles (values).

#### **org.jboss.security.mapping.providers.principal.SimplePrincipalMappingProvider**

A principal mapping provider that takes in a SimplePrincipal and converts into SimplePrincipal with a different principal name.

#### **DatabaseRolesMappingProvider**

A MappingProvider that reads roles from a database.

Options:

- » **dsJndiName**: JNDI name of data source used to map roles to the user.
- » **rolesQuery**: This option should be a prepared statement equivalent to "select RoleName from Roles where User=?". ? is substituted with current principal name.
- » **suspendResume**: Boolean - To suspend and later resume transaction associated with current thread while performing search for roles.
- » **transactionManagerJndiName**: JNDI name of Transaction manager (default is java:/TransactionManager)

## LdapRolesMappingProvider

A mapping provider that assigns roles to an user using a LDAP server to search for the roles.

Options:

- » **bindDN**: The DN used to bind against the LDAP server for the user and roles queries. This DN needs read and search permissions on the baseCtxDN and rolesCtxDN values.
- » **bindCredential**: The password for the bindDN. This can be encrypted if the jaasSecurityDomain is specified.
- » **rolesCtxDN**: The fixed DN of the context to search for user roles. This is not the DN where the actual roles are, but the DN where the objects containing the user roles are. For example, in a Microsoft Active Directory server, this is the DN where the user account is.
- » **roleAttributeID**: The LDAP attribute which contains the names of authorization roles.
- » **roleAttributeIsDN**: Whether or not the **roleAttributeID** contains the fully-qualified DN of a role object. If false, the role name is taken from the value of the **roleNameAttributeId** attribute of the context name. Certain directory schemas, such as Microsoft Active Directory, require this attribute to be set to **true**.
- » **roleNameAttributeID**: Name of the attribute within the **roleCtxDN** context which contains the role name. If the **roleAttributeIsDN** property is set to **true**, this property is used to find the role object's name attribute.
- » **parseRoleNameFromDN**: A flag indicating if the DN returned by a query contains the roleNameAttributeID. If set to **true**, the DN is checked for the roleNameAttributeID. If set to **false**, the DN is not checked for the roleNameAttributeID. This flag can improve the performance of LDAP queries.
- » **roleFilter**: A search filter used to locate the roles associated with the authenticated user. The input username or **userDN** obtained from the login module callback is substituted into the filter anywhere a **{0}** expression is used. The authenticated **userDN** is substituted into the filter anywhere a **{1}** is used. An example search filter that matches on the input username is **(member={0})**. An alternative that matches on the authenticated **userDN** is **(member={1})**.
- » **roleRecursion**: The numbers of levels of recursion the role search will go below a matching context. Disable recursion by setting this to **0**.
- » **searchTimeLimit**: The timeout in milliseconds for the user/role searches. Defaults to 10000 (10 seconds).
- » **searchScope**: The search scope to use.

## PropertiesRolesMappingProvider

A MappingProvider that reads roles from a properties file in the following format:  
username=role1,role2,...

Options:

- » **rolesProperties**: Properties formatted file name. Expansion of JBoss variables can be used in form of \${jboss.variable}.

## SimpleRolesMappingProvider

A simple MappingProvider that reads roles from the options map. The option attribute name is the name of principal to assign roles to and the attribute value is the comma separated role names to assign to the principal.

### Example 12.3. Example

```
<module-option name="JavaDuke" value="JBossAdmin,Admin"/>
<module-option name="joe" value="Users"/>
```

## org.jboss.security.mapping.providers.attribute.DefaultAttributeMappingProvider

Checks module and locates principal name from mapping context to create attribute e-mail address from module option named principalName + ".email" and maps it to the given principal.

## LdapAttributeMappingProvider

Maps attributes from LDAP to the subject. The options include whatever options your LDAP JNDI provider supports.

### Example 12.4. Examples of standard property names include:

```
Context.INITIAL_CONTEXT_FACTORY = "java.naming.factory.initial"
Context.SECURITY_PROTOCOL = "java.naming.security.protocol"
Context.PROVIDER_URL = "java.naming.provider.url"
Context.SECURITY_AUTHENTICATION =
"java.naming.security.authentication"
```

Options:

- » **bindDN**: The DN used to bind against the LDAP server for the user and roles queries. This DN needs read and search permissions on the baseCtxDN and rolesCtxDN values.
- » **bindCredential**: The password for the bindDN. This can be encrypted if the jaasSecurityDomain is specified.
- » **baseCtxDN**: The fixed DN of the context to start the user search from.

- » **baseFilter**: A search filter used to locate the context of the user to authenticate. The input username or `userDN` as obtained from the login module callback is substituted into the filter anywhere a `{0}` expression is used. This substitution behavior comes from the standard `__DirContext.search(Name, String, Object[], SearchControls cons)` method. A common example search filter is `(uid={0})`.
- » **searchTimeLimit**: The timeout in milliseconds for the user/role searches. Defaults to 10000 (10 seconds).
- » **attributeList**: A comma-separated list of attributes for the user. For example, `mail,cn,sn,employeeType,employeeNumber`.
- » **jaasSecurityDomain**: The JaasSecurityDomain to use to decrypt the `java.naming.security.principal`. The encrypted form of the password is that returned by the `JaasSecurityDomain#encrypt64(byte[])` method. The `org.jboss.security.plugins.PBEUtils` can also be used to generate the encrypted form.

[Report a bug](#)

## 12.4. Included Security Auditing Provider Modules

JBoss EAP 6 provides one security auditing provider.

Code	Class
LogAuditProvider	org.jboss.security.audit.providers.LogAuditProvider

[Report a bug](#)

# Chapter 13. Subsystem Configuration

## 13.1. Subsystem Configuration Overview

### Introduction

JBoss EAP 6 uses a simplified configuration, with one configuration file per domain or per standalone server. In domain mode, a separate file exists for each host controller as well. Changes to the configuration persist automatically, so XML should not be edited manually. The configuration is scanned and overwritten automatically by the Management API. The command-line based Management CLI and web-based Management Console allow you to configure each aspect of JBoss EAP 6.

JBoss EAP 6 is built on the concept of modular classloading. Each API or service provided by the Platform is implemented as a module, which is loaded and unloaded on demand. Most modules include a configurable element called a subsystem. Subsystem configuration information is stored in the unified configuration file **EAP\_HOME/domain/configuration/domain.xml** for a managed domain or **EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone.xml** for a standalone server. Many of the subsystems include configuration details that were configured via deployment descriptors in previous versions of JBoss EAP.

### Subsystem Configuration Schemas

Each subsystem's configuration is defined in an XML schema. The configuration schemas are located in the **EAP\_HOME/docs/schema/** directory of your installation.

The following subsystems are known as *simple subsystems*, because they do not have any configurable attributes or elements. They are generally listed at the top of the configuration file.

### Simple Subsystems

- » **ee**—the Java EE 6 API implementation
- » **ejb**—the Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) subsystem
- » **jaxrs**—the JAX-RS API, provided by RESTeasy.
- » **sar**—the subsystem which supports Service Archives.
- » **threads**—the subsystem which supports process threads.
- » **weld**—the Contexts and Dependency Injection API, provided by Weld.

[Report a bug](#)

# Chapter 14. The Logging Subsystem

## 14.1. Introduction

### 14.1.1. Overview of Logging

JBoss EAP 6 provides highly configurable logging facilities for both its own internal use and for use by deployed applications. The logging subsystem is based on JBoss LogManager and it supports several third party application logging frameworks in addition to JBoss Logging.

The logging subsystem is configured using a system of log categories and log handlers. Log categories define what messages to capture, and log handlers define how to deal with those messages (write to disk, send to console etc).

Logging Profiles allow uniquely named sets of logging configuration to be created and assigned to applications independent of any other logging configuration. The configuration of logging profiles is almost identical to the main logging subsystem.

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.1.2. Application Logging Frameworks Supported By JBoss LogManager

JBoss LogManager supports the following logging frameworks:

- » JBoss Logging - included with JBoss EAP 6
- » Apache Commons Logging - <http://commons.apache.org/logging/>
- » Simple Logging Facade for Java (SLF4J) - <http://www.slf4j.org/>
- » Apache log4j - <http://logging.apache.org/log4j/1.2/>
- » Java SE Logging (java.util.logging) -  
<http://download.oracle.com/javase/6/docs/api/java/util/logging/package-summary.html>

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.1.3. Configure Boot Logging

Boot logging is the recording of events that occur while the server is "booting" or starting up.

If the **logging.properties** file is available when the server is starting up, these property configurations are used to record the events that occur before the logging subsystem is initialized. At that point, the logging subsystem takes over the recording of events.

When you modify the **logging** subsystem using Management CLI or by manually editing the server configuration file, it updates the **logging.properties** file.

If the **logging.properties** file is missing from the installation, any log messages that normally appear during the boot process before the logging subsystem is initiated are lost. Once the logging subsystem is initialized, messages will again appear in the log.



## Warning

It is recommended that you do not directly edit the `logging.properties` file unless you have a serious problem booting the server and need additional logging from the host or process controller.

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.1.4. About Garbage Collection Logging

Garbage collection logging logs all garbage collection activity to plaintext log files. These log files can be useful for diagnostic purposes. From JBoss EAP 6.3 garbage collection logging is enabled by default for **standalone** mode on all supported configurations except IBM JDK.

Logging is output to the file `EAP_HOME/standalone/log/gc.log.digit`. Log rotation has been enabled, with the number of log files limited to five and each file limited to a maximum size of three MiB.

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.1.5. Implicit Logging API Dependencies

The JBoss EAP 6 logging subsystem has the **add-logging-api-dependencies** attribute that controls whether the container adds implicit logging API dependencies to deployments. By default this attribute is set to **true**, which means that all implicit logging API dependencies are added to deployments. If set to **false**, implicit logging API dependencies will not be added.

The **add-logging-api-dependencies** attribute can be configured using the Management CLI. For example:

```
/subsystem=logging:write-attribute(name=add-logging-api-dependencies,value=false)
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.1.6. Default Log File Locations

These are the log files that get created for the default logging configurations. The default configuration writes the server log files using periodic log handlers

**Table 14.1. Default Log File for a standalone server**

Log File	Description
<code>EAP_HOME/standalone/log/server.log</code>	Server Log. Contains all server log messages, including server startup messages.
<code>EAP_HOME/standalone/log/gc.log</code>	Garbage collection log. Contains details of all garbage collection.

**Table 14.2. Default Log Files for a managed domain**

Log File	Description
<code>EAP_HOME/domain/log/host-controller.log</code>	Host Controller boot log. Contains log messages related to the startup of the host controller.
<code>EAP_HOME/domain/log/process-controller.log</code>	Process controller boot log. Contains log messages related to the startup of the process controller.
<code>EAP_HOME/domain/servers/SERVERNAME/1og/server.log</code>	The server log for the named server. Contains all log messages for that server, including server startup messages.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 14.1.7. Filter Expressions for Logging

Filter expressions are used to record log messages based on various criterion. Filter checking is always done on a raw unformatted message. You can include a filter for a logger or handler, the logger filter takes precedence over the filter put on a handler.

 **Note**

A **filter-spec** specified for the root logger is *not* inherited by other loggers. Instead a **filter-spec** must be specified per handler.

**Table 14.3. Filter Expressions for Logging**

Filter Type	Description	Parameters
<b>expression</b>		
Accept	Accept all log messages	<b>accept</b>
<b>accept</b>		
Deny	Deny all log messages	<b>deny</b>
<b>deny</b>		
Not	Returns the inverted value of the filter expression	Takes single filter expression as a parameter
<b>not[filter expression]</b>		<b>not(match("JBAS"))</b>
All	Returns concatenated value from multiple filter expressions.	Takes multiple filter expressions delimited by commas <b>all(match("JBAS"),match("WELD"))</b>
<b>all[filter expression]</b>		

Filter Type	Description	Parameters
<b>expression</b>		
Any <b>any[filter expression]</b>	Returns one value from multiple filter expressions.	Takes multiple filter expressions delimited by commas <b>any(match("JBAS"),match("WELD"))</b>
Level Change <b>levelChange[level]</b>	Modifies the log record with the specified level	Takes single string-based level as an argument <b>levelChange("WARN")</b>
Levels <b>levels[levels]</b>	Filters log messages with a level listed in the list of levels	Takes multiple string-based levels delimited by commas as argument <b>levels("DEBUG", "INFO", "WARN", "ERROR")</b>
Level Range <b>levelRange[minLevel,maxLevel]</b>	Filters log messages within the specified level range.	<p>The filter expression uses [ to indicate a minimum inclusive level and a ] to indicate a maximum inclusive level. Alternatively, one can use ( or ) respectively to indicate exclusive. The first argument for the expression is the minimum level allowed, the second argument is the maximum level allowed.</p> <p>Examples are shown below.</p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>levelRange("DEBUG", "ERROR")</b></li> </ul> <p>Minimum level must be greater than <b>DEBUG</b> and the maximum level must be less than <b>ERROR</b>.</p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>levelRange["DEBUG", "ERROR"]</b></li> </ul> <p>Minimum level must be greater than or equal to <b>DEBUG</b> and the maximum level must be less than <b>ERROR</b>.</p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>levelRange["INFO", "ERROR"]</b></li> </ul> <p>Minimum level must be greater than or equal to <b>INFO</b> and the maximum level must be less than or equal to <b>ERROR</b>.</p>

Filter Type	Description	Parameters
<b>expression</b>		
Match ( <code>match["pattern"]</code> )	A regular-expression based filter. The unformatted message is used against the pattern specified in the expression.	Takes a regular expression as argument <code>match("JBAS\d+")</code>
Substitute ( <code>substitute["pattern", "replacement value"]</code> )	A filter which replaces the first match to the pattern with the replacement value	The first argument for the expression is the pattern the second argument is the replacement text <code>substitute("JBAS", "EAP")</code>
Substitute All ( <code>substituteAll["pattern", "replacement value"]</code> )	A filter which replaces all matches of the pattern with the replacement value	The first argument for the expression is the pattern the second argument is the replacement text <code>substituteAll("JBAS", "EAP")</code>

[Report a bug](#)

#### 14.1.8. About Log Levels

Log levels are an ordered set of enumerated values that indicate the nature and severity of a log message. The level of a given log message is specified by the developer using the appropriate methods of their chosen logging framework to send the message.

JBoss EAP 6 supports all the log levels used by the supported application logging frameworks. The most commonly used six log levels are (in order of lowest to highest): **TRACE**, **DEBUG**, **INFO**, **WARN**, **ERROR** and **FATAL**.

Log levels are used by log categories and handlers to limit the messages they are responsible for. Each log level has an assigned numeric value which indicates its order relative to other log levels. Log categories and handlers are assigned a log level and they only process log messages of that level or higher. For example a log handler with the level of **WARN** will only record messages of the levels **WARN**, **ERROR** and **FATAL**.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 14.1.9. Supported Log Levels

**Table 14.4. Supported Log Levels**

Log Level	Value	Description
FINEST	300	-
FINER	400	-
TRACE	400	Use for messages that provide detailed information about the running state of an application. Log messages of <b>TRACE</b> are usually only captured when debugging an application.

Log Level	Value	Description
DEBUG	500	Use for messages that indicate the progress individual requests or activities of an application. Log messages of <b>DEBUG</b> are usually only captured when debugging an application.
FINE	500	-
CONFIG	700	-
INFO	800	Use for messages that indicate the overall progress of the application. Often used for application startup, shutdown and other major lifecycle events.
WARN	900	Use to indicate a situation that is not in error but is not considered ideal. May indicate circumstances that may lead to errors in the future.
WARNING	900	-
ERROR	1000	Use to indicate an error that has occurred that could prevent the current activity or request from completing but will not prevent the application from running.
SEVERE	1000	-
FATAL	1100	Use to indicate events that could cause critical service failure and application shutdown and possibly cause JBoss EAP 6 to shutdown.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 14.1.10. About Log Categories

Log categories define a set of log messages to capture and one or more log handlers which will process the messages.

The log messages to capture are defined by their Java package of origin and log level. Messages from classes in that package and of that log level or lower are captured by the log category and sent to the specified log handlers.

Log categories can optionally use the log handlers of the root logger instead of their own handlers.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 14.1.11. About the Root Logger

The root logger captures all log messages sent to the server (of a specified level) that are not captured by a log category. These messages are then sent to one or more log handlers.

By default the root logger is configured to use a console and a periodic log handler. The periodic log handler is configured to write to the file **server.log**. This file is sometimes referred to as the server log.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 14.1.12. About Log Handlers

Log handlers define how captured log messages are recorded by JBoss EAP 6. The available log handlers are: **Console**, **File**, **Periodic**, **Size**, **Async**, **Custom** and **syslog**.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 14.1.13. Types of Log Handlers

## Console

Console log handlers write log messages to either the host operating system's standard out (stdout) or standard error (stderr) stream. These messages are displayed when JBoss EAP 6 is run from a command line prompt. The messages from a Console log handler are not saved unless the operating system is configured to capture the standard out or standard error stream.

## File

File log handlers are the simplest log handlers that write log messages to a specified file.

## Periodic

Periodic log handlers write log messages to a named file until a specified period of time has elapsed. Once the time period has passed then the file is renamed by appending the specified timestamp and the handler continues to write into a newly created log file with the original name.

## Size

Size log handlers write log messages to a named file until the file reaches a specified size. When the file reaches a specified size, it is renamed with a numeric prefix and the handler continues to write into a newly created log file with the original name. Each size log handler must specify the maximum number of files to be kept in this fashion.

## Async

Async log handlers are wrapper log handlers that provide asynchronous behavior for one or more other log handlers. These are useful for log handlers that may have high latency or other performance problems such as writing a log file to a network file system.

## Custom

Custom log handlers enable to you to configure new types of log handlers that have been implemented. A custom handler must be implemented as a Java class that extends `java.util.logging.Handler` and be contained in a module.

## syslog

Syslog-handlers can be used to send messages to a remote logging server. This allows multiple applications to send their log messages to the same server, where they can all be parsed together.

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.1.14. About Log Formatters

A log formatter is the configuration property of a log handler that defines the appearance of log messages from that handler. It is a string that uses a syntax based on `java.util.Formatter` class.

For example the log formatter string from the default configuration, `%d{HH:mm:ss,SSS} %-5p [%c] (%t) %s%E%n`, creates log messages that look like:

```
15:53:26,546 INFO [org.jboss.as] (Controller Boot Thread) JBAS015951:
Admin console listening on http://127.0.0.1:9990
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.1.15. Log Formatter Syntax

**Table 14.5. Log Formatter Syntax**

Symbol	Description
%c	The category of the logging event
%p	The level of the log entry (info/debug/etc)
%P	The localized level of the log entry
%d	The current date/time (yyyy-MM-dd HH:mm:ss,SSS form)
%r	The relative time (milliseconds since the log was initialized)
%z	The time zone
%k	A log resource key (used for localization of log messages)
%m	The log message (including exception trace)
%s	The simple log message (no exception trace)
%e	The exception stack trace (no extended module information)
%E	The exception stack trace (with extended module information)
%t	The name of the current thread
%n	A newline character
%C	The class of the code calling the log method (slow)
%F	The filename of the class calling the log method (slow)
%l	The source location of the code calling the log method (slow)
%L	The line number of the code calling the log method (slow)
%M	The method of the code calling the log method (slow)
%x	The Nested Diagnostic Context
%X	The Message Diagnostic Context
%%	A literal percent character (escaping)

[Report a bug](#)

## 14.2. Configure Logging in the Management Console

The management console provides a graphical user interface for the configuration of the root logger, log handlers, and log categories. See [Section 3.4.1, “Management Console”](#) for more information about the Management Console.

To access logging configuration, follow the steps below:

1. Log in to the Management Console
2. Navigate to the logging subsystem configuration. This step varies between servers running as standalone servers and servers running in a managed domain.

### A. Standalone Server

Click on **Configuration**, expand **Core** in the **Subsystems** menu, and then click **Logging**.

### B. Managed Domain

Click on **Configuration**, select the profile to edit from the drop-down menu. Expand **Core** in the **Subsystems** menu, and then click **Logging**.

The tasks you can perform to configure the root logger are:

- » Edit the log level.
- » Add and remove log handlers.

The tasks you can perform to configure log categories are:

- » Add and remove log categories.
- » Edit log category properties.
- » Add and remove log handlers from a category.

The main tasks you can perform to configure log handlers are:

- » Adding new handlers.
- » Configuring handlers.

All supported log handlers (including custom) can be configured in the management console.

[Report a bug](#)

## 14.3. Logging Configuration in the CLI

### Prerequisite

The Management CLI must be running and connected to the relevant JBoss EAP instance. For further information see [Section 3.5.2, “Launch the Management CLI”](#).

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.3.1. Configure the Root Logger with the CLI

The root logger configuration can be viewed and edited using the Management CLI.

The main tasks you will perform to configure the root logger are:

- » Add log handlers to the root logger.
- » Display the root logger configuration.
- » Change the log level.
- » Remove log handlers from the root logger.



#### Important

When configuring a root logger in a logging profile for a standalone system, the root of the configuration path is `/subsystem=logging/logging-profile=NAME/` instead of `/subsystem=logging/`.

For a managed domain, you must specify which profile to use. You must add the profile name to the beginning of the configuration path for a managed domain, replacing `/subsystem=logging/` with `/profile=NAME/subsystem=logging/`.

#### Add a Log Handler to the Root Logger

Use the **add-handler** operation with the following syntax where *HANDLER* is the name of the log handler to be added.

```
/subsystem=logging/root-logger=ROOT:add-handler(name="HANDLER")
```

The log handler must already have been created before it can be added to the root logger.

#### **Example 14.1. Root Logger add-handler operation**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/root-logger=ROOT:add-handler(name="FILE")
>{"outcome" => "success"}
```

#### **Display the Contents of the Root Logger Configuration**

Use the **read-resource** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/root-logger=ROOT:read-resource
```

#### **Example 14.2. Root Logger read-resource operation**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/root-logger=ROOT:read-resource
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "filter" => undefined,
        "filter-spec" => undefined,
        "handlers" => [
            "CONSOLE",
            "FILE"
        ],
        "level" => "INFO"
    }
}
```

#### **Set the Log Level of the Root Logger**

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax where *LEVEL* is one of the supported log levels.

```
/subsystem=logging/root-logger=ROOT:write-attribute(name="level",
value="LEVEL")
```

#### **Example 14.3. Root Logger write-attribute operation to set the log level**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/root-logger=ROOT:write-attribute(name="level", value="DEBUG")
>{"outcome" => "success"}
```

#### **Remove a Log Handler from the Root Logger**

Use the **remove-handler** with the following syntax, where *HANDLER* is the name of the log handler to be removed.

```
/subsystem=logging/root-logger=ROOT:remove-
handler(name="HANDLER")
```

#### Example 14.4. Remove a Log Handler

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/root-
logger=ROOT:remove-handler(name="FILE")
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.3.2. Configure a Log Category in the CLI

Log categories can be added, removed and edited in the CLI.

The main tasks you will perform to configure a log category are:

- » Add a new log category.
- » Display the configuration of a log category.
- » Set the log level.
- » Add log handlers to a log category.
- » Remove log handlers from a log category.
- » Remove a log category.



#### Important

When configuring a log category in a logging profile for a standalone system, the root of the configuration path is **/subsystem=logging/logging-profile=NAME/** instead of **/subsystem=logging/**.

For a managed domain, you must specify which profile to use. You must add the profile name to the beginning of the configuration path for a managed domain, replacing **/subsystem=logging/** with **/profile=NAME/subsystem=logging/**.

#### Add a log category

Use the **add** operation with the following syntax. Replace *CATEGORY* with the category to be added.

```
/subsystem=logging/logger=CATEGORY:add
```

**Example 14.5. Adding a new log category**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
/subsystem=logging/logger=com.company.accounts.rec:add
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

**Display a log category configuration**

Use the **read - resource** operation with the following syntax. Replace *CATEGORY* with the name of the category.

```
/subsystem=logging/logger=CATEGORY:read-resource
```

**Example 14.6. Log Category read-resource operation**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
/subsystem=logging/logger=org.apache.tomcat.util.modeler:read-
resource
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "category" => "org.apache.tomcat.util.modeler",
        "filter" => undefined,
        "filter-spec" => undefined,
        "handlers" => undefined,
        "level" => "WARN",
        "use-parent-handlers" => true
    }
}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

**Set the log level**

Use the **write - attribute** operation with the following syntax. Replace *CATEGORY* with the name of the log category and *LEVEL* with the log level that is to be set.

```
/subsystem=logging/logger=CATEGORY:write-attribute(name="level",
value="LEVEL")
```

**Example 14.7. Setting a log level**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
/subsystem=logging/logger=com.company.accounts.rec:write-
attribute(name="level", value="DEBUG")
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

**Set the log category to use the log handlers of the root logger.**

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax. Replace *CATEGORY* with the name of the log category. Replace *BOOLEAN* with true for this log category to use the handlers of the root logger. Replace it with false if it is to use only its own assigned handlers.

```
/subsystem=logging/logger=CATEGORY:write-attribute(name="use-parent-handlers", value="BOOLEAN")
```

#### **Example 14.8. Setting use-parent-handlers**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
/subsystem=logging/logger=com.company.accounts.rec:write-
attribute(name="use-parent-handlers", value="true")
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

#### **Add a log handlers to a log category**

Use the **add-handler** operation with the following syntax. Replace *CATEGORY* with the name of the category and *HANDLER* with the name of the handler to be added.

```
/subsystem=logging/logger=CATEGORY:add-handler(name="HANDLER")
```

The log handler must already have been created before it can be added to the root logger.

#### **Example 14.9. Adding a log handler**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
/subsystem=logging/logger=com.company.accounts.rec:add-
handler(name="AccountsNFSAsync")
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

#### **Remove a log handler from a log category**

Use the **remove-handler** operation with the following syntax. Replace *CATEGORY* with the name of the category and *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler to be removed.

```
/subsystem=logging/logger=CATEGORY:remove-handler(name="HANDLER")
```

#### **Example 14.10. Removing a log handler**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
/subsystem=logging/logger=jacorb:remove-
handler(name="AccountsNFSAsync")
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

#### **Remove a category**

Use the **remove** operation with the following syntax. Replace *CATEGORY* with the name of the category to be removed.

```
/subsystem=logging/logger=CATEGORY:remove
```

#### Example 14.11. Removing a log category

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
/subsystem=logging/logger=com.company.accounts.rec:remove
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.3.3. Configure a Console Log Handler in the CLI

Console log handlers can be added, removed and edited in the CLI.

The main tasks you will perform to configure a console log handler are:

- » Add a new console log handler.
- » Display the configuration of a console log handler.
- » Set the handler's log level.
- » Set the target for the handler's output.
- » Set the encoding used for the handler's output.
- » Set the formatter used for the handler's output.
- » Set whether the handler uses autoflush or not.
- » Remove a console log handler.



#### Important

When configuring a log handler in a logging profile for a standalone system, the root of the configuration path is **/subsystem=logging/logging-profile=NAME/** instead of **/subsystem=logging/**.

For a managed domain, you must specify which profile to use. You must add the profile name to the beginning of the configuration path for a managed domain, replacing **/subsystem=logging/** with **/profile=NAME/subsystem=logging/**.

#### Add a Console Log Handler

Use the **add** operation with the following syntax. Replace **HANDLER** with the console log handler to be added.

```
/subsystem=logging/console-handler=HANDLER:add
```

#### Example 14.12. Add a Console Log Handler

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/console-
handler=ERRORCONSOLE:add
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

### Display a console log handler configuration

Use the **read-resource** operation with the following syntax. Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the console log handler.

```
/subsystem=logging/console-handler=HANDLER:read-resource
```

### Example 14.13. Display a console log handler configuration

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/console-
handler=CONSOLE:read-resource
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "autoflush" => true,
        "enabled" => true,
        "encoding" => undefined,
        "filter" => undefined,
        "filter-spec" => undefined,
        "formatter" => "%d{HH:mm:ss,SSS} %-5p [%c] (%t) %s%E%n",
        "level" => "INFO",
        "name" => "CONSOLE",
        "named-formatter" => "COLOR-PATTERN",
        "target" => "System.out"
    }
}
```

### Set the Log Level

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax. Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the console log handler and *LEVEL* with the log level that is to be set.

```
/subsystem=logging/console-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="level", value="INFO")
```

### Example 14.14. Set the Log Level

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/console-
handler=ERRORCONSOLE:write-attribute(name="level",
value="TRACE")
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

### Set the Target

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax. Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the console log handler. Replace *TARGET* with either **System.err** or **System.out** for the system error stream or standard out stream respectively.

```
/subsystem=logging/console-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="target", value="TARGET")
```

### Example 14.15. Set the Target

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/console-
handler=ERRORCONSOLE:write-attribute(name="target",
value="System.err")
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

## Set the Encoding

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax. Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the console log handler. Replace *ENCODING* with the name of the required character encoding system.

```
/subsystem=logging/console-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="encoding", value="ENCODING")
```

### Example 14.16. Set the Encoding

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/console-
handler=ERRORCONSOLE:write-attribute(name="encoding",
value="utf-8")
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

## Set the Formatter

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax. Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the console log handler. Replace *FORMAT* with the required formatter string.

```
/subsystem=logging/console-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="formatter", value="FORMAT")
```

### Example 14.17. Set the Formatter

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/console-
handler=ERRORCONSOLE:write-attribute(name="formatter",
value="%d{HH:mm:ss,SSS} %-5p [%c] (%t) %s%E%n")
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

## Set the Auto Flush

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax. Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the console log handler. Replace *BOOLEAN* with **true** if this handler is to immediately write its output.

```
/subsystem=logging/console-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="autoflush", value="BOOLEAN")
```

**Example 14.18. Set the Auto Flush**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/console-
handler=ERRORCONSOLE:write-attribute(name="autoflush",
value="true")
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

**Remove a Console Log Handler**

Use the **remove** operation with the following syntax. Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the console log handler to be removed.

```
/subsystem=logging/console-handler=HANDLER:remove
```

**Example 14.19. Remove a Console Log Handler**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/console-
handler=ERRORCONSOLE:remove
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

[Report a bug](#)

#### 14.3.4. Configure a File Log Handler in the CLI

File log handlers can be added, removed and edited in the CLI.

The main tasks you will perform to configure a file log handler are:

- » Add a new file log handler.
- » Display the configuration of a file log handler
- » Set the handler's log level.
- » Set the handler's appending behavior.
- » Set whether the handler uses autoflush or not.
- » Set the encoding used for the handler's output.
- » Specify the file to which the log handler will write.
- » Set the formatter used for the handler's output.
- » Remove a file log handler.



## Important

When configuring a log handler in a logging profile for a standalone system, the root of the configuration path is `/subsystem=logging/logging-profile=NAME/` instead of `/subsystem=logging/`.

For a managed domain, you must specify which profile to use. You must add the profile name to the beginning of the configuration path for a managed domain, replacing `/subsystem=logging/` with `/profile=NAME/subsystem=logging/`.

### Add a file log handler

Use the **add** operation with the following syntax. Replace *PATH* with the filename for the file that the log is being written to. Replace *DIR* with the name of the directory where the file is to be located. The value of *DIR* can be a path variable.

```
/subsystem=logging/file-handler=HANDLER:add(file={"path"=>"PATH",
"relative-to"=>"DIR"})
```

#### Example 14.20. Add a file log handler

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/file-
handler=accounts_log:add(file={"path"=>"accounts.log",
"relative-to"=>"jboss.server.log.dir"})
 {"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

### Display a file log handler configuration

Use the **read-resource** operation with the following syntax. Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the file log handler.

```
/subsystem=logging/file-handler=HANDLER:read-resource
```

#### Example 14.21. Using the read-resource operation

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/file-
handler=accounts_log:read-resource
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "append" => true,
        "autoflush" => true,
        "encoding" => undefined,
        "file" => {
            "path" => "accounts.log",
            "relative-to" => "jboss.server.log.dir"
        },
        "filter" => undefined,
```

```

        "formatter" => "%d{HH:mm:ss,SSS} %-5p [%c] (%t) %s%E%n",
        "level" => undefined
    }
}

```

## Set the Log level

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax. Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the file log handler. Replace *LOG\_LEVEL\_VALUE* with the log level that is to be set.

```
/subsystem=logging/file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="level", value="LOG_LEVEL_VALUE")
```

### Example 14.22. Changing the log level

```

/subsystem=logging/file-handler=accounts_log:write-
attribute(name="level", value="DEBUG")
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]

```

## Set the append behaviour

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax. Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the file log handler. Replace *BOOLEAN* with **false** if you required that a new log file be created each time the application server is launched. Replace *BOOLEAN* with **true** if the application server should continue to use the same file.

```
/subsystem=logging/file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="append", value="BOOLEAN")
```

### Example 14.23. Changing the append property

```

[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/file-
handler=accounts_log:write-attribute(name="append",
value="true")
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "response-headers" => {
        "operation-requires-reload" => true,
        "process-state" => "reload-required"
    }
}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]

```

JBoss EAP 6 must be restarted for this change to take effect.

## Set the Auto Flush

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax. Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the file log handler. Replace **true** if this handler is to immediately write its output.

```
/subsystem=logging/file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="autoflush", value="BOOLEAN")
```

#### Example 14.24. Changing the autoflush property

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/file-
handler=accounts_log:write-attribute(name="autoflush",
value="false")
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "response-headers" => {"process-state" => "reload-required"}
}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

JBoss EAP 6 must be restarted for this change to take effect.

#### Set the Encoding

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax. Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the file log handler. Replace *ENCODING* with the name of the required character encoding system.

```
/subsystem=logging/file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="encoding", value="ENCODING")
```

#### Example 14.25. Set the Encoding

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/file-
handler=accounts_log:write-attribute(name="encoding",
value="utf-8")
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

#### Change the file to which the log handler writes

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax. Replace *PATH* with the filename for the file that the log is being written to. Replace *DIR* with the name of the directory where the file is to be located. The value of *DIR* can be a path variable.

```
/subsystem=logging/file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="file", value={"path"=>"PATH", "relative-
to"=>"DIR"})
```

#### Example 14.26. Change the file to which the log handler writes

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/file-
handler=accounts_log:write-attribute(name="file", value=
{"path"=>"accounts-debug.log", "relative-
to"=>"jboss.server.log.dir"})
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

## Set the Formatter

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax. Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the file log handler. Replace *FORMAT* with the required formatter string.

```
/subsystem=logging/file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="formatter", value="FORMAT")
```

### Example 14.27. Set the Formatter

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/file-
handler=accounts-log:write-attribute(name="formatter",
value="%d{HH:mm:ss,SSS} %-5p [%c] (%t) %s%E%n")
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

## Remove a File Log Handler

Use the **remove** operation with the following syntax. Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the file log handler to be removed.

```
/subsystem=logging/file-handler=HANDLER:remove
```

### Example 14.28. Remove a File Log Handler

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/file-
handler=accounts_log:remove
>{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

A log handler can only be removed if it is not being referenced by a log category or an async log handler.

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.3.5. Configure a Periodic Log Handler in the CLI

Periodic log handlers can be added, removed and edited in the CLI.

The main tasks you will perform to configure a periodic log handler are:

- » Add a new periodic log handler.
- » Display the configuration of a periodic log handler
- » Set the handler's log level.
- » Set the handler's appending behavior.
- » Set whether or not the handler uses **autoflush**.
- » Set the encoding used for the handler's output.

- » Specify the file to which the log handler will write.
- » Set the formatter used for the handler's output.
- » Set the suffix for rotated logs.
- » Remove a periodic log handler.

Each of those tasks are described below.



## Important

When configuring a log handler in a logging profile for a standalone system, the root of the configuration path is **/subsystem=logging/logging-profile=NAME/** instead of **/subsystem=logging/**.

For a managed domain, you must specify which profile to use. You must add the profile name to the beginning of the configuration path for a managed domain, replacing **/subsystem=logging/** with **/profile=NAME/subsystem=logging/**.

### Add a new Periodic Rotating File log handler

Use the **add** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/periodic-rotating-file-
handler=HANDLER:add(file={"path"=>"PATH", "relative-to"=>"DIR"}, 
suffix="SUFFIX")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler. Replace *PATH* with the filename for the file that the log is being written to. Replace *DIR* with the name of the directory where the file is to be located. The value of *DIR* can be a path variable. Replace *SUFFIX* with the file rotation suffix to be used.

#### Example 14.29. Add a new handler

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/periodic-
rotating-file-handler=HOURLY_DEBUG:add(file={"path"=>"daily-
debug.log", "relative-to"=>"jboss.server.log.dir"}, 
suffix=".yyyy.MM.dd")
 {"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

### Display a Periodic Rotating File log handler configuration

Use the **read-resource** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/periodic-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:read-
resource
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler.

#### Example 14.30. Using the read-resource operation

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/periodic-
rotating-file-handler=HOURLY_DEBUG:read-resource
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "append" => true,
        "autoflush" => true,
        "encoding" => undefined,
        "file" => {
            "path" => "daily-debug.log",
            "relative-to" => "jboss.server.log.dir"
        },
        "filter" => undefined,
        "formatter" => "%d{HH:mm:ss,SSS} %-5p [%c] (%t) %s%E%n",
        "level" => undefined
    }
}
```

### Set the Log level

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/periodic-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="level". value="LOG_LEVEL_VALUE")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the periodic log handler. Replace *LOG\_LEVEL\_VALUE* with the log level that is to be set.

#### Example 14.31. Set the log level

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/periodic-
rotating-file-handler=HOURLY_DEBUG:write-
attribute(name="level", value="DEBUG")
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

### Set the append behavior

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/periodic-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="append", value="BOOLEAN")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the periodic log handler. Replace *BOOLEAN* with **false** if you required that a new log file be created each time the application server is launched. Replace *BOOLEAN* with **true** if the application server should continue to use the same file.

JBoss EAP 6 must be restarted for this change to take effect.

#### Example 14.32. Set the append behavior

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/periodic-
```

```

rotating-file-handler=HOURLY_DEBUG:write-
attribute(name="append", value="true")
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "response-headers" => {
        "operation-requires-reload" => true,
        "process-state" => "reload-required"
    }
}

```

## Set the Auto Flush

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/periodic-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="autoflush", value="BOOLEAN")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the periodic log handler. Replace *BOOLEAN* with **true** if this handler is to immediately write its output.

JBoss EAP 6 must be restarted for this change to take effect.

### Example 14.33. Set the Auto Flush behavior

```

[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/periodic-
rotating-file-handler=HOURLY_DEBUG:write-
attribute(name="autoflush", value="false")
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "response-headers" => {"process-state" => "reload-required"}
}

```

## Set the Encoding

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/periodic-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="encoding", value="ENCODING")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the periodic log handler. Replace *ENCODING* with the name of the required character encoding system.

### Example 14.34. Set the Encoding

```

[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/periodic-
rotating-file-handler=HOURLY_DEBUG:write-
attribute(name="encoding", value="utf-8")
{"outcome" => "success"}

```

## Change the file to which the log handler writes

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/periodic-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="file", value={"path"=>"PATH", "relative-
to"=>"DIR"})
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the periodic log handler. Replace *PATH* with the filename for the file that the log is being written to. Replace *DIR* with the name of the directory where the file is to be located. The value of *DIR* can be a path variable.

#### **Example 14.35. Change the file to which the log handler writes**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/periodic-
rotating-file-handler=HOURLY_DEBUG:write-attribute(name="file",
value={"path"=>"daily-debug.log", "relative-
to"=>"jboss.server.log.dir"})
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

#### **Set the Formatter**

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/periodic-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="formatter", value="FORMAT")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the periodic log handler. Replace *FORMAT* with the required formatter string.

#### **Example 14.36. Set the Formatter**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/periodic-
rotating-file-handler=HOURLY_DEBUG:write-
attribute(name="formatter", value="%d{HH:mm:ss,SSS} %-5p [%c]
(%t) %s%E%n")
 {"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

#### **Set the suffix for rotated logs**

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/periodic-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="suffix", value="SUFFIX")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler. Replace *SUFFIX* with the required suffix string.

#### **Example 14.37.**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/periodic-
rotating-file-handler=HOURLY_DEBUG:write-
attribute(name="suffix", value=".yyyy-MM-dd-HH")
 {"outcome" => "success"}
```

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

### Remove a periodic log handler

Use the **remove** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/periodic-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:remove
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the periodic log handler.

#### Example 14.38. Remove a periodic log handler

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/periodic-  
rotating-file-handler=HOURLY_DEBUG:remove  
{"outcome" => "success"}  
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.3.6. Configure a Size Log Handler in the CLI

Size rotated file log handlers can be added, removed and edited in the CLI.

The tasks you will perform to configure a size rotated file log handler are:

- » Add a new log handler.
- » Display the configuration of the log handler
- » Set the handler's log level.
- » Set the handler's appending behavior.
- » Set whether the handler uses autoflush or not.
- » Set the encoding used for the handler's output.
- » Specify the file to which the log handler will write.
- » Set the formatter used for the handler's output.
- » Set the maximum size of each log file
- » Set the maximum number of backup logs to keep
- » Set the rotate on boot option for the size rotation file handler
- » Remove a log handler.

Each of these tasks are described below.



## Important

When configuring a log handler in a logging profile the root of the configuration path is `/subsystem=logging/logging-profile=NAME/` instead of `/subsystem=logging/`.

### Add a new log handler

Use the **add** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/size-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:add(file=
{"path"=>"PATH", "relative-to"=>"DIR"})
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler. Replace *PATH* with the filename for the file that the log is being written to. Replace *DIR* with the name of the directory where the file is to be located. The value of *DIR* can be a path variable.

#### Example 14.39. Add a new log handler

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/size-rotating-
file-handler=ACCOUNTS_TRACE:add(file=
{"path"=>"accounts_trace.log", "relative-
to"=>"jboss.server.log.dir"})
 {"outcome" => "success"}
```

### Display the configuration of the log handler

Use the **read-resource** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/size-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:read-
resource
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler.

#### Example 14.40. Display the configuration of the log handler

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/size-rotating-
file-handler=ACCOUNTS_TRACE:read-resource
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "append" => true,
        "autoflush" => true,
        "encoding" => undefined,
        "file" => {
            "path" => "accounts_trace.log",
            "relative-to" => "jboss.server.log.dir"
        },
        "filter" => undefined,
        "formatter" => "%d{HH:mm:ss,SSS} %-5p [%c] (%t) %s%E%n",
        "level" => undefined,
        "max-backup-index" => 1,
```

```

        "rotate-size" => "2m"
    }
}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]

```

### Set the handler's log level

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/size-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="level", value="LOG_LEVEL_VALUE")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler. Replace *LOG\_LEVEL\_VALUE* with the log level that is to be set.

#### Example 14.41. Set the handler's log level

```

[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/size-rotating-
file-handler=ACCOUNTS_TRACE:write-attribute(name="level",
value="TRACE")
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]

```

### Set the handler's appending behavior

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/size-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="append", value="BOOLEAN")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler. Replace *BOOLEAN* with **false** if you required that a new log file be created each time the application server is launched. Replace *BOOLEAN* with **true** if the application server should continue to use the same file.

JBoss EAP 6 must be restarted for this change to take effect.

#### Example 14.42. Set the handler's appending behavior

```

[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/size-rotating-
file-handler=ACCOUNTS_TRACE:write-attribute(name="append",
value="true")
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "response-headers" => {
        "operation-requires-reload" => true,
        "process-state" => "reload-required"
    }
}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]

```

### Set whether the handler uses autoflush or not

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/size-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="autoflush", value="BOOLEAN")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler. Replace *BOOLEAN* with **true** if this handler is to immediately write its output.

#### **Example 14.43. Set whether the handler uses autoflush or not**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/size-rotating-
file-handler=ACCOUNTS_TRACE:write-attribute(name="autoflush",
value="true")
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

#### **Set the encoding used for the handler's output**

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/size-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="encoding", value="ENCODING")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler. Replace *ENCODING* with the name of the required character encoding system.

#### **Example 14.44. Set the encoding used for the handler's output**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/size-rotating-
file-handler=ACCOUNTS_TRACE:write-attribute(name="encoding",
value="utf-8")
{"outcome" => "success"}]
```

#### **Specify the file to which the log handler will write**

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/size-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="file", value={"path"=>"PATH", "relative-
to"=>"DIR"})
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler. Replace *PATH* with the filename for the file that the log is being written to. Replace *DIR* with the name of the directory where the file is to be located. The value of *DIR* can be a path variable.

#### **Example 14.45. Specify the file to which the log handler will write**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/size-rotating-
file-handler=ACCOUNTS_TRACE:write-attribute(name="file", value=
{"path"=>"accounts_trace.log", "relative-
to"=>"jboss.server.log.dir"})
 {"outcome" => "success"}]
```

## Set the formatter used for the handler's output

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/size-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="formatter", value="FORMATTER")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler. Replace *FORMAT* with the required formatter string.

### Example 14.46. Set the formatter used for the handler's output

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/size-rotating-
file-handler=ACCOUNTS_TRACE:write-attribute(name="formatter",
value="%d{HH:mm:ss,SSS} %-5p (%c) [%t] %s%E%n")
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

## Set the maximum size of each log file

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/size-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="rotate-size", value="SIZE")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler. Replace *SIZE* with maximum file size.

### Example 14.47. Set the maximum size of each log file

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/size-rotating-
file-handler=ACCOUNTS_TRACE:write-attribute(name="rotate-size",
value="50m")
 {"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

## Set the maximum number of backup logs to keep

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/size-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="max-backup-index", value="NUMBER")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler. Replace *NUMBER* with the required number of log files to keep.

### Example 14.48. Set the maximum number of backup logs to keep

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/size-rotating-
file-handler=ACCOUNTS_TRACE:write-attribute(name="max-backup-
index", value="5")
 {"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

### Set the rotate-on-boot option on the size-rotating-file-handler

This option is only available for the `size-rotating-file-handler` file handler. It defaults to `false`, meaning a new log file is not created on server restart.

To change it, use the `write-attribute` operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/size-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:write-attribute(name="rotate-on-boot", value="BOOLEAN")
```

Replace `HANDLER` with the name of the `size-rotating-file-handler` log handler. Replace `BOOLEAN` with `true` if a new `size-rotating-file-handler` log file should be created on restart.

#### Example 14.49. Specify to create a new size-rotating-file-handler log file on server restart

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/size-rotating-file-handler=ACCOUNTS_TRACE:write-attribute(name="rotate-on-boot", value="true")
 {"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

### Remove a log handler

Use the `remove` operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/size-rotating-file-handler=HANDLER:remove
```

Replace `HANDLER` with the name of the log handler.

#### Example 14.50. Remove a log handler

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/size-rotating-file-handler=ACCOUNTS_TRACE:remove
 {"outcome" => "success"}
```

### Report a bug

## 14.3.7. Configure a Async Log Handler in the CLI

Async log handlers can be added, removed and edited in the CLI.

The tasks you will perform to configure an async log handler are:

- » Add a new async log handler
- » Display the configuration of an async log handler
- » Change the log level
- » Set the queue length

- » Set the overflow action
- » Add sub-handlers
- » Remove sub-handlers
- » Remove an async log handler

Each of these tasks are described below.



## Important

When configuring a log handler in a logging profile for a standalone system, the root of the configuration path is **/subsystem=logging/logging-profile=NAME/** instead of **/subsystem=logging/**.

For a managed domain, you must specify which profile to use. You must add the profile name to the beginning of the configuration path for a managed domain, replacing **/subsystem=logging/** with **/profile=NAME/subsystem=logging/**.

### Add a new async log handler

Use the **add** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/async-handler=HANDLER:add(queue-length="LENGTH")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler. Replace *LENGTH* with value of the maximum number of log requests that can be held in queue.

#### Example 14.51.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/async-
handler=NFS_LOGS:add(queue-length="10")
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

### Display the configuration of an async log handler

Use the **read-resource** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/async-handler=HANDLER:read-resource
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler.

#### Example 14.52.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/async-
handler=NFS_LOGS:read-resource
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
```

```

        "encoding" => undefined,
        "filter" => undefined,
        "formatter" => "%d{HH:mm:ss,SSS} %-5p [%c] (%t) %s%E%n",
        "level" => undefined,
        "overflow-action" => "BLOCK",
        "queue-length" => "50",
        "subhandlers" => undefined
    }
}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]

```

### Change the log level

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/async-handler=HANDLER:write-attribute(name="level", value="LOG_LEVEL_VALUE")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler. Replace *LOG\_LEVEL\_VALUE* with the log level that is to be set.

#### Example 14.53.

```

[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/async-
handler=NFS_LOGS:write-attribute(name="level", value="INFO")
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]

```

### Set the queue length

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/async-handler=HANDLER:write-attribute(name="queue-length", value="LENGTH")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler. Replace *LENGTH* with value of the maximum number of log requests that can be held in queue.

JBoss EAP 6 must be restarted for this change to take effect.

#### Example 14.54.

```

[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/async-
handler=NFS_LOGS:write-attribute(name="queue-length",
value="150")
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "response-headers" => {
        "operation-requires-reload" => true,
        "process-state" => "reload-required"
    }
}

```

## Set the overflow action

Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/async-handler=HANDLER:write-
attribute(name="overflow-action", value="ACTION")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler. Replace *ACTION* with either *DISCARD* or *BLOCK*.

### Example 14.55.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/async-
handler=NFS_LOGS:write-attribute(name="overflow-action",
value="DISCARD")
>{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

## Add sub-handlers

Use the **add-handler** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/async-handler=HANDLER:add-
handler(name="SUBHANDLER")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler. Replace *SUBHANDLER* with the name of the log handler that is to be added as a sub-handler of this async handler.

### Example 14.56.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/async-
handler=NFS_LOGS:add-handler(name="NFS_FILE")
>{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

## Remove sub-handlers

Use the **remove-handler** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/async-handler=HANDLER:remove-
handler(name="SUBHANDLER")
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler. Replace *SUBHANDLER* with the name of the sub-handler to remove.

### Example 14.57.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/async-
handler=NFS_LOGS:remove-handler(name="NFS_FILE")
>{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

## Remove an async log handler

Use the **remove** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=logging/async-handler=HANDLER:remove
```

Replace *HANDLER* with the name of the log handler.

### Example 14.58.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/async-
handler=NFS_LOGS:remove
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 14.3.8. Configure a syslog-handler

The logmanager for JBoss EAP 6 now contains a syslog-handler. Syslog-handlers can be used to send messages to a remote logging server that supports the **Syslog** protocol (RFC-3164 or RFC-5424). This allows multiple applications to send their log messages to the same server, where they can all be parsed together. This topic covers how to create and configure a handler using the Management CLI, and the available configuration options.

- » Access and the correct permissions for the Management CLI.

### Procedure 14.1. Add a syslog-handler

- » Run the following command to add a syslog-handler:

```
/subsystem=logging/syslog-handler=HANDLER_NAME:add
```

### Procedure 14.2. Configure a syslog-handler

- » Run the following command to configure a syslog-handler attribute:

```
/subsystem=logging/syslog-handler=HANDLER_NAME:write-
attribute(name=ATTRIBUTE_NAME,value=ATTRIBUTE_VALUE)
```

### Procedure 14.3. Remove a syslog-handler

- » Run the following command to remove an existing syslog-handler:

```
/subsystem=logging/syslog-handler=HANDLER_NAME:remove
```

## Table 14.6. syslog-handler Configuration Attributes

Attribute	Description	Default Value
port	The port the syslog server listens to.	514

Attribute	Description	Default Value
app-name	The app name used when formatting the message in RFC5424 format.	null
enabled	If set to true the handler is enabled and functioning as normal. If set to false, the handler is ignored when processing log messages.	true
level	The log level specifying which message levels will be logged. Message levels lower than this will be discarded.	ALL
facility	As defined by RFC-5424 and RFC-3164	user-level
server-address	The address of the syslog server	localhost
hostname	The name of the host the messages are being sent from.	null
syslog-format	Formats the log message according to the RFC specification	RFC5424

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.3.9. Configure a Custom Log Formatter in the CLI

#### Summary

In addition to the log formatter syntax specified in [Section 14.1.15, “Log Formatter Syntax”](#), a custom log formatter can be created for use with any log handler. This example procedure will demonstrate this by creating a XML formatter for a console log handler.

#### Prerequisites

- » Access to the Management CLI for the JBoss EAP 6 server.
- » A previously configured log handler. This example procedure uses a console log handler.

#### Procedure 14.4. Configure a Custom XML Formatter for a Log Handler

1. Create custom formatter.

In this example, the following command creates a custom formatter named **XML\_FORMATTER** that uses the **java.util.logging.XMLFormatter** class.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/custom-
formatter=XML_FORMATTER:add(class=java.util.logging.XMLFormatter
, module=org.jboss.logmanager)
```

2. Register a custom formatter for the log handler you want to use it with.

In this example, the formatter from the previous step is added to a console log handler.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/console-
handler=HANDLER:write-attribute(name=named-formatter,
value=XML_FORMATTER)
```

3. Restart the JBoss EAP 6 server for the change to take effect.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] shutdown --restart=true
```

## Result

The custom XML formatter is added to the console log handler. Output to the console log will be formatted in XML, for example:

```
<record>
<date>2014-03-11T13:02:53</date>
<millis>1394539373833</millis>
<sequence>116</sequence>
<logger>org.jboss.as</logger>
<level>INFO</level>
<class>org.jboss.as.server.BootstrapListener</class>
<method>logAdminConsole</method>
<thread>282</thread>
<message>JBAS015951: Admin console listening on http://%s:%d</message>
<param>127.0.0.1</param>
<param>9990</param>
</record>
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 14.4. Per-deployment Logging

### 14.4.1. About Per-deployment Logging

Per-deployment logging allows a developer to configure in advance the logging configuration for their application. When the application is deployed, logging begins according to the defined configuration. The log files created through this configuration contain information only about the behavior of the application.

This approach has advantages and disadvantages over using system-wide logging. An advantage is that the administrator of the JBoss EAP instance does not need to configure logging. A disadvantage is that the per-deployment logging configuration is read only on startup and so cannot be changed at runtime.

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.4.2. Disable Per-deployment Logging

#### Procedure 14.5. Disable Per-deployment Logging

- » **Two methods of disabling per-deployment logging are available. One works on all versions of JBoss EAP 6, while the other works only on JBoss EAP 6.3 and higher.**

##### A. JBoss EAP 6 (all versions)

Add the system property:

```
org.jboss.as.logging.per-deployment=false
```

## B. JBoss EAP 6.3 (and higher)

Exclude the logging subsystem using a **jboss-deployment-structure.xml** file. For details on how to do this, see *Exclude a Subsystem from a Deployment* in the *Development Guide*.

[Report a bug](#)

## 14.5. Logging Profiles

### 14.5.1. About Logging Profiles



#### Important

Logging profiles are only available in version 6.1.0 and later. They cannot be configured using the management console.

Logging profiles are independent sets of logging configuration that can be assigned to deployed applications. As with the regular logging subsystem, a logging profile can define handlers, categories and a root logger but cannot refer to configuration in other profiles or the main logging subsystem. The design of logging profiles mimics the logging subsystem for ease of configuration.

The use of logging profiles allows administrators to create logging configuration that are specific to one or more applications without affecting any other logging configuration. Because each profile is defined in the server configuration, the logging configuration can be changed without requiring that the affected applications be redeployed.

Each logging profile can have the following configuration:

- » A unique name. This is required.
- » Any number of log handlers.
- » Any number of log categories.
- » Up to one root logger.

An application can specify a logging profile to use in its **MANIFEST.MF** file, using the **logging-profile** attribute.

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.5.2. Create a new Logging Profile using the CLI

A new logging profile can be created using the CLI command below, replacing **NAME** with your required profile name:

```
/subsystem=logging/logging-profile=NAME:add
```

This will create a new empty profile to which handlers, categories and a root logger can be added.

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.5.3. Configuring a Logging Profile using the CLI

A logging profile can be configured with log handlers, categories and a root logger using almost exactly the same syntax as when using the main logging subsystem.

There are only two differences between configuring the main logging subsystem and the logging profile:

1. The root configuration path is **/subsystem=logging/logging-profile=NAME**
2. A logging profile cannot contain other logging profiles.

Refer to the appropriate logging management task:

- » [Section 14.3.1, “Configure the Root Logger with the CLI”](#)
- » [Section 14.3.2, “Configure a Log Category in the CLI”](#)
- » [Section 14.3.3, “Configure a Console Log Handler in the CLI”](#)
- » [Section 14.3.4, “Configure a File Log Handler in the CLI”](#)
- » [Section 14.3.5, “Configure a Periodic Log Handler in the CLI”](#)
- » [Section 14.3.6, “Configure a Size Log Handler in the CLI”](#)
- » [Section 14.3.7, “Configure a Async Log Handler in the CLI”](#)

#### Example 14.59. Creating and Configuring a Logging Profile

Creating a logging profile and adding a category and file log handler.

1. Create the profile:

```
/subsystem=logging/logging-profile=accounts-app-profile:add
```

2. Create file handler

```
/subsystem=logging/logging-profile=accounts-app-profile/file-
handler=ejb-trace-file:add(file={path=>"ejb-trace.log",
"relative-to"=>"jboss.server.log.dir"})
```

```
/subsystem=logging/logging-profile=accounts-app-profile/file-
handler=ejb-trace-file:write-attribute(name="level",
value="DEBUG")
```

3. Create logger category

```
/subsystem=logging/logging-profile=accounts-app-
profile/logger=com.company.accounts.ejbs:add(level=TRACE)
```

4. Assign file handler to category

```
/subsystem=logging/logging-profile=accounts-app-
profile/logger=com.company.accounts.ejbs:add-handler(name="ejb-
trace-file")
```

[Report a bug](#)

#### 14.5.4. Specify a Logging Profile in an Application

An application specifies the logging profile to use in its **MANIFEST.MF** file.

**Prerequisites:**

1. You must know the name of the logging profile that has been setup on the server for this application to use. Ask your server administrator for the name of the profile to use.

**Procedure 14.6. Add Logging Profile configuration to an Application**

» **Edit **MANIFEST.MF****

If your application does not have a **MANIFEST.MF** file: create one with the following content, replacing *NAME* with the required profile name.

```
Manifest-Version: 1.0
Logging-Profile: NAME
```

If your application already has a **MANIFEST.MF** file: add the following line to it, replacing *NAME* with the required profile name.

```
Logging-Profile: NAME
```

**Note**

If you are using Maven and the **maven-war-plugin**, you can put your MANIFEST.MF file in **src/main/resources/META-INF/** and add the following configuration to your **pom.xml** file.

```
<plugin>
  <artifactId>maven-war-plugin</artifactId>
  <configuration>
    <archive>
      <manifestFile>src/main/resources/META-
INF/MANIFEST.MF</manifestFile>
    </archive>
  </configuration>
</plugin>
```

When the application is deployed it will use the configuration in the specified logging profile for its log messages.

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.5.5. Example Logging Profile Configuration

This example shows the configuration of a logging profile and the application that makes use of it. The CLI session is shown, the XML configuration that is generated, and the **MANIFEST.MF** file of the application.

The logging profile example has the following characteristics:

- » The Name is **accounts-app-profile**.
- » The Log Category is **com.company.accounts.ejbs**.
- » The Log level **TRACE**.
- » The Log handler is a file handler using the file **ejb-trace.log**.

#### Example 14.60. CLI session

```
localhost:bin user$ ./jboss-cli.sh -c
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/logging-
profile=accounts-app-profile:add
{"outcome" => "success"}

[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/logging-
profile=accounts-app-profile/file-handler=ejb-trace-file:add(file=
{path=>"ejb-trace.log", "relative-to"=>"jboss.server.log.dir"})
 {"outcome" => "success"}

[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/logging-
profile=accounts-app-profile/file-handler=ejb-trace-file:write-
attribute(name="level", value="DEBUG")
 {"outcome" => "success"}

[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/logging-
profile=accounts-app-
profile/logger=com.company.accounts.ejbs:add(level=TRACE)
 {"outcome" => "success"}

[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=logging/logging-
profile=accounts-app-profile/logger=com.company.accounts.ejbs:add-
handler(name="ejb-trace-file")
 {"outcome" => "success"}

[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

#### Example 14.61. XML Configuration

```
<logging-profiles>
  <logging-profile name="accounts-app-profile">
    <file-handler name="ejb-trace-file">
      <level name="DEBUG"/>
      <file relative-to="jboss.server.log.dir" path="ejb-
```

```

        trace.log"/>
    </file-handler>
<logger category="com.company.accounts.ejbs">
    <level name="TRACE"/>
    <handlers>
        <handler name="ejb-trace-file"/>
    </handlers>
</logger>
</logging-profile>
</logging-profiles>

```

#### Example 14.62. Application MANIFEST.MF file

Manifest-Version: 1.0  
 Logging-Profile: accounts-app-profile

[Report a bug](#)

## 14.6. Logging Configuration Properties

### 14.6.1. Root Logger Properties

Table 14.7. Root Logger Properties

Property	Datatype	Description
level	String	The maximum level of log message that the root logger records.
handlers	String[]	A list of log handlers that are used by the root logger.
filter-spec	String	An expression value that defines a filter. The following expression defines a filter that excludes log entries that do <i>not</i> match a pattern: <code>not(match("JBAS.*"))</code>



#### Note

A **filter-spec** specified for the root logger is *not* inherited by other handlers. Instead a **filter-spec** must be specified per handler.

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.6.2. Log Category Properties

Table 14.8. Log Category Properties

Property	Datatype	Description
level	String	The maximum level of log message that the log category records.
handlers	String[]	A list of log handlers that are used by the root logger.

Property	Datatype	Description
use-parent-handlers	Boolean	If set to true, this category will use the log handlers of the root logger in addition to any other assigned handlers.
category	String	The log category from which log messages will be captured.
filter-spec	String	An expression value that defines a filter. The following expression defines a filter that does not match a pattern: <b>not(match("JBAS.*"))</b>

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.6.3. Console Log Handler Properties

**Table 14.9. Console Log Handler Properties**

Property	Datatype	Description
level	String	The maximum level of log message the log handler records.
encoding	String	The character encoding scheme to be used for the output.
formatter	String	The log formatter used by this log handler.
target	String	The system output stream where the output of the log handler goes. This can be System.err or System.out for the system error stream or standard out stream respectively.
autoflush	Boolean	If set to true the log messages will be sent to the handlers target immediately upon receipt.
name	String	The unique identifier for this log handler.
enabled	Boolean	If set to <b>true</b> , the handler is enabled and functioning as normal. If set to <b>false</b> , the handler is ignored when processing log messages.
filter-spec	String	An expression value that defines a filter. The following expression defines a filter that does not match a pattern: <b>not(match("JBAS.*"))</b>

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.6.4. File Log Handler Properties

**Table 14.10. File Log Handler Properties**

Property	Datatype	Description
level	String	The maximum level of log message the log handler records.
encoding	String	The character encoding scheme to be used for the output.
formatter	String	The log formatter used by this log handler.
append	Boolean	If set to true then all messages written by this handler will be appended to the file if it already exists. If set to false a new file will be created each time the application server launches. Changes to <b>append</b> require a server reboot to take effect.
autoflush	Boolean	If set to true the log messages will be sent to the handlers assigned file immediately upon receipt. Changes to <b>autoflush</b> require a server reboot to take effect.

Property	Datatype	Description
name	String	The unique identifier for this log handler.
file	Object	The object that represents the file where the output of this log handler is written to. It has two configuration properties, <b>relative-to</b> and <b>path</b> .
relative-to	String	This is a property of the file object and is the directory where the log file is written to. JBoss EAP 6 file path variables can be specified here. The <b>jboss.server.log.dir</b> variable points to the <b>log/</b> directory of the server.
path	String	This is a property of the file object and is the name of the file where the log messages will be written. It is a relative path name that is appended to the value of the <b>relative-to</b> property to determine the complete path.
enabled	Boolean	If set to <b>true</b> , the handler is enabled and functioning as normal. If set to <b>false</b> , the handler is ignored when processing log messages.
filter-spec	String	An expression value that defines a filter. The following expression defines a filter that does not match a pattern: <b>not(match("JBAS.*"))</b>

[Report a bug](#)

#### 14.6.5. Periodic Log Handler Properties

Table 14.11. Periodic Log Handler Properties

Property	Datatype	Description
append	Boolean	If set to <b>true</b> then all messages written by this handler will be appended to the file if it already exists. If set to <b>false</b> a new file will be created each time the application server launches. Changes to append require a server reboot to take effect.
autoflush	Boolean	If set to <b>true</b> the log messages will be sent to the handlers assigned file immediately upon receipt. Changes to <b>autoflush</b> require a server reboot to take effect.
encoding	String	The character encoding scheme to be used for the output.
formatter	String	The log formatter used by this log handler.
level	String	The maximum level of log message the log handler records.
name	String	The unique identifier for this log handler.
file	Object	Object that represents the file to which the output of this log handler is written. It has two configuration properties, <b>relative-to</b> and <b>path</b> .
relative-to	String	This is a property of the file object and is the directory containing the log file. File path variables can be specified here. The <b>jboss.server.log.dir</b> variable points to the <b>log/</b> directory of the server.
path	String	This is a property of the file object and is the name of the file where the log messages will be written. It is a relative path name that is appended to the value of the <b>relative-to</b> property to determine the complete path.

Property	Datatype	Description
suffix	String	<p>This String is appended to the filename of the rotated logs and is used to determine the frequency of rotation. The format of the suffix is a dot (.) followed by a <b>date String</b> which is able to be parsed by the <b>SimpleDateFormat</b> class. The log is rotated on the basis of the smallest time unit defined by the suffix. Note that the smallest time unit allowed in the <b>suffix</b> attribute is minutes.</p> <p>For example, a <b>suffix</b> value of <b>. YYYY-MM-dd</b> will result in daily log rotation. Assuming a log file named <b>server.log</b> and a <b>suffix</b> value of <b>. YYYY-MM-dd</b>, the log file rotated on 20 October 2014 would be named <b>server.log.2014-10-19</b>. For a periodic log handler, the suffix includes the previous value for the smallest time unit. In this example the value for <b>dd</b> is <b>19</b>, the previous day.</p>
enabled	Boolean	If set to <b>true</b> , the handler is enabled and functioning as normal. If set to <b>false</b> , the handler is ignored when processing log messages.
filter-spec	String	An expression value that defines a filter. The following expression defines a filter that does not match a pattern: <b>not(match("JBAS.*"))</b> .

[Report a bug](#)

#### 14.6.6. Size Log Handler Properties

Table 14.12. Size Log Handler Properties

Property	Datatype	Description
append	Boolean	If set to true then all messages written by this handler will be appended to the file if it already exists. If set to false a new file will be created each time the application server launches. Changes to append require a server reboot to take effect.
autoflush	Boolean	If set to true the log messages will be sent to the handlers assigned file immediately upon receipt. Changes to append require a server reboot to take effect.
encoding	String	The character encoding scheme to be used for the output.
formatter	String	The log formatter used by this log handler.
level	String	The maximum level of log message the log handler records.
name	String	The unique identifier for this log handler.
file	Object	Object that represents the file where the output of this log handler is written to. It has two configuration properties, <b>relative-to</b> and <b>path</b> .
relative-to	String	This is a property of the file object and is the directory where the log file is written to. File path variables can be specified here. The <b>jboss.server.log.dir</b> variable points to the <b>log</b> directory of the server.

Property	Datatype	Description
path	String	This is a property of the file object and is the name of the file where the log messages will be written. It is a relative path name that is appended to the value of the <b>relative-to</b> property to determine the complete path.
rotate-size	Integer	The maximum size that the log file can reach before it is rotated. A single character appended to the number indicates the size units: <b>b</b> for bytes, <b>k</b> for kilobytes, <b>m</b> for megabytes, <b>g</b> for gigabytes. Eg. <b>50m</b> for 50 megabytes.
max-backup-index	Integer	The maximum number of rotated logs that are kept. When this number is reached, the oldest log is reused.
enabled	Boolean	If set to <b>true</b> , the handler is enabled and functioning as normal. If set to <b>false</b> , the handler is ignored when processing log messages.
filter-spec	String	An expression value that defines a filter. The following expression defines a filter that does not match a pattern: <b>not(match("JBAS.*"))</b>
rotate-on-boot	Boolean	If set to <b>true</b> , a new log file will be created on server restart. Default is <b>false</b> .

[Report a bug](#)

#### 14.6.7. Async Log Handler Properties

Table 14.13. Async Log Handler Properties

Property	Datatype	Description
level	String	The maximum level of log message the log handler records.
name	String	The unique identifier for this log handler.
queue-length	Integer	Maximum number of log messages that will be held by this handler while waiting for sub-handlers to respond.
overflow-action	String	How this handler responds when its queue length is exceeded. This can be set to <b>BLOCK</b> or <b>DISCARD</b> . <b>BLOCK</b> makes the logging application wait until there is available space in the queue. This is the same behavior as an non-async log handler. <b>DISCARD</b> allows the logging application to continue but the log message is deleted.
subhandlers	String[]	This is the list of log handlers to which this async handler passes its log messages.
enabled	Boolean	If set to <b>true</b> , the handler is enabled and functioning as normal. If set to <b>false</b> , the handler is ignored when processing log messages.
filter-spec	String	An expression value that defines a filter. The following expression defines a filter that does not match a pattern: <b>not(match("JBAS.*"))</b>

[Report a bug](#)

### 14.7. Sample XML Configuration for Logging

#### 14.7.1. Sample XML Configuration for the Root Logger

```
<root-logger>
  <level name="INFO"/>
  <handlers>
    <handler name="CONSOLE"/>
    <handler name="FILE"/>
  </handlers>
</root-logger>
```

[Report a bug](#)

#### 14.7.2. Sample XML Configuration for a Log Category

```
<logger category="com.company.accounts.rec">
  <handlers>
    <handler name="accounts-rec"/>
  </handlers>
</logger>
```

[Report a bug](#)

#### 14.7.3. Sample XML Configuration for a Console Log Handler

```
<console-handler name="CONSOLE">
  <level name="INFO"/>
  <formatter>
    <pattern-formatter pattern="%d{HH:mm:ss,SSS} %-5p [%c] (%t) %s%E%n"/>
  </formatter>
</console-handler>
```

[Report a bug](#)

#### 14.7.4. Sample XML Configuration for a File Log Handler

```
<file-handler name="accounts-rec-trail" autoflush="true">
  <level name="INFO"/>
  <file relative-to="jboss.server.log.dir" path="accounts-rec-
trail.log"/>
  <append value="true"/>
</file-handler>
```

[Report a bug](#)

#### 14.7.5. Sample XML Configuration for a Periodic Log Handler

```
<periodic-rotating-file-handler name="FILE">
  <formatter>
    <pattern-formatter pattern="%d{HH:mm:ss,SSS} %-5p [%c] (%t)
%s%E%n"/>
  </formatter>
```

```
<file relative-to="jboss.server.log.dir" path="server.log"/>
<suffix value=".yyyy-MM-dd"/>
<append value="true"/>
</periodic-rotating-file-handler>
```

[Report a bug](#)

#### 14.7.6. Sample XML Configuration for a Size Log Handler

```
<size-rotating-file-handler name="accounts_debug" autoflush="false">
  <level name="DEBUG"/>
  <file relative-to="jboss.server.log.dir" path="accounts-debug.log"/>
  <rotate-size value="500k"/>
  <max-backup-index value="5"/>
  <append value="true"/>
</size-rotating-file-handler>
```

[Report a bug](#)

#### 14.7.7. Sample XML Configuration for a Async Log Handler

```
<async-handler name="Async_NFS_handlers">
  <level name="INFO"/>
  <queue-length value="512"/>
  <overflow-action value="block"/>
  <subhandlers>
    <handler name="FILE"/>
    <handler name="accounts-record"/>
  </subhandlers>
</async-handler>
```

[Report a bug](#)

## Chapter 15. Infinispan

### 15.1. About Infinispan

Infinispan is a Java data grid platform. It provides a [JSR-107](#) compatible cache interface for managing cached data.

The following Infinispan cache containers are used in JBoss Enterprise Application Platform 6:

- » **web** for Web Session Clustering
- » **ejb** for Stateful Session Bean Clustering
- » **hibernate** for entity caching
- » **singleton** for singleton caching

Each cache container defines a "repl" and a "dist" cache. These caches should not be used directly by user applications.



#### Important

Users can add more cache containers and caches, and reference them via JNDI. However, this is unsupported in JBoss Enterprise Application Platform 6.

For more information about Infinispan functionality and configuration options see the [Infinispan Documentation](#).

[Report a bug](#)

### 15.2. Clustering modes

Clustering can be configured in two different ways in JBoss EAP 6 using Infinispan. The correct method for your application will depend on your requirements. There is a trade off between availability, consistency, reliability and scalability with each mode. Before choosing a clustering mode, you must identify what is most important to you from your network, and balance those requirements

#### Replicated Mode

Replicated Mode automatically detects and adds new instances on the cluster. Changes made to these instances will be replicated to all nodes on the cluster. Replicated mode typically works best in small clusters because of the amount of information that has to be replicated over the network. Infinispan can be configured to use UDP multicast, which alleviates network traffic congestion to a degree.

#### Distribution Mode

Distribution mode allows Infinispan to scale the cluster linearly. Distribution mode uses a consistent hash algorithm to determine where in a cluster a new node should be placed. The number of copies of information to be kept is configurable. There is a trade off between the number of copies kept, durability of the data and performance: the more copies that are kept, the more impact on

performance, but the less likely you are to lose data in a server failure. The hash algorithm also works to reduce network traffic by locating entries without multicasting or storing metadata.

## Synchronous and Asynchronous Replication

Replication can be performed either in either synchronous or asynchronous mode, and the mode chosen will depend on your requirements and your application. With synchronous replication, the thread that handles the user request will be blocked until replication has been successful. Only when replication has been successful will a response be sent back to the client, and the thread released. Synchronous replication will have an impact on network traffic because it requires a response from each node in the cluster. It has the advantage, however, of ensuring that all modifications have been made to all nodes in the cluster.

Asynchronous replication is carried out in the background. Infinispan implements a replication queue, which is used by a background thread to carry out replication. Replication is triggered either on a time basis, or on the queue size. A replication queue allows increased performance because there is no conversation being carried out between the cluster nodes. The trade off with asynchronous replication is that it is not quite so accurate. Failed replication attempts are written to a log, not notified in real time.

[Report a bug](#)

## 15.3. Cache Containers

### Cache Containers

A cache container is repository for the caches used by a subsystem. For Infinispan default cache containers are defined in the configuration xml files (standalone-ha.xml, standalone-full-ha.xml, domain.xml). One cache is defined as the default cache, which is the cache that will be used for clustering.

#### Example 15.1. Cache container definitions from standalone-ha.xml configuration file

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:infinispan:1.5">
    <cache-container name="singleton" aliases="cluster ha-
partition" default-cache="default">
        <transport lock-timeout="60000"/>
        <replicated-cache name="default" mode="SYNC"
batching="true">
            <locking isolation="REPEATABLE_READ"/>
            </replicated-cache>
        </cache-container>
        <cache-container name="web" aliases="standard-session-
cache" default-cache="repl"
module="org.jboss.as.clustering.web.infinispan">
            <transport lock-timeout="60000"/>
            <replicated-cache name="repl" mode="ASYNC"
batching="true">
                <file-store/>
            </replicated-cache>
            <replicated-cache name="sso" mode="SYNC"
batching="true"/>
                <distributed-cache name="dist" l1-lifespan="0"
```

```
mode="ASYNC" batching="true">
    <file-store/>
    </distributed-cache>
</cache-container>
```

Note the default cache defined in each cache container. In this example, in the **web** cache container, the **rep1** cache is defined as the default. The **rep1** cache will therefore be used to when clustering web sessions.

The cache containers and cache attributes can be configured using the Management Console or CLI commands, but it is not advisable to change the names of either cache containers or caches.

## Configure Cache Containers

Cache containers for Infinispan can be configured using the CLI or the Management Console.

### Procedure 15.1. Configure the Infinispan Cache Containers in the Management Console

1. Select the **Configuration** tab from the top of the screen.
2. For Domain mode only, select either **ha** or **full-ha** from the drop down menu at top left.
3. Expand the **Subsystems** menu, then expand the **Infinispan** menu. Select **Cache Containers**.
4. Select a cache container from the **Cache Containers** table.
5. **Add, Remove or Set Default Cache Container**
  - a. To create a new cache container, click **Add** from the **Cache Containers** table.
  - b. To remove a cache container, select the cache container in the **Cache Containers** table. Click **Remove** and click **OK** to confirm.
  - c. To set a cache container as default, click **Set Default**, enter a cache container name from the drop down list, click **Save** to confirm.
6. To add or update the attributes of a cache container, select the cache container in the **Cache Containers** table. Select one from the **Attributes**, **Transport** and **Aliases** tabs in the **Details** area of the screen, and click **Edit**. For help about the content of the **Attributes**, **Transport** and **Aliases** tabs, click **Need Help?**.

### Procedure 15.2. Configure the Infinispan Cache Containers in the Management CLI

1. To get a list of configurable attributes, enter the following CLI command:

```
/profile=profile name/subsystem=infinispan/cache-
container=container name:read-resource
```

2. You can use the Management CLI to add, remove and update cache containers. Before issuing any commands to do with cache containers, ensure that you use the correct profile in the Management CLI command.

#### a. Add a Cache Container

To add a cache container base your command on the following example:

```
/profile=profile-name/subsystem=infinispan/cache-
container="cache container name":add
```

#### b. Remove a Cache Container

To remove a cache container base your command on the following example:

```
/profile=profile-name/subsystem=infinispan/cache-
container="cache container name":remove
```

#### c. Update Cache Container attributes

Use the write-attribute operation to write a new value to an attribute. You can use tab completion to help complete the command string as you type, as well as to expose the available attributes. The following example updates statistics-enabled to true.

```
/profile=profile name/subsystem=infinispan/cache-
container=cache container name:write-
attribute(name=statistics-enabled,value=true)
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 15.4. Cache Stores

A cache store is external storage for data in the cache. The external data store types most relevant to JBoss EAP 6 are file-based, JDBC-based, or the remote Infinispan/JDG store.

For file-based cache stores, each node in the cluster usually has its own file system and therefore its own file-based cache store. It is not advisable to put the file-based cache store on a shared filesystem (NFS etc.), as they do not implement proper file locking and can cause data corruption.

For JDBC-based cache stores it is possible to have a single SQL database serving as a cache store for all cluster nodes. However, the cache store must be configured as shared (set the **shared** attribute to true on the JDBC-based cache stores.). If the cache stores are not defined as shared, database deadlocks may occur, along with other problems which impact performance.

[Report a bug](#)

## 15.5. About Infinispan Statistics

Runtime statistics about Infinispan cache and cache-container objects can be enabled for monitoring purposes. Statistics collection is not enabled by default for performance reasons.



## Warning

Enabling Infinispan statistics can have a negative impact on the performance of the Infinispan subsystem. Statistics should be enabled only when required.

Statistics collection can be enabled for each cache-container, cache or both. The statistics option for each cache overrides the option for the cache-container. Enabling or disabling statistics collection for a cache container will cause all caches in that container to inherit the setting, unless they explicitly specify their own. If only a cache-container is enabled for statistics, useful statistics are available.

[Report a bug](#)

## 15.6. Enable Infinispan Statistics Collection

Statistics collection can be enabled from either the startup configuration file (for example `standalone.xml`, `standalone-ha.xml`, `domain.xml`) or the management CLI.

[Report a bug](#)

### 15.6.1. Enable Infinispan Statistics Collection in the Startup Configuration File

#### Procedure 15.3. Enable Infinispan Statistics in the Startup Configuration File

- » Add the attribute `statistics-enabled=VALUE` to the required `cache-container` or `cache` XML tag under the Infinispan subsystem.

#### Example 15.2. Enable Statistics Collection for a cache

```
<replicated-cache name="sso" mode="SYNC" batching="true" statistics-enabled="true"/>
```

#### Example 15.3. Enable Statistics Collection for a cache-container

```
<cache-container name="singleton" aliases="cluster ha-partition" default-cache="default" statistics-enabled="true">
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 15.6.2. Enable Infinispan Statistics Collection from the Management CLI

#### Procedure 15.4. Enable Infinispan Statistics Collection from the Management CLI

In this procedure:

- » **CACHE\_CONTAINER** is the preferred **cache-container** (for example, **web**)
- » **CACHE\_TYPE** is the preferred cache type (for example, **distributed-cache**)
- » **CACHE** is the cache name (for example, **dist**)

1. Enter the following command:

```
/subsystem=infinispan/cache-
container=CACHE_CONTAINER/CACHE_TYPE=CACHE:write-
attribute(name=statistics-enabled,value=true)
```

2. Enter the following command to reload the server:

```
:reload
```

### Note

To undefine an attribute, enter the following command:

```
/subsystem=infinispan/cache-
container=CACHE_CONTAINER/CACHE_TYPE=CACHE:undefine-
attribute(name=statistics-enabled)
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 15.6.3. Verify Infinispan Statistics Collection is Enabled

#### Procedure 15.5. Verify Infinispan Statistics Collection is Enabled

Depending on whether you are confirming that statistics collection is enabled on a **cache** or **cache-container**, use one of the following management CLI commands.

- » A. For a cache

```
/subsystem=infinispan/cache-
container=CACHE_CONTAINER/CACHE_TYPE=CACHE:read -
attribute(name=statistics-enabled)
```

- B. For a cache-container

```
/subsystem=infinispan/cache-container=CACHE_CONTAINER:read -
attribute(name=statistics-enabled)
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 15.7. JGroups

### 15.7.1. About JGroups

JGroups is a messaging toolkit which allows developers to create reliable messaging applications where system reliability is an issue. JGroups can be used to create clusters whose nodes can send messages to each other.

The JGroups subsystem provides all the communication mechanisms for how the servers in a cluster talk to each other. EAP is preconfigured with two JGroups stacks.

- » udp - the nodes in the cluster use UDP (User Datagram Protocol) multicasting to communicate with each other. UDP is generally faster but less reliable than TCP.
- » tcp - the nodes in the cluster use TCP (Transmission Control Protocol) to communicate with each other. TCP tends to be slower than UDP, but will more reliably deliver data to its destination.

The preconfigured stacks can be used, or you can define your own to suit your system's specific requirements.

[Report a bug](#)

# Chapter 16. JVM

## 16.1. About JVM

### 16.1.1. About JVM Settings

Configuration of Java Virtual Machine (JVM) settings varies between the managed domain and standalone server instances. In a managed domain, the JVM settings are declared in `host.xml` and `domain.xml` configuration files, and determined by the domain controller components responsible for starting and stopping server processes. In a standalone server instance, the server startup processes can pass command line settings at startup. These can be declared from the command line or via the **System Properties** screen in the Management Console.

#### Managed Domain

An important feature of the managed domain is the ability to define JVM settings at multiple levels. You can configure custom JVM settings at the host level, by server group, or by server instance. The more specialized child elements will override the parent configuration, allowing for the declaration of specific server configurations without requiring exclusions at the group or host level. This also allows the parent configuration to be inherited by the other levels until settings are either declared in the configuration files or passed at runtime.

#### Example 16.1. JVM settings in the domain configuration file

The following example shows a JVM declaration for a server group in the `domain.xml` configuration file.

```
<server-groups>
    <server-group name="main-server-group" profile="default">
        <jvm name="default">
            <heap size="64m" max-size="512m"/>
        </jvm>
        <socket-binding-group ref="standard-sockets"/>
    </server-group>
    <server-group name="other-server-group" profile="default">
        <jvm name="default">
            <heap size="64m" max-size="512m"/>
        </jvm>
        <socket-binding-group ref="standard-sockets"/>
    </server-group>
</server-groups>
```

In this instance a server group called **main-server-group** is declaring a heap size of 64 megabytes, and a maximum heap size of 512 megabytes. Any server that belongs to this group will inherit these settings. You can change these settings for the group as a whole, by the host, or the individual server.

#### Example 16.2. Domain settings in the host configuration file

The following example shows a JVM declaration for a server group in the `host.xml` configuration file.

```

<servers>
  <server name="server-one" group="main-server-group" auto-
start="true">
    <jvm name="default"/>
  </server>
  <server name="server-two" group="main-server-group" auto-
start="true">
    <jvm name="default">
      <heap size="64m" max-size="256m"/>
    </jvm>
    <socket-bindings port-offset="150"/>
  </server>
  <server name="server-three" group="other-server-group" auto-
start="false">
    <socket-bindings port-offset="250"/>
  </server>
</servers>

```

In this instance, a server named **server-two** belongs to the server group named **main-server-group**, inheriting the JVM settings from the **default** JVM group. In the previous example, the main heap size for **main-server-group** was set at 512 megabytes. By declaring the lower maximum heap size of 256 megabytes, **server-two** can override the **domain.xml** settings to fine-tune performance as desired.

### Standalone server settings at runtime

The JVM settings for standalone server instances can be declared at runtime by setting the **JAVA\_OPTS** environment variable before starting the server. An example of setting the **JAVA\_OPTS** environment variable at the Linux command-line is:

```
[user@host bin]$ export JAVA_OPTS="-Xmx1024M"
```

The same setting can be used in a Microsoft Windows environment, as follows:

```
C:\> set JAVA_OPTS="Xmx1024M"
```

Alternatively, JVM settings can be added to the **standalone.conf** file found in the **EAP\_HOME/bin** folder, which contains examples of options to pass to the JVM.



#### Warning

Setting the **JAVA\_OPTS** environment variable will re-define the default values for the **JAVA\_OPTS** environment variable. This can break or terminate the start of JBoss EAP.

[Report a bug](#)

### 16.1.2. Display the JVM Status in the Management Console

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 2.1.2, “Start JBoss EAP 6 as a Standalone Server”](#)

» [Section 2.1.3, “Start JBoss EAP 6 as a Managed Domain”](#)

» [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#)

Java Virtual Machine (JVM) status can be displayed in the Management Console for either the standalone server or a managed domain. The console shows the heap usage, non heap usage, and thread usage of the server. While the statistics are not displayed in real-time, you can refresh the console display to provide an up-to-date overview of JVM resources.

The JVM status shows the following values.

**Table 16.1. JVM Status Attributes**

Type	Description
Max	The maximum amount of memory that can be used for memory management. The maximum available memory is shown by the light grey bar.
Used	The amount of used memory. The amount of used memory is shown by the dark grey bar.
Committed	The amount of memory that is committed for the Java virtual machine to use. The committed memory is shown by the dark grey bar.
Init	The amount of memory that the Java virtual machine initially requests from the operating system for memory management. The init amount is shown by the dark grey bar.

**Procedure 16.1. Display the JVM Status in the Management Console**

1. A. **Display the JVM status for a standalone server instance**

Select the **Runtime** tab from the top of the screen. Expand the **Status** menu, then expand the **Platform** menu. Select **JVM**.

B. **Display the JVM status for a managed domain**

Select the **Runtime** tab from the top of the screen. Expand the **Server Status** menu, then expand the **Platform** menu. Select **JVM**.

2. The managed domain can provide visibility of all server instances in the server group, but will only allow you to view one server at a time by selecting from the server menu. To view the status of other servers in your server group, click **Change Server** left of the screen to select from the host and servers displayed in your group. Select the required server or host and the JVM details will change. Click **Close** to finish.

**Result**

The status of the JVM settings for the server instance are displayed.

[Report a bug](#)

### 16.1.3. Configuring JVM

The `<jvm></jvm>` tags support the usage of `<jvm-options></jvm-options>`, which can be used to add parameters to the JVM configuration using the `<option value="VALUE"/>` tag.

**Example 16.3. Use of `<jvm-options>`**

```
<jvm name="default">
  <heap size="1303m" max-size="1303m"/>
  <permgen max-size="256m"/>
  <jvm-options>
    <option value="-XX:+UseCompressedOops"/>
  </jvm-options>
</jvm>
```

## Configuring JVM Using CLI

To configure JVM using CLI, use the following syntax:

```
# cd /server-group=main-server-group/jvm=default

# :add-jvm-option(jvm-option="-XX:+UseCompressedOops")
{
  "outcome" => "success",
  "result" => undefined,
  "server-groups" => {"main-server-group" => {"host" => {"master" => {
    "server-one" => {"response" => {
      "outcome" => "success",
      "response-headers" => {
        "operation-requires-restart" => true,
        "process-state" => "restart-required"
      }
    }},
    "server-two" => {"response" => {
      "outcome" => "success",
      "response-headers" => {
        "operation-requires-restart" => true,
        "process-state" => "restart-required"
      }
    }}
  }}}
}

# :read-resource

# Expected Result:

[domain@localhost:9999 jvm=default] :read-resource
{
  "outcome" => "success",
  "result" => {
    "agent-lib" => undefined,
    "agent-path" => undefined,
    "env-classpath-ignored" => undefined,
    "environment-variables" => undefined,
    "heap-size" => "1303m",
    "java-agent" => undefined,
    "java-home" => undefined,
    "jvm-options" => ["-XX:+UseCompressedOops"],
    "max-heap-size" => "1303m",
  }
}
```

```

"max-permgen-size" => "256m",
"permgen-size" => undefined,
"stack-size" => undefined,
"type" => undefined
}
}

```

## Removing jvm-options Entry

To remove jvm-options entry, use the following syntax:

```

# cd /server-group=main-server-group/jvm=default

# :remove-jvm-option(jvm-option="-XX:+UseCompressedOops")

# Expected Result:

[domain@localhost:9999 jvm=default] :remove-jvm-option(jvm-option="-
XX:+UseCompressedOops")
{
  "outcome" => "success",
  "result" => undefined,
  "server-groups" => {"main-server-group" => {"host" => {"master" => {
    "server-one" => {"response" => {
      "outcome" => "success",
      "response-headers" => {
        "operation-requires-restart" => true,
        "process-state" => "restart-required"
      }
    }},
    "server-two" => {"response" => {
      "outcome" => "success",
      "response-headers" => {
        "operation-requires-restart" => true,
        "process-state" => "restart-required"
      }
    }}
  }}}
}
```

[Report a bug](#)

## Chapter 17. Web Subsystem

### 17.1. Configure the Web Subsystem

You can configure most aspects of the Web subsystem using the web-based Management Console or the command-line Management CLI. Each setting is explained in the order it appears in the Management Console, and Management CLI commands are also provided.

#### View the Web Subsystem Using the Management Console

To configure the Web Subsystem using the web-based Management Console, click the **Configuration** tab at the top of the screen. Expand the **Subsystems** menu and then expand the **Web** menu. Each configurable part of the Web subsystem is shown.

 **Note**

The **mod\_cluster** component is only available if your profile is **ha** or **full-ha**, in a managed domain, or if you start your standalone server with the **standalone-ha** or **standalone-full-ha** profile. **mod\_cluster** configuration is covered in [Section 19.5.2, "Configure the mod\\_cluster Subsystem"](#).

#### Configure the JSP Container, HTTP Connectors, and Virtual HTTP Servers

To configure the JSP Container, HTTP connectors, and virtual HTTP servers, click the **Servlet/HTTP** menu entry. Click the **Edit** button to change any values. Click the **Advanced** button to view advanced options. The options are explained below. Options for HTTP connectors and virtual servers are shown in separate tables.

**Table 17.1. Servlet/HTTP Configuration Options**

Option	Description	CLI Command
Instance ID	The identifier used to enable session affinity in load balancing scenarios. The identifier must be unique across all JBoss EAP servers in the cluster and is appended to the generated session identifier. This allows the front-end proxy to forward the specific session to the same JBoss EAP instance. The instance ID is not set as a default.	/profile=full-ha/subsystem=web:write-attribute(name=instance-id,value=worker1)

Option	Description	CLI Command
Disabled?	If <b>true</b> , disables the Java ServerPages (JSP) container. Defaults to <b>false</b> . This is useful if you do not use any JSPs.	/profile=full- ha/subsystem=web/configuration=jsp-configuration/:write - attribute(name=disabled,value=false)
Development?	If <b>true</b> , enables Development Mode, which produces more verbose debugging information. Defaults to <b>false</b> .	/profile=full- ha/subsystem=web/configuration=jsp-configuration/:write - attribute(name=development,value=false)
Keep Generated?	Click <b>Advanced</b> to see this option, if it is hidden. If <b>true</b> , keeps generated Servlets. Defaults to <b>true</b> .	/profile=full- ha/subsystem=web/configuration=jsp-configuration/:write - attribute(name=keep-generated,value=true)
Check Interval?	Click <b>Advanced</b> to see this option, if it is hidden. A value in seconds, which determines how often to check for JSP updates using a background process. Defaults to <b>0</b> .	/profile=full- ha/subsystem=web/configuration=jsp-configuration/:write - attribute(name=check-interval,value=0)
Display Source?	Click <b>Advanced</b> to see this option, if it is hidden. If <b>true</b> , the JSP source fragment is displayed when a runtime error occurs. Defaults to <b>true</b> .	/profile=full- ha/subsystem=web/configuration=jsp-configuration/:write - attribute(name=display-source-fragment,value=true)

AJP and HTTP connectors use **mod\_cluster**, **mod\_jk**, **mod\_proxy**, **ISAPI**, and **NSAPI** for load balancing and HA clustering. To configure a connector, select the **Connectors** tab and click **Add**. To remove a connector, select its entry and click **Remove**. To edit a connector, select its entry and click **Edit**.

When you create a new connector using the Management CLI, its options are all set at once, as in the following command:

#### Example 17.1. Create a New Connector

```
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=web/connector=ajp/:add(socket-
binding=ajp,scheme=http,protocol=AJP/1.3,secure=false,name=ajp,max-
post-size=2097152,enabled=true,enable-lookups=false,redirect-
port=8433,max-save-post-size=4096)
```

**Table 17.2. Connector Options**

Option	Description	CLI Command
Name	A unique name for the connector, for display purposes.	/profile=full-ha/subsystem=web/connector=ajp/:read-attribute(name=name)
Socket Binding	The named socket binding to which the connector is to be bound. A socket binding is a mapping between a socket name and a network port. Socket bindings are configured for each standalone server, or via socket binding groups in a managed domain. A socket binding group is applied to a server group.	/profile=full-ha/subsystem=web/connector=ajp/:write-attribute(name=socket-binding,value=ajp)
Scheme	The web connector scheme, such as HTTP or HTTPS.	/profile=full-ha/subsystem=web/connector=ajp/:write-attribute(name=scheme,value=http)
Protocol	The web connector protocol to use, such as AJP or HTTP.	/profile=full-ha/subsystem=web/connector=ajp/:write-attribute(name=protocol,value=AJP/1.3)
Enabled	Whether or not this web connector is enabled.	/profile=full-ha/subsystem=web/connector=ajp/:write-attribute(name=enabled,value=true)

Option	Description	CLI Command
Redirect Port	Used to specify a port number to be used in cases of redirection; the common ones being redirection to secure ( <b>https</b> ) or <b>AJP</b> connector	/profile=full-ha/subsystem=web/connector=http:write-attribute(name=redirect-port,value=8443)
Redirect Binding	Redirect binding is similar to redirect port in terms of behavior except that it requires specification of a socket-binding name in "value" instead of a port number. <b>redirect-binding</b> provides higher configuration flexibility because it allows the use of pre-defined socket binding (https, AJP etc.) to the specific port for redirection. It gives the same results as <b>redirect-port</b> option.	/profile=full-ha/subsystem=web/connector=http:write-attribute(name=redirect-binding,value=https)

To configure virtual servers, click the **Virtual Servers** tab. Use the **Add** button to add a new virtual server. To edit or remove a virtual server, select its entry and click the **Edit** or **Remove** button.

When you add a new virtual server using the Management CLI, all required options are set at once, as in the following command.

#### Example 17.2. Add a New Virtual Server

```
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=web/virtual-server=default-host/:add(enable-welcome-root=true,default-web-module=ROOT.war,alias=["localhost","example.com"],name=default-host)
```

**Table 17.3. Virtual Servers Options**

Option	Description	CLI Command
Name	A unique name for the virtual server, for display purposes.	/profile=full-ha/subsystem=web/virtual-server=default-host/:read-attribute(name=name)

Option	Description	CLI Command
Alias	A list of hostnames which should match this virtual server. In the Management Console, use one hostname per line.	/profile=full-ha/subsystem=web/virtual-server=default-host/:write-attribute(name=alias,value=[“localhost”, “example.com”])
Default Module	The module whose web application should be deployed at the root node of this virtual server, and will be displayed when no directory is given in the HTTP request.	/profile=full-ha/subsystem=web/virtual-server=default-host/:write-attribute(name=default-web-module,value=ROOT.war)

[Report a bug](#)

## 17.2. Replace the Default Welcome Web Application

JBoss EAP 6 includes a Welcome application, which displays when you open the URL of the server at port 8080. You can replace this application with your own web application by following this procedure.

### Procedure 17.1. Replace the Default Welcome Web Application With Your Own Web Application

#### 1. Disable the Welcome application.

Use the Management CLI script `EAP_HOME/bin/jboss-cli.sh` to run the following command. You may need to change the profile to modify a different managed domain profile, or remove the `/profile=default` portion of the command for a standalone server.

```
/profile=default/subsystem=web/virtual-server=default-host:write-attribute(name=enable-welcome-root,value=false)
```

#### 2. Configure your Web application to use the root context.

To configure your web application to use the root context (/) as its URL address, modify its `jboss-web.xml`, which is located in the `META-INF/` or `WEB-INF/` directory. Replace its `<context-root>` directive with one that looks like the following.

```
<jboss-web>
  <context-root>/</context-root>
</jboss-web>
```

### 3. Deploy your application.

Deploy your application to the server group or server you modified in the first step. The application is now available on **http://*SERVER\_URL:PORT/***.

[Report a bug](#)

## Chapter 18. Web Services Subsystem

### 18.1. Configure Web Services Options

To configure Web Services options, click the **Web Services** menu item. The options are explained in the table below.

**Table 18.1. Web Services Configuration Options**

Option	Description	CLI Command
Modify WSDL Address	Whether the WSDL address can be modified by applications. Defaults to <b>true</b> .	<pre>/profile=full- ha/subsystem=webservices/:write- attribute(name=modify-wsdl- address,value=true)</pre>
WSDL Host	The WSDL contract of a JAX-WS Web Service includes a <soap:address> element which points to the location of the endpoint. If the value of <soap:address> is a valid URL, it is not overwritten unless <b>modify-wsdl-address</b> is set to <b>true</b> . If the value of <soap:address> is not a valid URL, it is overwritten using the values of <b>wsdl-host</b> and either <b>wsdl-port</b> or <b>wsdl-secure-port</b> . If <b>wsdl-host</b> is set to <b>jbossws.undefined.host</b> , the requester's host address is used when the <soap-address> is rewritten. Defaults to <b> \${jboss.bind.address:127.0.0.1}</b> , which uses <b>127.0.0.1</b> if no bind address is specified when JBoss EAP 6 is started.	<pre>/profile=full- ha/subsystem=webservices/:write- attribute(name=wsdl- host,value=127.0.0.1)</pre>
WSDL Port	The non-secure port that is used to rewrite the SOAP address. If this is set to <b>0</b> (the default), the port is identified by querying the list of installed connectors.	<pre>/profile=full- ha/subsystem=webservices/:write- attribute(name=wsdl- port,value=80)</pre>

Option	Description	CLI Command
WSDL Secure Port	The secure port that is used to rewrite the SOAP address. If this is set to <b>0</b> (the default), the port is identified by querying the list of installed connectors.	/profile=full-ha/subsystem=webservices/:write-attribute(name=wSDL-secure-port,value=443)



### Note

You may need to change the profile to modify a different managed domain profile, or remove the /profile=full-ha part of the command for a standalone server.

## Web Services Subsystem

To enable logging with Apache CXF, configure the following system property in **standalone/domain.xml** file:

```
<system-properties>
<property name="org.apache.cxf.logging.enabled" value="true"/>
</system-properties>
```

[Report a bug](#)

# Chapter 19. HTTP Clustering and Load Balancing

## 19.1. Introduction

### 19.1.1. About High-Availability and Load Balancing Clusters

Clustering refers to using multiple resources, such as servers, as though they were a single entity. The two main types of clustering are *Load balancing (LB)* and *High-availability (HA)*. In a LB cluster, all resources run at the same time, and a management layer spreads the work load across them.

In HA clustering, one resource runs, and another is available to step in if the first one becomes unavailable. The purpose of HA clustering is to reduce the consequences of hardware, software, or network outages.

JBoss EAP 6 supports clustering at several different levels. Some of the components of the runtime and your applications that can be made highly available are:

- » Instances of the Application Server
- » Web applications, when used in conjunction with the internal JBoss Web Server, Apache HTTP Server, Microsoft IIS, or Oracle iPlanet Web Server.
- » Stateful, stateless, and entity Enterprise JavaBeans (EJBs)
- » Single Sign On (SSO) Mechanisms
- » Distributed cache
- » HTTP sessions
- » JMS services and Message-driven beans (MDBs)

Clustering is made available to JBoss EAP 6 by two subsystems: **jgroups** and **modcluster**. The **ha** and **full-ha** profiles have these systems enabled. In JBoss EAP 6 these services start up and shut down on demand, but they will only start up if an application configured as **distributable** is deployed on the servers.

Infinispan is provided as the cache provider in JBoss EAP 6. Infinispan manages clustering and replication caches for JBoss EAP 6.

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.1.2. Components Which Can Benefit from High Availability

High Availability (HA) falls into a few broad categories in JBoss EAP 6.

#### The Container

Several instances of JBoss EAP 6 (running as a standalone server) or a server group's members (running as part of a managed domain) can be configured to be highly available. This means that if one instance or member is stopped or disappears from the cluster, its work load is moved to a peer. The work load can be managed in such a way to provide load-balancing functionality as well, so that servers or server groups with more or better resources can take on a larger portion of the work load, or additional capacity can be added during times of high load.

#### The Web Server

The web server itself can be clustered for HA, using one of several compatible load balancing mechanisms. The most flexible is **mod\_cluster** connector, which is tightly integrated with the JBoss EAP 6 container. Other choices include Apache **mod\_jk** or **mod\_proxy** connectors, or the ISAPI and NSAPI connectors.

## The Application

Deployed applications can be made highly-available because of the Java Enterprise Edition 6 (Java EE 6) specification. Stateless or stateful session EJBs can be clustered so that if the node which is involved in the work disappears, another node can take over, and in the case of stateful session beans, preserve the state.

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.1.3. Overview of HTTP Connectors

JBoss EAP 6 has the ability to use load-balancing and high-availability mechanisms built into external web servers, such as Apache Web Server, Microsoft IIS, and Oracle iPlanet. JBoss EAP 6 communicates with the external web server using a HTTP Connector. These HTTP connectors are configured within the web subsystem of JBoss EAP 6.

The web servers include software modules which control the way that HTTP requests are routed to JBoss EAP 6 worker nodes. Each of these modules varies in how it works and how it is configured. The modules are configured to balance work loads across multiple JBoss EAP 6 server nodes, to move work loads to alternate servers in case of a failure event, or both. These abilities are called *Load Balancing* and *High Availability (HA)*.

JBoss EAP 6 supports several different HTTP connectors. The one you choose depends on the web server in use and the functionality you need.

The table below lists the differences between the different HTTP connectors which are compatible with JBoss EAP 6. For the most current information about supported configurations for HTTP connectors, see <https://access.redhat.com/site/articles/111663>.

**Table 19.1. HTTP connector features and constraints**

Connector	Web server	Supported operating systems	Supported protocols	Adapts to deployment status	Supports sticky session
mod_cluster	JBoss Enterprise Web Server, httpd provided by operating system (Red Hat Enterprise Linux, Hewlett-Packard HP-UX)	Red Hat Enterprise Linux, Microsoft Windows Server, Oracle Solaris, Hewlett-Packard HP-UX	HTTP, HTTPS, AJP	Yes. Detects deployment and undeployment of applications and dynamically decides whether to direct client requests to a server based on whether the application is deployed on that server.	Yes

Connector	Web server	Supported operating systems	Supported protocols	Adapts to deployment status	Supports sticky session
mod_jk	httpd in JBoss Enterprise Web Server, httpd provided by operating system (Red Hat Enterprise Linux, Hewlett-Packard HP-UX)	Red Hat Enterprise Linux, Microsoft Windows Server, Oracle Solaris, Hewlett-Packard HP-UX	AJP	No. Directs client requests to the container as long as the container is available, regardless of application status.	Yes
mod_proxy	httpd in JBoss Enterprise Web Server	Red Hat Enterprise Linux, Microsoft Windows Server, Oracle Solaris	HTTP, HTTPS, AJP	No. Directs client requests to the container as long as the container is available, regardless of application status.	Yes
ISAPI	Microsoft IIS	Microsoft Windows Server	AJP	No. Directs client requests to the container as long as the container is available, regardless of application status.	Yes
NSAPI	Oracle iPlanet Web Server	Oracle Solaris	AJP	No. Directs client requests to the container as long as the container is available, regardless of application status.	Yes

## Learn more about each HTTP Connector

- » [Section 19.5.1, “About the mod\\_cluster HTTP Connector”](#)
- » [Section 19.6.1, “About the Apache mod\\_jk HTTP Connector”](#)
- » [Section 19.7.1, “About the Apache mod\\_proxy HTTP Connector”](#)
- » [Section 19.8.1, “About the Internet Server API \(ISAPI\) HTTP Connector”](#)
- » [Section 19.9.1, “About the Netscape Server API \(NSAPI\) HTTP Connector”](#)

JBoss EAP 6 supported configurations are available here:

<https://access.redhat.com/site/articles/111663>.

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.1.4. Worker Node

#### HTTP connector node

A *worker node*, sometimes referred to as simply a *node*, is a JBoss EAP 6 server which accepts requests from one or more client-facing Web servers. JBoss EAP 6 can accept requests from its own web server such as Apache HTTP Server, Microsoft IIS, or Oracle iPlanet Web Server.

For an overview of HTTP connectors supported by JBoss EAP 6 and how to configure them, see [Section 19.1.3, “Overview of HTTP Connectors”](#).

## Cluster node

A cluster node is a member of a cluster of servers. Such a cluster may be load-balancing, high-availability, or both. In a load-balancing cluster, a central manager distributes work loads amongst its nodes equally, by some situation-specific measurement of equality. In a high-availability cluster, some nodes are actively doing work, and others are waiting to step in if one of the active nodes leaves the cluster.

[Report a bug](#)

## 19.2. Connector Configuration

### 19.2.1. Define Thread Pools for HTTP Connector in JBoss EAP 6

#### Summary

Thread Pools in JBoss EAP 6 can be shared between different components using the Executor model. These pools can be shared not only by different (HTTP) connectors, but also by other components within JBoss EAP 6 that support the Executor model. Getting the HTTP connector thread pool to match your current web performance requirements is a tricky art and requires close monitoring of the current thread pool and the current and anticipated web load demands. In this task, you will learn how to set the a thread pool for an HTTP Connector using the Executor model. You will learn how to set this using both the Command Line Interface and by modifying the XML configuration file.

#### Procedure 19.1. Setup a thread pool for an HTTP Connector

##### 1. Define a thread factory

Open up your configuration file (**standalone.xml** if modifying for a standalone server or **domain.xml** if modifying for a domain based configuration. This file will be in the **EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration** or the **EAP\_HOME/domain/configuration** folder).

Add the following subsystem entry, changing the values to suit your server requirements.

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:threads:1.1">
    <thread-factory name="http-connector-factory" thread-name-
pattern="HTTP-%t" priority="9" group-name="uq-thread-pool"/>
</subsystem>
```

If you prefer to use the CLI to do this task, then execute the following command in a CLI command prompt:

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] ./subsystem=threads/thread-
factory=http-connector-factory:add(thread-name-pattern="HTTP-%t",
priority="9", group-name="uq-thread-pool")
```

## 2. Create an executor

You can use one of six in-built executor classes to act as the executor for this factory. The six executors are:

- **unbounded - queue - thread - pool**: This type of thread pool always accepts tasks. If fewer than the maximum number of threads are running, a new thread is started up to run the submitted task; otherwise, the task is placed into an unbounded FIFO queue to be executed when a thread is available.



### Note

The single-thread executor type provided by `Executors.singleThreadExecutor()` is essentially an unbounded-queue executor with a thread limit of one. This type of executor is deployed using the **unbounded - queue - thread - pool - executor** element.

- **bounded - queue - thread - pool**: This type of executor maintains a fixed-length queue and two pool sizes: a **core** size and a **maximum** size. When a task is accepted, if the number of running pool threads is less than the **core** size, a new thread is started to execute the task. If space remains in the queue, the task is placed in the queue. If the number of running pool threads is less than the **maximum** size, a new thread is started to execute the task. If blocking is enabled on the executor, the calling thread will block until space becomes available in the queue. The task is delegated to the handoff executor, if a handoff executor is configured. Otherwise, the task is rejected.
- **blocking - bounded - queue - thread - pool**: A thread pool executor with a bounded queue where threads submitting tasks may block. Such a thread pool has a core and maximum size and a specified queue length. When a task is submitted, if the number of running threads is less than the core size, a new thread is created. Otherwise, if there is room in the queue, the task is enqueued. Otherwise, if the number of running threads is less than the maximum size, a new thread is created. Otherwise, the caller blocks until room becomes available in the queue.
- **queueless - thread - pool**: Sometimes, a simple thread pool is required to run tasks in separate threads, reusing threads as they complete their tasks with no intervening queue. This type of pool is ideal for handling tasks which are long-running, perhaps utilizing blocking I/O, since tasks are always started immediately upon acceptance rather than accepting a task and then delaying its execution until other running tasks have completed. This type of executor is declared using the **queueless - thread - pool - executor** element.
- **blocking - queueless - thread - pool**: A thread pool executor with no queue where threads submitting tasks may block. When a task is submitted, if the number of running threads is less than the maximum size, a new thread is created. Otherwise, the caller blocks until another thread completes its task and accepts the new one.
- **scheduled - thread - pool**: This is a special type of executor whose purpose is to execute tasks at specific times and time intervals, based on the `java.util.concurrent.ScheduledThreadPoolExecutor` class. This type of executor is configured with the **scheduled - thread - pool - executor** element:

In this example, we will use the **unbounded-queue-thread-pool** to act as the executor. Modify the values of **max-threads** and **keepalive-time** parameters to suit your server needs.

```
<unbounded-queue-thread-pool name="uq-thread-pool">
    <thread-factory name="http-connector-factory" />
    <max-threads count="10" />
    <keepalive-time time="30" unit="seconds" />
</unbounded-queue-thread-pool>
```

Or if you prefer to use the CLI:

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] ./subsystem=threads/unbounded-queue-
thread-pool=uq-thread-pool:add(thread-factory="http-connector-
factory", keepalive-time={time=30, unit="seconds"}, max-threads=30)
```

### 3. Make the HTTP web connector use this thread pool

In the same configuration file, locate the HTTP connector element under the web subsystem and modify it to use the thread pool defined in the previous steps.

```
<connector name="http" protocol="HTTP/1.1" scheme="http" socket-
binding="http" executor="uq-thread-pool" />
```

Again, if you prefer to use the CLI:

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] ./subsystem=web/connector=http:write-
attribute(name=executor, value="uq-thread-pool")
```

### 4. Restart the server

Restart the server (standalone or domain) so that the changes can take effect. Use the following CLI commands to confirm if the changes from the steps above have taken place:

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] ./subsystem=threads:read-
resource(recursive=true)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "blocking-bounded-queue-thread-pool" => undefined,
        "blocking-queueless-thread-pool" => undefined,
        "bounded-queue-thread-pool" => undefined,
        "queueless-thread-pool" => undefined,
        "scheduled-thread-pool" => undefined,
        "thread-factory" => {"http-connector-factory" => {
            "group-name" => "uq-thread-pool",
            "name" => "http-connector-factory",
            "priority" => 9,
            "thread-name-pattern" => "HTTP-%t"
        }},
        "unbounded-queue-thread-pool" => {"uq-thread-pool" => {
            "keepalive-time" => {
                "time" => 30L,
                "unit" => "seconds"
            }
        }}
    }
}
```

```

        "unit" => "SECONDS"
    },
    "max-threads" => 30,
    "name" => "uq-thread-pool",
    "thread-factory" => "http-connector-factory"
}
}
}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] ./subsystem=web/connector=http:read-
resource(recursive=true)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "configuration" => undefined,
        "enable-lookups" => false,
        "enabled" => true,
        "executor" => "uq-thread-pool",
        "max-connections" => undefined,
        "max-post-size" => 2097152,
        "max-save-post-size" => 4096,
        "name" => "http",
        "protocol" => "HTTP/1.1",
        "proxy-name" => undefined,
        "proxy-port" => undefined,
        "redirect-port" => 443,
        "scheme" => "http",
        "secure" => false,
        "socket-binding" => "http",
        "ssl" => undefined,
        "virtual-server" => undefined
    }
}
}

```

## Result

You have successfully created a thread factory and an executor and modified your HTTP Connector to use this thread pool.

[Report a bug](#)

## 19.3. Web Server Configuration

### 19.3.1. About the Standalone Apache HTTP Server

JBoss EAP 6 is tested and supported with the Apache HTTP server which is included with certified versions of Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6. Apache HTTP server is also available for other operating systems, such as Microsoft Windows Server. However, since Apache HTTP server is a separate product produced by the Apache Foundation, it was previously difficult to be sure that the version of Apache HTTP server a customer used was compatible with JBoss EAP.

A standalone Apache HTTP server bundle is now available as a separate download with JBoss EAP 6. This simplifies installation and configuration in environments other than Red Hat Enterprise Linux, or on systems which already have a configured Apache HTTP server and want to use a separate instance for web applications. You can download this Apache HTTP server as a separate download

in the Customer Service Portal, listed under the available JBoss EAP 6 downloads for your installation platform.

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.3.2. Install the Apache HTTP Server included with JBoss EAP 6 (Zip)

#### Prerequisites

- » Root-level or administrator access.
- » A supported version of Java installed.
- » The following packages installed:
  - **krb5-workstation**
  - **mod\_auth\_kerb** (required for Kerberos functionality)
  - **elinks** (required for the apachectl functionality)
  - On Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7, **apr-util-ldap** (LDAP authentication functionality)
- » The Apache Portability Runtime (APR) must be installed. In Red Hat Enterprise Linux, install package **apr-util-devel**.

The **Apache HTTP Server** Zip archive contains symbolic links to several Kerberos modules, which is why the **mod\_auth\_kerb** package is a prerequisite. If Kerberos functionality is not required, there is no need to install the **mod\_auth\_kerb** package and the associated symbolic link can be deleted: **EAP\_HOME/httpd/modules/mod\_auth\_kerb.so**.

For information on Apache HTTP Server installation for Microsoft Windows Server environment, see the *Configuring the Environment* section in the *Installing Enterprise Web Server on Windows* section of *JBoss Enterprise Web Server 2 Installation Guide*.

#### Procedure 19.2. Install the Apache HTTP Server

1. **Navigate to the JBoss EAP downloads list for your platform, on the Red Hat Customer Portal.**

Log in to the Customer Portal at <https://access.redhat.com>. Click on **Downloads**, then **Red Hat Enterprise Application Server** in the list of **Product Downloads**. Select the correct JBoss EAP version from the **Version** drop-down menu.

2. **Choose the httpd binary from the list.**

Find the **Apache HTTP Server** option for your operating system and architecture. Click the **Download** link. A Zip file containing the Apache HTTP Server distribution downloads to your computer.

3. **Extract the Zip to the system where the Apache HTTP Server binary will run.**

Extract the Zip file on your preferred server, to a temporary location. The Zip file will contain the **httpd** directory under a *jboss-ews-version-number* folder. Copy the **httpd** folder and place it inside the directory where you installed the JBoss EAP 6, commonly referred to as **EAP\_HOME**.

Your Apache HTTP Server is now located in **EAP\_HOME/httpd/** directory. You can now use this location for **HTTPD\_HOME**, as found in other JBoss EAP 6 documentation.

#### 4. Run the Post-installation script and create apache user and group accounts

In a terminal emulator, switch to the root user account, navigate to the **EAP\_HOME/httpd** directory and execute the following command.

```
./.postinstall
```

Next, check to see if a user called **apache** exists on the system by running the following command:

```
id apache
```

If the user does not exist then it will need to be added, along with the appropriate usergroup. In order to achieve this, execute the following:

```
/usr/sbin/groupadd -g 91 -r apache 2> /dev/null || :  
/usr/sbin/useradd -c "Apache" -u 48 -g 91 -s /sbin/nologin -r  
apache 2>  
/dev/null || :
```

Once this is completed, if the **apache** user will be running the httpd service, then the ownership of the HTTP directories will need to be changed to reflect this:

```
chown -R apache:apache httpd
```

To test that the above commands have been successful, check that the **apache** user has execution permission to the Apache HTTP Server install path.

```
ls -l
```

The output should be similar to:

```
drwxrwxr-- 11 apache apache 4096 Feb 14 06:52 httpd
```

#### 5. Configure the Apache HTTP Server.

Switch to the new user account using the following command

```
sudo su apache
```

and then configure the Apache HTTP server as the **apache** user to meet the needs of your organization. You can use the documentation available from the Apache Foundation at <http://httpd.apache.org/> for general guidance.

#### 6. Start the Apache HTTP Server.

Start the Apache HTTP Server using the following command:

```
EAP_HOME/httpd/sbin/apachectl start
```

## 7. Stop the Apache HTTP Server.

To stop the Apache HTTP Server, issue the following command:

```
EAP_HOME/httpd/sbin/apachectl stop
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.3.3. Install Apache HTTP Server in Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 5, 6, and 7 (RPM)

#### Prerequisites

- » Root-level access.
- » The latest version of *elinks* package installed (required for the apachectl functionality).
- » Subscribe to Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) channels (to install Apache HTTP Server from RHEL channels).
- » Subscribe to **jbappplatform-6-ARCH-server-VERS-rpm** Red Hat Network (RHN) channel (to install EAP specific distribution of Apache HTTP Server).

You can install Apache HTTP Server using either of the following methods:

- » From Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) channels: An active subscription to Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) channels is necessary to install Apache HTTP server.
- » From **jbappplatform-6-ARCH-server-VERS-rpm** channel (JBoss EAP specific distribution): JBoss EAP distributes its own version of the Apache HTTP Server. An active subscription to **jbappplatform-6-ARCH-server-VERS-rpm** channel is necessary to install the JBoss EAP specific distribution of Apache HTTP Server.

#### Procedure 19.3. Install and Configure Apache HTTP Server in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 and 6 (RPM)

##### 1. Install httpd

To install the JBoss EAP specific version of **httpd** package run the following command:

```
yum install httpd
```

To install **httpd** explicitly from Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) channels run the following command:

```
yum install httpd --disablerepo=jbappplatform-6-*
```

#### Note

You must run only one of the above commands to install the **httpd** package on your system.

##### 2. Set the Service Boot Behavior

You can define the service behavior for the **httpd** service at boot from the command line or with the service configuration graphical tool. Run the following command to define the behavior:

```
chkconfig httpd on
```

To use the service configuration tool run the following command and change the service setting in the displayed window:

```
system-config-services
```

### 3. Start httpd

Start **httpd** using the following command:

```
service httpd start
```

### 4. Stop httpd

Stop **httpd** using the following command:

```
service httpd stop
```

## Procedure 19.4. Install and Configure Apache HTTP Server in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 (RPM)

### 1. Install httpd22

To install the JBoss EAP specific version of **httpd22** package run the following command:

```
yum install httpd22
```

### 2. Set the Service Boot Behavior

Run the following command to start the **httpd22** service at boot:

```
systemctl enable httpd22.service
```

### 3. Start httpd22

Start **httpd22** using the following command:

```
systemctl start httpd22.service
```

### 4. Stop httpd22

Stop **httpd22** using the following command:

```
systemctl stop httpd22.service
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.3.4. mod\_cluster Configuration on httpd

#### Summary

mod\_cluster is an httpd-based load balancer. It uses a communication channel to forward requests from httpd to one of a set of application server nodes. The following derivatives can be set to configure mod\_cluster on httpd.



#### Note

There is no need to use ProxyPass directives because mod\_cluster automatically configures the URLs that must be forwarded to JBossWEB.

**Table 19.2. mod\_cluster Derivatives**

Derivative	Description	Values
CreateBalancers	Defines how the balancers are created in the httpd VirtualHosts. This allows directives like: <code>ProxyPass /balancer://mycluster1/</code> .	0: Create all VirtualHosts defined in httpd 1: Do not create balancers (at least one ProxyPass or ProxyMatch is required to define the balancer names) 2: Create only the main server Default: 2  <b>While using the value 1, do not forget to configure the balancer in the ProxyPass directive, because the default is an empty stickysession and no failover=off and the values received via the MCMP CONFIG message are ignored.</b>
UseAlias	Check that the alias corresponds to the server name.	0: Ignore aliases 1: Check aliases Default: 0
LBstatusRecalTime	Time interval in seconds for loadbalancing logic to recalculate the status of a node.	Default: 5 seconds
WaitForRemove	Time in seconds before a removed node is forgotten by httpd.	Default: 10 seconds

Derivative	Description	Values
ProxyPassMatch/ProxyPass	<p>ProxyPassMatch and ProxyPass are mod_proxy directives which, when using ! (instead of the back-end url), prevent reverse-proxy in the path. This is used to allow httpd to serve static information like images. For example,</p> <pre><b>ProxyPassMatch</b> <code>^(/.*\.\.gif)\$ !</code></pre> <p>The above example allows httpd to serve the .gif files directly.</p>	

A hot-standby node in the mod\_cluster logic is the last resort node to which all requests are routed if all other nodes are down. This is similar to the hot-standby logic in mod\_proxy.

To configure a hot-standby node, replace the dynamic-load-provider in mod\_cluster subsystem with a simple-load-provider with factor set to 0, for example:

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:modcluster:1.2">
    <mod-cluster-config advertise-socket="modcluster" connector="ajp">
        -         <dynamic-load-provider>
        -             <load-metric type="busyness"/>
        -         </dynamic-load-provider>
        +         <simple-load-provider factor="0"/>
    </mod-cluster-config>
</subsystem>
```

In mod\_cluster-manager console, the node is displayed with OK status and Load: 0. For more information, refer *Apache mod\_cluster-manager Application* section in the *JBoss Enterprise Application Platform Development Guide*.

For instance, if there are three nodes:

- » Node A, Load: 10
- » Node B, Load: 10
- » Node C, Load: 0

The load will be balanced between nodes A and B. If both the nodes are unavailable, node C will take the load.

## mod\_manager

The context of a mod\_manager directive is VirtualHost in all cases, except when mentioned otherwise. **server config** context implies that the directive must be outside a VirtualHost configuration. If not, an error message is displayed and httpd does not start.

**Table 19.3. mod\_manager Derivatives**

<b>Derivative</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Values</b>
EnableMCPMReceive	Allow the VirtualHost to receive the MCPM from the nodes. Include EnableMCPMReceive in the httpd configuration to allow mod_cluster to work. Save it in the VirtualHost where you configure advertise.	
MemManagerFile	The base name for the names that mod_manager uses to store configuration, generate keys for shared memory or locked files. This must be an absolute path name; the directories are created if needed. It is recommended that these files are placed on a local drive and not an NFS share.	\$server_root/logs/
	Context: server config	
Maxcontext	The maximum number of contexts supported by mod_cluster Context: server config	Default: 100
Maxnode	The maximum number of nodes supported by mod_cluster. Context: server config	Default: 20
Maxhost	The maximum number of hosts (aliases) supported by mod_cluster. It also includes the maximum number of balancers. Context: server config	Default: 20
Maxsessionid	The number of active sessionid stored to provide the number of active sessions in the mod_cluster-manager handler. A session is inactive when mod_cluster does not receive any information from the session within 5 minutes.	0: the logic is not activated.
	Context: server config	
	This field is for demonstration and debugging purposes only.	
MaxMCMPMaxMessSize	The maximum size of MCMP messages from other Max directives	Calculated from other Max directives. Min: 1024

Derivative	Description	Values
ManagerBalancerName	The name of balancer to use when the JBoss AS/JBossWeb/Tomcat does not provide a balancer name.	<b>mycluster</b>
PersistSlots	Tells mod_slotmem to persist nodes, aliases and contexts in files. Context: server config	Off
CheckNonce	Switch check of nonce when using mod_cluster-manager handler.	on/off Default: on - Nonce checked
AllowDisplay	Switch additional display on mod_cluster-manager main page.	on/off Default: off - only version is displayed
AllowCmd	Allow commands using mod_cluster-manager URL.	on/off Default: on - Commands allowed
ReduceDisplay	Reduce the information displayed on the main mod_cluster-manager page, so that more number of nodes can be displayed on the page.	on/off Default: off - full information is displayed
SetHandler mod_cluster-manager	Displays information about the node that mod_cluster sees from the cluster. The information includes generic information and additionally counts the number of active sessions.	on/off Default: off

```

<Location
/mod_cluster-
manager>
  SetHandler
mod_cluster-manager
  Order
deny,allow
  Allow from
127.0.0.1
</Location>

```



## Note

When accessing the location defined in httpd.conf:

Transferred: Corresponds to the POST data send to the back-end server.

Connected: Corresponds to the number of requests that have been processed when the mod\_cluster status page was requested.

Num\_sessions: Corresponds to the number of sessions mod\_cluster report as active (on which there was a request during the past 5 minutes). That field is not present when Maxsessionid is zero. This field is for demonstration and debugging purposes only.

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.3.5. Use an External Web Server as the Web Front-end for JBoss EAP 6 Applications

#### Overview

For reasons to use an external web server as the web front-end, as well as advantages and disadvantages of the different HTTP connectors supported by JBoss EAP 6, refer to [Section 19.1.3, “Overview of HTTP Connectors”](#). In some situations, you can use the Apache HTTP Server that comes with your operating system. Otherwise, you can use the Apache HTTP Server that ships as part of JBoss Enterprise Web Server.

After you have decided which web server and HTTP connector to use, refer to one of the following procedures:

- » [Section 19.3.2, “Install the Apache HTTP Server included with JBoss EAP 6 \(Zip\)”](#)
- » [Section 19.5.3, “Install the mod\\_cluster Module Into Apache HTTP Server or JBoss Enterprise Web Server \(Zip\)”](#)
- » [Section 19.6.3, “Install the mod\\_jk Module Into the Apache HTTP Server \(ZIP\)”](#)
- » [Section 19.8.3, “Configure Microsoft IIS to Use the ISAPI Redirector”](#)
- » [Section 19.9.2, “Configure the NSAPI Connector on Oracle Solaris”](#)
- » [Section 19.3.6, “Configure JBoss EAP 6 to Accept Requests From External Web Servers”](#)

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.3.6. Configure JBoss EAP 6 to Accept Requests From External Web Servers

#### Overview

JBoss EAP 6 does not need to know which proxy it is accepting requests from, only the port and protocol to look for. This is not true of **mod\_cluster**, which is more tightly coupled to the configuration of JBoss EAP 6. But the following task works for **mod\_jk**, **mod\_proxy**, **ISAPI**, and **NSAPI**. Substitute the protocols and ports in the examples with the ones you need to configure.

To configure JBoss EAP 6 for `mod_cluster`, refer to [Section 19.5.6, “Configure a mod\\_cluster Worker Node”](#).

## Prerequisites

- You need to be logged into the Management CLI or Management Console to perform this task. The exact steps in the task use the Management CLI, but the same basic procedure is used in the Management Console.
- You need a list of which protocols you will be using, whether HTTP, HTTPS, or AJP.

## Procedure 19.5. Edit Configuration and add Socket Bindings

### 1. Configure the `jvmRoute` system property.

By default, the `jvmRoute` is set to the same value as the server name. If you need to customize it, you can use a command like the following. Replace or remove the `/profile=ha` portion of the command, depending on which profile you use or whether you use a standalone server. Replace the string `CUSTOM_ROUTE_NAME` with your custom `jvmRoute` name.

```
[user@localhost:9999 /] /profile=ha/subsystem=web:write-attribute(name="instance-id",value="CUSTOM_ROUTE_NAME")
```

### 2. List the connectors available in the web subsystem.

#### Note

This step is only necessary if you are not using the `ha` or `full-ha` profiles for either a standalone server, or a server group in a Managed Domain. Those configurations already include all of the necessary connectors.

In order for an external web server to be able to connect to JBoss EAP 6's web server, the web subsystem needs a connector. Each protocol needs its own connector, which is tied to a socket group.

To list the connectors currently available, issue the following command:

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=web:read-children-names(child-type=connector)
```

If there is no line indicating the connector you need (HTTP, HTTPS, AJP), you need to add the connector.

### 3. Read the configuration of a connector.

To see the details of how a connector is configured, you can read its configuration. The following command reads the configuration of the AJP connector. The other connectors have similar configuration output.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=web/connector=ajp:read-resource(recursive=true)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
```

```

    "result" => {
        "enable-lookups" => false,
        "enabled" => true,
        "max-post-size" => 2097152,
        "max-save-post-size" => 4096,
        "protocol" => "AJP/1.3",
        "redirect-port" => 8443,
        "scheme" => "http",
        "secure" => false,
        "socket-binding" => "ajp",
        "ssl" => undefined,
        "virtual-server" => undefined
    }
}

```

#### 4. Add the necessary connectors to the web subsystem.

To add a connector to the web subsystem, it needs to have a socket binding. The socket binding is added to the socket binding group used by your server or server group. The following steps assume that your server group is **server-group-one** and that your socket binding group is **standard-sockets**.

##### a. Add a socket to the socket binding group.

To add a socket to the socket binding group, issue the following command, replacing the protocol and port with the ones you need.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /socket-binding-group=standard-sockets/socket-binding=ajp:add(port=8009)
```

##### b. Add the socket binding to the web subsystem.

Issue the following command to add a connector to the web subsystem, substituting the socket binding name and protocol with the ones you need.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
/subsystem=web/connector=ajp:add(socket-binding=ajp,
protocol="AJP/1.3", enabled=true, scheme="http")
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 19.4. Clustering

### 19.4.1. Use TCP Communication for the Clustering Subsystem

By default, cluster nodes monitor each other's status using the UDP protocol. Some networks only allow TCP to be used. In this situation, you can add the **TCPING** protocol stack to your configuration and use it as the default mechanism. These configuration options are available in the command-line based Management CLI.

The **mod\_cluster** subsystem also uses UDP communication by default, and you can choose to use TCP here as well.

Refer to the following two procedures to configure JGroups and mod\_cluster subsystems to use TCP for network communication:

- » [Section 19.4.2, “Configure the JGroups Subsystem to Use TCP”](#)
- » [Section 19.4.3, “Disable Advertising for the mod\\_cluster Subsystem”](#)

[Report a bug](#)

## 19.4.2. Configure the JGroups Subsystem to Use TCP

By default, the JGroups subsystem communicates using multicast UDP. Use the following procedure to configure the JGroups subsystem to use unicast TCP instead.

To configure the mod\_cluster subsystem to use TCP as well, see [Section 19.4.3, “Disable Advertising for the mod\\_cluster Subsystem”](#).

### 1. Modify the following script to suit your environment.

Copy the following script into a text editor. If you use a different profile on a managed domain, change the profile name. If you use a standalone server, remove the `/profile=full-ha` portion of the commands. Modify the properties listed at the bottom of the command as follows. Each of these properties is optional.

#### **initial\_hosts**

A comma-separated list of the hosts which are considered well-known, and will be available to look up the initial membership.

#### **port\_range**

If desired, you can assign a port range. If you assign a port range of 2, and the initial port is 7600, then TCPPING will attempt to contact each host on ports 7600-7601. This property is optional.

#### **timeout**

An optional timeout value, in milliseconds, for cluster members.

#### **num\_initial\_members**

The number of nodes before the cluster is considered to be complete. This property is optional.

```
batch
## If tcp is already added then you can remove it ##
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp:remove
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp:add(transport={"type"
=>"TCP", "socket-binding" => "jgroups-tcp"})
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp/:add-
protocol(type=TCPPING)
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp/:add-
protocol(type=MERGE2)
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp/:add-
protocol(type=FD_SOCK, socket-binding=jgroups-tcp-fd)
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp/:add-protocol(type=FD)
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp/:add-
protocol(type=VERIFY_SUSPECT)
```

```

/profile=full-ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp/:add-
protocol(type=BARRIER)
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp/:add-
protocol(type=pbcst.NAKACK)
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp/:add-
protocol(type=UNICAST2)
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp/:add-
protocol(type=pbcst.STABLE)
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp/:add-
protocol(type=pbcst.GMS)
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp/:add-
protocol(type=UFC)
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp/:add-
protocol(type=MFC)
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp/:add-
protocol(type=FRAG2)
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp/:add-
protocol(type=RSVP)
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=jgroups:write-attribute(name=default-
stack,value=tcp)
run-batch
/profile=full-
ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp/protocol=TCPPING/property=initial_ho-
sts/:add(value="HostA[7600],HostB[7600]")
/profile=full-
ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp/protocol=TCPPING/property=port_range
/:add(value=0)
/profile=full-
ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp/protocol=TCPPING/property=timeout/:a-
dd(value=3000)
/profile=full-
ha/subsystem=jgroups/stack=tcp/protocol=TCPPING/property=num_initia-
l_members/:add(value=3)

```

## 2. Run the script in batch mode.



### Warning

The servers running the profile have to be shutdown before executing the batch file.

In a terminal emulator, navigate to the directory containing the **jboss-cli.sh** script and enter the command

```
./jboss-cli.sh -c --file=SCRIPT_NAME
```

where **SCRIPT\_NAME** is the name and path containing the script.

## Result

The **TCPPING** stack is now available to the JGroups subsystem. If it is used, the JGroups subsystem uses TCP for all network communication. To configure the **mod\_cluster** subsystem to use TCP as well, see [Section 19.4.3, “Disable Advertising for the mod\\_cluster Subsystem”](#).

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.4.3. Disable Advertising for the mod\_cluster Subsystem

By default, the **mod\_cluster** subsystem's balancer uses multicast UDP to advertise its availability to the background workers. If you wish, you can disable advertisement. Use the following procedure to configure this behavior.

#### Procedure 19.6.

##### 1. Modify the httpd configuration.

Modify the httpd configuration to disable server advertising and to use a proxy list instead. The proxy list is configured on the worker, and contains all of the **mod\_cluster**-enabled Web servers the worker can talk to.

The **mod\_cluster** configuration for the Web server is typically located in `/etc/httpd/` or the `etc/httpd/` directory within the httpd installation, if it is installed in a non-standard location. Refer to [Section 19.5.3, “Install the mod\\_cluster Module Into Apache HTTP Server or JBoss Enterprise Web Server \(Zip\)”,](#) and [Section 19.5.5, “Configure Server Advertisement Properties for Your mod\\_cluster-enabled Web Server”](#) for more information about the file itself. Open the file containing the virtual host which listens for MCPM requests (using the `EnableMCPMReceive` directive), and disable server advertising by changing the `ServerAdvertise` directive as follows.

```
ServerAdvertise Off
```

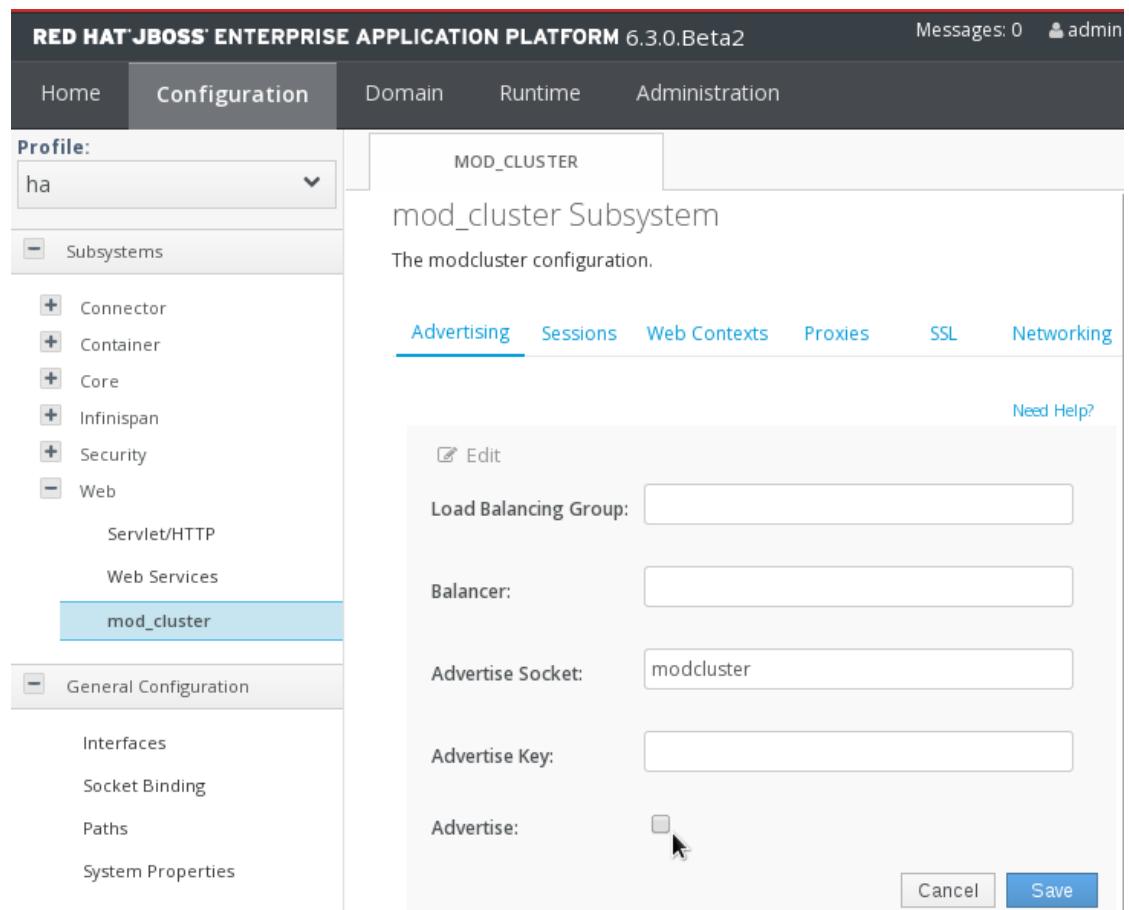
##### 2. Disable advertising within the mod\_cluster subsystem of JBoss EAP 6, and provide a list of proxies.

You can disable advertising for the **mod\_cluster** subsystem and provide a list of proxies, by using the web-based Management Console or the command-line Management CLI. The list of proxies is necessary because the **mod\_cluster** subsystem will not be able to automatically discover proxies if advertising is disabled.

###### A. Management Console

If you use a managed domain, you can only configure **mod\_cluster** in profiles where it is enabled, such as the **ha** and **full-ha** profiles.

- a. Log in to the Management Console and select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the screen. If you use a managed domain, select either the **ha** or **full-ha** profile from the **Profile** drop-down menu at the top left.
- b. Expand the **Subsystems** menu then expand the **Web** menu and select **mod\_cluster**.
- c. Click **Edit** under the **Advertising** tab under **mod\_cluster**. To disable advertising, clear the check box next to **Advertise**, and click **Save**.



**Figure 19.1. mod\_cluster Advertising Configuration Screen**

- d. Click the **Proxies** tab. Click **Edit** and enter a list of proxy servers in the **Proxy List** field. The correct syntax is a comma-separated list of **HOSTNAME:PORT** strings, like the following:

```
10.33.144.3:6666,10.33.144.1:6666
```

Click the **Save** button to finish.

## B. Management CLI

The following two Management CLI commands create the same configuration as the Management Console instructions above. They assume that you run a managed domain and that your server group uses the **full-ha** profile. If you use a different profile, change its name in the commands. If you use a standalone server using the **standalone-ha** profile, remove the **/profile=full-ha** portion of the commands.

```
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-
config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=advertise,value=false)

/profile=full-ha/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-
config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=proxy-
list,value="10.33.144.3:6666,10.33.144.1:6666")
```

## Result

The httpd balancer no longer advertises its presence to worker nodes and UDP multicast is no longer used.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 19.4.4. Switch UDP to TCP for HornetQ Clustering

The following example uses the default standalone-full-ha.xml file shipped with EAP 6.



#### Note

If security is enabled, you must set the cluster-password attribute:

```
<cluster-
password>${jboss.messaging.cluster.password:ChangeMe}</cluster-
password>
```

1. Remove the broadcast-groups and discovery-groups:

```
<broadcast-groups>
  <broadcast-group name="bg-group1">
    <socket-binding>messaging-group</socket-binding>
    <broadcast-period>5000</broadcast-period>
    <connector-ref>netty</connector-ref>
  </broadcast-group>
</broadcast-groups>
<discovery-groups>
  <discovery-group name="dg-group1">
    <socket-binding>messaging-group</socket-binding>
    <refresh-timeout>10000</refresh-timeout>
  </discovery-group>
</discovery-groups>
```

2. Optionally, remove the "messaging-group" socket-binding:

```
<socket-binding name="messaging-group" port="0" multicast-
address="${jboss.messaging.group.address:231.7.7.7}" multicast-
port="${jboss.messaging.group.port:9876}"/>
```

3. Configure the appropriate Netty connector(s) - one for each of the other nodes in the cluster.

For example, if the cluster is 3 nodes then configure 2 Netty connectors, etc., if the cluster is 2 nodes then configure 1 Netty connector, etc. Here is a sample configuration for a 3-node cluster:

```
<netty-connector name="other-cluster-node1" socket-binding="other-
cluster-node1"/>
<netty-connector name="other-cluster-node2" socket-binding="other-
cluster-node2"/>
```

#### 4. Configure the related socket bindings.

 **Note**

The system property substitution can be used for either "host" or "port", if required.

```
<outbound-socket-binding name="other-cluster-node1">
    <remote-destination host="otherNodeHostName1" port="5445"/>
</outbound-socket-binding>
<outbound-socket-binding name="other-cluster-node2">
    <remote-destination host="otherNodeHostName2" port="5445"/>
</outbound-socket-binding>
```

#### 5. Configure the cluster-connection to use these connectors instead of the discovery-group, which is used by default:

```
<cluster-connection name="my-cluster">
    <address>jms</address>
    <connector-ref>netty</connector-ref>
    <static-connectors>
        <connector-ref>other-cluster-node1</connector-ref>
        <connector-ref>other-cluster-node2</connector-ref>
    </static-connectors>
</cluster-connection>
```

This process has to be repeated on each of the cluster nodes so that each node has connectors to every other node in the cluster.

 **Note**

Do not configure a node with a connection to itself. This is considered as a misconfiguration.

[Report a bug](#)

## 19.5. Web, HTTP Connectors, and HTTP Clustering

### 19.5.1. About the mod\_cluster HTTP Connector

The *mod\_cluster* module enables load balancing in the JBoss Web container and is referred to as a connector. To learn about other connectors, see one of the following:

- » [Section 19.6.1, “About the Apache mod\\_jk HTTP Connector”](#)
- » [Section 19.8.1, “About the Internet Server API \(ISAPI\) HTTP Connector”](#)
- » [Section 19.9.1, “About the Netscape Server API \(NSAPI\) HTTP Connector”](#)

The mod\_cluster connector has several advantages over other connectors.

- » The *mod\_cluster Management Protocol* (MCMP) is an additional connection between the JBoss Enterprise Application Platform 6 servers and the Apache HTTP Server with the mod\_cluster module enabled. It is used by the JBoss Enterprise Application Platform servers to transmit server-side load balance factors and lifecycle events back to the Apache HTTP Server via a custom set of HTTP methods.
- » Dynamic configuration of Apache HTTP Server with mod\_cluster allows JBoss EAP 6 servers to join the load balancing arrangement without manual configuration.
- » JBoss EAP 6 performs the load-balancing factor calculations, rather than relying on the Apache HTTP Server with mod\_cluster. This makes load balancing metrics more accurate than other connectors.
- » The mod\_cluster connector gives fine-grained application lifecycle control. Each JBoss EAP 6 server forwards web application context lifecycle events to the Apache HTTP Server, informing it to start or stop routing requests for a given context. This prevents end users from seeing HTTP errors due to unavailable resources.
- » AJP, HTTP or HTTPS transports can be used.

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.5.2. Configure the mod\_cluster Subsystem

In the management console, the **mod\_cluster** options are available as part of the Web subsystem configuration area. Click the **Configuration** tab. If you use a managed domain, select the correct profile to configure from the **Profile** selection box at the top left. By default, the **ha** and **full-ha** profiles have the **mod\_cluster** subsystem enabled. If you use a standalone server, you need to use the **standalone-ha** or **standalone-full-ha** profile to start the server. Expand the **Web** menu in the and select **mod\_cluster**. The options are explained in the tables below. Overall configuration is shown first, followed by configuration of sessions, web contexts, proxies, SSL, and Networking. Each of these has its own tab within the **mod\_cluster** configuration screen.

#### Note

The **mod\_cluster** configuration page is only visible for **ha** and **full-ha** profiles. For a managed domain these profiles are **ha** and **full-ha**, and for a standalone server they are **standalone-ha** and **standalone-full-ha**.

**Table 19.4. mod\_cluster Configuration Options**

Option	Description	CLI Command
Load Balancing Group	If this is not null, requests are sent to a specific load balancing group on the load balancer. Leave this blank if you do not want to use load balancing groups. This is unset by default.	/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=load-balancing-group,value=myGroup)

Option	Description	CLI Command
Balancer	The name of the balancer. This must match the configuration of the httpd proxy.	/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster- config=configuration /:write- attribute(name=balan- cer,value=myBalancer )
Advertise Socket	The name of the socket binding to use for cluster advertising.	/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster- config=configuration /:write- attribute(name=adver- tise- socket,value=modclus- ter)
Advertise Security Key	A string containing the security key for advertising.	/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster- config=configuration /:write- attribute(name=adver- tise-security- key,value=myKey)
Advertise	Whether or not advertising is enabled. Defaults to <b>true</b> .	/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster- config=configuration /:write- attribute(name=adver- tise,value=true)

**Table 19.5. mod\_cluster Session Configuration Options**

Option	Description	CLI Command
--------	-------------	-------------

Option	Description	CLI Command
Sticky Session	Whether to use sticky sessions for requests. This means that after the client makes a connection to a specific cluster node, further communication is routed to that same node unless it becomes unavailable. This defaults to <b>true</b> , which is the recommended setting.	/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=sticky-session,value=true)
Sticky Session Force	If <b>true</b> , a request is not redirected to a new cluster node if its initial node becomes unavailable but instead it fails. This defaults to <b>false</b> .	/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=sticky-session-force,value=false)
Sticky Session Remove	Remove session information on failover. This defaults to <b>false</b> .	/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=sticky-session-remove,value=false)

**Table 19.6. mod\_cluster Web Context Configuration Options**

Option	Description	CLI Command
Auto Enable Contexts	Whether to add new contexts to <b>mod_cluster</b> by default or not. This defaults to <b>true</b> . If you change the default and need to enable context manually, the Web Application can enable its context using the <b>enable()</b> MBean method, or via the <b>mod_cluster</b> manager, which is a web application which runs on the httpd proxy on a named virtual host or port which is specified in that httpd's configuration.	/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=auto-enable-contexts,value=true)

Option	Description	CLI Command
Excluded Contexts	A comma-separated list of contexts that <b>mod_cluster</b> should ignore. If no host is indicated, the host is assumed to be <b>localhost</b> . <b>ROOT</b> indicates the root context of the Web Application. The default value is <b>ROOT,invoker,jbossws,juddi,console</b> .	/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=excluded-contexts,value="ROOT,invoker,jbossws,juddi,console")

**Table 19.7. mod\_cluster Proxy Configuration Options**

Option	Description	CLI Command
Proxy URL	If defined, this value will be prepended to the URL of MCMP commands.	/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=proxy-url,value=myhost)
Proxy List	A comma-separated list of httpd proxy addresses, in the format <b>hostname:port</b> . This indicates the list of proxies that the <b>mod_cluster</b> process will attempt to communicate with initially.	/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=proxy-list,value="127.0.0.1,127.0.0.2")

### Configure SSL Communication for mod\_cluster

By default, **mod\_cluster** communication happens over an unencrypted HTTP link. If you set the connector scheme to **HTTPS** (refer to [Table 19.5, “mod\\_cluster Session Configuration Options”](#)), the settings below tell **mod\_cluster** where to find the information to encrypt the connection.

**Table 19.8. mod\_cluster SSL Configuration Options**

Option	Description	CLI Command
--------	-------------	-------------

Option	Description	CLI Command
ssl	Whether to enable SSL. Defaults to <b>false</b> .	/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=ssl,value=true)
Key Alias	The key alias, which was chosen when the certificate was created.	/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=key-alias,value=jboss)
Key Store	The location of the key store containing client certificates.	/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=key-store,value=System.getProperty("user.home") + "/.keystore")
Key Store Type	The key store type	/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=key-store-type,value=JKS)
Key Store Provider	The key store provider.	/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/ssl=configuration/:write-attribute(name=key-store-provider,value=IBMJCE)

Option	Description	CLI Command
Password	The password, which was chosen when the certificate was created.	<pre>/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster- config=configuration /ssl=configuration/: write- attribute(name=passw ord,value=changeit)</pre>
Trust Algorithm	The algorithm of the trust manager factory.	<pre>/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster- config=configuration /ssl=configuration/: write- attribute(name=trust - algorithm,value=PKIX )</pre>
Cert File	The location of the certificate file.	<pre>/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster- config=configuration /ssl=configuration/: write- attribute(name=ca- certificate- file,value=\${user.ho me}/jboss.crt)</pre>
CRL File	Certificate revocation list file.	<pre>/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster- config=configuration /ssl=configuration/: write- attribute(name=ca- crl- file,value=\${user.ho me}/jboss.crl)</pre>

Option	Description	CLI Command
Max Certificate Length	The maximum length of a certificate held in the trust store. Defaults to <b>5</b> .	<pre>/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster- config=configuration /ssl=configuration/: write- attribute(name=trust- -max-cert- length,value=5)</pre>
Key File	The location of the key file for the certificate.	<pre>/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster- config=configuration /ssl=configuration/: write- attribute(name=certificate-key- file,value=\${user.home}/.keystore)</pre>
Cipher Suite	The allowed encryption cipher suite.	<pre>/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster- config=configuration /ssl=configuration/: write- attribute(name=cipher-suite,value=ALL)</pre>
Certificate Encoding Algorithms	The algorithm of the key manager factory.	<pre>/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster- config=configuration /ssl=configuration/: write- attribute(name=encoding- algorithms,value=ALL )</pre>
Revocation URL	The URL of the Certificate Authority revocation list.	<pre>/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster- config=configuration /ssl=configuration/: write- attribute(name=ca- revocation- url,value=jboss.crl)</pre>

Option	Description	CLI Command
Protocol	<p>The SSL protocols, which are enabled.</p> <p>You can also specify a combination of protocols, which is comma separated. For example, TLSv1, TLSv1.1,TLSv1.2.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Warning</b>            Red Hat recommends that you explicitly disable SSL in favor of TLSv1.1 or TLSv1.2 in all affected packages.         </div>	<pre>/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster- config=configuration /ssl=configuration/: write- attribute(name=proto col,value="TLSv1, TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2")</pre>

## Configure mod\_cluster Networking Options

The available **mod\_cluster** networking options control several different timeout behaviors for different types of services with which the **mod\_cluster** service communicates.

**Table 19.9. mod\_cluster Networking Configuration Options**

Option	Description	CLI Command
Node Timeout	<p>Timeout (in seconds) for proxy connections to a node. That is the time <b>mod_cluster</b> will wait for the back-end response before returning error. That corresponds to timeout in the worker <b>mod_proxy</b> documentation. A value of <b>-1</b> indicates no timeout. Note that <b>mod_cluster</b> always uses a cping/cpong before forwarding a request and the <b>connectiontimeout</b> value used by <b>mod_cluster</b> is the ping value.</p>	<pre>/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster- config=configuration /:write- attribute(name=node- timeout,value=-1)</pre>
Socket Timeout	<p>Number of milliseconds to wait for a response from an httpd proxy to MCMP commands before timing out, and flagging the proxy as in error.</p>	<pre>/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster- config=configuration /:write- attribute(name=socke t-timeout,value=20)</pre>

Option	Description	CLI Command
Stop Context Timeout	The amount of time, measure in units specified by stopContextTimeoutUnit, for which to wait for clean shutdown of a context (completion of pending requests for a distributable context; or destruction/expiration of active sessions for a non-distributable context).	/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=stop-context-timeout,value=10)
Session Draining Strategy	<p>Whether to drain sessions before undeploying a web application.</p> <p><b>DEFAULT</b> Drain sessions before web application undeploy only if the web application is non-distributable.</p> <p><b>ALWAYS</b> Always drain sessions before web application undeploy, even for distributable web applications.</p> <p><b>NEVER</b> Do not drain sessions before web application undeploy, even for non-distributable web application.</p>	/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=session-draining-strategy,value=DEFAULT)
Max Attempts	Number of times an httpd proxy will attempt to send a given request to a worker before giving up. The minimum value is <b>1</b> , meaning try only once. The <b>mod_proxy</b> default is also 1, which means that no retry occurs.	/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=max-attempts,value=1)
Flush Packets	Whether or not to enable packet flushing to the Web server. Defaults to <b>false</b> .	/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=flush-packets,value=false)

Option	Description	CLI Command
Flush Wait	How long, in seconds, to wait before flushing packets to the Web server. Defaults to <b>-1</b> . A value of <b>-1</b> means to wait forever before flushing packets.	/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster-config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=flush-wait,value=-1)
Ping	How long, in seconds, to wait for a response to a ping from a cluster node. Defaults to <b>10</b> seconds.	/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster-config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=ping,value=10)
SMAX	Soft maximum idle connection count (the same as <b>smax</b> in worker mod_proxy documentation). The maximum value depends on the httpd thread configuration, and can be either <b>ThreadsPerChild</b> or <b>1</b> .	profile=full-ha/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=smax,value=ThreadsPerChild)
TTL	Time to live (in seconds) for idle connections above smax, default is 60  When <b>nodeTimeout</b> is not defined the <b>ProxyTimeout</b> directive <b>Proxy</b> is used. If <b>ProxyTimeout</b> is not defined the server timeout <b>Timeout</b> is used. This defaults to 300 seconds. <b>nodeTimeout</b> , <b>ProxyTimeout</b> , and <b>Timeout</b> are set at the socket level.	/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster-config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=ttl,value=-1)
Node Timeout	How long, in seconds, to wait for an available worker process from the external Web server to process a request. Defaults to <b>-1</b> , which means that mod_cluster waits indefinitely for the httpd worker to process the request.	/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster-config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=node-timeout,value=-1)

## mod\_cluster Load Provider Configuration Options

The following **mod\_cluster** configuration options are not available in the management console, but can only be set using the management CLI.

A simple load provider is used if no dynamic load provider is present. It assigns each cluster member a load factor of **1**, and distributes work evenly without applying a load balancing algorithm. To add it, use the following management CLI command.

```
/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/simple-load-provider:add
```

A dynamic load provider can be configured to use a variety of algorithms in combination, in order to determine which cluster node receives the next request. You can create a load provider and configure it to suit your environment, and you can have more than one load metric active simultaneously by adding them via the CLI. The default dynamic load provider uses **busyness** as the determining load metric. The dynamic load provider options and possible load metrics are shown below.

**Table 19.10. mod\_cluster Dynamic Load Provider Options**

Option	Description	CLI Command
Decay	The factor by which historical metrics should decay in significance.	<pre>/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster- config=configuration /dynamic-load- provider=configuration/:write- attribute(name=decay ,value=2)</pre>
History	The number of historic load metric records to consider when determining the load.	<pre>/subsystem=modcluster /mod-cluster- config=configuration /dynamic-load- provider=configuration/:write- attribute(name=histo ry,value=9)</pre>

Option	Description	CLI Command
Load Metric	The default load metric included with the dynamic load provider in JBoss EAP 6 is <b>busyness</b> , which calculates the load of the worker node from the amount of threads in the thread pool being busy serving requests. You can set the capacity of this metric by which the actual load is divided: calculated_load / capacity. You can set multiple load metrics within the dynamic load provider.	/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/dynamic-load-provider=configuration/load-metric=busyness/:write-attribute(name=capacity,value=1.0)
		/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/dynamic-load-provider=configuration/load-metric=busyness/:write-attribute(name=type,value=busyness)
		/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/dynamic-load-provider=configuration/load-metric=busyness/:write-attribute(name=weight,value=1)

## Load Metric Algorithms

### cpu

The **cpu** load metric uses average CPU load to determine which cluster node receives the next work load.

### mem

The **mem** load metric uses free native memory as a load metric. Usage of this metric is discouraged because it provides a value that includes buffers and cache, so it is always a very low figure on every decent system with good memory management.

### heap

The **heap** load metric uses the heap usage to determine which cluster receives the next

The **next** load metric uses the round robin to determine which cluster receives the next work load.

### sessions

The **session** load metric uses the number of active sessions as a metric.

### requests

The **requests** load metric uses the number of client requests to determine which cluster node receives the next work load. For instance, capacity 1000 means that 1000 requests/sec is considered to be a full load.

### send-traffic

The **send-traffic** load metric uses the amount of traffic sent from the worker node to the clients. E.g. the default capacity of 512 indicates that the node should be considered under full load if the average outbound traffic is 512 KB/s or higher.

### receive-traffic

The receive-traffic load metric uses the amount of traffic sent to the worker node from the clients. E.g. the default capacity of 1024 indicates that the node should be considered under full load if the average inbound traffic is 1024 KB/s or higher.

### busyness

This metric represents the amount of threads from the thread pool being busy serving requests.

#### **Example 19.1. Add a Load Metric**

To add a load metric, use the **add-metric** command.

```
/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/:add-metric(type=sessions)
```

#### **Example 19.2. Set a Value for an Existing Metric**

To set a value for an existing metric, use the **write-attribute** command.

```
/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/dynamic-load-provider=configuration/load-metric=cpu/:write-attribute(name="weight",value="3")
```

#### **Example 19.3. Change the Value of an Existing Metric**

To change the value of an existing metric, use the **write-attribute** command.

```
/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/dynamic-load-provider=configuration/load-metric=cpu/:write-attribute(name="type",value="busyness")
```

#### **Example 19.4. Remove an Existing Metric**

To remove an existing metric, use the **remove-metric** command.

```
/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-config=configuration/:remove-metric(type=sessions)
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.5.3. Install the mod\_cluster Module Into Apache HTTP Server or JBoss Enterprise Web Server (Zip)

#### Prerequisites

- » To perform this task, you must be using Apache HTTP Server installed in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6, or JBoss Enterprise Web Server, or the standalone Apache HTTP Server included as a separate downloadable component of JBoss EAP 6.
- » If you need to install Apache HTTP Server in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6, use the instructions from the *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Deployment Guide*.
- » If you need to install the standalone Apache HTTP Server included as a separate downloadable component of JBoss EAP 6, refer to [Section 19.3.2, “Install the Apache HTTP Server included with JBoss EAP 6 \(Zip\)”.](#)
- » If you need to install JBoss Enterprise Web Server, use the instructions from the *JBoss Enterprise Web Server Installation Guide*.
- » Download the **Webserver Connector Natives** package for your operating system and architecture from the Red Hat Customer Portal at <https://access.redhat.com>. This package contains the mod\_cluster binary web server modules precompiled for your operating system. After you extract the archive, the modules are located in the **EAP\_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/native/lib/httpd/modules** directory.

The **etc/** directory contains some example configuration files, and the **share/** directory contains some supplemental documentation.

- » You must be logged in with administrative (root) privileges.



#### Note

If you use a 64 bit system the mod\_cluster binary web server modules will be located here: **EAP\_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/native/lib64/httpd/modules**. You must use this path whenever you need access to the modules.

#### Procedure 19.7. Install the mod\_cluster Module

1. **Determine your Apache HTTP Server configuration location.**

Your Apache HTTP Server configuration location will be different depending on whether you are using Red Hat Enterprise Linux's Apache HTTP Server, the standalone Apache HTTP Server included as a separate downloadable component with JBoss EAP 6, or the Apache HTTP Server available in JBoss Enterprise Web Server. It is one of the following three options, and is referred to in the rest of this task as **HTTPD\_HOME**.

- » Apache HTTP Server - **/etc/httpd/**
- » JBoss EAP 6 Apache HTTP Server - This location is chosen by you, based on the requirements of your infrastructure.
- » JBoss Enterprise Web Server Apache HTTP Server - **EWS\_HOME/httpd/**

## 2. Copy the modules to the Apache HTTP Server modules directory.

Copy the four modules (the files ending in **.so**) from the **EAP\_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/native/lib/httpd/modules** directory of the extracted Webserver Natives archive to the **HTTPD\_HOME/modules/** directory.

## 3. For JBoss Enterprise Web Server, disable the mod\_proxy\_balancer module.

If you use JBoss Enterprise Web Server, the **mod\_proxy\_balancer** module is enabled by default. It is incompatible with **mod\_cluster**. To disable it, edit the **HTTPD\_HOME/conf/httpd.conf** and comment out the following line by placing a # (hash) symbol before the line which loads the module. The line is shown without the comment and then with it, below.

```
LoadModule proxy_balancer_module modules/mod_proxy_balancer.so
```

```
# LoadModule proxy_balancer_module modules/mod_proxy_balancer.so
```

Save and close the file.

## 4. Configure the mod\_cluster module.

The Webserver Natives archive contains a sample **mod\_cluster.conf** file (**EAP\_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/native/etc/httpd/conf**). This file can be used as a guide or copied and edited to create a **HTTPD\_HOME/httpd/conf.d/JBoss\_HTTP.conf** file.



### Note

Using the name **JBoss\_HTTP.conf** is an arbitrary convention in this document. The configuration file will be loaded, regardless of its name, if it is saved in the **conf.d/** directory with the **.conf** extension.

Add the following to your configuration file:

```
LoadModule slotmem_module modules/mod_slotmem.so
LoadModule manager_module modules/mod_manager.so
LoadModule proxy_cluster_module modules/mod_proxy_cluster.so
LoadModule advertise_module modules/mod_advertise.so
```

This causes Apache HTTP Server to automatically load the modules that **mod\_cluster** needs in order to function.

## 5. Create a proxy server listener.

Continue editing **HTTPD\_HOME/httpd/conf.d/JBoss\_HTTP.conf** and add the following minimal configuration, replacing the values in capital letters with suitable values for your environment.

```

Listen IP_ADDRESS:PORT
<VirtualHost IP_ADDRESS:PORT>
    <Location />
        Order deny,allow
        Deny from all
        Allow from *.MYDOMAIN.COM
    </Location>

    KeepAliveTimeout 60
    MaxKeepAliveRequests 0
    EnableMCPMReceive On

    ManagerBalancerName mycluster
    ServerAdvertise On

</VirtualHost>
```

These directives create a new virtual server which listens on **IP\_ADDRESS:PORT**, allows connections from **MYDOMAIN.COM**, and advertises itself as a balancer called **mycluster**. These directives are covered in detail in the documentation for Apache Web Server. To learn more about the **ServerAdvertise** and **EnableMCPMReceive** directives, and the implications of server advertisement, see [Section 19.5.5, “Configure Server Advertisement Properties for Your mod\\_cluster-enabled Web Server”](#).

Save the file and exit.

## 6. Restart the Apache HTTP Server.

The way to restart the Apache HTTP Server depends on whether you are using Red Hat Enterprise Linux's Apache HTTP Server or the Apache HTTP Server included in JBoss Enterprise Web Server. Choose one of the two methods below.

### A. Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Apache HTTP Server

Issue the following command:

```
[root@host]# service httpd restart
```

### B. JBoss Enterprise Web Server HTTP Server

JBoss Enterprise Web Server runs on both Red Hat Enterprise Linux and Microsoft Windows Server. The method for restarting the Apache HTTP Server is different for each.

#### A. Red Hat Enterprise Linux

In Red Hat Enterprise Linux, JBoss Enterprise Web Server installs its Apache HTTP Server as a service. To restart the Apache HTTP Server, issue the following two commands:

```
[root@host ~]# service httpd stop
[root@host ~]# service httpd start
```

## B. Microsoft Windows Server

Issue the following commands in a command prompt with administrative privileges:

```
C:\> net stop httpd
C:\> net start httpd
```

### Result

The Apache HTTP Server is now configured as a load balancer, and can work with the **mod\_cluster** subsystem running JBoss EAP 6. To configure JBoss EAP 6 to be aware of mod\_cluster, see [Section 19.5.6, “Configure a mod\\_cluster Worker Node”](#).

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.5.4. Install the mod\_cluster Module Into Apache HTTP Server or JBoss Enterprise Web Server (RPM)

#### Prerequisites

- » To perform this task, you must be using the Apache HTTP Server installed in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6, JBoss Enterprise Web Server, or the standalone Apache HTTP Server included as a separate downloadable component of JBoss EAP 6.
- » If you need to install Apache HTTP Server in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6, use the instructions from the *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Deployment Guide*.
- » If you need to install the standalone Apache HTTP Server included as a separate downloadable component of JBoss EAP 6, refer to [Section 19.3.2, “Install the Apache HTTP Server included with JBoss EAP 6 \(Zip\)”](#).
- » If you need to install JBoss Enterprise Web Server, use the instructions from the *JBoss Enterprise Web Server Installation Guide*.
- » You must be logged in with administrative (root) privileges.
- » You must have an active subscription to the **jbaappplatform-6-*ARCH*-server-*VERS*-rpm** RHN channel.

The RPM installation method is similar between Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 and 6, only requiring minor variations for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 users who have Apache HTTP Server 2.2.15 installed.

1. Install the **mod\_cluster-native** package using YUM:

```
yum install mod_cluster-native
```

2. **Apache HTTP Server 2.2.15**:

- » If you choose to stay on Apache HTTP Server 2.2.15, you must disable the **mod\_proxy\_balancer** module loaded by default by commenting the **LoadModule proxy\_balancer\_module** line in the httpd.conf file.

Either edit the file manually or use the following command:

```
sed -i 's/^LoadModule proxy_balancer_module/#LoadModule proxy_balancer_module/;s/$//' /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf
```

- » If you choose to upgrade to Apache HTTP Server 2.2.26, install the latest version using the following command.

```
yum install httpd
```

3. To have the Apache HTTP Server service start at boot, enter the following command:

- A. For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 and 6:

```
service httpd add
```

- B. For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7:

```
systemctl enable httpd22.service
```

4. Start the mod\_cluster balancer with the following command:

- A. For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 and 6:

```
service httpd start
```

- B. For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7:

```
systemctl start httpd22.service
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 19.5.5. Configure Server Advertisement Properties for Your mod\_cluster-enabled Web Server

### Summary

For instructions on configuring your web server to interact with the mod\_cluster load balancer, see [Section 19.5.3, “Install the mod\\_cluster Module Into Apache HTTP Server or JBoss Enterprise Web Server \(Zip\)”](#). One aspect of the configuration which needs more explanation is *server advertisement*.

When server advertisement is active, the web server broadcasts messages containing the IP address and port number specified in the mod\_cluster virtual host. To configure these values, see [Section 19.5.3, “Install the mod\\_cluster Module Into Apache HTTP Server or JBoss Enterprise Web Server \(Zip\)”](#). If UDP multicast is not available on your network, or you prefer to configure worker nodes with a static list of proxy servers, you can disable server advertisement and manually configure the worker nodes. See [Section 19.5.6, “Configure a mod\\_cluster Worker Node”](#) for information on configuring a worker node.

The changes in this procedure need to be made to the `httpd.conf` associated with your Apache HTTP Server instance. This is often `/etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf` in Red Hat Enterprise Linux, or may be in the `etc/` directory of your standalone Apache HTTP Server instance.

### Procedure 19.8. Edit the httpd.conf file and implement the changes

1. Disable the `AdvertiseFrequency` parameter, if it exists.

If you have a line like the following in your <**VirtualHost**> statement, comment it out by putting a # (hash) character before the first character. The value may be different from **5**.

```
AdvertiseFrequency 5
```

## 2. Add the directive to disable server advertisement.

Add the following directive inside the <**VirtualHost**> statement, to disable server advertisement.

```
ServerAdvertise Off
```

## 3. Enable the ability to receive MCPM messages.

Add the following directive to allow the Web server to receive MCPM messages from the worker nodes.

```
EnableMCPMReceive On
```

## 4. Restart the Web server.

Restart the Web server by issuing one of the following, depending on whether you use Red Hat Enterprise Linux or Microsoft Windows Server.

### A. Red Hat Enterprise Linux

```
[root@host ]# service httpd restart
```

### B. Microsoft Windows Server

```
C:\> net service http  
C:\> net service httpd start
```

## Result

The web server no longer advertises the IP address and port of your mod\_cluster proxy. To reiterate, you need to configure your worker nodes to use a static address and port to communicate with the proxy. See [Section 19.5.6, “Configure a mod\\_cluster Worker Node”](#) for more details.

[Report a bug](#)

## 19.5.6. Configure a mod\_cluster Worker Node

### Summary

A mod\_cluster worker node consists of a JBoss EAP 6 server. This server can be part of a server group in a Managed Domain, or a standalone server. A separate process runs within JBoss EAP 6, which manages all of the nodes of the cluster. This is called the master. For more conceptual information about worker nodes, refer to [Section 19.1.4, “Worker Node”](#). For an overview of web server load balancing, refer to [Section 19.1.3, “Overview of HTTP Connectors”](#).

The load-balancing web server is configured via the **mod\_cluster** subsystem. To configure the **mod\_cluster** subsystem, refer to *Configure the mod\_cluster Subsystem* in the *Administration and Configuration Guide*.

Worker nodes in a managed domain shares an identical configuration across a server group. Worker nodes running as standalone servers are configured individually. The configuration steps are otherwise identical.

## Worker Node Configuration

- » A standalone server must be started with the **standalone-ha** or **standalone-full-ha** profile.
- » A server group in a managed domain must use the **ha** or **full-ha** profile, and the **ha-sockets** or **full-ha-sockets** socket binding group. JBoss EAP 6 ships with a cluster-enabled server group called **other-server-group** which meets these requirements.



### Note

Where Management CLI commands are given, they assume you use a managed domain. If you use a standalone server, remove the **/profile=full-ha** portion of the commands.

## Procedure 19.9. Configure a Worker Node

### 1. Configure the network interfaces.

By default, the network interfaces all default to **127.0.0.1**. Every physical host that hosts either a standalone server or one or more servers in a server group needs its interfaces to be configured to use its public IP address, which the other servers can see.

To change the IP address of a JBoss EAP 6 host, you need to shut it down and edit its configuration file directly. This is because the Management API which drives the Management Console and Management CLI relies on a stable management address.

Follow these steps to change the IP address on each server in your cluster to the master's public IP address.

- a. Start the JBoss EAP server using the profile described earlier in this topic.
- b. Launch the Management CLI, using the **EAP\_HOME/bin/jboss-cli.sh** command in Linux or the **EAP\_HOME\bin\jboss-cli.bat** command in Microsoft Windows Server. Type **connect** to connect to the domain controller on the localhost, or **connect IP\_ADDRESS** to connect to a domain controller on a remote server.
- c. Modify the external IP address for the **management**, **public** and **unsecure** interfaces by typing the following commands. Be sure to replace **EXTERNAL\_IP\_ADDRESS** in the command with the actual external IP address of the host.

```
/interface=management:write-attribute(name=inet-
address,value="${jboss.bind.address.management:EXTERNAL_IP_
ADDRESS}")
/interface=public:write-attribute(name=inet-
address,value="${jboss.bind.address.public:EXTERNAL_IP_ADDR-
ESS}")
```

```
/interface=unsecure:write-attribute(name=inet-
address,value="${jboss.bind.address.unsecure:EXTERNAL_IP_ADDRESS}"
:reload
```

You should see the following result for each command.

```
"outcome" => "success"
```

- d. For hosts that participate in a managed domain but are not the master, you must change the host name from **master** to a unique name. This name must be unique across slaves and will be used for the slave to identify to the cluster, so make a note of the name you use.

- i. Start the JBoss EAP slave host using the following syntax:

```
bin/domain.sh --host-config=HOST_SLAVE_XML_FILE_NAME
```

For example:

```
bin/domain.sh --host-config=host-slave01.xml
```

- ii. Launch the Management CLI.
  - iii. Use the following syntax to replace the host name:

```
/host=master:write-
attribute(name="name",value=UNIQUE_HOST_SLAVE_NAME)
```

For example:

```
/host=master:write-attribute(name="name",value="host-
slave01")
```

You should see the following result.

```
"outcome" => "success"
```

This modifies the XML in the **host-slave01.xml** file as follows:

```
<host name="host-slave01" xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:1.6">
```

- e. For newly configured hosts that need to join a managed domain, you must remove the **local** element and add the **remote** element **host** attribute that points to the domain controller. This step does not apply for a standalone server.

- i. Start the JBoss EAP slave host using the following syntax:

```
bin/domain.sh --host-config=HOST_SLAVE_XML_FILE_NAME
```

For example:

```
bin/domain.sh --host-config=host-slave01.xml
```

- ii. Launch the Management CLI.
- iii. Use the following syntax specify the domain controller:

```
/host=UNIQUE_HOST_SLAVE_NAME/:write-remote-domain-
controller(host=DOMAIN_CONTROLLER_IP_ADDRESS,port=${jbo
ss.domain.master.port:9999},security-
realm="ManagementRealm")
```

For example:

```
/host=host-slave01/:write-remote-domain-
controller(host="192.168.1.200",port=${jboss.domain.m
aster.port:9999},security-realm="ManagementRealm")
```

You should see the following result.

```
"outcome" => "success"
```

This modifies the XML in the **host-slave01.xml** file as follows:

```
<domain-controller>
  <remote host="192.168.1.200"
port="${jboss.domain.master.port:9999}" security-
realm="ManagementRealm"/>
</domain-controller>
```

## 2. Configure authentication for each slave server.

Each slave server needs a username and password created in the domain controller's or standalone master's **ManagementRealm**. On the domain controller or standalone master, run the **EAP\_HOME/bin/add-user.sh** command. Add a user with the same username as the slave, to the **ManagementRealm**. When asked if this user will need to authenticate to an external JBoss AS instance, answer **yes**. An example of the input and output of the command is below, for a slave called **slave1**, with password **changeme**.

```
user:bin user$ ./add-user.sh

What type of user do you wish to add?
a) Management User (mgmt-users.properties)
b) Application User (application-users.properties)
(a): a

Enter the details of the new user to add.
Realm (ManagementRealm) :
Username : slave1
Password : changeme
Re-enter Password : changeme
About to add user 'slave1' for realm 'ManagementRealm'
Is this correct yes/no? yes
Added user 'slave1' to file '/home/user/jboss-eap-
6.0/standalone/configuration/mgmt-users.properties'
Added user 'slave1' to file '/home/user/jboss-eap-
6.0/domain/configuration/mgmt-users.properties'
```

Is this new user going to be used for one AS process to connect to another AS process e.g. slave domain controller?  
yes/no? yes  
To represent the user add the following to the server-identities definition <secret value="Y2hhbmldlbWU=" />

### 3. Copy the Base64-encoded <secret> element from the add-user.sh output.

If you plan to specify the Base64-encoded password value for authentication, copy the <secret> element value from the last line of the **add-user.sh** output as you will need it in the step below.

### 4. Modify the slave host's security realm to use the new authentication.

You can specify the secret value in one of the following ways:

#### A. Specify the Base64-encoded password value in the server configuration file using the Management CLI.

- Launch the Management CLI, using the **EAP\_HOME/bin/jboss-cli.sh** command in Linux or the **EAP\_HOME\bin\jboss-cli.bat** command in Microsoft Windows Server. Type **connect** to connect to the domain controller on the localhost, or **connect IP\_ADDRESS** to connect to a domain controller on a remote server.
- Specify the secret value by typing the following command. Be sure to replace the **SECRET\_VALUE** with the secret value returned from the **add-user** output from the previous step.

```
/core-service=management/security-
realm=ManagementRealm/server-
identity=secret: add(value="SECRET_VALUE")
:reload
```

You should see the following result for each command.

"outcome" => "success"

#### B. Configure the host to get the password from the vault.

- Use the **vault.sh** script to generate a masked password. It will generate a string like the following:  
**VAULT::secret::password::ODVmYmJjNGMtZDU2ZC00YmN1LWE40DMtZjQ1NWNmNDU4ZDc1TE10RV9CUkVBS3ZhdWx0.**

You can find more information on the vault in the Password Vaults for Sensitive Strings section of this guide starting here: [Section 11.13.1, “Password Vault System”](#).

- Launch the Management CLI, using the **EAP\_HOME/bin/jboss-cli.sh** command in Linux or the **EAP\_HOME\bin\jboss-cli.bat** command in Microsoft Windows Server. Type **connect** to connect to the domain controller on the localhost, or **connect IP\_ADDRESS** to connect to a domain controller on a remote server.

- c. Specify the secret value by typing the following command. Be sure to replace the **SECRET\_VALUE** with the masked password generated in the previous step.

```
/core-service=management/security-
realm=ManagementRealm/server-
identity=secret:add(value="${VAULT::secret::password::SEC
RET_VALUE}")
:reload
```

You should see the following result for each command.

```
"outcome" => "success"
```

### Note

When creating a password in the vault, it must be specified in plain text, not Base64-encoded.

## C. Specify the password as a system property.

The following examples use **server.identity.password** as the system property name for the password.

- a. Specify the system property for the password in the server configuration file using the Management CLI.
  - i. Launch the Management CLI, using the **EAP\_HOME/bin/jboss-cli.sh** command in Linux or the **EAP\_HOME\bin\jboss-cli.bat** command in Microsoft Windows Server. Type **connect** to connect to the domain controller on the localhost, or **connect IP\_ADDRESS** to connect to a domain controller on a remote server.
  - ii. Type the following command to configure the secret identity to use the system property.

```
/core-service=management/security-
realm=ManagementRealm/server-
identity=secret:add(value="${server.identity.password}")
:reload
```

You should see the following result for each command.

```
"outcome" => "success"
```

- b. When you specify the password as a system property, you can configure the host in either of the following ways:
  - A. Start the server entering the password in plain text as a command line argument, for example:

```
-Dserver.identity.password=changeme
```



### Note

The password must be entered in plain text and will be visible to anyone who issues a `ps -ef` command.

- B. Place the password in a properties file and pass the properties file URL as a command line argument.
  - i. Add the key/value pair to a properties file. For example:

```
server.identity.password=changeme
```

- ii. Start the server with the command line arguments

```
--properties=URL_TO_PROPERTIES_FILE
```

## 5. Restart the server.

The slave will now authenticate to the master using its host name as the username and the encrypted string as its password.

### Result

Your standalone server, or servers within a server group of a managed domain, are now configured as mod\_cluster worker nodes. If you deploy a clustered application, its sessions are replicated to all cluster nodes for failover, and it can accept requests from an external Web server or load balancer. Each node of the cluster discovers the other nodes using automatic discovery, by default. To configure automatic discovery, and the other specific settings of the `mod_cluster` subsystem, see [Section 19.5.2, “Configure the mod\\_cluster Subsystem”](#). To configure the Apache HTTP Server, see [Section 19.3.5, “Use an External Web Server as the Web Front-end for JBoss EAP 6 Applications”](#).

[Report a bug](#)

## 19.5.7. Migrate Traffic between Clusters

### Summary

After creating a new cluster using JBoss EAP 6, you may want to migrate traffic from a previous cluster to the new one as part of an upgrade process. In this task, you will see the strategy that can be used to migrate this traffic with minimal outage or downtime.

### Prerequisites

- » A new cluster setup: [Section 19.5.2, “Configure the mod\\_cluster Subsystem”](#) (We will call this cluster: Cluster NEW).
- » An old cluster setup that is being made redundant (We will call this cluster: Cluster OLD).

### Procedure 19.10. Upgrade Process for Clusters

1. Setup your new cluster using the steps described in the prerequisites.

2. In both Cluster NEW and Cluster OLD, make sure that the configuration option **sticky-session** is set to **true** (this is **true** by default). Enabling this option means that all new requests made to a cluster node in either cluster will continue to go to that node.

```
/profile=full-ha/subsystem=modcluster/mod-cluster-
config=configuration/:write-attribute(name=sticky-
session,value=true)
```

3. Add the nodes in Cluster NEW to the mod\_cluster configuration individually using the process described here: [Section 19.5.6, “Configure a mod\\_cluster Worker Node”](#)
4. Configure the load balancer (mod\_cluster) to stop the individual contexts in Cluster OLD. Stopping contexts (as opposed to disabling them) in Cluster OLD will allow the individual contexts to shutdown gracefully (and eventually shutdown the whole node). Existing sessions will still be served, but no new sessions will be directed to those nodes. The stopped contexts may take several minutes to several hours to stop.

You can use the following CLI command to stop a context. Replace the parameter values with values that are relevant in your environment.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 subsystem=modcluster] :stop-
context(context=/myapp, virtualhost=default-host, waittime=50)
```

## Result

You have successfully upgraded a JBoss EAP 6 Cluster.

[Report a bug](#)

## 19.6. Apache mod\_jk

### 19.6.1. About the Apache mod\_jk HTTP Connector

Apache **mod\_jk** is a HTTP connector which is provided for customers who need it for compatibility purposes. It provides load balancing, and is a part of the **jboss-eap-native-webserver-connectors** that is contained in JBoss Web Container. For supported platforms, see <https://access.redhat.com/site/articles/111663>. The **mod\_jk** connector is maintained by Apache, and its documentation is located at <http://tomcat.apache.org/connectors-doc/>.

JBoss EAP 6 can accept workloads from an Apache HTTP proxy server. The proxy server accepts client requests from the web front-end, and passes the work to participating JBoss EAP 6 servers. If sticky sessions are enabled, the same client request always goes to the same JBoss EAP 6 server, unless the server is unavailable.

Unlike the JBoss **mod\_cluster** HTTP connector, an Apache **mod\_jk** HTTP connector does not know the status of deployments on servers or server groups, and cannot adapt where it sends its work accordingly.

Just like **mod\_cluster**, **mod\_jk** communicates over the AJP 1.3 protocol.



## Note

**mod\_cluster** is a more advanced load balancer than **mod\_jk**. **mod\_cluster** provides all of the functionality of **mod\_jk** and additional features. For more information about **mod\_cluster**, see [Section 19.5.1, “About the mod\\_cluster HTTP Connector”](#).

**Next step: Configure a JBoss EAP 6 instance to participate in a mod\_jk load balancing group**

- » [Section 19.3.6, “Configure JBoss EAP 6 to Accept Requests From External Web Servers”](#)
- » [Section 19.6.3, “Install the mod\\_jk Module Into the Apache HTTP Server \(ZIP\)”](#)

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.6.2. Configure JBoss EAP 6 to Communicate with Apache Mod\_jk

#### Overview

The mod\_jk HTTP connector has a single component, the **mod\_jk.so** module loaded by the web server. This module receives client requests and forwards them to the container, in this case JBoss EAP 6. JBoss EAP 6 must also be configured to accept these requests and send replies back to the web server.

Configuring the Apache HTTP Server is covered in [Section 19.6.3, “Install the mod\\_jk Module Into the Apache HTTP Server \(ZIP\)”](#).

In order for JBoss EAP 6 to be able to communicate with the Apache HTTP server, it must have the AJP/1.3 connector enabled. This connector is present by default in the following configurations:

- » In a managed domain, in server groups using the **ha** and **full-ha** profiles, and the **ha** or **full-ha** socket binding group. The **other-server-group** server group is configured correctly in a default installation.
- » In a standalone server, the **standalone-ha** and **standalone-full-ha** profiles are configured for clustered configurations. To start the standalone server with one of these profiles, issue the following command, from the **EAP\_HOME/bin** directory. Substitute the appropriate profile name.

```
[user@host bin]$ ./bin/standalone.sh --server-config=standalone-ha.xml
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.6.3. Install the mod\_jk Module Into the Apache HTTP Server (ZIP)

#### Prerequisites

- » To perform this task, you must be using Apache HTTP Server installed on a supported environment or the Apache HTTP Server installed in JBoss Enterprise Web Server. Note that the Apache HTTP Server installed in JBoss Enterprise Web Server is part of the JBoss EAP 6 distribution.

- » If you need to install Apache HTTP Server, use the instructions in the *Red Hat Enterprise Linux Deployment Guide*.
- » If you need to install JBoss Enterprise Web Server, use the instructions from the *JBoss Enterprise Web Server Installation Guide*.
- » If you are using Apache HTTP Server, download the JBoss EAP 6 Native Components package for your platform from the Red Hat Customer Portal at <https://access.redhat.com>. This package contains both the **mod\_jk** and **mod\_cluster** binaries precompiled for Red Hat Enterprise Linux. If you are using JBoss Enterprise Web Server, it already includes the binary for **mod\_jk**.
- » If you are using Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 5 and native Apache HTTP server (httpd 2.2.3), load the mod\_perl module prior to loading mod\_jk module.
- » You must be logged in with administrative (root) privileges.

#### Procedure 19.11. Install the mod\_jk Module

##### 1. Configure the mod\_jk module.

- a. Create a new file called **HTTPD\_HOME/conf.d/mod-jk.conf** and add the following to it:

#### The JkMount directive

The **JkMount** directive specifies which URLs Apache should forward to the mod\_jk module. Based on the directive's configuration, mod\_jk forwards the received URL to the correct Servlet containers.

To serve static content directly, and only use the load balancer for Java applications, the URL path should be **/application/\***. To use mod\_jk as a load balancer, use the value **/\***, to forward all URLs to mod\_jk.

```
# Load mod_jk module
# Specify the filename of the mod_jk lib
LoadModule jk_module modules/mod_jk.so

# Where to find workers.properties
JkWorkersFile conf/workers.properties

# Where to put jk logs
JkLogFile logs/mod_jk.log

# Set the jk log level [debug/error/info]
JkLogLevel info

# Select the log format
JkLogStampFormat "[%a %b %d %H:%M:%S %Y]"

# JkOptions indicates to send SSK KEY SIZE
JkOptions +ForwardKeySize -ForwardDirectories

# JkRequestLogFormat
JkRequestLogFormat "%w %V %T"
```

```

# Mount your applications
# The default setting only sends Java application data to
mod_jk.
# Use the commented-out line to send all URLs through mod_jk.
# JkMount /* loadbalancer
JkMount /application/* loadbalancer

# Add shared memory.
# This directive is present with 1.2.10 and
# later versions of mod_jk, and is needed for
# for load balancing to work properly
JkShmFile logs/jk.shm

# Add jkstatus for managing runtime data
<Location /jkstatus/>
JkMount status
Order deny,allow
Deny from all
Allow from 127.0.0.1
</Location>
```

Look over the values and ensure they are reasonable for your setup. When you are satisfied, save the file.

#### b. Specify a JKMountFile directive

In addition to the JKMount directive in the **mod-jk.conf**, you can specify a file which contains multiple URL patterns to be forwarded to mod\_jk.

- Add the following to the **HTTPD\_HOME/conf/mod-jk.conf** file:

```

# You can use external file for mount points.
# It will be checked for updates each 60 seconds.
# The format of the file is: /url=worker
# /examples/*=loadbalancer
JkMountFile conf/uriworkermap.properties
```

- Create a new file called **HTTPD\_HOME/conf/uriworkermap.properties**, with a line for each URL pattern to be matched. The following example shows examples of the syntax of the file.

```
# Simple worker configuration file
/*=loadbalancer
```

#### c. Copy the mod\_jk.so file to the httpd's modules directory

##### Note

This is only necessary if the Apache HTTP server does not have **mod\_jk.so** in its **modules/** directory. You can skip this step if you are using the Apache HTTP server included as a download as part of JBoss EAP 6.

Extract the Native Web Server Connectors Zip package. Locate the `mod_jk.so` file in either the `EAP_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/native/lib/httpd/modules/` or the `EAP_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/native/lib64/httpd/modules/` directories, depending on whether your operating system is 32-bit or 64-bit.

Copy the file to the `HTTPD_HOME/modules/` directory.

## 2. Configure the mod\_jk worker nodes.

- Create a new file called `HTTPD_HOME/conf/workers.properties`. Use the following example as your starting point, and modify the file to suit your needs.

```
# Define list of workers that will be used
# for mapping requests
worker.list=loadbalancer,status

# Define Node1
# modify the host as your host IP or DNS name.
worker.node1.port=8009
worker.node1.host=node1.mydomain.com
worker.node1.type=ajp13
worker.node1.ping_mode=A
worker.node1.lbfactor=1

# Define Node2
# modify the host as your host IP or DNS name.
worker.node2.port=8009
worker.node2.host=node2.mydomain.com
worker.node2.type=ajp13
worker.node2.ping_mode=A
worker.node2.lbfactor=1

# Load-balancing behavior
worker.loadbalancer.type=lb
worker.loadbalancer.balance_workers=node1,node2
worker.loadbalancer.sticky_session=1

# Status worker for managing load balancer
worker.status.type=status
```

For a detailed description of the syntax of the `workers.properties` file, and advanced configuration options, see [Section 19.6.5, “Configuration Reference for Apache Mod\\_jk Workers”](#).

## 3. Restart the Web Server.

The way to restart the web server depends on whether you are using Red Hat Enterprise Linux's Apache HTTP server or the Apache HTTP server included in JBoss Enterprise Web Server. Choose one of the following methods.

### A. Red Hat Enterprise Linux's Apache HTTP Server

Issue the following command:

```
[root@host]# service httpd restart
```

## B. JBoss Enterprise Web Server Apache HTTP Server

JBoss Enterprise Web Server runs on both Red Hat Enterprise Linux and Microsoft Windows Server. The method for restarting the web server is different for each.

### A. Red Hat Enterprise Linux, installed from RPM

In Red Hat Enterprise Linux, JBoss Enterprise Web Server installs its web server as a service. To restart the web server, issue the following two commands:

```
[root@host ~]# service httpd stop  
[root@host ~]# service httpd start
```

### B. Red Hat Enterprise Linux, installed from Zip

If you have installed the JBoss Enterprise Web Server Apache HTTP server from a Zip archive, use the **apachectl** command to restart the web server. Replace *EWS\_HOME* with the directory where you unzipped JBoss Enterprise Web Server Apache HTTP server.

```
[root@host ~]# EWS_HOME/httpd/sbin/apachectl restart
```

### C. Microsoft Windows Server

Issue the following commands in a command prompt with administrative privileges:

```
C:\> net stop Apache2.2  
C:\> net start Apache2.2
```

### D. Solaris

Issue the following commands in a command prompt with administrative privileges. Replace *EWS\_HOME* with the directory where you unzipped JBoss Enterprise Web Server Apache HTTP server.

```
[root@host ~] EWS_HOME/httpd/sbin/apachectl restart
```

## Result

The Apache HTTP server is now configured to use the mod\_jk load balancer. To configure JBoss EAP 6 to be aware of mod\_jk, see [Section 19.3.6, “Configure JBoss EAP 6 to Accept Requests From External Web Servers”](#).

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.6.4. Install the Mod\_jk Module Into the Apache HTTP Server (RPM)

#### Prerequisites

- » To perform this task, you must be using Apache HTTP Server installed on a supported environment or the Apache HTTP Server installed in JBoss Enterprise Web Server. Note that the Apache HTTP Server installed in JBoss Enterprise Web Server is part of the JBoss EAP 6 distribution.
- » If you need to install Apache HTTP Server, use the instructions from the *Red Hat Enterprise Linux Deployment Guide*, available from <https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/>.
- » If you need to install JBoss Enterprise Web Server, use the instructions from the *JBoss Enterprise Web Server Installation Guide*, available from <https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/>.
- » You must be logged in with administrative (root) privileges.

#### Procedure 19.12. Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5: mod\_jk with Apache HTTP Server 2.2.3

1. Install mod\_jk-ap22 1.2.37 and its dependency mod\_perl from the **jbappplatform-6-\* - server-5-rpm** channel:

```
yum install mod_jk
```

2. **Optional:** Copy the sample configuration files for use:

```
cp /usr/share/doc/mod_jk-ap22-1.2.37/mod_jk.conf.sample  
/etc/httpd/conf.d/mod_jk.conf
```

```
cp /usr/share/doc/mod_jk-ap22-1.2.37/workers.properties.sample  
/etc/httpd/conf/workers.properties
```

These files should be edited to suit your needs.

3. Start the server:

```
service httpd start
```

#### Note

The following error message indicates that your mod\_jk module had been loaded before mod\_perl was present:

```
Cannot load /etc/httpd/modules/mod_jk.so into server:  
/etc/httpd/modules/mod_jk.so: undefined symbol:  
ap_get_server_description
```

To ensure mod\_perl module is loaded before mod\_jk module add the following to the **/etc/httpd/conf.d/mod\_jk.conf**:

```
<IfModule !perl_module>  
    LoadModule perl_module modules/mod_perl.so  
</IfModule>  
LoadModule jk_module modules/mod_jk.so
```

**Procedure 19.13. Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5: mod\_jk with JBoss EAP Apache HTTP Server 2.2.26**

1. Install both mod\_jk and the latest Apache HTTP Server 2.2.26 provided by the **jbappplatform-6-\* -server-5 -rpm** channel with this command:

```
yum install mod_jk httpd
```

2. **Optional:** Copy the sample configuration files for use:

```
cp /usr/share/doc/mod_jk-ap22-1.2.37/mod_jk.conf.sample  
/etc/httpd/conf.d/mod_jk.conf
```

```
cp /usr/share/doc/mod_jk-ap22-1.2.37/workers.properties.sample  
/etc/httpd/conf/workers.properties
```

These files should be edited to suit your needs.

3. Start the server:

```
service httpd start
```

**Procedure 19.14. Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6: mod\_jk with JBoss EAP Apache HTTP Server 2.2.26**

1. Install mod\_jk-ap22 1.2.37 and Apache HTTP Server 2.2.26 httpd package from the **jbappplatform-6-\* -server-6 -rpm** channel (any existing versions will be updated):

```
yum install mod_jk httpd
```

2. **Optional:** Copy the sample configuration files for use:

```
cp /usr/share/doc/mod_jk-ap22-1.2.37/mod_jk.conf.sample  
/etc/httpd/conf.d/mod_jk.conf
```

```
cp /usr/share/doc/mod_jk-ap22-1.2.37/workers.properties.sample  
/etc/httpd/conf/workers.properties
```

These files should be edited to suit your needs.

3. Start the server:

```
service httpd start
```

**Procedure 19.15. Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6: mod\_jk with Apache HTTP Server 2.2.15**

1. Install mod\_jk with Apache HTTP Server 2.2.15 with the following command:

```
yum install mod_jk
```

2. **Optional:** Copy the sample configuration files for use:

```
cp /usr/share/doc/mod_jk-ap22-1.2.37/mod_jk.conf.sample
/etc/httpd/conf.d/mod_jk.conf
```

```
cp /usr/share/doc/mod_jk-ap22-1.2.37/workers.properties.sample
/etc/httpd/conf/workers.properties
```

These files should be edited to suit your needs.

3. Start the server:

```
service httpd start
```

#### **Procedure 19.16. Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7: mod\_jk with JBoss EAP Apache HTTP Server 2.2.26**

1. Install mod\_jk-ap22 1.2.37 and Apache HTTP Server 2.2.26 httpd22 package from the **jbappplatform-6-\* -server-6 -rpm** channel (any existing versions will be updated):

```
yum install mod_jk
```

2. **Optional:** Copy the sample configuration files for use:

```
cp /usr/share/doc/mod_jk-ap22-1.2.37/mod_jk.conf.sample
/etc/httpd22/conf.d/mod_jk.conf
```

```
cp /usr/share/doc/mod_jk-ap22-1.2.37/workers.properties.sample
/etc/httpd22/conf/workers.properties
```

These files should be edited to suit your needs.

3. Start the server:

```
systemctl start httpd22.service
```

[Report a bug](#)

#### **19.6.5. Configuration Reference for Apache Mod\_jk Workers**

The **workers.properties** file defines the behavior of the worker nodes which mod\_jk passes client requests to. In Red Hat Enterprise Linux, the file resides in **/etc/httpd/conf/workers.properties**. The **workers.properties** file defines where the different servlet containers are located, and the way the work load should be balanced across them.

The configuration is divided into three sections. The first section deals with global properties, which apply to all worker nodes. The second section contains settings which apply to a specific worker. The third section contains settings which apply to a specific node balanced by the worker.

The general structure of a property is **worker. WORKER\_NAME . DIRECTIVE**, where **WORKER\_NAME** is a unique name for the worker, and **DIRECTIVE** is the setting to be applied to the worker.

[Configuration reference for Apache mod\\_jk workers](#)

Node templates specify default per-node settings. You can override the template within the node settings itself. You can see an example of node templates in [Example 19.5, “Example workers.properties file”](#).

**Table 19.11. Global properties**

Property	Description
worker.list	The list of worker names used by mod_jk. These workers are available to receive requests.

**Table 19.12. Per-worker properties**

Property	Description
type	The type of the worker. The default type is <b>ajp13</b> . Other possible values are <b>ajp14</b> , <b>lb</b> , <b>status</b> .  For more information on these directives, refer to the Apache Tomcat Connector AJP Protocol Reference at <a href="http://tomcat.apache.org/connectors-doc/ajp/ajpv13a.html">http://tomcat.apache.org/connectors-doc/ajp/ajpv13a.html</a> .
balance_workers	Specifies the worker nodes that the load balancer must manage. You can use the directive multiple times for the same load balancer. It consists of a comma-separated list of worker names. This is set per worker, not per node. It affects all nodes balanced by that worker type.
sticky_session	Specifies whether requests from the same session are always routed to the same worker. The default is <b>0</b> , meaning that sticky sessions are disabled. To enable sticky sessions, set it to <b>1</b> . Sticky sessions should usually be enabled, unless all of your requests are truly stateless. This is set per worker, not per node. It affects all nodes balanced by that worker type.

**Table 19.13. Per-node properties**

Property	Description
host	The hostname or IP address of the worker. The worker node must support the <b>ajp</b> protocol stack. The default value is <b>localhost</b> .
port	The port number of the remote server instance listening for defined protocol requests. The default value is <b>8009</b> , which is the default listening port for AJP13 workers. The default value for AJP14 workers is <b>8011</b> .

Property	Description
ping_mode	<p>The conditions under which connections are probed for network status. The probe uses an empty AJP13 packet for CPing, and expects a CPong in response. Specify the conditions by using a combination of directive flags. The flags are not separated by a comma or any white-space. The ping_mode can be any combination of <b>C</b>, <b>P</b>, <b>I</b>, and <b>A</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>C</b> - Connect. Probe the connection one time after connecting to the server. Specify the timeout using the value of <b>connect_timeout</b>. Otherwise, the value of <b>ping_timeout</b> is used.</li> <li>➤ <b>P</b> - Prepost. Probe the connection before sending each request to the server. Specify the timeout using the <b>prepost_timeout</b> directive. Otherwise, the value of <b>ping_timeout</b> is used.</li> <li>➤ <b>I</b> - Interval. Probe the connection at an interval specified by <b>connection_ping_interval</b>, if present. Otherwise, the value of <b>ping_timeout</b> is used.</li> <li>➤ <b>A</b> - All. A shortcut for <b>CPI</b>, which specifies that all connection probes are used.</li> </ul>
ping_timeout, connect_timeout, prepost_timeout, connection_ping_inter val	The timeout values for the connection probe settings above. The value is specified in milliseconds, and the default value for <b>ping_timeout</b> is 10000.
lbfactor	Specifies the load-balancing factor for an individual worker, and only applies to a member worker of a load balancer. This is useful to give a more powerful server more of the work load. To give a worker 3 times the default load, set this to 3: <b>worker.my_worker.lbfactor=3</b>

#### Example 19.5. Example workers.properties file

```

worker.list=node1, node2, node3

worker.balancer1.sticky_sessions=1
worker.balancer1.balance_workers=node1
worker.balancer2.sticky_session=1
worker.balancer2.balance_workers=node2, node3

worker.nodetemplate.type=ajp13
worker.nodetemplate.port=8009

worker.node1.template=nodetemplate
worker.node1.host=localhost
worker.node1.ping_mode=CI
worker.node1.connection_ping_interval=9000
worker.node1.lbfactor=1

worker.node2.template=nodetemplate
worker.node2.host=192.168.1.1
worker.node2.ping_mode=A

worker.node3.template=nodetemplate
worker.node3.host=192.168.1.2

```

Further configuration details for Apache mod\_jk are out of the scope of this document. Refer to the Apache documentation at <http://tomcat.apache.org/connectors-doc/> for further instructions.

[Report a bug](#)

## 19.7. Apache mod\_proxy

### 19.7.1. About the Apache mod\_proxy HTTP Connector

Apache provides two different proxying and load balancing modules for its httpd: **mod\_proxy** and **mod\_jk**. To learn more about **mod\_jk**, refer to [Section 19.6.1, “About the Apache mod\\_jk HTTP Connector”](#). JBoss EAP 6 supports use of either of these, although **mod\_cluster**, the JBoss HTTP connector, more closely couples JBoss EAP 6 and the external httpd, and is the recommended HTTP connector. Refer to [Section 19.1.3, “Overview of HTTP Connectors”](#) for an overview of all supported HTTP connectors, including advantages and disadvantages.

Unlike **mod\_jk**, **mod\_proxy** supports connections over HTTP and HTTPS protocols. Each of them also support the AJP protocol.

**mod\_proxy** can be configured in standalone or load-balanced configurations, and it supports the notion of sticky sessions.

The **mod\_proxy** module requires JBoss EAP 6 to have the HTTP, HTTPS or AJP web connector configured. This is part of the Web subsystem. Refer to [Section 17.1, “Configure the Web Subsystem”](#) for information on configuring the Web subsystem.

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.7.2. Install the Mod\_proxy HTTP Connector into Apache HTTP Server

#### Overview

**mod\_proxy** is a load-balancing module provided by Apache. This task presents a basic configuration. For more advanced configuration, or additional details, see Apache's **mod\_proxy** documentation at [https://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.2/mod/mod\\_proxy.html](https://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.2/mod/mod_proxy.html). For more details about **mod\_proxy** from the perspective of JBoss EAP 6, see [Section 19.7.1, “About the Apache mod\\_proxy HTTP Connector”](#) and [Section 19.1.3, “Overview of HTTP Connectors”](#).

#### Prerequisites

- » Either httpd in JBoss Enterprise Web Server or Apache HTTP server needs to be installed. A standalone Apache HTTP server is provided as a separate download in the Red Hat Customer Portal, in the JBoss EAP 6 download area. See [Section 19.3.2, “Install the Apache HTTP Server included with JBoss EAP 6 \(Zip\)”](#) for information about this Apache HTTP server if you wish to use it.
- » The **mod\_proxy** modules need to be installed. Apache HTTP server typically comes with the **mod\_proxy** modules already included. This is the case on Red Hat Enterprise Linux and the Apache HTTP Server that comes with the JBoss Enterprise Web Server.
- » You need **root** or administrator privileges to modify the Apache HTTP Server configuration.
- » In our example we assume that JBoss EAP 6 is configured with the HTTP or HTTPS web connector. This is part of the Web subsystem configuration. Refer to [Section 17.1, “Configure the Web Subsystem”](#) for information about configuring the Web subsystem.

## 1. Enable the mod\_proxy modules in the httpd

Look for the following lines in your **HTTPD\_HOME/conf/httpd.conf** file. If they are not present, add them to the bottom. If they are present but the lines begin with a comment (#) character, remove the character. Save the file afterward. Usually, the modules are already present and enabled.

```
LoadModule proxy_module modules/mod_proxy.so
LoadModule proxy_balancer_module modules/mod_proxy_balancer.so
LoadModule proxy_http_module modules/mod_proxy_http.so
# Uncomment these to proxy FTP or HTTPS
#LoadModule proxy_ftp_module modules/mod_proxy_ftp.so
#LoadModule proxy_connect_module modules/mod_proxy_connect.so
```

## 2. Add a non-load-balancing proxy.

Add the following configuration to your **HTTPD\_HOME/conf/httpd.conf** file, directly beneath any other **<VirtualHost>** directives you may have. Replace the values with ones appropriate to your setup.

This example uses a virtual host. See the next step to use the default httpd configuration.

```
<VirtualHost *:80>
# Your domain name
ServerName Domain_NAME_HERE

ProxyPreserveHost On

# The IP and port of JBoss EAP 6
# These represent the default values, if your httpd is on the same
host
# as your JBoss EAP 6 managed domain or server

ProxyPass / http://localhost:8080/
ProxyPassReverse / http://localhost:8080/

# The location of the HTML files, and access control information
DocumentRoot /var/www
<Directory /var/www>
Options -Indexes
Order allow,deny
Allow from all
</Directory>
</VirtualHost>
```

After making your changes, save the file.

## 3. Add a load-balancing proxy.

To use **mod\_proxy** as a load balancer, and send work to multiple JBoss EAP 6 servers, add the following configuration to your **HTTPD\_HOME/conf/httpd.conf** file. The example IP addresses are fictional. Replace them with the appropriate values for your environment.

```
<Proxy balancer://mycluster>

Order deny,allow
```

```

Allow from all

# Add each JBoss Enterprise Application Server by IP address and
port.
# If the route values are unique like this, one node will not fail
over to the other.
BalancerMember http://192.168.1.1:8080 route=node1
BalancerMember http://192.168.1.2:8180 route=node2
</Proxy>

<VirtualHost *:80>
  # Your domain name
  ServerName YOUR_DOMAIN_NAME

  ProxyPreserveHost On
  ProxyPass / balancer://mycluster/

  # The location of the HTML files, and access control information
  DocumentRoot /var/www
  <Directory /var/www>
    Options -Indexes
    Order allow,deny
    Allow from all
  </Directory>

</VirtualHost>

```

The examples above all communicate using the HTTP protocol. You can use AJP or HTTPS protocols instead, if you load the appropriate **mod\_proxy** modules. Refer to Apache's **mod\_proxy** documentation [http://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.2/mod/mod\\_proxy.html](http://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.2/mod/mod_proxy.html) for more details.

#### 4. Enable sticky sessions.

*Sticky sessions* mean that if a client request originally goes to a specific JBoss EAP 6 node, all future requests will be sent to the same node, unless the node becomes unavailable. This is almost always the correct behavior.

To enable sticky sessions for **mod\_proxy**, add the **stickysession** parameter to the **ProxyPass** statement. This example also shows some other parameters which you can use. See Apache's **mod\_proxy** documentation at [http://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.2/mod/mod\\_proxy.html](http://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.2/mod/mod_proxy.html) for more information on them.

```
ProxyPass /MyApp balancer://mycluster stickysession=JSESSIONID
lbmethod=bytraffic nofailover=off
```

#### 5. Restart the Web Server.

Restart the web server for your changes to take effect.

### Result

Your Apache HTTP server is configured to use `mod_proxy` to send client requests to JBoss EAP 6 servers or clusters, either in a standard or load-balancing configuration. To configure JBoss EAP 6 to respond to these requests, see [Section 19.3.6, “Configure JBoss EAP 6 to Accept Requests From External Web Servers”](#).

[Report a bug](#)

## 19.8. Microsoft ISAPI

### 19.8.1. About the Internet Server API (ISAPI) HTTP Connector

*Internet Server API (ISAPI)* is the HTTP connector for Microsoft's Internet Information Services (IIS) web server. You can use JBoss EAP 6 as a worker node within an IIS cluster.

To configure JBoss EAP 6 to participate in an IIS cluster, refer to [Section 19.8.3, “Configure Microsoft IIS to Use the ISAPI Redirector”](#). For more information about ISAPI, refer to [http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms524911\(v=VS.90\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms524911(v=VS.90).aspx).

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.8.2. Download and Extract Webserver Connector Natives for Microsoft IIS

1. In a web browser, navigate to the Red Hat Customer Support portal at <https://access.redhat.com>.
2. Navigate to **Downloads**, then **Red Hat JBoss Middleware Download Software**, then select **Enterprise Application Platform** from the **Product** drop-down list.
3. Select the appropriate version from the **Version** drop-down list.
4. Choose the **Download** option of either **Red Hat JBoss Enterprise Application Platform 6.3.0 Webserver Connector Natives for Windows Server 2008 x86\_64** or **Red Hat JBoss Enterprise Application Platform 6.3.0 Webserver Connector Natives for Windows Server 2008 i686** depending on the architecture of the server.
5. Open the Zip file and copy the contents of the **jboss-eap-6.3/modules/system/layers/base/native/sbin** directory to a location on your server. It is assumed the contents were copied to **C:\connectors\**.

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.8.3. Configure Microsoft IIS to Use the ISAPI Redirector

#### Prerequisites:

- » [Section 19.8.2, “Download and Extract Webserver Connector Natives for Microsoft IIS”](#)



#### Note

See <https://access.redhat.com/site/articles/111663> for a list of supported configurations of Microsoft Windows Server and IIS.

**Procedure 19.17. Configure the IIS Redirector Using the IIS Manager (IIS 7)**

1. Open the IIS manager by clicking **Start** → **Run**, and typing **inetmgr**.
2. In the tree view pane at the left, expand **IIS 7**.
3. Double-click **ISAPI and CGI Registrations** to open it in a new window.
4. In the **Actions** pane, click **Add**. The **Add ISAPI or CGI Restriction** window opens.
5. Specify the following values:
  - **ISAPI or CGI Path:** `c:\connectors\isapi_redirect.dll`
  - **Description:** `jboss`
  - **Allow extension path to execute:** select the check box.
6. Click **OK** to close the **Add ISAPI or CGI Restriction** window.
7. **Define a JBoss Native virtual directory**
  - a. Right-click **Default Web Site**, and click **Add Virtual Directory**. The **Add Virtual Directory** window opens.
  - b. Specify the following values to add a virtual directory:
    - **Alias:** `jboss`
    - **Physical Path:** `C:\connectors\`
  - c. Click **OK** to save the values and close the **Add Virtual Directory** window.
8. **Define a JBoss Native ISAPI Redirect Filter**
  - a. In the tree view pane, expand **Sites** → **Default Web Site**.
  - b. Double-click **ISAPI Filters**. The **ISAPI Filters Features** view appears.
  - c. In the **Actions** pane, click **Add**. The **Add ISAPI Filter** window appears.
  - d. Specify the following values in the **Add ISAPI Filter** window:
    - **Filter name:** `jboss`
    - **Executable:** `C:\connectors\isapi_redirect.dll`
  - e. Click **OK** to save the values and close the **Add ISAPI Filters** window.
9. **Enable the ISAPI-dll handler**
  - a. Double-click the **IIS 7** item in the tree view pane. The **IIS 7 Home Features View** opens.
  - b. Double-click **Handler Mappings**. The **Handler Mappings Features View** appears.
  - c. In the **Group by** combo box, select **State**. The **Handler Mappings** are displayed in **Enabled** and **Disabled Groups**.

- d. Find **ISAPI-dll**. If it is in the **Disabled** group, right-click it and select **Edit Feature Permissions**.
- e. Enable the following permissions:
  - » Read
  - » Script
  - » Execute
- f. Click **OK** to save the values, and close the **Edit Feature Permissions** window.

## Result

Microsoft IIS is now configured to use the ISAPI Redirector. Next, [Section 19.3.6, “Configure JBoss EAP 6 to Accept Requests From External Web Servers”](#), then [Section 19.8.4, “Configure the ISAPI Redirector to Send Client Requests to JBoss EAP 6”](#) or [Section 19.8.5, “Configure ISAPI to Balance Client Requests Across Multiple JBoss EAP 6 Servers”](#).

[Report a bug](#)

## 19.8.4. Configure the ISAPI Redirector to Send Client Requests to JBoss EAP 6

### Overview

This task configures a group of JBoss EAP 6 servers to accept requests from the ISAPI redirector. It does not include configuration for load-balancing or high-availability failover. If you need these capabilities, refer to [Section 19.8.5, “Configure ISAPI to Balance Client Requests Across Multiple JBoss EAP 6 Servers”](#).

This configuration is done on the IIS server, and assumes that JBoss EAP 6 is already configured as per [Section 19.3.6, “Configure JBoss EAP 6 to Accept Requests From External Web Servers”](#).

### Prerequisites

- » You need full administrator access to the IIS server
- » [Section 19.3.6, “Configure JBoss EAP 6 to Accept Requests From External Web Servers”](#)
- » [Section 19.8.3, “Configure Microsoft IIS to Use the ISAPI Redirector”](#)

### Procedure 19.18. Edit Property Files and Setup Redirection

#### 1. Create a directory to store logs, property files, and lock files.

The rest of this procedure assumes that you are using the directory **C :\connectors\** for this purpose. If you use a different directory, modify the instructions accordingly.

#### 2. Create the **isapi\_redirect.properties** file.

Create a new file called **C :\connectors\isapi\_redirect.properties**. Copy the following contents into the file.

```
# Configuration file for the ISAPI Redirector
# Extension uri definition
extension_uri=/jboss/isapi_redirect.dll
```

```

# Full path to the log file for the ISAPI Redirector
log_file=c:\connectors\isapi_redirect.log

# Log level (debug, info, warn, error or trace)
log_level=info

# Full path to the workers.properties file
worker_file=c:\connectors\workers.properties

# Full path to the uriworkermap.properties file
worker_mount_file=c:\connectors\uriworkermap.properties

#Full path to the rewrite.properties file
rewrite_rule_file=c:\connectors\rewrite.properties

```

If you do not want to use a **rewrite.properties** file, comment out the last line by placing a **#** character at the beginning of the line. See [Step 5](#) for more information.

### 3. Create the **uriworkermap.properties** file

The **uriworkermap.properties** file contains mappings between deployed application URLs and which worker handles requests to them. The following example file shows the syntax of the file. Place your **uriworkermap.properties** file into **C :\connectors\**.

```

# images and css files for path /status are provided by worker01
/status=worker01
/images/*=worker01
/css/*=worker01

# Path /web-console is provided by worker02
# IIS (customized) error page is used for http errors with number
greater or equal to 400
# css files are provided by worker01
/web-console/*=worker02;use_server_errors=400
/web-console/css/*=worker01

# Example of exclusion from mapping, logo.gif won't be displayed
# !/web-console/images/logo.gif=*

# Requests to /app-01 or /app-01/something will be routed to
worker01
/app-01|/*=worker01

# Requests to /app-02 or /app-02/something will be routed to
worker02
/app-02|/*=worker02

```

### 4. Create the **workers.properties** file.

The **workers.properties** file contains mapping definitions between worker labels and server instances. The following example file shows the syntax of the file. Place this file into the **C :\connectors\** directory.

```
# An entry that lists all the workers defined
```

```

worker.list=worker01, worker02

# Entries that define the host and port associated with these
workers

# First JBoss EAP 6 server definition, port 8009 is standard port
for AJP in EAP
worker.worker01.host=127.0.0.1
worker.worker01.port=8009
worker.worker01.type=ajp13

# Second JBoss EAP 6 server definition
worker.worker02.host=127.0.0.100
worker.worker02.port=8009
worker.worker02.type=ajp13

```

5.

#### Create the `rewrite.properties` file.

The `rewrite.properties` file contains simple URL rewriting rules for specific applications. The rewritten path is specified using name-value pairs, as shown in the example below. Place this file into the `C:\connectors\` directory.

```

#Simple example
# Images are accessible under abc path
/app-01/abc/=app-01/images/

```

6. Restart the IIS server.

Restart your IIS server by using the `net stop` and `net start` commands.

```

C:\> net stop was /Y
C:\> net start w3svc

```

#### Result

The IIS server is configured to send client requests to the specific JBoss EAP 6 servers you have configured, on an application-specific basis.

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.8.5. Configure ISAPI to Balance Client Requests Across Multiple JBoss EAP 6 Servers

#### Overview

This configuration balances client requests across the JBoss EAP 6 servers you specify. If you prefer to send client requests to specific JBoss EAP 6 servers on a per-deployment basis, refer to [Section 19.8.4, “Configure the ISAPI Redirector to Send Client Requests to JBoss EAP 6”](#) instead.

This configuration is done on the IIS server, and assumes that JBoss EAP 6 is already configured as per [Section 19.3.6, “Configure JBoss EAP 6 to Accept Requests From External Web Servers”](#).

#### Prerequisites

- » Full administrator access on the IIS server.
- » [Section 19.3.6, “Configure JBoss EAP 6 to Accept Requests From External Web Servers”](#)
- » [Section 19.8.3, “Configure Microsoft IIS to Use the ISAPI Redirector”](#)

### Procedure 19.19. Balance Client Requests Across Multiple Servers

**1. Create a directory to store logs, property files, and lock files.**

The rest of this procedure assumes that you are using the directory **C :\connectors\** for this purpose. If you use a different directory, modify the instructions accordingly.

**2. Create the `isapi_redirect.properties` file.**

Create a new file called **C :\connectors\isapi\_redirect.properties**. Copy the following contents into the file.

```
# Configuration file for the ISAPI Redirector
# Extension uri definition
extension_uri=/jboss/isapi_redirect.dll

# Full path to the log file for the ISAPI Redirector
log_file==c:\connectors\isapi_redirect.log

# Log level (debug, info, warn, error or trace)
log_level=info

# Full path to the workers.properties file
worker_file=c:\connectors\workers.properties

# Full path to the uriworkermap.properties file
worker_mount_file=c:\connectors\uriworkermap.properties

#OPTIONAL: Full path to the rewrite.properties file
rewrite_rule_file=c:\connectors\rewrite.properties
```

If you do not want to use a **rewrite.properties** file, comment out the last line by placing a **#** character at the beginning of the line. See [Step 5](#) for more information.

**3. Create the `uriworkermap.properties` file.**

The **uriworkermap.properties** file contains mappings between deployed application URLs and which worker handles requests to them. The following example file shows the syntax of the file, with a load-balanced configuration. The wildcard (\*) character sends all requests for various URL sub-directories to the load-balancer called **router**. The configuration of the load-balancer is covered in [Step 4](#).

Place your **uriworkermap.properties** file into **C :\connectors\**.

```
# images, css files, path /status and /web-console will be
# provided by nodes defined in the load-balancer called "router"
/css/*=router
/images/*=router
/status=router
/web-console|/*=router
```

```
# Example of exclusion from mapping, logo.gif won't be displayed
!/web-console/images/logo.gif=*

# Requests to /app-01 and /app-02 will be routed to nodes defined
# in the load-balancer called "router"
/app-01|/*=router
/app-02|/*=router

# mapping for management console, nodes in cluster can be enabled
or disabled here
/jkmanager|/*=status
```

4.

#### Create the `workers.properties` file.

The `workers.properties` file contains mapping definitions between worker labels and server instances. The following example file shows the syntax of the file. The load balancer is configured near the end of the file, to comprise workers `worker01` and `worker02`. The `workers.properties` file follows the syntax of the same file used for Apache mod\_jk configuration. For more information about the syntax of the `workers.properties` file, refer to [Section 19.6.5, “Configuration Reference for Apache Mod\\_jk Workers”](#).

Place this file into the `C:\connectors\` directory.

```
# The advanced router LB worker
worker.list=router,status

# First EAP server definition, port 8009 is standard port for AJP
# in EAP
#
# lbfactor defines how much the worker will be used.
# The higher the number, the more requests are served
# lbfactor is useful when one machine is more powerful
# ping_mode=A - all possible probes will be used to determine that
# connections are still working

worker.worker01.port=8009
worker.worker01.host=127.0.0.1
worker.worker01.type=ajp13
worker.worker01.ping_mode=A
worker.worker01.socket_timeout=10
worker.worker01.lbfactor=3

# Second EAP server definition
worker.worker02.port=8009
worker.worker02.host=127.0.0.100
worker.worker02.type=ajp13
worker.worker02.ping_mode=A
worker.worker02.socket_timeout=10
worker.worker02.lbfactor=1

# Define the LB worker
worker.router.type=lb
```

```

worker.router.balance_workers=worker01,worker02

# Define the status worker for jkmanager
worker.status.type=status

```

5.

#### Create the rewrite.properties file.

The **rewrite.properties** file contains simple URL rewriting rules for specific applications. The rewritten path is specified using name-value pairs, as shown in the example below. Place this file into the **C:\connectors\** directory.

```

#Simple example
# Images are accessible under abc path
/app-01/abc/=app-01/images/

```

6. Restart the IIS server.

Restart your IIS server by using the **net stop** and **net start** commands.

```

C:\> net stop was /Y
C:\> net start w3svc

```

#### Result

The IIS server is configured to send client requests to the JBoss EAP 6 servers referenced in the **workers.properties** file, spreading the load across the servers in a 1:3 ratio. This ratio is derived from the load balancing factor (**lbfactor**) assigned to each server.

[Report a bug](#)

## 19.9. Oracle NSAPI

### 19.9.1. About the Netscape Server API (NSAPI) HTTP Connector

The *Netscape Server API (NSAPI)* is the HTTP connector that allows JBoss EAP 6 to participate as a node in Oracle iPlanet Web Server (formerly Netscape Web Server). To configure this connector, refer to [Section 19.9.4, “Configure NSAPI as a Load-balancing Cluster”](#).

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.9.2. Configure the NSAPI Connector on Oracle Solaris

#### Summary

The NSAPI connector is a module that runs within Oracle iPlanet Web Server.

#### Prerequisites

- Your server is running Oracle Solaris 10 or greater, on either an Intel 32-bit, an Intel 64-bit, or a SPARC64 architecture.

- » Oracle iPlanet Web Server 7.0.15 or later for Intel architectures, or 7.0.14 or later for SPARC architectures, is installed and configured, aside from the NSAPI connector
- » JBoss EAP 6 is installed and configured on each server which will serve as a worker node. Refer to [Section 19.3.6, “Configure JBoss EAP 6 to Accept Requests From External Web Servers”](#).
- » The JBoss Native Components ZIP package is downloaded from the Customer Service Portal at <https://access.redhat.com>.

## Procedure 19.20. Extract and Setup the NSAPI Connector

### 1. Extract the JBoss Native Components package.

The rest of this procedure assumes that the Native Components package is extracted to the *EAP\_HOME* directory. For the rest of this procedure, the directory **/opt/oracle/webserver7/config/** is referred to as *IPLANET\_CONFIG*. If your Oracle iPlanet configuration directory is different, modify the procedure accordingly.

### 2. Disable servlet mappings.

Open the *IPLANET\_CONFIG/default.web.xml* file and locate the section with the heading **Built In Server Mappings**. Disable the mappings to the following three servlets, by wrapping them in XML comment characters (*<!--* and *-->*).

- » default
- » invoker
- » jsp

The following example configuration shows the disabled mappings.

```
<!-- ===== Built In Servlet Mappings ===== -->
<!-- The servlet mappings for the built in servlets defined above.
-->
<!-- The mapping for the default servlet -->
<!--servlet-mapping>
<servlet-name>default</servlet-name>
<url-pattern>/</url-pattern>
</servlet-mapping-->
<!-- The mapping for the invoker servlet -->
<!--servlet-mapping>
<servlet-name>invoker</servlet-name>
<url-pattern>/servlet/*</url-pattern>
</servlet-mapping-->
<!-- The mapping for the JSP servlet -->
<!--servlet-mapping>
<servlet-name>jsp</servlet-name>
<url-pattern>*.jsp</url-pattern>
</servlet-mapping-->
```

Save and exit the file.

### 3. Configure the iPlanet Web Server to load the NSAPI connector module.

Add the following lines to the end of the ***IPLANET\_CONFIG/magnus.conf*** file, modifying file paths to suit your configuration. These lines define the location of the ***nsapi\_redirector.so*** module, as well as the ***workers.properties*** file, which lists the worker nodes and their properties.

```
Init fn="load-modules" funcs="jk_init,jk_service"
shlib="EAP_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/native/lib/nsapi_redirector.so" shlib_flags="(global|now)"

Init fn="jk_init"
worker_file="IPLANET_CONFIG/connectors/workers.properties"
log_level="info" log_file="IPLANET_CONFIG/connectors/nsapi.log"
shm_file="IPLANET_CONFIG/connectors/tmp/jk_shm"
```

The configuration above is for a 32-bit architecture. If you use 64-bit Solaris, change the string ***lib/nsapi\_redirector.so*** to ***lib64/nsapi\_redirector.so***.

Save and exit the file.

#### 4. Configure the NSAPI connector.

You can configure the NSAPI connector for a basic configuration, with no load balancing, or a load-balancing configuration. Choose one of the following options, after which your configuration will be complete.

- » [Section 19.9.3, “Configure NSAPI as a Basic HTTP Connector”](#)
- » [Section 19.9.4, “Configure NSAPI as a Load-balancing Cluster”](#)

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.9.3. Configure NSAPI as a Basic HTTP Connector

#### Overview

This task configures the NSAPI connector to redirect client requests to JBoss EAP 6 servers with no load-balancing or fail-over. The redirection is done on a per-deployment (and hence per-URL) basis. For a load-balancing configuration, refer to [Section 19.9.4, “Configure NSAPI as a Load-balancing Cluster”](#) instead.

#### Prerequisites

- » You must complete [Section 19.9.2, “Configure the NSAPI Connector on Oracle Solaris”](#) before continuing with the current task.

#### Procedure 19.21. Setup the Basic HTTP Connector

##### 1. Define the URL paths to redirect to the JBoss EAP 6 servers.

#### Note

In ***IPLANET\_CONFIG/obj.conf***, spaces are not allowed at the beginning of a line, except when the line is a continuation of the previous line.

Edit the **IPLANET\_CONFIG/obj.conf** file. Locate the section which starts with **<Object name="default">**, and add each URL pattern to match, in the format shown by the example file below. The string **jkn sapi** refers to the HTTP connector which will be defined in the next step. The example shows the use of wildcards for pattern matching.

```
<Object name="default">
[...]
NameTrans fn="assign-name" from="/status" name="jkn sapi"
NameTrans fn="assign-name" from="/images(/*)" name="jkn sapi"
NameTrans fn="assign-name" from="/css(/*)" name="jkn sapi"
NameTrans fn="assign-name" from="/nc(/*)" name="jkn sapi"
NameTrans fn="assign-name" from="/jmx-console(/*)" name="jkn sapi"
</Object>
```

## 2. Define the worker which serves each path.

Continue editing the **IPLANET\_CONFIG/obj.conf** file. Add the following directly after the closing tag of the section you have just finished editing: **</Object>**.

```
<Object name="jkn sapi">
ObjectType fn=force-type type=text/plain
Service fn="jk_service" worker="worker01" path="/status"
Service fn="jk_service" worker="worker02" path="/nc(/*)"
Service fn="jk_service" worker="worker01"
</Object>
```

The example above redirects requests to the URL path **/status** to the worker called **worker01**, and all URL paths beneath **/nc/** to the worker called **worker02**. The third line indicates that all URLs assigned to the **jkn sapi** object which are not matched by the previous lines are served to **worker01**.

Save and exit the file.

## 3.

### Define the workers and their attributes.

Create a file called **workers.properties** in the **IPLANET\_CONFIG/connectors/** directory. Paste the following contents into the file, and modify them to suit your environment.

```
# An entry that lists all the workers defined
worker.list=worker01, worker02

# Entries that define the host and port associated with these
workers
worker.worker01.host=127.0.0.1
worker.worker01.port=8009
worker.worker01.type=ajp13

worker.worker02.host=127.0.0.100
worker.worker02.port=8009
worker.worker02.type=ajp13
```

The **workers.properties** file uses the same syntax as Apache mod\_jk. For information about which options are available, refer to [Section 19.6.5, “Configuration Reference for Apache Mod\\_jk Workers”](#).

Save and exit the file.

#### 4. Restart the iPlanet Web Server.

Issue the following command to restart the iPlanet Web Server.

```
IPLANET_CONFIG/.../bin/stopserv  
IPLANET_CONFIG/.../bin/startserv
```

### Result

iPlanet Web Server now sends client requests to the URLs you have configured to deployments on JBoss EAP 6.

[Report a bug](#)

### 19.9.4. Configure NSAPI as a Load-balancing Cluster

#### Overview

This task configures the NSAPI connector to redirect client requests to JBoss EAP 6 servers in a load-balancing configuration. To use NSAPI as a simple HTTP connector with no load-balancing, refer to [Section 19.9.3, “Configure NSAPI as a Basic HTTP Connector”](#) instead.

#### Prerequisites

- You must complete [Section 19.9.2, “Configure the NSAPI Connector on Oracle Solaris”](#) before continuing with the current task.

#### Procedure 19.22. Configure the Connector for Load-Balancing

##### 1. Define the URL paths to redirect to the JBoss EAP 6 servers.



##### Note

In **IPLANET\_CONFIG/obj.conf**, spaces are not allowed at the beginning of a line, except when the line is a continuation of the previous line.

Edit the **IPLANET\_CONFIG/obj.conf** file. Locate the section which starts with **<Object name="default">**, and add each URL pattern to match, in the format shown by the example file below. The string **jkn sapi** refers to the HTTP connector which will be defined in the next step. The example shows the use of wildcards for pattern matching.

```
<Object name="default">  
[...]  
NameTrans fn="assign-name" from="/status" name="jkn sapi"  
NameTrans fn="assign-name" from="/images(/*)" name="jkn sapi"  
NameTrans fn="assign-name" from="/css(/*)" name="jkn sapi"  
NameTrans fn="assign-name" from="/nc(/*)" name="jkn sapi"
```

```
NameTrans fn="assign-name" from="/jmx-console(/*)" name="jknsapi"
NameTrans fn="assign-name" from="/jkmanager/*" name="jknsapi"
</Object>
```

## 2. Define the worker that serves each path.

Continue editing the **IPLANET\_CONFIG/obj.conf** file. Directly after the closing tag for the section you modified in the previous step (**</Object>**), add the following new section and modify it to your needs:

```
<Object name="jknsapi">
ObjectType fn=force-type type=text/plain
Service fn="jk_service" worker="status" path="/jkmanager(/*)"
Service fn="jk_service" worker="router"
</Object>
```

This **jknsapi** object defines the worker nodes used to serve each path that was mapped to the **name="jknsapi"** mapping in the **default** object. Everything except for URLs matching **/jkmanager/\*** is redirected to the worker called **router**.

## 3. Define the workers and their attributes.

Create a file called **workers.properties** in **IPLANET\_CONFIG/connector/**. Paste the following contents into the file, and modify them to suit your environment.

```
# The advanced router LB worker
# A list of each worker
worker.list=router,status

# First JBoss EAP server
# (worker node) definition.
# Port 8009 is the standard port for AJP
#
worker.worker01.port=8009
worker.worker01.host=127.0.0.1
worker.worker01.type=ajp13
worker.worker01.ping_mode=A
worker.worker01.socket_timeout=10
worker.worker01.lbfactor=3

# Second JBoss EAP server
worker.worker02.port=8009
worker.worker02.host=127.0.0.100
worker.worker02.type=ajp13
worker.worker02.ping_mode=A
worker.worker02.socket_timeout=10
worker.worker02.lbfactor=1

# Define the load-balancer called "router"
worker.router.type=lb
```

```
worker.router.balance_workers=worker01,worker02  
  
# Define the status worker  
worker.status.type=status
```

The **workers.properties** file uses the same syntax as Apache mod\_jk. For information about which options are available, refer to [Section 19.6.5, “Configuration Reference for Apache Mod\\_jk Workers”](#).

Save and exit the file.

#### 4. Restart the iPlanet Web Server.

Choose one of the following procedures, depending on whether you run iPlanet Web Server 6.1 or 7.0.

##### A. iPlanet Web Server 6.1

```
IPLANET_CONFIG/.../stop  
IPLANET_CONFIG/.../start
```

##### B. iPlanet Web Server 7.0

```
IPLANET_CONFIG/.../bin/stopserv  
IPLANET_CONFIG/.../bin/startserv
```

## Result

The iPlanet Web Server redirects the URL patterns you have configured to your JBoss EAP 6 servers in a load-balancing configuration.

[Report a bug](#)

# Chapter 20. Messaging

## 20.1. Introduction

### 20.1.1. HornetQ

HornetQ is a multi-protocol, asynchronous messaging system developed by Red Hat. HornetQ provides high availability (HA) with automatic client failover to guarantee message reliability in the event of a server failure. HornetQ also supports flexible clustering solutions with load-balanced messages.

HornetQ is the Java Message Service (JMS) provider for JBoss EAP 6 and is configured as the **Messaging Subsystem**

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.1.2. About Java Messaging Service (JMS)

Messaging systems allow you to loosely couple heterogeneous systems together with added reliability. Java Messaging Service (JMS) providers use a system of transactions, to commit or roll back changes atomically. Unlike systems based on a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) pattern, messaging systems primarily use an asynchronous message passing pattern with no tight relationship between requests and responses. Most messaging systems also support a request-response mode but this is not a primary feature of messaging systems.

Messaging systems decouple the senders of messages from the consumers of messages. The senders and consumers of messages are completely independent and know nothing of each other. This allows you to create flexible, loosely coupled systems. Often, large enterprises use a messaging system to implement a message bus which loosely couples heterogeneous systems together. Message buses often form the core of an Enterprise Service Bus (ESB). Using a message bus to decouple disparate systems can allow the system to grow and adapt more easily. It also allows more flexibility to add new systems or retire old ones since they don't have brittle dependencies on each other.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.1.3. Supported Messaging Styles

HornetQ supports the following messaging styles:

#### **Message Queue pattern**

The Message Queue pattern involves sending a message to a queue. Once in the queue, the message is usually made persistent to guarantee delivery. Once the message has moved through the queue, the messaging system delivers it to a message consumer. The message consumer acknowledges the delivery of the message once it is processed.

When used with point-to-point messaging, the Message Queue pattern allows multiple consumers for a queue, but each message can only be received by a single consumer.

#### **Publish-Subscribe pattern**

The Publish-Subscribe pattern allows multiple senders to send messages to a single entity on the server. This entity is often known as a "topic". Each topic can be attended by multiple consumers, known as "subscriptions".

Each subscription receives a copy of every message sent to the topic. This differs from the Message Queue pattern, where each message is only consumed by a single consumer.

Subscriptions that are durable retain copies of each message sent to the topic until the subscriber consumes them. These copies are retained even in the event of a server restart. Non-durable subscriptions last only as long as the connection that created them.

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.2. Configuration of Transports

### 20.2.1. About Acceptors and Connectors

HornetQ uses the concept of connectors and acceptors as a key part of the messaging system.

#### Acceptors and Connectors

##### Acceptor

An acceptor defines which types of connections are accepted by the HornetQ server.

##### Connector

A connector defines how to connect to a HornetQ server, and is used by the HornetQ client.

There are two types of connectors and acceptors, relating to whether the matched connector and acceptor pair occur within same JVM or not.

#### Invm and Netty

##### Invm

Invm is short for Intra Virtual Machine. It can be used when both the client and the server are running in the same JVM.

##### Netty

The name of a JBoss project. It must be used when the client and server are running in different JVMs.

A HornetQ client must use a connector that is compatible with one of the server's acceptors. Only an Invm connector can connect to an Invm acceptor, and only a netty connector can connect to a netty acceptor. The connectors and acceptors are both configured on the server in a **standalone.xml** and **domain.xml**. You can use either the Management Console or the Management CLI to define them.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.2.2. Configuring Netty TCP

Netty TCP is a simple unencrypted TCP sockets based transport. Netty TCP can be configured to use old blocking Java IO or non blocking Java NIO. Java NIO is recommended on the server side for better scalability with many concurrent connections. If the number of concurrent connections is less Java old IO can give better latency than NIO.

Netty TCP is not recommended for running connections across an untrusted network as it is unencrypted. With the Netty TCP transport all connections are initiated from the client side.

### Example 20.1. Example of Netty TCP Configuration from Default EAP Configuration

```

<connectors>
  <netty-connector name="netty" socket-binding="messaging"/>
  <netty-connector name="netty-throughput" socket-binding="messaging-
throughput">
    <param key="batch-delay" value="50"/>
  </netty-connector>
  <in-vm-connector name="in-vm" server-id="0"/>
</connectors>
<acceptors>
  <netty-acceptor name="netty" socket-binding="messaging"/>
  <netty-acceptor name="netty-throughput" socket-binding="messaging-
throughput">
    <param key="batch-delay" value="50"/>
    <param key="direct-deliver" value="false"/>
  </netty-acceptor>
  <in-vm-acceptor name="in-vm" server-id="0"/>
</acceptors>

```

The example configuration also shows how the JBoss EAP 6 implementation of HornetQ uses socket bindings in the acceptor and connector configuration. This differs from the standalone version of HornetQ, which requires you to declare the specific hosts and ports.

The following table describes Netty TCP configuration properties:

**Table 20.1. Netty TCP Configuration Properties**

Property	Default	Description
batch-delay	0 milliseconds	Before writing packets to the transport, HornetQ can be configured to batch up writes for a maximum of batch-delay milliseconds. This increases the overall throughput for very small messages by increasing average latency for message transfer
direct-deliver	true	When a message arrives on the server and is delivered to waiting consumers, by default, the delivery is done on the same thread on which the message arrived. This gives good latency in environments with relatively small messages and a small number of consumers but reduces the throughput and latency. For highest throughput you can set this property as "false"

Property	Default	Description
local-address	[local address available]	For a netty connector, this is used to specify the local address which the client will use when connecting to the remote address. If a local address is not specified then the connector will use any available local address
local-port	0	For a netty connector, this is used to specify which local port the client will use when connecting to the remote address. If the local-port default is used (0) then the connector will let the system pick up an ephemeral port. valid ports are 0 to 65535
nio-remoting-threads	-1	If configured to use NIO, HornetQ will, by default, use a number of threads equal to three times the number of cores (or hyper-threads) as reported by Runtime.getRuntime().availableProcessors() for processing incoming packets. To override this value, you can set a custom value for the number of threads
tcp-no-delay	true	If this is true then Nagle's algorithm will be enabled. This algorithm helps improve the efficiency of TCP/IP networks by reducing the number of packets sent over a network
tcp-send-buffer-size	32768 bytes	This parameter determines the size of the TCP send buffer in bytes
tcp-receive-buffer-size	32768 bytes	This parameter determines the size of the TCP receive buffer in bytes
use-nio	false	If this is true then Java non blocking NIO will be used. If set to false then old blocking Java IO will be used. If you need the server to handle many concurrent connections use non blocking Java NIO otherwise go for old (blocking) IO



## Note

Netty TCP properties are valid for all types of transport (Netty SSL, Netty HTTP and Netty Servlet).

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.2.3. Configuring Netty Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)

Netty TCP is a simple unencrypted TCP sockets based transport. Netty SSL is similar to Netty TCP but it provides enhanced security by encrypting TCP connections using the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL).



## Warning

Red Hat recommends that you explicitly disable SSL in favor of TLSv1.1 or TLSv1.2 in all affected packages.

The following example shows Netty configuration for one way SSL:



## Note

Most of the following parameters can be used with acceptors as well as connectors. However some parameters work only with acceptors. The parameter description explains the difference between using these parameters in connectors and acceptors.

```
<acceptors>
  <netty-acceptor name="netty" socket-binding="messaging">
    <param key="ssl-enabled" value="true"/>
    <param key="key-store-password" value="[keystore password]"/>
    <param key="key-store-path" value="[path to keystore file]"/>
  </netty-acceptor>
</acceptors>
```

**Table 20.2. Netty SSL Configuration Properties**

Property Name	Default	Description
ssl-enabled	true	This enables SSL

Property Name	Default	Description
key-store-password	[keystore password]	When used on an acceptor this is the password for the server side keystore. When used on a connector this is the password for the client-side keystore. This is only relevant for a connector if you are using two way SSL (mutual authentication). This value can be configured on the server, but it is downloaded and used by the client
key-store-path	[path to keystore file]	When used on an acceptor this is the path to the server side SSL key store that holds the keys of all the clients that the server trusts. This is only relevant for an acceptor if you are using two way SSL (i.e. mutual authentication). When used on a connector this is the path to the client-side SSL key store which holds the public keys of all the servers which the client trusts. When used on a connector this is the password for the client-side truststore. This path is configured on the server, but it is downloaded and used by the client

If you are configuring Netty for two way SSL (mutual authentication between server and client), there are three additional parameters in addition to the ones described in the above example for one way SSL:

- ***need-client-auth***: This specifies the need for two way (mutual authentication) for client connections.
- ***trust-store-password***: When used on an acceptor this is the password for the server side trust store. When used on a connector this is the password for the client side truststore. This is relevant for a connector for both one way and two way SSL. This value can be configured on the server, but it is downloaded and used by the client
- ***trust-store-path***: When used on an acceptor this is the path to the server side SSL key store that holds the keys of all the clients that the server trusts. When used on a connector this is the path to the client side SSL key store which holds the public keys of all the servers that the client trusts. This is relevant for a connector for both one way and two way SSL. This path can be configured on the server, but it is downloaded and used by the client

[Report a bug](#)

#### 20.2.4. Configuring Netty HTTP

Netty HTTP tunnels packets over the HTTP protocol. It can be useful in scenarios where firewalls allow only HTTP traffic to pass. Netty HTTP uses the same properties as Netty TCP along with some following additional properties:



## Note

The following parameters can be used with acceptors as well as connectors. Netty HTTP transport does not allow the reuse of standard HTTP port (8080 by default). The use of standard HTTP port results in an exception. You can use [Section 20.2.5, “Configuring Netty Servlet”](#) (Netty Servlet Transport) for tunneling HornetQ connections through standard HTTP port.

```
<socket-binding name="messaging-http" port="7080" />
```

```
<acceptors>
  <netty-acceptor name="netty" socket-binding="messaging-http">
    <param key="http-enabled" value="false"/>
    <param key="http-client-idle-time" value="500"/>
    <param key="http-client-idle-scan-period" value="500"/>
    <param key="http-response-time" value="10000"/>
    <param key="http-server-scan-period" value="5000"/>
    <param key="http-requires-session-id" value="false"/>
  </netty-acceptor>
</acceptors>
```

The following table describes the additional properties for configuring Netty HTTP:

**Table 20.3. Netty HTTP Configuration Properties**

Property Name	Default	Description
http-enabled	false	If this is true HTTP is enabled
http-client-idle-time	500 milliseconds	How long a client can be idle before sending an empty HTTP request to keep the connection alive
http-client-idle-scan-period	500 milliseconds	How often (milliseconds) to scan for idle clients
http-response-time	10000 milliseconds	The time period for which the server can wait before sending an empty HTTP response to keep the connection alive
http-server-scan-period	5000 milliseconds	How often, in milliseconds, to scan for clients needing responses
http-requires-session-id	false	If this is true then client will wait after the first call to receive a session ID



## Warning

Automatic client failover is not supported for clients connecting through Netty HTTP transport.

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.2.5. Configuring Netty Servlet

The servlet transport allows HornetQ traffic to be tunneled over HTTP to a servlet running in a servlet engine which then redirects it to an in-VM HornetQ server. Netty HTTP transport acts as a web server listening for HTTP traffic on specific ports. With the servlet transport HornetQ traffic is proxied through a servlet engine which may already be serving web site or other applications.

In order to configure a servlet engine to work the Netty Servlet transport you need to follow these steps:

- » Deploy the servlet: The following example describes a web application that uses the servlet:

```
<web-app>
  <servlet>
    <servlet-name>HornetQServlet</servlet-name>
    <servlet-
class>org.jboss.netty.channel.socket.http.HttpTunnelingServlet</servlet
-class>
    <init-param>
      <param-name>endpoint</param-name>
      <param-value>local:org.hornetq</param-value>
    </init-param>
    <load-on-startup>1</load-on-startup>
  </servlet>

  <servlet-mapping>
    <servlet-name>HornetQServlet</servlet-name>
    <url-pattern>/HornetQServlet</url-pattern>
  </servlet-mapping>
</web-app>
```

The init parameter **endpoint** specifies the host attribute of the Netty acceptor that the servlet will forward its packets to

- » Insert the Netty servlet acceptor on the server side configuration: The following example shows the definition of an acceptor in server configuration files (**standalone.xml** and **domain.xml**):

```
<acceptors>
  <acceptor name="netty-servlet">
    <factory-class>
      org.hornetq.core.remoting.impl.netty.NettyAcceptorFactory
    </factory-class>
    <param key="use-servlet" value="true"/>
    <param key="host" value="org.hornetq"/>
  </acceptor>
</acceptors>
```

- » The last step is to define a connector for the client in server configuration files (**standalone.xml** and **domain.xml**):

```
<netty-connector name="netty-servlet" socket-binding="http">
    <param key="use-servlet" value="true"/>
    <param key="servlet-path" value="/messaging/HornetQServlet"/>
</netty-connector>
```

- It is also possible to use the servlet transport over SSL by adding the following configuration to the connector:

```
<netty-connector name="netty-servlet" socket-binding="https">
    <param key="use-servlet" value="true"/>
    <param key="servlet-path" value="/messaging/HornetQServlet"/>
    <param key="ssl-enabled" value="true"/>
    <param key="key-store-path" value="path to a key-store"/>
    <param key="key-store-password" value="key-store password"/>
</connector>
```



### Warning

Automatic client failover is not supported for clients connecting through HTTP tunneling servlet.



### Note

Netty servlet cannot be used to configure EAP 6 servers in order to set up a HornetQ cluster.

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.3. About Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI)

The *Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI)* is a standard Java API for naming and directory services. It allows Java-based technologies to discover and organize named components in a distributed computing environment.

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.4. Dead Connection Detection

### 20.4.1. Closing Dead Connection Resources on the Server

A HornetQ core or JMS client application must close its resources before it exits. You can configure your application to automatically close its resources by using the **finally** block in the application's code.

The following example shows a core client application which closes its session and session factory in a **finally** block:

```
ServerLocator locator = null;
```

```

ClientSessionFactory sf = null;
ClientSession session = null;

try
{
    locator = HornetQClient.createServerLocatorWithoutHA(...);

    sf = locator.createClientSessionFactory();

    session = sf.createSession(...);

    ... do some operations with the session...
}

finally
{
    if (session != null)
    {
        session.close();
    }

    if (sf != null)
    {
        sf.close();
    }

    if(locator != null)
    {
        locator.close();
    }
}

```

The following example shows a JMS client application which closes its connection and connection factory in a **finally** block:

```

Connection jmsConnection = null;

try
{
    ConnectionFactory jmsConnectionFactory =
HornetQJMSClient.createConnectionFactoryWithoutHA(...);

    jmsConnection = jmsConnectionFactory.createConnection();

    ... do some operations with the connection...
}
finally
{
    if (connection != null)
    {
        connection.close();
    }
}

```

## Using Connection Time to Live (TTL) Parameter

The ***connection-ttl*** parameter determines the time period for which the server keeps the connection alive when it does not receive data or ping packets from the client. This parameter ensures that dead server resources like old sessions are sustained longer thereby allowing clients to reconnect when a failed network connection recovers.

You can define connection TTL for JMS clients by specifying ***connection-ttl*** parameter in **HornetQConnectionFactory** instance. If you are deploying JMS connection factory instances direct into JNDI; you can define ***connection-ttl*** parameter in **standalone.xml** and **domain.xml** server configuration files.

The default value of ***connection-ttl*** parameter is 60000 milliseconds. If you do not need clients to specify their own connection TTL; you can define the ***connection-ttl-override*** parameter in server configuration files to override all values. The ***connection-ttl-override*** parameter is disabled by default and has a value of -1.

## Garbage Collection

HornetQ uses garbage collection to detect and close the sessions which are not explicitly closed in a **finally** block. HornetQ server logs a warning similar to the warning shown below before closing the sessions:

```
[Finalizer] 20:14:43,244 WARNING
[org.hornetq.core.client.impl.DelegatingSession] I'm closing a
ClientSession you left open. Please make sure you close all
ClientSessions explicitly before let
ting them go out of scope!
[Finalizer] 20:14:43,244 WARNING
[org.hornetq.core.client.impl.DelegatingSession] The session you didn't
close was created here:
java.lang.Exception
    at
org.hornetq.core.client.impl.DelegatingSession.<init>(DelegatingSession.j
ava:83)
    at org.acme.yourproject.YourClass (YourClass.java:666)
```

The log message contains information about the code part where a JMS connection or user session was created and not closed later.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.4.2. Detecting Client Side Failure

The client application automatically sends ping packets to the server to prevent the client from shutting down. In a similar way, the client application considers the connection alive as long as it receives data from the server.

If the client does not receive data packets from the server for a time period specified by ***client-failure-check-period*** parameter then the client considers that the connection has failed. The client then initiates a failover or calls **FailureListener** instances.

For JMS clients, client failure check period is configured using ***ClientFailureCheckPeriod*** attribute on **HornetQConnectionFactory** instance. If you are deploying JMS connection factory instances directly into JNDI on the server side, you can specify ***client-failure-check-period*** parameter in **standalone.xml** and **domain.xml** server configuration files.

The default value for client failure check period is 3000 milliseconds. A value of -1 means that the client will never close the connection if no data is received from the server. The value of client failure check period is much lower than connection TTL so that clients can reconnect in case of a transition failure.

## Configuring Asynchronous Connection Execution

By default, packets received on the server side are executed on the remoting thread. It is possible to free up the remoting thread by processing operations asynchronously on any thread from the thread pool. You can configure asynchronous connection execution using ***async-connection-execution-enabled*** parameter in **standalone.xml** and **domain.xml** server configuration files. The default value of this parameter is "true".

### Note

If you process operations asynchronously on any thread from the thread pool, it adds a little latency. Short running operations are always handled on the remoting thread for performance reasons.

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.5. Work with Large Messages

### 20.5.1. Work with Large Messages

HornetQ supports the use of large messages even when either the client or server has limited amounts of memory. Large messages can be streamed as they are, or compressed further for more efficient transferral. A user can send a large message by setting an **InputStream** in the body of the message. When the message is sent HornetQ reads this **InputStream** and transmits data to the server in fragments.

The client or the server never store the complete body of a large message in memory. The consumer initially receives a large message with an empty body and thereafter sets an **OutputStream** on the message to stream it in fragments to a disk file.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.5.2. Configuring HornetQ Large Messages

#### Configuring the Server

In Standalone mode large messages are stored in **EAP\_HOME/standalone/data/largemessages** directory. In Domain mode large messages are stored in **EAP\_HOME/domain/servers/SERVERNAME/data/largemessages** directory. The configuration property **large-messages-directory** indicates the location where large messages are stored.



## Important

To achieve best performance, we recommend storing the large messages directory on a different physical volume to the message journal or the paging directory

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.5.3. Configuring Parameters

You can configure HornetQ large messages by setting various parameters:

#### Using HornetQ Core API on Client Side

If you are using HornetQ Core API on client side you need to set **ServerLocator.setMinLargeMessageSize** parameter to specify minimum size of large messages. The minimum size of large messages(min-large-message-size) is set to 100KiB by default.

```
ServerLocator locator =
HornetQClient.createServerLocatorWithoutHA(new
TransportConfiguration(NettyConnectorFactory.class.getName()))

locator.setMinLargeMessageSize(25 * 1024);

ClientSessionFactory factory =
HornetQClient.createClientSessionFactory();
```

#### Configuring server for Java Messaging Service (JMS) clients

If you using Java Messaging Service (JMS) you need to specify the minimum size of large messages in the attribute **min-large-message-size** of your server configuration files (**standalone.xml** and **domain.xml**). The minimum size of large messages(min-large-message-size) is set to 100KiB by default.



#### Note

The value of the attribute **min-large-message-size** should be in bytes

You may choose to compress large messages for fast and efficient transfer. All compression/de-compression operations are handled on client side. If the compressed message is smaller than **min-large-message-size**, it is sent to the server as a regular message. Using Java Messaging Service (JMS) you can compress large messages by setting the boolean property **compress-large-messages** "true" on the server locator or ConnectionFactory.

```
<connection-factory name="ConnectionFactory">
  <connectors>
    <connector-ref connector-name="netty"/>
  </connectors>
  ...

```

```
<min-large-message-size>204800</min-large-message-size>
<compress-large-messages>true</compress-large-messages>
</connection-factory>
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.6. Paging

### 20.6.1. About Paging

HornetQ supports many message queues with each queue containing millions of messages. The HornetQ server runs with limited memory thereby making it difficult to store all message queues in memory at one time.

Paging is a mechanism used by the HornetQ server to transparently page messages in and out of memory on need basis in order to accomodate large message queues in a limited memory.

HornetQ starts paging messages to disk, when the size of messages in memory for a particular address exceeds the maximum configured message size.



#### Note

HornetQ paging is enabled by default.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.6.2. Page Files

There is an individual folder for each address on the file system which stores messages in multiple files. These files which store the messages are called page files. Each file contains messages up to the maximum configured message size (**page-size-bytes**).

The system navigates the page files as needed and removes the page files as soon as all messages in the page were received by client.

Consumers with selectors will also navigate through the page files and it will ignore messages that do not match the criteria.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.6.3. Configuration of Paging Folder

Global paging parameters are specified in server configuration files (standalone.xml and domain.xml). You can configure the location of the paging directory/folder by using the **paging-directory** parameter:

```
<hornetq-server>
  ...
  <paging-directory>/location/paging-directory</paging-directory>
  ...
</hornetq-server>
```

The **paging-directory** parameter is used to specify a location/folder to store the page files. HornetQ creates one folder for each paging address in this paging directory. The page files are stored in these folders.

The default paging directory is **EAP\_HOME/standalone/data/messagingpaging** (standalone mode) and **EAP\_HOME/domain/servers/SERVERNAME/data/messagingpaging** (domain mode).

[Report a bug](#)

#### 20.6.4. Paging Mode

When messages delivered to an address exceed the configured size, that address goes into "page/paging mode".

##### Note

Paging is done individually per address. If you configure a **max-size-bytes** for an address, it means each matching address will have a maximum size that you specified. However it does not mean that the total overall size of all matching addresses is limited to **max-size-bytes**.

You can configure the maximum size in bytes (**max-size-bytes**) for an address in server configuration files (**standalone.xml** and **domain.xml**):

```
<address-settings>
    <address-setting match="jms.someaddress">
        <max-size-bytes>104857600</max-size-bytes>
        <page-size-bytes>10485760</page-size-bytes>
        <address-full-policy>PAGE</address-full-policy>
    </address-setting>
</address-settings>
```

The following table describes the parameters on the address settings:

**Table 20.4. Paging Address Settings**

Element	Default Value	Description
max-size-bytes	10485760	This is used to specify the maximum memory size the address can have before entering into paging mode
page-size-bytes	2097152	This is used to specify the size of each page file used on the paging system
address-full-policy	PAGE	This value of this attribute is used for paging decisions. You can set either of these values for this attribute: <b>PAGE</b> : To enable paging and page messages beyond the set limit to disk, <b>DROP</b> : To silently drop messages which exceed the set limit, <b>FAIL</b> : To drop messages and send an exception to client message producers, <b>BLOCK</b> : To block client message producers when they send messages beyond the set limit

Element	Default Value	Description
page-max-cache-size	5	The system will keep page files up to <b>page-max-cache-size</b> in memory to optimize Input/Output during paging navigation



## Important

If you don't want to page messages when the maximum size is reached, you may choose to configure an address in order to simply drop messages, drop messages with an exception on client side or block producers from sending further messages, by setting the **address-full-policy** to **DROP**, **FAIL** and **BLOCK** respectively. In the default configuration, all addresses are configured to page messages after an address reaches **max-size-bytes**.

## Addresses with Multiple Queues

When a message is routed to an address that has multiple queues bound to it, there is only a single copy of the message in memory. Each queue only handles a reference to this original copy of the message. Thus the memory is freed up only when all the queues referencing the original message, have delivered the message.



## Note

A single lazy queue/subscription can reduce the Input/Output performance of the entire address as all the queues will have messages being sent through an extra storage on the paging system.

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.7. Diverts

Diverts are objects configured in HornetQ; which help in diverting messages from one address (to which the message is routed) to some other address. Diverts can be configured in server configuration files (**standalone.xml** and **domain.xml**).

Diverts can be classified into the following types:

- » Exclusive Divert: A message is only diverted to a new address and not sent to the old address at all
- » Non-exclusive Divert: A message continues to go the old address, and a copy of it is also sent to the new address. Non-exclusive diverts can be used for splitting the flow of messages

Diverts can be configured to apply a **Transformer** and an optional message filter. An optional message filter helps only divert messages which match the specified filter. A transformer is used for transforming messages to another form. When a transformer is specified; all diverted messages are transformed by the **Transformer**.

A divert only diverts a message to an address within the same server. If you need to divert a message to an address on a different server, you can follow the pattern described below:

- » Divert messages to a local store and forward queue. Setup a bridge which consumes from that queue and directs messages to an address on a different server

You can combine diverts with bridges to create various routings.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.7.1. Exclusive Divert

An exclusive divert; diverts all messages from an old address to a new address. Matching messages are not routed to the old address at all. You can enable exclusive divert by setting **exclusive** attribute as **true** in **standalone.xml** and **domain.xml** server configuration files.

The following example shows an exclusive divert configured in server configuration file(s):

```
<divert name="prices-divert">
    <address>jms.topic.priceUpdates</address>
    <forwarding-address>jms.queue.priceForwarding</forwarding-address>
    <filter string="office='New York'" />
    <transformer-class-name>
        org.hornetq.jms.example.AddForwardingTimeTransformer
    </transformer-class-name>
    <exclusive>true</exclusive>
</divert>
```

The following list describes the attributes used in the above example:

- » **address**: Messages sent to this address are diverted to another address
- » **forwarding-address**: Messages are diverted to this address from the old address
- » **filter-string**: Messages which match the **filter-string** value are diverted. All other messages are routed to the normal address
- » **transformer-class-name**: If you specify this parameter; it executes transformation for each matching message. This allows you to change a message's body or property before it is diverted
- » **exclusive**: Used to enable or disable exclusive divert

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.7.2. Non-exclusive Divert

Non-exclusive diverts forward a copy of the original message to the new address. The original message continues to arrive at the old address. You can configure non-exclusive diverts by setting **exclusive** property as false in **standalone.xml** and **domain.xml** server configuration files.

The following example shows a non-exclusive divert:

```
<divert name="order-divert">
    <address>jms.queue.orders</address>
    <forwarding-address>jms.topic.spyTopic</forwarding-address>
    <exclusive>false</exclusive>
</divert>
```

The above example makes a copy of every message sent to `jms.queue.orders` address and sends it to `jms.topic.spyTopic` address.

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.8. Configuration

### 20.8.1. Configure the JMS Server

To configure the JMS Server for HornetQ, edit the server configuration file. The server configuration is contained in the `EAP_HOME/domain/configuration/domain.xml` file for domain servers, or in the `EAP_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone-full.xml` file for standalone servers.

The `<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:messaging:1.4">` element in the server configuration file contains all JMS configuration. Add any JMS **ConnectionFactory**, **Queue**, or **Topic** instances required for the JNDI.

1. **Enable the JMS subsystem in JBoss EAP 6.**

Within the `<extensions>` element, verify that the following line is present and is not commented out:

```
<extension module="org.jboss.as.messaging"/>
```

2. **Add the basic JMS subsystem.**

If the Messaging subsystem is not present in your configuration file, add it.

- a. Look for the `<profile>` which corresponds to the profile you use, and locate its `<subsystems>` tag.
- b. Paste the following XML immediately following the `<profile>` tag.

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:messaging:1.4">
    <hornetq-server>
        <!-- ALL XML CONFIGURATION IS ADDED HERE -->
        </hornetq-server>
    </subsystem>
```

All further configuration will be added to the empty line above.

3. **Add basic configuration for JMS.**

Add the following XML in the blank line after the `<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:messaging:1.4"><hornetq-server>` tag:

```
<journal-min-files>2</journal-min-files>
<journal-type>NIO</journal-type>
<persistence-enabled>true</persistence-enabled>
```

Customize the values above to meet your needs.



## Warning

The value of **journal-file-size** must be higher than or equal to **min-large-message-size** (100KiB by default), or the server won't be able to store the message.

### 4. Add connection factory instances to HornetQ

The client uses a JMS **ConnectionFactory** object to make connections to the server. To add a JMS connection factory object to HornetQ, include a single **<jms-connection-factories>** tag and **<connection-factory>** element for each connection factory as follows:

```

<jms-connection-factories>
    <connection-factory name="InVmConnectionFactory">
        <connectors>
            <connector-ref connector-name="in-vm"/>
        </connectors>
        <entries>
            <entry name="java:/ConnectionFactory"/>
        </entries>
    </connection-factory>
    <connection-factory name="RemoteConnectionFactory">
        <connectors>
            <connector-ref connector-name="netty"/>
        </connectors>
        <entries>
            <entry
name="java:jboss/exported/jms/RemoteConnectionFactory"/>
        </entries>
    </connection-factory>
    <pooled-connection-factory name="hornetq-ra">
        <transaction mode="xa"/>
        <connectors>
            <connector-ref connector-name="in-vm"/>
        </connectors>
        <entries>
            <entry name="java:/JmsXA"/>
        </entries>
    </pooled-connection-factory>
</jms-connection-factories>

```

### 5. Configure the netty connectors and acceptors

This JMS connection factory uses **netty** acceptors and connectors. These are references to connector and acceptor objects deployed in the server configuration file. The connector object defines the transport and parameters used to connect to the HornetQ server. The acceptor object identifies the type of connections accepted by the HornetQ server.

To configure the **netty** connectors, include the following settings:

```

<connectors>
    <netty-connector name="netty" socket-binding="messaging"/>
    <netty-connector name="netty-throughput" socket-

```

```

binding="messaging-throughput">
    <param key="batch-delay" value="50"/>
</netty-connector>
<in-vm-connector name="in-vm" server-id="0"/>
</connectors>

```

To configure the **netty** acceptors, include the following settings:

```

<acceptors>
    <netty-acceptor name="netty" socket-binding="messaging"/>
    <netty-acceptor name="netty-throughput" socket-
binding="messaging-throughput">
        <param key="batch-delay" value="50"/>
        <param key="direct-deliver" value="false"/>
    </netty-acceptor>
    <in-vm-acceptor name="in-vm" server-id="0"/>
</acceptors>

```

## 6. Review the configuration

If you have followed the previous steps, your messaging subsystem should look like the following:

```

<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:messaging:1.4">
    <hornetq-server>
        <journal-min-files>2</journal-min-files>
        <journal-type>NI0</journal-type>
        <persistence-enabled>true</persistence-enabled>
        <jms-connection-factories>
            <connection-factory name="InVmConnectionFactory">
                <connectors>
                    <connector-ref connector-name="in-vm"/>
                </connectors>
                <entries>
                    <entry name="java:/ConnectionFactory"/>
                </entries>
            </connection-factory>
            <connection-factory name="RemoteConnectionFactory">
                <connectors>
                    <connector-ref connector-name="netty"/>
                </connectors>
                <entries>
                    <entry
name="java:jboss/exported/jms/RemoteConnectionFactory"/>
                </entries>
            </connection-factory>
            <pooled-connection-factory name="hornetq-ra">
                <transaction mode="xa"/>
                <connectors>
                    <connector-ref connector-name="in-vm"/>
                </connectors>
                <entries>
                    <entry name="java:/JmsXA"/>
                </entries>
            </pooled-connection-factory>
        </jms-connection-factories>
    </hornetq-server>
</subsystem>

```

```

        </pooled-connection-factory>
    </jms-connection-factories>
    <connectors>
        <netty-connector name="netty" socket-
binding="messaging"/>
        <netty-connector name="netty-throughput" socket-
binding="messaging-throughput">
            <param key="batch-delay" value="50"/>
        </netty-connector>
        <in-vm-connector name="in-vm" server-id="0"/>
    </connectors>
    <acceptors>
        <netty-acceptor name="netty" socket-
binding="messaging"/>
        <netty-acceptor name="netty-throughput" socket-
binding="messaging-throughput">
            <param key="batch-delay" value="50"/>
            <param key="direct-deliver" value="false"/>
        </netty-acceptor>
        <in-vm-acceptor name="in-vm" server-id="0"/>
    </acceptors>
</hornetq-server>
</subsystem>

```

## 7. Configure the socket binding groups

The netty connectors reference the **messaging** and **messaging-throughput** socket bindings. The **messaging** socket binding uses port 5445, and the **messaging-throughput** socket binding uses port 5455. The **<socket-binding-group>** tag is in a separate section of the server configuration file. Ensure the following socket bindings are present in the **<socket-binding-groups>** element:

```

<socket-binding-group name="standard-sockets" default-
interface="public" port-offset="${jboss.socket.binding.port-
offset:0}">
    ...
    <socket-binding name="messaging" port="5445"/>
    <socket-binding name="messaging-throughput" port="5455"/>
    ...
</socket-binding-group>

```

## 8. Add queue instances to HornetQ

There are 4 ways to setup the queue instances (or JMS destinations) for HornetQ.

- » Use the Management Console

To use the Management Console, the server must have been started in the **Message-Enabled** mode. You can do this by using the **-c** option and forcing the use of the **standalone-full.xml** (for standalone servers) configuration file. For example, in the standalone mode, the following will start the server in a message enabled mode

```
./standalone.sh -c standalone-full.xml
```

Once the server has started, logon to the Management Console and select the **Configuration** tab. Expand the **Subsystems** menu, then expand the **Messaging** menu and click **Destinations**. Next to **Default** on the JMS Messaging Provider table, click **View**, and then click **Add** to enter details of the JMS destination.

- » Use the Management CLI:

First, connect to the Management CLI:

```
bin/jboss-cli.sh --connect
```

Next, change into the messaging subsystem:

```
cd /subsystem=messaging/hornetq-server=default
```

Finally, execute an add operation, replacing the examples values given below with your own:

```
./jms-queue=testQueue:add(durable=false,entries=
["java:jboss/exported/jms/queue/test"])
```

- » Create a JMS configuration file and add it to the deployments folder

Start by creating a JMS configuration file: *example-jms.xml*. Add the following entries to it, replacing the values with your own:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?> <messaging-
deployment xmlns="urn:jboss:messaging-deployment:1.0">
    <hornetq-server>
        <jms-destinations>
            <jms-queue name="testQueue">
                <entry name="queue/test"/>
                <entry
                    name="java:jboss/exported/jms/queue/test"/>
            </jms-queue>
            <jms-topic name="testTopic">
                <entry name="topic/test"/>
                <entry
                    name="java:jboss/exported/jms/topic/test"/>
            </jms-topic>
        </jms-destinations>
    </hornetq-server>
</messaging-deployment>
```

Save this file in the deployments folder and do a deployment.

- » Add entries in the JBoss EAP 6 configuration file.

Using the *standalone-full.xml* as an example, find the messaging subsystem in this file.

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:messaging:1.4">
```

Add the following entries in it, again, replacing the example values with your own. You will need to add these entries in after the *</jms-connection-factories>* end tag but before the *</hornetq-server>* element:

```
<jms-destinations>
    <jms-queue name="testQueue">
        <entry name="queue/test"/>
        <entry name="java:jboss/exported/jms/queue/test"/>
    </jms-queue>
    <jms-topic name="testTopic">
        <entry name="topic/test"/>
        <entry name="java:jboss/exported/jms/topic/test"/>
    </jms-topic>
</jms-destinations>
```

## 9. Perform additional configuration

If you need additional settings, review the DTD in **EAP\_HOME/docs/schema/jboss-as-messaging\_1\_4.xsd**.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.8.2. Configure JMS Address Settings

The JMS subsystem has several configurable options which control aspects of how and when a message is delivered, how many attempts should be made, and when the message expires. These configuration options all exist within the **<address-settings>** configuration element.

A common feature of address configurations is the syntax for matching multiple addresses, also known as wild cards.

#### Wildcard Syntax

Address wildcards can be used to match multiple similar addresses with a single statement, similar to how many systems use the asterisk (\*) character to match multiple files or strings with a single search. The following characters have special significance in a wildcard statement.

**Table 20.5. JMS Wildcard Syntax**

Character	Description
. (a single period)	Denotes the space between words in a wildcard expression.
# (a pound or hash symbol)	Matches any sequence of zero or more words.
* (an asterisk)	Matches a single word.

**Table 20.6. JMS Wildcard Examples**

Example	Description
news.europe.#	Matches <b>news . europe</b> , <b>news . europe . sport</b> , <b>news . europe . politic</b> , but not <b>news . usa</b> or <b>europe</b> .
news.*	Matches <b>news . europe</b> but not <b>news . europe . sport</b> .
news.*.sport	Matches <b>news . europe . sport</b> and <b>news . usa . sport</b> , but not <b>news . europe . politics</b> .

#### Example 20.2. Default Address Setting Configuration

The values in this example are used to illustrate the rest of this topic.

```
<address-settings>
    <!-- default for catch all-->
    <address-setting match="#">
        <dead-letter-address>jms.queue.DLQ</dead-letter-address>
        <expiry-address>jms.queue.ExpiryQueue</expiry-address>
        <redelivery-delay>0</redelivery-delay>
        <max-size-bytes>10485760</max-size-bytes>
        <address-full-policy>BLOCK</address-full-policy>
        <message-counter-history-day-limit>10</message-counter-history-
day-limit>
    </address-setting>
</address-settings>
```

**Table 20.7. Description of JMS Address Settings**

Element	Description	Default Value	Type
<b>address-full-policy</b>	Determines what happens when an address where max-size-bytes is specified becomes full.	PAGE	STRING
<b>dead-letter-address</b>	If a dead letter address is specified, messages are moved to the dead letter address if <b>max-delivery-attempts</b> delivery attempts have failed. Otherwise, these undelivered messages are discarded. Wildcards are allowed.	jms.queue.DLQ	STRING
<b>expiry-address</b>	If the expiry address is present, expired messages are sent to the address or addresses matched by it, instead of being discarded. Wildcards are allowed.	jms.queue.ExpiryQueue	STRING
<b>last-value-queue</b>	Defines whether a queue only uses last values or not.	false	BOOLEAN
<b>max-delivery-attempts</b>	The maximum number of times to attempt to re-deliver a message before it is sent to <b>dead-letter-address</b> or discarded.	10	INT
<b>max-size-bytes</b>	The maximum bytes size.	10485760L	LONG

Element	Description	Default Value	Type
<b>message-counter-history-day-limit</b>	Day limit for the message counter history.	10	INT
<b>page-max-cache-size</b>	The number of page files to keep in memory to optimize IO during paging navigation.	5	INT
<b>page-size-bytes</b>	The paging size.	5	INT
<b>redelivery-delay</b>	Time to delay between re-delivery attempts of messages, expressed in milliseconds. If set to 0, re-delivery attempts occur indefinitely.	0L	LONG
<b>redistribution-delay</b>	Defines how long to wait when the last consumer is closed on a queue before redistributing any messages.	-1L	LONG
<b>send-to-dla-on-no-route</b>	A parameter for an address that sets the condition of a message not routed to any queues to instead be sent to the dead letter address (DLA) indicated for that address.	false	BOOLEAN

## Configure Address Setting and Pattern Attributes

Choose either the Management CLI or the Management Console to configure your pattern attributes as required.

### A. Configure the Address Settings Using the Management CLI

Use the Management CLI to configure address settings.

#### a. Add a New Pattern

Use the **add** operation to create a new address setting if required. You can run this command from the root of the Management CLI session, which in the following examples creates a new pattern titled *patternname*, with a **max-delivery-attempts** attribute declared as 5. The examples for both Standalone Server and a Managed Domain editing on the **full** profile are shown.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=messaging/hornetq-server=default/address-setting=patternname/:add(max-delivery-attempts=5)
```

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /]
/profile=full/subsystem=messaging/hornetq-
server=default/address-setting=patternname/:add(max-delivery-
attempts=5)
```

#### b. Edit Pattern Attributes

Use the **write** operation to write a new value to an attribute. You can use tab completion to help complete the command string as you type, as well as to expose the available attributes. The following example updates the **max-delivery-attempts** value to 10

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=messaging/hornetq-
server=default/address-setting=patternname/:write-
attribute(name=max-delivery-attempts,value=10)
```

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /]
/profile=full/subsystem=messaging/hornetq-
server=default/address-setting=patternname/:write-
attribute(name=max-delivery-attempts,value=10)
```

#### c. Confirm Pattern Attributes

Confirm the values are changed by running the **read-resource** operation with the **include-runtime=true** parameter to expose all current values active in the server model.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=messaging/hornetq-
server=default/address-setting=patternname/:read-resource
```

```
[domain@localhost:9999 /]
/profile=full/subsystem=messaging/hornetq-
server=default/address-setting=patternname/:read-resource
```

## B. Configure the Address Settings Using the Management Console

Use the Management Console to configure address settings.

- a. Log into the Management Console of your Managed Domain or Standalone Server.
- b. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the screen. For Domain mode, select a profile from the **Profile** menu at the top left. Only the **full** and **full-ha** profiles have the **messaging** subsystem enabled.
- c. Expand the **Messaging** menu, and select **Destinations**.
- d. A list of JMS Providers is shown. In the default configuration, only one provider, called **default**, is shown. Click **View** to view the detailed settings for this provider.
- e. Click the **Address Settings** tab. Either add a new pattern by clicking **Add**, or select an existing pattern and click **Edit** to update the settings.

- f. If you are adding a new pattern, the **Pattern** field refers to the **match** parameter of the **address-setting** element. You can also edit the **Dead Letter Address**, **Expiry Address**, **Redelivery Delay**, and **Max Delivery Attempts**. Other options need to be configured using the Management CLI.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.8.3. Configure Messaging with HornetQ

The recommended method of configuring messaging in JBoss EAP 6 is in either the Management Console or Management CLI. You can make persistent changes with either of these management tools without needing to manually edit the **standalone.xml** or **domain.xml** configuration files. It is useful however to familiarize yourself with the messaging components of the default configuration files, where documentation examples using management tools give configuration file snippets for reference.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.8.4. Enable Logging for HornetQ

You can enable logging for HornetQ in EAP 6.x using any of the following approaches:

- » Editing server configuration files (**standalone-full.xml** and **standalone-full-ha.xml**) manually
- » Editing server configuration files using the CLI

#### Procedure 20.1. Set HornetQ logging by editing server configuration files manually

1. Open the server configuration file(s) for editing. For example **standalone-full.xml** and **standalone-full-ha.xml**
2. Navigate to logging subsystem configuration in the file(s). The default configuration looks like this:

```
<logger category="com.arjuna">
<level name="TRACE"/>
</logger>
...
<logger category="org.apache.tomcat.util.modeler">
<level name="WARN"/>
</logger>
...
```

3. Add the **org.hornetq** logger category along with the desired logging level as shown in the following example:

```
<logger category="com.arjuna">
<level name="TRACE"/>
</logger>
...
```

```
<logger category="org.hornetq">
    <level name="INFO"/>
</logger>
....
```

## Result

HornetQ logging is enabled and log messages are processed based on the configured log level.

### Set HornetQ logging by editing server configuration files using the CLI

You can also use CLI to add the `org.hornetq` logger category along with the desired logging level to server configuration file(s). For more information see: [Section 14.3.2, “Configure a Log Category in the CLI”](#)

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.8.5. Configuring HornetQ Core Bridge

#### Example 20.3. Example configuration for HornetQ Core Bridge:

The values in this example are used to illustrate the rest of this topic.

```
<bridges>
    <bridge name="myBridge">
        <queue-name>jms.queue.InQueue</queue-name>
        <forwarding-address>jms.queue.OutQueue</forwarding-address>
        <ha>true</ha>
        <reconnect-attempts>-1</reconnect-attempts>
        <use-duplicate-detection>true</use-duplicate-detection>
        <static-connectors>
            <connector-ref>
                bridge-connector
            </connector-ref>
        </static-connectors>
    </bridge>
</bridges>
```

**Table 20.8. HornetQ Core Bridge Attributes**

Attribute	Description
name	All bridges must have a unique name on the server.
queue-name	This mandatory parameter is the unique name of the local queue that the bridge consumes from. The queue must already exist by the time the bridge is instantiated at start-up.
forwarding-address	This is the address on the target server that the message will be forwarded to. If a forwarding address is not specified, then the original address of the message will be retained.

Attribute	Description
ha	This optional parameter determines whether or not this bridge should support high availability. <b>true</b> means it will connect to any available server in a cluster and support failover. The default value is false.
reconnect-attempts	This optional parameter determines the total number of reconnect attempts the bridge should make before giving up and shutting down. A value of -1 signifies an unlimited number of attempts. The default value is -1.
use-duplicate-detection	This optional parameter determines whether the bridge will automatically insert a duplicate id property into each message that it forwards.
static-connectors	The static-connectors is a list of connector-ref elements pointing to connector elements defined elsewhere. A connector encapsulates knowledge of what transport to use (TCP, SSL, HTTP etc) as well as the server connection parameters (host, port etc).

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.8.6. Configuring JMS Bridge

HornetQ includes a fully functional JMS message bridge. The function of this bridge is to consume messages from a source queue or topic, and send them to a target queue or topic, typically on a different server.

The source and target servers do not have to be in the same cluster, which makes bridging suitable for reliably sending messages from one cluster to another, for instance across a WAN, and where the connection is unreliable.

A bridge can be deployed as a standalone application, with HornetQ standalone server or inside a JBoss AS instance. The source and the target can be located in the same virtual machine or another one.

#### Example 20.4. Example configuration for JMS Bridge:

The values in this example are used to illustrate the rest of this topic.

```
<subsystem>
  <subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:messaging:1.3">
    <hornetq-server>
      ...
    </hornetq-server>

    <jms-bridge name="myBridge">
      <source>
        <connection-factory name="ConnectionFactory"/>
        <destination name="jms/queue/InQueue"/>
      </source>
      <target>
        <connection-factory>
```

```

        name="jms/RemoteConnectionFactory"/>
            <destination name="jms/queue/OutQueue"/>
            <context>
                <property key="java.naming.factory.initial"
value="org.jboss.naming.remote.client.InitialContextFactory"/>
                <property key="java.naming.provider.url"
value="remote://192.168.40.1:4447"/>
            </context>
        </target>
        <quality-of-service>AT_MOST_ONCE</quality-of-service>
        <failure-retry-interval>1000</failure-retry-interval>
        <max-retries>-1</max-retries>
        <max-batch-size>10</max-batch-size>
        <max-batch-time>100</max-batch-time>
        <add-messageID-in-header>true</add-messageID-in-header>
    </jms-bridge>
    ...
</subsystem>

```

**Table 20.9. HornetQ Core JMS Attributes**

Attribute	Description
name	All bridges must have a unique name on the server.
source connection-factory	This injects the SourceCFF bean (also defined in the beans file). This bean creates the source ConnectionFactory.
source destination name	This injects the SourceDestinationFactory bean (also defined in the beans file). This bean creates the source Destination.
target connection-factory	This injects the TargetCFF bean (also defined in the beans file). This bean creates the target ConnectionFactory.
target destination name	This injects the TargetDestinationFactory bean (also defined in the beans file). This bean creates the target Destination.
quality-of-service	This parameter represents the required quality of service mode. The possible values are: AT_MOST_ONCE, DUPLICATES_OK, ONCE_AND_ONLY_ONCE
failure-retry-interval	This represents the amount of time in milliseconds to wait between trying to recreate connections to the source or target servers when the bridge has detected they have failed.
max-retries	This represents the number of attempts to recreate connections to the source or target servers when the bridge has detected they have failed. The bridge will give up after trying this number of times. -1 represents 'try forever'.
max-batch-size	This represents the maximum number of messages to consume from the source destination before sending them in a batch to the target destination. Its value must >= 1.

Attribute	Description
max-batch-time	This represents the maximum number of milliseconds to wait before sending a batch to target, even if the number of messages consumed has not reached MaxBatchSize. Its value must be -1 to represent 'wait forever', or >= 1 to specify an actual time.
add-messageID-in-header	If true, then the original message's message id will be appended in the message sent to the destination in the header HORNETQ_BRIDGE_MSG_ID_LIST. If the message is bridged more than once, each message id will be appended. This enables a distributed request-response pattern to be used.
	When you receive the message you can send a response using the correlation id of the first message id, so when the original sender receives the message, it is easy to correlate.

For more complete instructions, see [Section 20.11.2, “Create a JMS Bridge”](#).

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.8.7. Configure Delayed Redelivery

#### Introduction

Delayed redelivery is defined in the **<redelivery-delay>** element, which is a child element of the **<address-setting>** configuration element in the Java Messaging Service (JMS) subsystem configuration.

```
<!-- delay redelivery of messages for 5s -->
<address-setting match="jms.queue.exampleQueue">
    <redelivery-delay>5000</redelivery-delay>
</address-setting>
```

If a redelivery delay is specified, the JMS system waits for the duration of this delay before redelivering the messages. If **<redelivery-delay>** is set to **0**, there is no redelivery delay. Address wildcards can be used on the **match** attribute of **<address-match>** element to configure the redelivery delay for addresses that match the wildcard.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.8.8. Configure Dead Letter Addresses

#### Introduction

A dead letter address is defined in the **<address-setting>** element of the Java Messaging Service (JMS) subsystem configuration.

```
<!-- undelivered messages in exampleQueue will be sent to the dead letter
address
deadLetterQueue after 3 unsuccessful delivery attempts
```

```
-->
<address-setting match="jms.queue.exampleQueue">
  <dead-letter-address>jms.queue.deadLetterQueue</dead-letter-address>
  <max-delivery-attempts>3</max-delivery-attempts>
</address-setting>
```

If a `<dead-letter-address>` is not specified, messages are removed after trying to deliver `<max-delivery-attempts>` times. By default, messages delivery is attempted 10 times. Setting `<max-delivery-attempts>` to `-1` allows infinite redelivery attempts. For example, a dead letter can be set globally for a set of matching addresses and you can set `<max-delivery-attempts>` to `-1` for a specific address setting to allow infinite redelivery attempts only for this address. Address wildcards can also be used to configure dead letter settings for a set of addresses.

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.8.9. Configure Message Expiry Addresses

### Introduction

Message expiry addresses are defined in the address-setting configuration of the Java Messaging Service (JMS). For example:

```
<!-- expired messages in exampleQueue will be sent to the expiry address
expiryQueue -->
<address-setting match="jms.queue.exampleQueue">
  <expiry-address>jms.queue.expiryQueue</expiry-address>
</address-setting>
```

If messages are expired and no expiry address is specified, messages are simply removed from the queue and dropped. Address *wildcards* can also be used to configure specific ranges of an expiry address for a set of addresses. See [Section 20.8.2, “Configure JMS Address Settings”](#) for the JMX wildcard syntax and examples.

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.8.10. Reference for HornetQ Configuration Attributes

The JBoss EAP 6 implementation of HornetQ exposes the following attributes for configuration. You can use the Management CLI in particular to exposure the configurable or viewable attributes with the `read-resource` operation.

### Example 20.5. Example

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=messaging/hornetq-
server=default:read-resource
```

**Table 20.10. HornetQ Attributes**

Attribute	Default Value	Type	Description
-----------	---------------	------	-------------

Attribute	Default Value	Type	Description
<b>allow-failback</b>	true	BOOLEAN	Whether this server will automatically shutdown if the original live server comes back up
<b>async-connection-execution-enabled</b>	true	BOOLEAN	Whether incoming packets on the server must be handed off to a thread from the thread pool for processing
<b>address-setting</b>			An address setting defines some attributes that are defined against an address wildcard rather than a specific queue
<b>acceptor</b>			An acceptor defines a way in which connections can be made to the HornetQ server
<b>backup-group-name</b>		STRING	The name of a set of live/backups that must replicate with each other
<b>backup</b>	false	BOOLEAN	Whether this server is a backup server
<b>check-for-live-server</b>	false	BOOLEAN	Whether a replicated live server must check the current cluster to see if there is already a live server with the same node ID
<b>clustered</b>	false	BOOLEAN	[Deprecated] Whether the server is clustered
<b>cluster-password</b>	CHANGE ME!!	STRING	The password used by cluster connections to communicate between the clustered nodes
<b>cluster-user</b>	HORNETQ.CLU STER.ADMIN.USER	STRING	The user used by cluster connections to communicate between the clustered nodes
<b>cluster-connection</b>			Cluster connections group servers into clusters so that messages can be load balanced between the nodes of the cluster
<b>create-bindings-dir</b>	true	BOOLEAN	Whether the server must create the bindings directory on start up
<b>create-journal-dir</b>	true	BOOLEAN	Whether the server must create the journal directory on start up
<b>connection-ttl-override</b>	-1L	LONG	If set, this will override how long (in ms) to keep a connection alive without receiving a ping
<b>connection-factory</b>			Defines a connection factory

Attribute	Default Value	Type	Description
<b>connector</b>			A connector can be used by a client to define how it connects to a server
<b>connector-service</b>			
<b>divert</b>			A messaging resource that allows you to transparently divert messages routed to one address to some other address, without making any changes to any client application logic
<b>discovery-group</b>			Multicast group to listen to receive broadcast from other servers announcing their connectors
<b>fallback-delay</b>	5000	LONG	How long to wait before fallback occurs on live server restart
<b>failover-on-shutdown</b>	false	BOOLEAN	Whether this backup server (if it is a backup server) must come live on a normal server shutdown
<b>grouping-handler</b>			Makes decisions about which node in a cluster must handle a message with a group id assigned
<b>id-cache-size</b>	20000	INT	The size of the cache for pre-creating message IDs
<b>in-vm-acceptor</b>			Defines a way in which in-VM connections can be made to the HornetQ server
<b>in-vm-connector</b>			Used by an in-VM client to define how it connects to a server
<b>jmx-domain</b>	org.hornetq	STRING	The JMX domain used to register internal HornetQ MBeans in the MBeanServer
<b>jmx-management-enabled</b>	false	BOOLEAN	Whether HornetQ must expose its internal management API via JMX. This is not recommended, as accessing these MBeans can lead to inconsistent configuration
<b>journal-buffer-size</b>	501760 (490KiB)	LONG	The size of the internal buffer on the journal
<b>journal-buffer-timeout</b>	500000 (0.5 milliseconds) for ASYNCIO journal and 3333333 (3.33 milliseconds) for NIO journal	LONG	The timeout (in nanoseconds) used to flush internal buffers on the journal

Attribute	Default Value	Type	Description
<b>journal-compact-min-files</b>	10	INT	The minimal number of journal data files before we can start compacting
<b>journal-compact-percentage</b>	30	INT	The percentage of live data on which we consider compacting the journal
<b>journal-file-size</b>	10485760	LONG	The size (in bytes) of each journal file
<b>journal-max-io</b>	1	INT	The maximum number of write requests that can be in the AIO queue at any one time. The default value changes to 500 when ASYNCIO journal is used
<b>journal-min-files</b>	2	INT	How many journal files to pre-create
<b>journal-sync-non-transactional</b>	true	BOOLEAN	Whether to wait for non transaction data to be synced to the journal before returning a response to the client
<b>journal-sync-transactional</b>	true	BOOLEAN	Whether to wait for transaction data to be synchronized to the journal before returning a response to the client
<b>journal-type</b>	ASYNCIO	String	The type of journal to use. This attribute can take the values "ASYNCIO" or "NIO"
<b>jms-topic</b>			Defines a JMS topic
<b>live-connector-ref</b>	reference	STRING	[Deprecated] The name of the connector used to connect to the live connector. If this server is not a backup that uses shared nothing HA, its value is "undefined"
<b>log-journal-write-rate</b>	false	BOOLEAN	Whether to periodically log the journal's write rate and flush rate
<b>mask-password</b>	true	BOOLEAN	
<b>management-address</b>	jms.queue.hornetq.management	STRING	Address to send management messages to
<b>management-notification-address</b>	hornetq.notifications	STRING	The name of the address that consumers bind to in order to receive management notifications
<b>max-saved-replicated-journal-size</b>	2	INT	The maximum number of backup journals to keep after fallback occurs
<b>memory-measure-interval</b>	-1	LONG	Frequency to sample JVM memory in ms (or -1 to disable memory sampling)

Attribute	Default Value	Type	Description
<b>memory-warning-threshold</b>	25	INT	Percentage of available memory which if exceeded results in a warning log
<b>message-counter-enabled</b>	false	BOOLEAN	Whether message counters are enabled
<b>message-counter-max-day-history</b>	10	INT	How many days to keep message counter history
<b>message-counter-sample-period</b>	10000	LONG	The sample period (in ms) to use for message counters
<b>message-expiry-scan-period</b>	30000	LONG	How often (in ms) to scan for expired messages
<b>message-expiry-thread-priority</b>	3	INT	The priority of the thread expiring messages
<b>page-max-concurrent-io</b>	5	INT	The maximum number of concurrent reads allowed on paging
<b>perf-blast-pages</b>	-1	INT	
<b>persist-delivery-count-before-delivery</b>	false	BOOLEAN	Whether the delivery count is persisted before delivery. False means that this only happens after a message has been canceled
<b>persist-id-cache</b>	true	BOOLEAN	Whether IDs are persisted to the journal
<b>persistence-enabled</b>	true	BOOLEAN	Whether the server will use the file based journal for persistence
<b>pooled-connection-factory</b>			Defines a managed connection factory
<b>remoting-interceptors</b>	undefined	LIST	[Deprecated] The list of interceptor classes used by this server
<b>remoting-incoming-interceptors</b>	undefined	LIST	The list of incoming interceptor classes used by this server
<b>remoting-outgoing-interceptors</b>	undefined	LIST	The list of outgoing interceptor classes used by this server

Attribute	Default Value	Type	Description
<b>run-sync-speed-test</b>	false	BOOLEAN	Whether to perform a diagnostic test on how fast your disk can sync on startup. Useful when determining performance issues
<b>replication-clustername</b>		STRING	The name of the cluster connection to replicate from if more than one cluster connection is configured
<b>runtime-queue</b>			A runtime queue
<b>remote-connector</b>			Used by a remote client to define how it connects to a server
<b>remote-acceptor</b>			Defines a way in which remote connections can be made to the HornetQ server
<b>scheduled-thread-pool-max-size</b>	5	INT	The number of threads that the main scheduled thread pool has
<b>security-domain</b>	other	STRING	The security domain to use in order to verify user and role information
<b>security-enabled</b>	true	BOOLEAN	Whether security is enabled
<b>security-setting</b>			A security setting allows sets of permissions to be defined against queues based on their address
<b>security-invalidation-interval</b>	10000	LONG	How long (in ms) to wait before invalidating the security cache
<b>server-dump-interval</b>	-1	LONG	How often to dump basic runtime information to the server log. A value less than 1 disables this feature
<b>shared-store</b>	true	BOOLEAN	Whether this server is using a shared store for failover
<b>thread-pool-max-size</b>	30	INT	The number of threads that the main thread pool has. -1 means no limit
<b>transaction-timeout</b>	300000	LONG	How long (in ms) before a transaction can be removed from the resource manager after create time
<b>transaction-timeout-scan-period</b>	1000	LONG	How often (in ms) to scan for timeout transactions
<b>wild-card-routing-enabled</b>	true	BOOLEAN	Whether the server supports wild card routing



## Warning

The value of **journal-file-size** must be higher than the size of message sent to server, or the server will not be able to store the message.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.8.11. Set Message Expiry

#### Introduction

Sent messages can be set to expire on server if they're not delivered to consumer after specified amount of time (milliseconds). Using Java Messaging Service (JMS) or HornetQ Core API, the expiration time can be set directly on the message. For example:

```
// message will expire in 5000ms from now
message.setExpiration(System.currentTimeMillis() + 5000);
```

JMS **MessageProducer** includes a **TimeToLive** parameter which controls message expiry for the messages it sends:

```
// messages sent by this producer will be retained for 5s (5000ms) before
// expiration
producer.setTimeToLive(5000);
```

Expired messages which are consumed from an expiry address have the following properties:

- » **\_HQ\_ORIG\_ADDRESS**

A string property containing the original address of the expired message.

- » **\_HQ\_ACTUAL\_EXPIRY**

A long property containing the actual expiration time of the expired message.

Besides setting the time-to-live parameter on the JMS producer, you can also set it on a per-message basis. You can achieve this by adding TTL parameter to producer's send method when sending the message.

```
producer.send(message, DeliveryMode.PERSISTENT, 0, 5000)
```

Where, the last parameter is message specific TTL.

#### Configuring Expiry Addresses

Expiry address are defined in the address-setting configuration:

```
<!-- expired messages in exampleQueue will be sent to the expiry address
expiryQueue -->
<address-setting match="jms.queue.exampleQueue">
  <expiry-address>jms.queue.expiryQueue</expiry-address>
</address-setting>
```

If the messages are expired and no expiry address is specified, the messages are removed from the queue and dropped.

## Configuring Expiry Reaper Thread

A reaper thread periodically inspects the queues to validate if messages have expired.

- » `message-expiry-scan-period`

How often the queues will be scanned to detect expired messages (in milliseconds, default is 30000ms, set to -1 to disable the reaper thread).

- » `message-expiry-thread-priority`

The reaper thread priority. It must be between 0 and 9, 9 being the highest priority, default is 3.

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.9. Message Grouping

### 20.9.1. About Message Grouping

A message group is a set/group of messages which share certain characteristics:

- » All messages in a message group are grouped under a common group id. This means that they can be identified with a common group property
- » All messages in a message group are serially processed and consumed by the same consumer irrespective of the number of consumers on the queue. This means that a specific message group with a unique group id is always processed by one consumer when the consumer opens it. If the consumer closes the message group the entire message group is directed to another consumer in the queue



#### Important

Message groups are especially useful when there is a need for messages with a certain value of the property (group id) to be processed serially by a single consumer.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.9.2. Using HornetQ Core API on Client Side

The property `_HQ_GROUP_ID` is used to identify a message group in HornetQ Core API on client side. To pick a random unique message group id you can also set the `autoGroup` property as "true" on the SessionFactory.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.9.3. Configuring Server for Java Messaging Service (JMS) Clients

The property `JMSXGroupID` is used to identify a message group for Java Messaging Service (JMS) clients. If you wish to send a message group with different messages to one consumer you can set the same `JMSXGroupID` for different messages:

```

Message message = ...
message.setStringProperty("JMSXGroupID", "Group-0");
producer.send(message);

message = ...
message.setStringProperty("JMSXGroupID", "Group-0");
producer.send(message);

```

The second approach is to set the **autogroup** property as "true" on the HornetQConnectionFactory. The HornetQConnectionFactory will then pick up a random unique message group id. You can set the **autogroup** property in server configuration files (**standalone.xml** and **domain.xml**) as follows:

```

<connection-factory name="ConnectionFactory">
    <connectors>
        <connector-ref connector-name="netty-connector"/>
    </connectors>
    <entries>
        <entry name="ConnectionFactory"/>
    </entries>
    <autogroup>true</autogroup>
</connection-factory>

```

An alternative to the above two approaches is to set a specific message group id through the connection factory. This will in-turn set the property **JMSXGroupID** to the specified value for all messages sent through this connection factory. To set a specific message group id on the connection factory, edit the **group-id** property in server configuration files (**standalone.xml** and **domain.xml**) as follows:

```

<connection-factory name="ConnectionFactory">
    <connectors>
        <connector-ref connector-name="netty-connector"/>
    </connectors>
    <entries>
        <entry name="ConnectionFactory"/>
    </entries>
    <group-id>Group-0</group-id>
</connection-factory>

```

[Report a bug](#)

#### 20.9.4. Clustered Grouping

Clustered grouping follows a different approach relative to normal message grouping. In a cluster, message groups with specific group ids can arrive on any of the nodes. It is important for a node to determine which group ids are bound to which consumer on which node. Each node is responsible for routing message groups correctly to the node which has the consumer processing those group ids irrespective of where the message groups arrive by default.

This situation is addressed by a grouping handler. Each node has a grouping handler and this grouping handler (along with other handlers) is responsible for routing the message groups to the correct node. There are two types of grouping handlers namely **local** and **remote**.

The local handler is responsible for deciding the route which a message group should take. The remote handlers communicate with the local handler and work accordingly. Each cluster should choose a specific node to have a local grouping handler and all the other nodes should have remote handlers.

You can configure "local" and "remote" grouping handlers in server configuration files (**standalone.xml** and **domain.xml**) as follows:

```
<grouping-handler name="my-grouping-handler">
    <type>LOCAL</type>
    <address>jms</address>
    <timeout>5000</timeout>
</grouping-handler>

<grouping-handler name="my-grouping-handler">
    <type>REMOTE</type>
    <address>jms</address>
    <timeout>5000</timeout>
</grouping-handler>
```

The "timeout" attribute ensures that a routing decision is made quickly within the specified time. If a decision is not made within this time an exception is thrown.

The node which initially receives a message group takes the routing decision based on regular cluster routing conditions (round-robin queue availability). The node proposes this decision to the respective grouping handler which then routes the messages to the proposed queue if it accepts the proposal.

If the grouping handler rejects the proposal, it proposes some other route and the routing takes place accordingly. The other nodes follow suite and forward the message groups to the chosen queue. After a message arrives on a queue it is pinned to a customer on that queue.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.9.5. Best Practices for Clustered Grouping

Some best practices for clustered grouping are as follows:

- » If you create and close consumers regularly make sure that your consumers are distributed evenly across the different nodes. Once a queue is pinned, messages are automatically transferred to that queue regardless of removing customers from it
- » If you wish to remove a queue which has a message group bound to it, make sure the queue is deleted by the session that is sending the messages. Doing this will ensure that other nodes will not try to route messages to this queue after it is removed
- » As a failover mechanism always replicate the node which has the local grouping handler

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.10. Duplicate Message Detection

### 20.10.1. About Duplicate Message Detection

Duplicate message detection allows filtering of duplicate messages without the need of coding the duplicate detection logic within the application. You can configure duplicate message detection in HornetQ.

When a sender(client/server) sends a message to another server there can be a situation where the target server(receiver) or the connection fails after sending the message but before sending a response to the sender indicating that the process was successful. In such situations, it is very difficult for the sender(client) to determine if the message was sent successfully to the intended receiver.

The message send may or may not be successful depending on when the target receiver or connection failed (before or after sending the message). If the sender (client/server) decides to resend the last message it can result in a duplicate message being sent to the address.

HornetQ provides duplicate message detection for messages sent to addresses.

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.10.2. Using Duplicate Message Detection for Sending Messages

To enable duplicate message detection for sent messages you need to set a special property on the message to a unique value. You can create this value the way you wish but this value must be unique.

When the target server receives this message, it checks if the special property is set. If the property is set then the target server checks its memory cache for a received message with that value of the header. If the server finds any message with the same value of the header it ignores the message sent by a client.

If you are sending messages in a transaction then you do not have to set the property for every message you send in that transaction; you only need to set it once in the transaction. If the server detects a duplicate message for any message in the transaction, then it will ignore the entire transaction.

The name of the property that you set is given by the value of **org.hornetq.api.core.HDR\_DUPLICATE\_DETECTION\_ID**, which is **\_HQ\_DUPL\_ID**. The value of this property can be of type **byte[]** or **SimpleString** for core API. For Java Messaging Service (JMS) clients, it must be of the type **String** with a unique value. An easy way of generating a unique id is by generating a UUID.

The following example shows how to set the property for core API:

```
...
ClientMessage message = session.createMessage(true);

SimpleString myUniqueID = "This is my unique id"; // Can use a UUID for this

message.setStringProperty(HDR_DUPLICATE_DETECTION_ID, myUniqueID);

...
```

The following example shows how to set the property for JMS clients:

```
...
```

```

Message jmsMessage = session.createMessage();

String myUniqueID = "This is my unique id"; // Could use a UUID for
this

message.setStringProperty(HDR_DUPLICATE_DETECTION_ID.toString(),
myUniqueID);

...

```

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.10.3. Configuring Duplicate ID Cache

The server maintains caches of received values of the `org.hornetq.core.message.impl.HDR_DUPLICATE_DETECTION_ID` property sent to each address. Each address maintains its own address cache.

The cache is fixed in terms of size. The maximum size of cache is configured using the parameter `id-cache-size` in server configuration files (`standalone.xml` and `domain.xml`). The default value of this parameter is 2000 elements. If the cache has a maximum size of n elements, then the (n + 1)th ID stored will overwrite the 0th element in the cache.

The caches can also be configured to persist to disk or not. This can be configured using the parameter `persist-id-cache` in server configuration files (`standalone.xml` and `domain.xml`). If this value is set "true" then each ID will be persisted to permanent storage as they are received. The default value for this parameter is true.



#### Note

Set the size of the duplicate ID cache to a large size in order to ensure that resending of messages does not overwrite the previously sent messages stored in the cache.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.10.4. Using Duplicate Detection with Bridges and Cluster Connections

Core bridges can be configured to automatically add a unique duplicate ID value (if there isn't already one in the message) before forwarding the message to the target. To configure a core bridge for duplication message detection set the property `use-duplicate-detection` to "true" in server configuration files (`standalone.xml` and `domain.xml`). The default value of this parameter is "true".

Cluster connections internally use core bridges to move messages between nodes of the cluster. To configure a cluster connection for duplicate message detection set the property `use-duplicate-detection` to "true" in server configuration files (`standalone.xml` and `domain.xml`). The default value of this parameter is "true".

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.11. JMS Bridges

### 20.11.1. About Bridges

The function of a bridge is to consume messages from a source queue, and forward them to a target address, typically on a different HornetQ server. Bridges cope with unreliable connections, automatically reconnecting when the connections become available again. HornetQ bridges can be configured with filter expressions to only forward certain messages.



## Important

JMS bridge cannot be deployed to EAP 6 server, which includes HornetQ configured as a dedicated backup. The reason is that Transaction Manager on a dedicated backup server is unable to recover transactions previously started on the HornetQ live server.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.11.2. Create a JMS Bridge

#### Summary

A JMS bridge consumes messages from a source JMS queue or topic and sends them to a target JMS queue or topic, which is typically on a different server. It can be used to bridge messages between any JMS servers, as long as they are JMS 1.1 compliant. The source and destination JMS resources are looked up using JNDI and the client classes for the JNDI lookup must be bundled in a module. The module name is then declared in the JMS bridge configuration.

#### Procedure 20.2. Create a JMS Bridge

This procedure demonstrates how to configure a JMS bridge to migrate messages from a JBoss EAP 5.x server to a JBoss EAP 6 server.

##### 1. Configure the Bridge On the Source JMS Messaging Server

Configure the JMS bridge on the source server using the instructions provided for that server type. For an example of how to configure a JMS Bridge for a JBoss EAP 5.x server, see the topic entitled *Create a JMS Bridge* in the *Migration Guide* for JBoss EAP 6.

##### 2. Configure the Bridge on the Destination JBoss EAP 6 Server

In JBoss EAP 6.1 and later, the JMS bridge can be used to bridge messages from any JMS 1.1 compliant server. Because the source and target JMS resources are looked up using JNDI, the JNDI lookup classes of the source messaging provider, or message broker, must be bundled in a JBoss Module. The following steps use the fictitious 'MyCustomMQ' message broker as an example.

###### a. Create the JBoss module for the messaging provider.

- i. Create a directory structure under **EAP\_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/** for the new module. The **main/** subdirectory will contain the client JARs and **module.xml** file. The following is an example of the directory structure created for the MyCustomMQ messaging provider:

**EAP\_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/org/mycustommq/main/**

- ii. In the **main/** subdirectory, create a **module.xml** file containing the module definition for the messaging provider. The following is an example of the **module.xml** created for the MyCustomMQ messaging provider.

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.1"
  name="org.mycustommq">
  <properties>
    <property name="jboss.api" value="private"/>
  </properties>

  <resources>
    <!-- Insert resources required to connect to
the source or target -->
    <resource-root path="mycustommq-1.2.3.jar" />
    <resource-root path="mylogapi-0.0.1.jar" />
  </resources>

  <dependencies>
    <!-- Add the dependencies required by JMS Bridge
code -->
    <module name="javax.api" />
    <module name="javax.jms.api" />
    <module name="javax.transaction.api"/>
    <!-- Add a dependency on the org.hornetq module
since we send -->
    <!-- messages to the HornetQ server embedded in
the local EAP instance -->
    <module name="org.hornetq" />
  </dependencies>
</module>

```

- iii. Copy the messaging provider JARs required for the JNDI lookup of the source resources to the module's **main**/ subdirectory. The directory structure for the MyCustomMQ module should now look like the following.

```

modules/
`-- system
  `-- layers
    `-- base
      `-- org
        `-- mycustommq
          `-- main
            |-- mycustommq-1.2.3.jar
            |-- mylogapi-0.0.1.jar
            |-- module.xml

```

- b. Configure the JMS bridge in the **messaging** subsystem of the JBoss EAP 6 server.

- Before you begin, stop the server and back up the current server configuration files. If you are running a standalone server, this is the **EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone-full-ha.xml** file. If you are running a managed domain, back up both the **EAP\_HOME/domain/configuration/domain.xml** and the **EAP\_HOME/domain/configuration/host.xml** files.

- ii. Add the **jms-bridge** element to the **messaging** subsystem in the server configuration file. The **source** and **target** elements provide the names of the JMS resources used for JNDI lookups. If **user** and **password** credentials are specified, they are passed as arguments when JMS connection is created.

The following is an example of the **jms-bridge** element configured for the MyCustomMQ messaging provider:

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:messaging:1.3">
  ...
  <jms-bridge name="myBridge" module="org.mycustommq">
    <source>
      <connection-factory name="ConnectionFactory"/>
      <destination name="sourceQ"/>
      <user>user1</user>
      <password>pwd1</password>
      <context>
        <property key="java.naming.factory.initial" value="org.mycustommq.jndi.MyCustomMQInitialContextFactory"/>
        <property key="java.naming.provider.url" value="tcp://127.0.0.1:9292"/>
      </context>
    </source>
    <target>
      <connection-factory name="java:/ConnectionFactory"/>
      <destination name="/jms/targetQ"/>
    </target>
    <quality-of-service>DUPLICATES_OK</quality-of-service>
    <failure-retry-interval>500</failure-retry-interval>
    <max-retries>1</max-retries>
    <max-batch-size>500</max-batch-size>
    <max-batch-time>500</max-batch-time>
    <add-messageID-in-header>true</add-messageID-in-header>
  </jms-bridge>
</subsystem>
```

In the above example, the JNDI properties are defined in the **context** element for the **source**. If the **context** element is omitted, as in the **target** example above, the JMS resources are looked up in the local instance.

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.12. Persistence

### 20.12.1. About Persistence in HornetQ

HornetQ handles its own persistence. It ships with a high-performance journal, which is optimized for messaging-specific use cases.

The HornetQ journal is append only with a configurable file size, which improves performance by enabling single write operations. It consists of a set of files on disk, which are initially pre-created to a fixed size and filled with padding. As server operations (add message, delete message, update message, etc.) are performed, records of the operations are appended to the journal until the journal file is full, at which point the next journal file is used.

A sophisticated garbage collection algorithm determines whether journal files can be reclaimed and re-used when all of their data has been deleted. A compaction algorithm removes dead space from journal files and compresses the data.

The journal also fully supports both local and XA transactions.

The majority of the journal is written in Java, but interaction with the file system has been abstracted to allow different pluggable implementations. The two implementations shipped with HornetQ are:

- » **Java New I/O (NIO)**

Uses standard Java NIO to interface with the file system. This provides extremely good performance and runs on any platform with a Java 6 or later runtime.

- » **Linux Asynchronous IO (AIO)**

Uses a native code wrapper to talk to the Linux asynchronous IO library (AIO). With AIO, HornetQ receives a message when data has been persisted. This removes the need for explicit syncs. AIO will typically provide better performance than Java NIO, but requires Linux kernel 2.6 or later and the libaio package.

AIO also requires ext2, ext3, ext4, jfs or xfs type file systems.

The standard HornetQ core server uses the following journal instances:

- » ***bindings journal***

Stores bindings-related data, including the set of queues deployed on the server and their attributes. It also stores data such as ID sequence counters. The bindings journal is always a NIO journal, as it typically has low throughput in comparison to the message journal.

The files on this journal are prefixed as hornetq-bindings. Each file has a bindings extension. File size is 1048576 bytes, and it is located in the bindings folder.

- » ***JMS journal***

Stores all JMS-related data, for example, any JMS queues, topics or connection factories and any JNDI bindings for these resources. Any JMS resources created with the management API are persisted to this journal. Any resources configured with configuration files are not. This journal is created only if JMS is in use.

- » ***message journal***

Stores all message-related data, including messages themselves and duplicate-id caches. By default, HornetQ uses AIO for this journal. If AIO is not available, it will automatically fall back to NIO.

Large messages are persisted outside the message journal. In low memory situations, configure HornetQ to page messages to disk. If persistence is not required, HornetQ can be configured not to persist any data.

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.13. HornetQ Clustering

HornetQ clusters are used to create groups of HornetQ servers in order to share message processing load. Each active node in the cluster acts as an independent HornetQ server and manages its own messages and connections.

To form a cluster, each node (independent HornetQ server) declares cluster connections with another node with configuration parameters in server configuration files (**standalone.xml** and **domain.xml**).

In clustering, core bridges are used for bridging/routing messages from one cluster to another. Core bridges consume messages from a source queue and then forward these messages to a target HornetQ server (node) which may or may not be in the same cluster.

When a node forms a cluster connection with another node, it creates a core bridge internally. Each node creates an explicit core bridge and you do not need to declare it. These cluster connections allow transmission of messages between nodes in various clusters for balancing message processing load.

You can configure cluster nodes in server configuration files (**standalone.xml** and **domain.xml**).



### Important

You can configure a node through server configuration files (**standalone.xml** and **domain.xml**) and copy this configuration to other nodes to generate a symmetric cluster. However you must be careful when you are copying the server configuration files. You must not copy the HornetQ data (i.e. the bindings, journal, and large messages directories) from one node to another. When a node is started for the first time it persists a unique identifier to the journal directory which is needed for proper formation of clusters.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 20.13.1. About Server Discovery

Servers use a mechanism called "server discovery" to:

- » Forward their connection details to messaging clients: Messaging clients intend to connect to servers of a cluster without specific details on the servers which are up and running at a given point of time
- » Connect to other servers: Servers in a cluster want to establish cluster connections with other servers without specific details on all other servers in a cluster

Information about servers is sent to messaging clients via normal HornetQ connections and to other servers via cluster connections.

The initial first connection needs to be established and it can be established using dynamic server discovery techniques like UDP (User Datagram Protocol), JGroups or by providing a list of connectors.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 20.13.2. Broadcast Groups

Connectors are used on the client to define how and in what ways it connects to the server. Servers use broadcast groups to broadcast connectors over the network. The broadcast group takes a set of connector pairs and broadcasts them on the network. Each connector pair contains connection settings for a live and backup server.

You can define broadcast groups in ***broadcast-groups*** element of server configuration files (***standalone.xml*** and ***domain.xml***). A single HornetQ server can have many broadcast groups. You can define either a User Datagram Protocol (UDP) or a JGroup broadcast group.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.13.2.1. User Datagram Protocol (UDP) Broadcast Group

The example shown below defines a UDP broadcast group:

```
<broadcast-groups>
    <broadcast-group name="my-broadcast-group">
        <local-bind-address>172.16.9.3</local-bind-address>
        <local-bind-port>5432</local-bind-port>
        <group-address>231.7.7.7</group-address>
        <group-port>9876</group-port>
        <broadcast-period>2000</broadcast-period>
        <connector-ref>netty</connector-ref>
    </broadcast-group>
</broadcast-groups>
```

#### Note

In the configuration example shown above, the attributes "local-bind-address", "local-bind-port", "group-address" and "group-port" are deprecated. Instead of these attributes you can choose to use the attribute "socket-binding".

The example shown below defines a UDP broadcast group replacing all the deprecated attributes with the attribute "socket-binding":

```
<broadcast-groups>
    <broadcast-group name="my-broadcast-group">
        <socket-binding>messaging-group</socket-binding>
        <broadcast-period>2000</broadcast-period>
        <connector-ref>netty</connector-ref>
    </broadcast-group>
</broadcast-groups>
```

The table shown below describes all the important parameters used in the above examples and in general to define a UDP broadcast group:

**Table 20.11. UDP Broadcast Group Parameters**

Attribute	Description
-----------	-------------

Attribute	Description
name attribute	Denotes the name of each broadcast group in a server. Each broadcast group must have a unique name.
local-bind-address	[Deprecated] This is a UDP specific attribute and specifies the local bind address which the datagram packet binds to. You must set this property to define the interface which you wish to use for your broadcasts. If this property is not specified then the socket binds to a wildcard address (a random kernel generated address).
local-bind-port	[Deprecated] This is a UDP specific attribute and is used to specify a local port which the datagram socket binds to. A default value of "-1" specifies an anonymous port to be used.
group-address	[Deprecated] This is a multicast address specific to UDP where messages are broadcast. This IP address has a range of 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255, inclusive. The IP address 224.0.0 is reserved and can not be used.
group-port	[Deprecated] This denotes the UDP port number for broadcasting.
socket-binding	This denotes the broadcast group socket binding
broadcast-period	This parameter specifies the time between two broadcasts (milliseconds). It is optional.
connector-ref	This refers to the connector which will be broadcasted.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.13.2.2. JGroups Broadcast Group

You can use JGroups to broadcast by specifying two attributes namely **jgroups-stack** and **jgroups-channel**. The example shown below defines a JGroups broadcast group:

```
<broadcast-groups>
  <broadcast-group name="bg-group1">
    <jgroups-stack>udp</jgroups-stack>
    <jgroups-channel>udp</jgroups-channel>
    <broadcast-period>2000</broadcast-period>
    <connector-ref>netty</connector-ref>
  </broadcast-group>
</broadcast-groups>
```

The JGroups broadcast group definition uses two main attributes:

- **jgroups-stack** attribute: This denotes the name of a stack defined in the **org.jboss.as.clustering.jgroups** subsystem
- **jgroups-channel** attribute: This denotes the channel which JGroups channels connect to for broadcasting

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.13.3. Discovery Groups

Broadcast groups are used for broadcasting connectors over a network. On the other hand discovery groups define how connector information is received from broadcast endpoints (UDP or JGroups broadcast group). A discovery group maintains a list of connector pair- one for each broadcast by a different server.

When a discovery group receives broadcasts on a broadcast endpoint for a specific server, it accordingly updates the connector pairs entry in the list for the specific server. If it does not receive a broadcast from a specific server for a long time, it removes the server's entry from the list altogether.

Discovery groups are mainly used by cluster connections and Java Messaging Service (JMS) clients to obtain initial connection information in order to download the required topology.



#### Note

You must configure each discovery group with an appropriate broadcast endpoint which matches its broadcast group counterpart (UDP or JGroups).

[Report a bug](#)

#### 20.13.3.1. Configuring User Datagram Protocol (UDP) Discovery Group on the Server

The example shown below defines a UDP discovery group:

```
<discovery-groups>
  <discovery-group name="my-discovery-group">
    <local-bind-address>172.16.9.7</local-bind-address>
    <group-address>231.7.7.7</group-address>
    <group-port>9876</group-port>
    <refresh-timeout>10000</refresh-timeout>
  </discovery-group>
</discovery-groups>
```



#### Note

In the configuration example shown above, the attributes "local-bind-address", "group-address" and "group-port" are deprecated. Instead of these attributes you can choose to use the attribute "socket-binding".

The example shown below defines a UDP discovery group replacing all the deprecated attributes with the attribute "socket-binding":

```
<discovery-groups>
  <discovery-group name="my-discovery-group">
    <socket-binding>messaging-group</socket-binding>
```

```
<refresh-timeout>10000</refresh-timeout>
</discovery-group>
</discovery-groups>
```

The table shown below describes all the important parameters used in the above example and in general to define a discovery group:

**Table 20.12. UDP Discovery Group Parameters**

Attribute	Description
name attribute	This attribute denotes the name of your discovery group. Each discovery name must have a unique name per server.
local-bind-address	[Deprecated] This is an optional UDP specific attribute. It is used to configure a discovery group to listen on a specific interface when using multiple interfaces on the same machine.
group-address	[Deprecated] This is a compulsory UDP specific attribute. It is used to configure a discovery group to listen on the multicast IP address of a group. The value of this attribute must match the <b>group-address</b> attribute of the broadcast group that you wish to listen from.
group-port	[Deprecated] This is a compulsory UDP specific attribute. It is used to configure the UDP port of the multicast group. The value of this attribute must match the <b>group-port</b> attribute of the multicast group that you wish to listen from.
socket-binding	This denotes the discovery group socket binding
refresh-timeout	This is an optional UDP specific attribute. It is used to configure the time period (in milliseconds) for which the discovery group waits before removing a server's connector pair entry from the list after receiving the last broadcast from that server. The value of <b>refresh-timeout</b> must be set significantly higher than the value of <b>broadcast-period</b> attribute on the broadcast group to prevent quick removal servers from the list when the broadcast process is still on. The default value of this attribute is 10,000 milliseconds.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.13.3.2. Configuring JGroups Discovery Group on the Server

The example shown below defines a JGroups discovery group:

```
<discovery-groups>
<discovery-group name="dg-group1">
  <jgroups-stack>udp</jgroups-stack>
```

```
<jgroups-channel>udp</jgroups-channel>
<refresh-timeout>10000</refresh-timeout>
</discovery-group>
</discovery-groups>
```

The JGroups discovery group definition uses two main attributes:

- » **jgroups-stack** attribute: This denotes the name of a stack defined in the `org.jboss.as.clustering.jgroups` subsystem
- » **jgroups-channel** attribute: This attribute denotes the channel which JGroups channels connect to for receiving broadcasts



### Note

JGroup attributes and UDP specific attributes are exclusive. You can use either JGroup or UDP set of attributes in the configuration of a discovery group or a broadcast group

[Report a bug](#)

#### 20.13.3. Configuring Discovery Groups for Java Messaging Service (JMS) Clients

Discovery groups can be configured for JMS and core clients. You can specify the discovery group to be used for a JMS connection factory in server configuration files (`standalone.xml` and `domain.xml`):

```
<connection-factory name="ConnectionFactory">
  <discovery-group-ref discovery-group-name="my-discovery-group"/>
  <entries>
    <entry name="ConnectionFactory"/>
  </entries>
</connection-factory>
```

The element **discovery-group-ref** is used to specify the name of a discovery group. When a client application downloads this connection factory from Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI) and creates JMS connections, these connections are load balanced across all the servers which the discovery group maintains by listening on the multicast address specified in the discovery group configuration.

If you are using JMS but not JNDI to lookup for a connection factory then you can specify the discovery group parameters directly when creating the JMS connection factory:

```
final String groupAddress = "231.7.7.7";
final int groupPort = 9876;
ConnectionFactory jmsConnectionFactory =
HornetQJMSClient.createConnectionFactory(new
DiscoveryGroupConfiguration(groupAddress, groupPort, new
UDPBroadcastGroupConfiguration(groupAddress, groupPort, null, -1)),
JMSFactoryType.CF);
Connection jmsConnection1 = jmsConnectionFactory.createConnection();
Connection jmsConnection2 = jmsConnectionFactory.createConnection();
```

The default value of ***refresh-timeout*** attribute can be set on DiscoveryGroupConfiguration by using the setter method **setDiscoveryRefreshTimeout()**. For the connection factory to wait for a specific amount of time before creating the first connection, you can use the setter method **setDiscoveryInitialWaitTimeout()** on DiscoveryGroupConfiguration.

Doing this ensures that the connection factory has enough time to receive broadcasts from all the nodes in the cluster. The default value for this parameter is 10000 milliseconds.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 20.13.3.4. Configuring discovery for Core API

If you are using the core API to directly instantiate ***ClientSessionFactory*** instances, then you can specify the discovery group parameters directly when creating the session factory:

```
final String groupAddress = "231.7.7.7";
final int groupPort = 9876;
ServerLocator locator = HornetQClient.createServerLocatorWithHA(new
DiscoveryGroupConfiguration(groupAddress, groupPort, new
UDPBroadcastGroupConfiguration(groupAddress, groupPort, null, -1)));
ClientSessionFactory factory = locator.createSessionFactory();
ClientSession session1 = factory.createSession();
ClientSession session2 = factory.createSession();
```

The default value of ***refresh-timeout*** attribute can be set on DiscoveryGroupConfiguration by using the setter method **setDiscoveryRefreshTimeout()**. You can use **setDiscoveryInitialWaitTimeout()** on DiscoveryGroupConfiguration for the session factory to wait for a specific amount of time before creating a session.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 20.13.4. Server Side Load Balancing

There is one important cluster topology:

- » Symmetric Cluster: In a symmetric cluster every cluster node is connected directly to every other node in the cluster. To create a symmetric cluster every node in the cluster defines a cluster connection with the attribute ***max-hops*** set to 1.



#### Note

In a symmetric cluster each node knows about all the queues that exist on all the other nodes and what consumers they have. With this knowledge it can determine how to load balance and redistribute messages around the nodes.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 20.13.4.1. Configuring Cluster Connections

Cluster connections are configured in server configuration files (***standalone.xml*** and ***domain.xml***) in the element ***cluster-connection***. There can be zero or more cluster connections defined per HornetQ server.

```

<cluster-connections>
  <cluster-connection name="my-cluster">
    <address>jms</address>
    <connector-ref>netty-connector</connector-ref>
    <check-period>1000</check-period>
    <connection-ttl>5000</connection-ttl>
    <min-large-message-size>50000</min-large-message-size>
    <call-timeout>5000</call-timeout>
    <retry-interval>500</retry-interval>
    <retry-interval-multiplier>1.0</retry-interval-multiplier>
    <max-retry-interval>5000</max-retry-interval>
    <reconnect-attempts>-1</reconnect-attempts>
    <use-duplicate-detection>true</use-duplicate-detection>
    <forward-when-no-consumers>false</forward-when-no-consumers>
    <max-hops>1</max-hops>
    <confirmation-window-size>32000</confirmation-window-size>
    <call-failover-timeout>30000</call-failover-timeout>
    <notification-interval>1000</notification-interval>
    <notification-attempts>2</notification-attempts>
    <discovery-group-ref discovery-group-name="my-discovery-group"/>
  </cluster-connection>
</cluster-connections>

```

The following table defines the configurable attributes:

**Table 20.13. Cluster Connections Configurable Attributes**

Attribute	Description	Default
<b>address</b>	Each cluster connection only applies to messages sent to an address that starts with this value. The address can be any value and you can have many cluster connections with different values of addresses, simultaneously balancing messages for those addresses, potentially to different clusters of servers. This does not use wild card matching.	
<b>connector-ref</b>	This is a compulsory attribute which refers to the connector sent to other nodes in the cluster so that they have the correct cluster topology	
<b>check-period</b>	This refers to the time period (in milliseconds) which is used to verify if a cluster connection has failed to receive pings from another server	30,000 milliseconds

Attribute	Description	Default
<b>connection-ttl</b>	This specifies how long a cluster connection must stay alive if it stops receiving messages from a specific node in the cluster	60,000 milliseconds
<b>min-large-message-size</b>	If the message size (in bytes) is larger than this value then it will be split into multiple segments when sent over the network to other cluster members	102400 milliseconds
<b>call-timeout</b>	This specifies the time period (milliseconds) for which a packet sent over a cluster connection waits (for a reply) before throwing an exception	30,000 milliseconds
<b>retry-interval</b>	If the cluster connection is created between nodes of a cluster and the target node has not been started, or is being rebooted, then the cluster connections from other nodes will retry connecting to the target until it comes back up. The parameter <b>retry-interval</b> defines the interval (milliseconds) between retry attempts	500 milliseconds
<b>retry-interval-multiplier</b>	This is used to increment the <b>retry-interval</b> after each retry attempt	1
<b>max-retry-interval</b>	This refers to the maximum delay (in milliseconds) for retries	2000 milliseconds
<b>reconnect-attempts</b>	This defines the number of times the system will try to connect a node on the cluster	-1 (infinite retries)
<b>use-duplicate-detection</b>	Cluster connections use bridges to link the nodes, and bridges can be configured to add a duplicate id property in each message that is forwarded. If the target node of the bridge crashes and then recovers, messages might be resent from the source node. By enabling duplicate detection any duplicate messages will be filtered out and ignored on receipt at the target node.	True

Attribute	Description	Default
<b>forward-when-no-consumers</b>	This parameter determines whether or not messages will be distributed in a round robin fashion between other nodes of the cluster regardless of whether there are matching or indeed any consumers on other nodes	False
<b>max-hops</b>	This determines how messages are load balanced to other HornetQ servers which are connected to this server	-1
<b>confirmation-window-size</b>	The size (in bytes) of the window used for sending confirmations from the server connected to	1048576
<b>call-failover-timeout</b>	This is used when a call is made during a failover attempt	-1 (no timeout)
<b>notification-interval</b>	This determines how often (in milliseconds) the cluster connection must broadcast itself when attaching to the cluster	1000 milliseconds
<b>notification-attempts</b>	This defines as to how many times the cluster connection must broadcast itself when connecting to the cluster	2
<b>discovery-group-ref</b>	This parameter determines which discovery group is used to obtain the list of other servers in the cluster which the current cluster connection will make connections to	

When creating connections between nodes of a cluster to form a cluster connection, HornetQ uses a cluster user and cluster password which is defined in server configuration files (**standalone.xml** and **domain.xml**):

```
<cluster-user>HORNETQ.CLUSTER.ADMIN.USER</cluster-user>
<cluster-password>NEW USER</cluster-password>
```



### Warning

It is important to change the default values of these credentials to prevent remote clients from making connections to the server using the default values.

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.14. High Availability

## 20.14.1. High Availability Introduction

HornetQ supports the ability to continue functioning after failure of one or more of the servers. Part of this is achieved through failover support where client connections migrate from the live server to a backup server in the event of the live server failing. To keep the backup server current, messages are replicated from the live server to the backup server continuously through two strategies: shared store and replication.

There are two types of high-availability Topologies:

- » **Dedicated Topology:** This topology comprises of two EAP servers. In the first server HornetQ is configured as a live server. In the second server HornetQ is configured as a backup server. The EAP server which has HornetQ configured as a backup server, acts only as a container for HornetQ. This server is inactive and can not host deployments like EJBs, MDBs or Servlets.
- » **Collocated Topology:** This topology contains two EAP servers. Each EAP server contains two HornetQ servers (a live server and a backup server). The HornetQ live server on first EAP server and the HornetQ backup server on the second EAP server form a live backup pair. Whereas the HornetQ live server on the second EAP server and the HornetQ backup server on the first EAP server form another live backup pair.

In collocated topology, as soon as a live HornetQ server (part of live-backup pair) fails, the backup HornetQ server takes up and becomes active. When the backup HornetQ server shuts down in case of failback then destinations and connection factories configured in the backup server are unbound from JNDI (Java Naming and Directory Interface).

Java Naming and Directory Interface is shared with the other live HornetQ server (part of the other live-backup pair). Therefore unbinding of destinations and connection factories from JNDI also unbounds destinations and connection factories for this live HornetQ server.



### Important

Configuration of collocated backup servers cannot contain configuration of destinations or connection factories.



### Note

The following information references `standalone-full-ha.xml`. The configuration changes can be applied to `standalone-full-ha.xml`, or any configuration files derived from it.

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.14.2. About HornetQ Shared Stores

When using a shared store, both the live and backup servers share the same, entire data directory, using a shared file system. This includes the paging directory, journal directory, large messages, and the binding journal. When failover occurs and the backup server takes over, it will load the persistent storage from the shared file system. Clients can then connect to it.

This form of high-availability differs from data replication, as it requires a shared file system accessible by both the live and backup nodes. This will usually be a high performance Storage Area Network (SAN) of some kind.

The advantage of shared store high-availability is that no replication occurs between the live and backup nodes. This means it does not suffer any performance penalties due to the overhead of replication during normal operation.

The disadvantage of shared store replication is that it requires a shared file system, and when the backup server activates it must load the journal from the shared store. This can take some time, depending on the amount of data in the store.

If the highest performance during normal operation is required, there is access to a fast SAN, and a slightly slower failover rate is acceptable (depending on the amount of data), shared store high-availability is recommended.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.14.3. About HornetQ Storage Configurations

HornetQ supports two different configurations for shared stores:

- » GFS2 on a SAN, using the ASYNCIO journal type.
- » NFSv4, using either the ASYNCIO or NIO journal type.



#### Important

NFS is supported under strict configuration guidelines outlined below.

The Red Hat Enterprise Linux NFS implementation supports both direct I/O (opening files with the O\_DIRECT flag set), and kernel based asynchronous I/O. With both of these features present, it is possible to use NFS as a shared storage option, under strict configuration rule:

- » The Red Hat Enterprise Linux NFS client cache must be disabled.



#### Note

It is recommended that, if using NFS under the above stipulations, a highly-available NFS configuration is used.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.14.4. About HornetQ Journal Types

Two journal types are available for HornetQ:

- » ASYNCIO
- » NIO

The ASYNCIO journal type, also known as AIO, is a thin native code wrapper around the Linux asynchronous IO library (AIO). Using native functionality can provide better performance than NIO. This journal type is only supported on Red Hat Enterprise Linux and requires that **libaio** and the Native Components package are installed where JBoss EAP 6 is running. See the *Installation Guide* for instructions on installing the Native Components package.



## Important

Check the server log after JBoss EAP 6 is started, to ensure that the native library successfully loaded, and that the ASYNCIO journal type is being used. If the native library fails to load, HornetQ will revert to the NIO journal type, and this will be stated in the server log.

The NIO journal type uses standard Java NIO to interface with the file system. It provides very good performance and runs on all supported platforms.

To specify the HornetQ journal type, set the parameter **<journal-type>** in the **Messaging** subsystem.

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.14.5. Configuring HornetQ for Dedicated Topology with Shared Store

To configure the live and backup servers for shared store in dedicated topology, configure the **standalone-X.xml** files on each server to have the following:

```
<shared-store>true</shared-store>
<paging-directory path="${shared.directory}/journal"/>
<bindings-directory path="${shared.directory}/bindings"/>
<journal-directory path="${shared.directory}/journal"/>
<large-messages-directory path="${shared.directory}/large-messages"/>

.

.

<cluster-connections>
  <cluster-connection name="my-cluster">
    ...
  </cluster-connection>
</cluster-connections>
```

**Table 20.14. HornetQ Servers Setup Attributes (for both live and backup servers)**

Attribute	Description
shared-store	Whether this server is using shared store or not. Default is false
paging-directory path	This indicates the path to the paging directory. This path is the same for both live and backup servers as they share this directory
bindings-directory path	This indicates the path to the binding journal. This path is the same for both live and backup servers as they share this journal
journal-directory path	This indicates the path to the journal directory. This path is the same for both live and backup servers as they share this directory
large-messages-directory path	This indicates the path to the large messages directory. This path is the same for both live and backup servers as they share this directory

Attribute	Description
failover-on-shutdown	Whether this server becomes active when live or currently active backup server shuts down  The backup server must also be flagged explicitly as a backup.

```
<backup>true</backup>
```

The setup attribute exclusively for HornetQ backup server is: **allow-failback**. This specifies whether the backup server will automatically shutdown if the original live server comes back up.

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.14.6. HornetQ Message Replication



### Warning

Only persistent messages are replicated. Any non-persistent messages do not survive failover.

Message replication between a live and a backup server is achieved via network traffic as the live and backup servers do not share the same data stores. All the journals are replicated between the two servers as long as the two servers are within the same cluster and have the same cluster username and password. All persistent data traffic received by the live server gets replicated to the backup server.

When the backup server comes online, it looks for and connects to a live server to attempt synchronization. While it is synchronizing, it is unavailable as a backup server. Synchronization can take a long time depending on the amount of data to be synchronized and the network speed. If the backup server comes online and no live server is available, the backup server will wait until the live server is available in the cluster.

To enable servers to replicate data, a link must be defined between them in the **standalone-full-ha.xml** file. A backup server will only replicate with a live server with the same group name. The group name must be defined in the **backup-group-name** parameter in the **standalone-full-ha.xml** file on each server.

In the event of a live server failing, the correctly configured and fully synchronized backup server takes over its duties. The backup server will activate only if the live server has failed and the backup server is able to connect to more than half of the servers in the cluster. If more than half of the other servers in the cluster also fail to respond it would indicate a general network failure and the backup server will wait to retry the connection to the live server.

To get to the original state after failover, it is necessary to start the live server and wait until it is fully synchronized with the backup server. When this has been achieved, you can shutdown the backup server for the original live server to activate again. This happens automatically if the **allow-failback** attribute is set to true.

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.14.7. Configuring the HornetQ Servers for Replication

To configure the live and backup servers to be a replicating pair, configure the **standalone-full-ha.xml** files on each server to have the following settings:

```

<shared-store>false</shared-store>
<backup-group-name>NameOfLiveBackupPair</backup-group-name>
<check-for-live-server>true</check-for-live-server>
.
.
.
<cluster-connections>
  <cluster-connection name="my-cluster">
    ...
  </cluster-connection>
</cluster-connections>

```

**Table 20.15. HornetQ Replicating Setup Attributes**

Attribute	Description
shared-store	Whether this server is using shared store or not. Default is false.
backup-group-name	This is the unique name which identifies a live/backup pair that should replicate with each other
check-for-live-server	If a replicated live server should check the current cluster to see if there is already a live server with the same node id. Default is false.
failover-on-shutdown	Whether this backup server (if it is a backup server) becomes the live server on a normal server shutdown. Default is false.

The backup server must also be flagged explicitly as a backup.

```
<backup>true</backup>
```

**Table 20.16. HornetQ Backup Server Setup Attributes**

Attribute	Description
allow-failback	Whether this server will automatically shutdown if the original live server comes back up. Default is true.
max-saved-replicated-journal-size	The maximum number of backup journals to keep after failback occurs. Specifying this attribute is only necessary if allow-failback is true. Default value is 2, which means that after 2 failbacks the backup server must be restarted in order to be able to replicate journal from live server and become backup again.

[Report a bug](#)

## 20.14.8. About High-availability (HA) Failover

High-availability failover is available with either automatic client failover, or application-level failover, through a live-backup structure. Each live server has a backup server. Only one backup per live server is supported.

The backup server only takes over if the live server crashes and there is a failover. After the live server has been restarted, and if the **allow-failback** attribute is set to true, it becomes the live server again. When the original live server takes over, the backup server reverts to being backup for the live server.



## Important

Clustering should be enabled even if you are not using the clustering capabilities. This is because each node of the HA cluster must have a cluster-connection to all of the other nodes, in order to negotiate roles with the other servers.

High availability cluster topology is achieved by the live and backup server as they send information about their connection details using IP multicasts. If IP multicasts can not be used, it is also possible to use a static configuration of the initial connections. After the initial connection, the client is informed about the topology. If the current connection is stale, the client establishes a new connection to another node.

After a live server has failed and a backup server has taken over, you will need to restart the live server and have clients fail back. To do this, restart the original live server and kill the new live server. You can do this by killing the process itself or wait for the server to crash on its own. You can also cause failover to occur on normal server shutdown, to enable this set the **failover-on-shutdown** property to true in the **standalone.xml** configuration file:

```
<failover-on-shutdown>true</failover-on-shutdown>
```

By default, the **failover-on-shutdown** property is set to false.

You can also force the new live server to shutdown when the old live server comes back up allowing the original live server to take over automatically by setting the **allow-failback** property to true in the **standalone.xml** configuration file:

```
<allow-failback>true</allow-failback>
```

In replication HA mode, to force the new live server to shutdown when the old live server comes back, set the **check-for-live-server** property to true in **standalone.xml** configuration file:

```
<check-for-live-server>true</check-for-live-server>
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 20.14.9. Deployments on HornetQ Backup Servers

In a dedicated HA environment, a JBoss EAP 6 server with HornetQ configured as a backup must not be used to host any deployments which use or connect to the HornetQ backup on that server. This includes deployments such as Enterprise Java Beans (Stateless Session Beans, Message Driven Beans), or servlets.

If a JBoss EAP 6 server has a HornetQ collocated backup configuration (where in the messaging subsystem there is a HornetQ server configured as 'live' and another HornetQ server configured as backup), then the JBoss EAP 6 server can host deployments as long as they are configured to connect to the 'live' HornetQ server.

[Report a bug](#)

# Chapter 21. Transaction Subsystem

## 21.1. Transaction Subsystem Configuration

### 21.1.1. Transactions Configuration Overview

#### Introduction

The following procedures show you how to configure the transactions subsystem of JBoss EAP 6.

- » [Section 21.1.3, “Configure Your Datasource to Use JTA Transaction API”](#)
- » [Section 21.1.4, “Configure an XA Datasource”](#)
- » [Section 21.1.2, “Configure the Transaction Manager”](#)
- » [Section 21.1.6, “Configure Logging for the Transaction Subsystem”](#)

[Report a bug](#)

### 21.1.2. Configure the Transaction Manager

You can configure the Transaction Manager (TM) using the web-based Management Console or the command-line Management CLI. For each command or option given, the assumption is made that you are running JBoss EAP 6 as a Managed Domain. If you use a Standalone Server or you want to modify a different profile than **default**, you may need to modify the steps and commands in the following ways.

#### Notes about the Example Commands

- » For the Management Console, the **default** profile is the one which is selected when you first log into the console. If you need to modify the Transaction Manager's configuration in a different profile, select your profile instead of **default**, in each instruction.

Similarly, substitute your profile for the **default** profile in the example CLI commands.
- » If you use a Standalone Server, only one profile exists. Ignore any instructions to choose a specific profile. In CLI commands, remove the **/profile=default** portion of the sample commands.



#### Note

In order for the TM options to be visible in the Management Console or Management CLI, the **transactions** subsystem must be enabled. It is enabled by default, and required for many other subsystems to function properly, so it is very unlikely that it would be disabled.

#### Configure the TM Using the Management Console

To configure the TM using the web-based Management Console, select the **Configuration** tab from the top of the screen. If you use a managed domain, choose the correct profile from the **Profile** selection box at the top left. Expand the **Container** menu and select **Transactions**.

Most options are shown in the Transaction Manager configuration page. The **Recovery** options are hidden by default. Click the **Recovery** tab to see the recovery options. Click **Edit** to edit any of the options. Changes take effect immediately.

Click the **Need Help?** label to display in-line help text.

### Configure the TM using the Management CLI

In the Management CLI, you can configure the TM using a series of commands. The commands all begin with `/profile=default/subsystem=transactions/` for a managed domain with profile `default`, or `/subsystem=transactions` for a Standalone Server.



#### Important

HornetQ does not allow multiple instances to share a message log store. If you are configuring multiple instances of HornetQ, each instance must have its own message log store.

**Table 21.1. TM Configuration Options**

Option	Description	CLI Command
Enable Statistics	Whether to enable transaction statistics. These statistics can be viewed in the Management Console in the <b>Subsystem Metrics</b> section of the <b>Runtime</b> tab.	<code>/profile=default/subsystem=transactions/:write-attribute(name=enable-statistics,value=true)</code>
Default Timeout	The default transaction timeout. This defaults to <b>300</b> seconds. You can override this programmatically, on a per-transaction basis.	<code>/profile=default/subsystem=transactions/:write-attribute(name=default-timeout,value=300)</code>
Object Store Path	A relative or absolute filesystem path where the TM object store stores data. By default relative to the <b>object-store-relative-to</b> parameter's value.	<code>/profile=default/subsystem=transactions/:write-attribute(name=object-store-path,value=tx-object-store)</code>
Object Store Path Relative To	References a global path configuration in the domain model. The default value is the data directory for JBoss EAP 6, which is the value of the property <code>jboss.server.data.dir</code> , and defaults to <code>EAP_HOME/domain/data/</code> for a Managed Domain, or <code>EAP_HOME/standalone/data/</code> for a Standalone Server instance. The value of the object store <b>object-store-path</b> TM attribute is relative to this path.	<code>/profile=default/subsystem=transactions/:write-attribute(name=object-store-relative-to,value=jboss.server.data.dir)</code>

Option	Description	CLI Command
Socket Binding	Specifies the name of the socket binding used by the Transaction Manager for recovery and generating transaction identifiers, when the socket-based mechanism is used. Refer to <b>process-id-socket-max-ports</b> for more information on unique identifier generation. Socket bindings are specified per server group in the <b>Server</b> tab of the Management Console.	<code>/profile=default/subsystem=transactions/:write-attribute(name=socket-binding,value=txn-recovery-environment)</code>
Recovery Listener	Whether or not the Transaction Recovery process should listen on a network socket. Defaults to <b>false</b> .	<code>/profile=default/subsystem=transactions/:write-attribute(name=recovery-listener,value=false)</code>

The following options are for advanced use and can only be modified using the Management CLI. Be cautious when changing them from the default configuration. Contact Red Hat Global Support Services for more information.

**Table 21.2. Advanced TM Configuration Options**

Option	Description	CLI Command
jts	Whether to use Java Transaction Service (JTS) transactions. Defaults to <b>false</b> , which uses JTA transactions only.	<code>/profile=default/subsystem=transactions/:write-attribute(name=jts,value=false)</code>

Option	Description	CLI Command
node-identifier	<p>The node identifier for the Transaction Manager. This option is required in the following situations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» For JTS to JTS communications</li> <li>» When two Transaction Managers access shared resource managers</li> <li>» When two Transaction Managers access shared object stores</li> </ul> <p>The <b>node-identifier</b> must be unique for each Transaction Manager as it is required to enforce data integrity during recovery. The <b>node-identifier</b> must also be unique for JTA because multiple nodes may interact with the same resource manager or share a transaction object store.</p>	<pre>/profile=default/subsystem=transactions/:write-attribute(name=node-identifier,value=1)</pre>
process-id-socket-max-ports	<p>The Transaction Manager creates a unique identifier for each transaction log. Two different mechanisms are provided for generating unique identifiers: a socket-based mechanism and a mechanism based on the process identifier of the process.</p> <p>In the case of the socket-based identifier, a socket is opened and its port number is used for the identifier. If the port is already in use, the next port is probed, until a free one is found. The <b>process-id-socket-max-ports</b> represents the maximum number of sockets the TM will try before failing. The default value is <b>10</b>.</p>	<pre>/profile=default/subsystem=transactions/:write-attribute(name=process-id-socket-max-ports,value=10)</pre>

Option	Description	CLI Command
process-id-uuid	Set to <b>true</b> to use the process identifier to create a unique identifier for each transaction. Otherwise, the socket-based mechanism is used. Defaults to <b>true</b> . Refer to <b>process-id-socket-max-ports</b> for more information.	<code>/profile=default/subsystem=transactions/:write-attribute(name=process-id-uuid,value=true)</code>
use-hornetq-store	Use HornetQ's journaled storage mechanisms instead of file-based storage, for the transaction logs. This is disabled by default, but can improve I/O performance. It is not recommended for JTS transactions on separate Transaction Managers. When changing this option, the server has to be restarted using the <b>shutdown</b> command for the change to take effect.	<code>/profile=default/subsystem=transactions/:write-attribute(name=use-hornetq-store,value=false)</code>

[Report a bug](#)

### 21.1.3. Configure Your Datasource to Use JTA Transaction API

#### Summary

This task shows you how to enable Java Transaction API (JTA) on your datasource.

#### Prerequisites

You must meet the following conditions before continuing with this task:

- Your database or other resource must support Java Transaction API. If in doubt, consult the documentation for your database or other resource.
- Create a datasource. Refer to [Section 6.3.1, “Create a Non-XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces”](#).
- Stop JBoss EAP 6.
- Have access to edit the configuration files directly, in a text editor.

#### Procedure 21.1. Configure the Datasource to use Java Transaction API

##### 1. Open the configuration file in a text editor.

Depending on whether you run JBoss EAP 6 in a managed domain or standalone server, your configuration file will be in a different location.

###### A. Managed domain

The default configuration file for a managed domain is in **EAP\_HOME/domain/configuration/domain.xml** for Red Hat Enterprise Linux, and **EAP\_HOME\domain\configuration\domain.xml** for Microsoft Windows Server.

## B. Standalone server

The default configuration file for a standalone server is in **EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone.xml** for Red Hat Enterprise Linux, and **EAP\_HOME\standalone\configuration\standalone.xml** for Microsoft Windows Server.

### 2. Locate the <datasource> tag that corresponds to your datasource.

The datasource will have the **jndi-name** attribute set to the one you specified when you created it. For example, the ExampleDS datasource looks like this:

```
<datasource jndi-name="java:jboss/datasources/ExampleDS" pool-
name="H2DS" enabled="true" jta="true" use-java-context="true" use-
ccm="true">
```

### 3. Set the jta attribute to true.

Add the following to the contents of your <datasource> tag, as they appear in the previous step: **jta="true"**

### 4. Save the configuration file.

Save the configuration file and exit the text editor.

### 5. Start JBoss EAP 6.

Relaunch the JBoss EAP 6 server.

## Result:

JBoss EAP 6 starts, and your datasource is configured to use Java Transaction API.

[Report a bug](#)

### 21.1.4. Configure an XA Datasource

#### Prerequisites

In order to add an XA Datasource, you need to log into the Management Console. See [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#) for more information.

##### 1. Add a new datasource.

Add a new datasource to JBoss EAP 6. Follow the instructions in [Section 6.3.1, “Create a Non-XA Datasource with the Management Interfaces”](#), but click the **XA Datasource** tab at the top.

##### 2. Configure additional properties as appropriate.

All datasource parameters are listed in [Section 6.7.1, “Datasource Parameters”](#).

## Result

Your XA Datasource is configured and ready to use.

[Report a bug](#)

### 21.1.5. About Transaction Log Messages

To track transaction status while keeping the log files readable, use the **DEBUG** log level for the transaction logger. For detailed debugging, use the **TRACE** log level. Refer to [Section 21.1.6, “Configure Logging for the Transaction Subsystem”](#) for information on configuring the transaction logger.

The transaction manager can generate a lot of logging information when configured to log in the **TRACE** log level. Following are some of the most commonly-seen messages. This list is not comprehensive, so you may see other messages than these.

**Table 21.3. Transaction State Change**

Transaction Begin	When a transaction begins, the following code is executed:
	<pre>com.arjuna.ats.arjuna.coordinator .BasicAction::Begin:1342</pre>
	<pre>tsLogger.logger.trace("BasicAction::Begin() for action-id "+ get_uid());</pre>
Transaction Commit	When a transaction commits, the following code is executed:
	<pre>com.arjuna.ats.arjuna.coordinator .BasicAction::End:1342</pre>
	<pre>tsLogger.logger.trace("BasicAction::End() for action-id "+ get_uid());</pre>
Transaction Rollback	When a transaction rolls back, the following code is executed:
	<pre>com.arjuna.ats.arjuna.coordinator .BasicAction::Abort:1575</pre>
	<pre>tsLogger.logger.trace("BasicAction::Abort() for action-id "+ get_uid());</pre>

Transaction Timeout	When a transaction times out, the following code is executed:
	<pre>com.arjuna.ats.arjuna.coordinator .TransactionReaper::doCancellation:349</pre>
	<pre>tsLogger.logger.trace("Reaper Worker " + Thread.currentThread() + " attempting to cancel " + e._control.get_uid());</pre>

[Report a bug](#)

### 21.1.6. Configure Logging for the Transaction Subsystem

#### Summary

Use this procedure to control the amount of information logged about transactions, independent of other logging settings in JBoss EAP 6. The main procedure shows how to do this in the web-based Management Console. The Management CLI command is given afterward.

#### Procedure 21.2. Configure the Transaction Logger Using the Management Console

1. **Navigate to the Logging configuration area.**

In the Management Console, click the **Configuration** tab. If you use a managed domain, choose the server profile you wish to configure, from the **Profile** selection box at the top left.

Expand the **Core** menu, and select **Logging**.

2. **Edit the com.arjuna attributes.**

Select the **Log Categories** tab. Select **com.arjuna** and click **Edit** in the **Details** section. This is where you can add class-specific logging information. The **com.arjuna** class is already present. You can change the log level and whether to use parent handlers.

#### Log Level

The log level is **WARN** by default. Because transactions can produce a large quantity of logging output, the meaning of the standard logging levels is slightly different for the transaction logger. In general, messages tagged with levels at a lower severity than the chosen level are discarded.

#### Transaction Logging Levels, from Most to Least Verbose

- » TRACE

- DEBUG
- INFO
- WARN
- ERROR
- FAILURE

### Use Parent Handlers

Whether the logger should send its output to its parent logger. The default behavior is **true**.

3. Changes take effect immediately.

[Report a bug](#)

## 21.2. Transaction Administration

### 21.2.1. Browse and Manage Transactions

The management CLI supports the ability to browse and manipulate transaction records. This functionality is provided by the interaction between the Transaction Manager and the management API of JBoss EAP 6.

The Transaction Manager stores information about each pending transaction and the participants involved the transaction, in a persistent storage called the *object store*. The management API exposes the object store as a resource called the **log-store**. An API operation called **probe** reads the transaction logs and creates a node for each log. You can call the **probe** command manually, whenever you need to refresh the **log-store**. It is normal for transaction logs to appear and disappear quickly.

#### Example 21.1. Refresh the Log Store

This command refreshes the log store for server groups which use the profile **default** in a managed domain. For a standalone server, remove the **profile=default** from the command.

```
/profile=default/subsystem=transactions/log-store=log-store/:probe
```

#### Example 21.2. View All Prepared Transactions

To view all prepared transactions, first refresh the log store (see [Example 21.1, “Refresh the Log Store”](#)), then run the following command, which functions similarly to a filesystem **ls** command.

```
ls /profile=default/subsystem=transactions/log-store=log-store/transactions
```

Each transaction is shown, along with its unique identifier. Individual operations can be run against an individual transaction (see [Manage a Transaction](#)).

## Manage a Transaction

### View a transaction's attributes.

To view information about a transaction, such as its JNDI name, EIS product name and version, or its status, use the :**read - resource** CLI command.

```
/profile=default/subsystem=transactions/log-store=log-
store/transactions=0\:fffff7f000001\:-b66efc2\:4f9e6f8f\:9:read-
resource
```

### View the participants of a transaction.

Each transaction log contains a child element called **participants**. Use the **read - resource** CLI command on this element to see the participants of the transaction. Participants are identified by their JNDI names.

```
/profile=default/subsystem=transactions/log-store=log-
store/transactions=0\:fffff7f000001\:-b66efc2\:4f9e6f8f\:9/participants=java\:\/JmsXA:read-resource
```

The result may look similar to this:

```
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "eis-product-name" => "HornetQ",
        "eis-product-version" => "2.0",
        "jndi-name" => "java:/JmsXA",
        "status" => "HEURISTIC",
        "type" => "/StateManager/AbstractRecord/XAResourceRecord"
    }
}
```

The outcome status shown here is in a **HEURISTIC** state and is eligible for recover. See [Recover a transaction](#), for more details.

### Delete a transaction.

Each transaction log supports a :**delete** operation, to delete the transaction log representing the transaction.

```
/profile=default/subsystem=transactions/log-store=log-
store/transactions=0\:fffff7f000001\:-b66efc2\:4f9e6f8f\:9:delete
```

### Recover a transaction.

Each transaction log supports recovery via the :**recover** CLI command.

## Recovery of Heuristic Transactions and Participants

- If the transaction's status is **HEURISTIC**, the recovery operation changes the state to **PREPARE** and triggers a recovery.
- If one of the transaction's participants is heuristic, the recovery operation tries to replay the **commit** operation. If successful, the participant is removed from the transaction log.

You can verify this by re-running the `:probe` operation on the `log-store` and checking that the participant is no longer listed. If this is the last participant, the transaction is also deleted.

### Refresh the status of a transaction which needs recovery.

If a transaction needs recovery, you can use the `:refresh` CLI command to be sure it still requires recovery, before attempting the recovery.

```
/profile=default/subsystem=transactions/log-store=log-
store/transactions=0\:\fffff7f000001\:-\:
b66efc2\:\4f9e6f8f\:\9/participants=2:refresh
```

### View Transaction Statistics

If Transaction Manager statistics are enabled, you can view statistics about the Transaction Manager and transaction subsystem. See [Section 21.1.2, “Configure the Transaction Manager”](#) for information about how to enable Transaction Manager statistics.

You can view statistics either via the management console or the management CLI. In the management console, transaction statistics are available via **Runtime** → **Status** → **Subsystems** → **Transactions**. Transaction statistics are available for each server in a managed domain. To view the status of a different server, select **Change Server** in the left-hand menu and select the server from the list.

The following table shows each available statistic, its description, and the management CLI command to view the statistic.

**Table 21.4. Transaction Subsystem Statistics**

Statistic	Description	CLI Command
Total	The total number of transactions processed by the Transaction Manager on this server.	<pre>/host=master/server= server- one/subsystem=transac- tions/:read- attribute(name=numbe- r-of- transactions,include- -defaults=true)</pre>
Committed	The number of committed transactions processed by the Transaction Manager on this server.	<pre>/host=master/server= server- one/subsystem=transac- tions/:read- attribute(name=numbe- r-of-committed- transactions,include- -defaults=true)</pre>

Statistic	Description	CLI Command
Aborted	The number of aborted transactions processed by the Transaction Manager on this server.	<pre>/host=master/server=server-one/subsystem=transactions/:read-attribute(name=number-of-aborted-transactions,include-defaults=true)</pre>
Timed Out	The number of timed out transactions processed by the Transaction Manager on this server.	<pre>/host=master/server=server-one/subsystem=transactions/:read-attribute(name=number-of-timed-out-transactions,include-defaults=true)</pre>
Heuristics	Not available in the Management Console. Number of transactions in a heuristic state.	<pre>/host=master/server=server-one/subsystem=transactions/:read-attribute(name=number-of-heuristics,include-defaults=true)</pre>
In-Flight Transactions	Not available in the Management Console. Number of transactions which have begun but not yet terminated.	<pre>/host=master/server=server-one/subsystem=transactions/:read-attribute(name=number-of-inflight-transactions,include-defaults=true)</pre>
Failure Origin - Applications	The number of failed transactions whose failure origin was an application.	<pre>/host=master/server=server-one/subsystem=transactions/:read-attribute(name=number-of-application-rollback,include-defaults=true)</pre>

Statistic	Description	CLI Command
Failure Origin - Resources	The number of failed transactions whose failure origin was a resource.	/host=master/server=server-one/subsystem=transactions/:read-attribute(name=number-of-resource- rollbacks, include-defaults=true)
Participant ID	The ID of the participant.	/host=master/server=server-one/subsystem=transactions/log-store=log-store/transactions=0\:\fffff7f000001\:-b66efc2\:\:4f9e6f8f\:\:9:read-children-names(child-type=participants)
List of all transactions	The complete list of transactions.	/host=master/server=server-one/subsystem=transactions/log-store=log-store:read-children-names(child-type=transactions)

[Report a bug](#)

## 21.3. Transaction References

### 21.3.1. JBoss Transactions Errors and Exceptions

For details about exceptions thrown by methods of the **UserTransaction** class, see the *UserTransaction API* specification at

<http://docs.oracle.com/javaee/6/api/javax/transaction/UserTransaction.html>.

[Report a bug](#)

### 21.3.2. Limitations on JTA Transactions

JTA transactions cannot be distribution aware across multiple instances of JBoss EAP 6. For this behavior, use JTS transactions.

To use JTS transactions, you need to configure the ORB, which includes enabling transactions in the JacORB subsystem, then configure the JTS subsystem.

- » [Section 21.4.2, “Configure the ORB for JTS Transactions”](#)

[Report a bug](#)

## 21.4. ORB Configuration

### 21.4.1. About Common Object Request Broker Architecture (CORBA)

*Common Object Request Broker Architecture (CORBA)* is a standard that enables applications and services to work together even when they are written in multiple, otherwise-incompatible, languages or hosted on separate platforms. CORBA requests are brokered by a server-side component called an *Object Request Broker (ORB)*. JBoss EAP 6 provides an ORB instance, by means of the JacORB component.

The ORB is used internally for *Java Transaction Service (JTS)* transactions, and is also available for use by your own applications.

[Report a bug](#)

### 21.4.2. Configure the ORB for JTS Transactions

In a default installation of JBoss EAP 6, the ORB is disabled. You can enable the ORB using the command-line Management CLI.

 **Note**

In a managed domain, the JacORB subsystem is available in **full** and **full-ha** profiles only. In a standalone server, it is available when you use the **standalone-full.xml** or **standalone-full-ha.xml** configurations.

#### Procedure 21.3. Configure the ORB using the Management Console

1. **View the profile settings.**

Select **Configuration** from the top of the management console. If you use a managed domain, select either the **full** or **full-ha** profile from the selection box at the top left.

2. **Modify the Initializers Settings**

Expand the **Subsystems** menu. Expand the **Container** menu and select **JacORB**.

In the form that appears in the main screen, select the **Initializers** tab and click the **Edit** button.

Enable the security interceptors by setting the value of **Security** to **on**.

To enable the ORB for JTS, set the **Transaction Interceptors** value to **on**, rather than the default **spec**.

Refer to the **Need Help?** link in the form for detailed explanations about these values. Click **Save** when you have finished editing the values.

3. **Advanced ORB Configuration**

Refer to the other sections of the form for advanced configuration options. Each section includes a **Need Help?** link with detailed information about the parameters.

## Configure the ORB using the Management CLI

You can configure each aspect of the ORB using the Management CLI. The following commands configure the initializers to the same values as the procedure above, for the Management Console. This is the minimum configuration for the ORB to be used with JTS.

These commands are configured for a managed domain using the **full** profile. If necessary, change the profile to suit the one you need to configure. If you use a standalone server, omit the **/profile=full** portion of the commands.

### Example 21.3. Enable the Security Interceptors

```
/profile=full/subsystem=jacorb/:write-attribute(name=security,value=on)
```

### Example 21.4. Enable Transactions in the JacORB Subsystem

```
/profile=full/subsystem=jacorb/:write-attribute(name=transactions,value=on)
```

### Example 21.5. Enable JTS in the Transaction Subsystem

```
/profile=full/subsystem=transactions:write-attribute(name=jts,value=true)
```

#### Note

For JTS activation, the server must be restarted as reload is not enough.

[Report a bug](#)

## 21.5. JDBC Object Store Support

### 21.5.1. JDBC Store for Transactions

#### Prerequisites:

- » [Section 3.5.4, “Connect to a Managed Server Instance Using the Management CLI”](#)

Transactions can use a JDBC datasource as its object store. If the database to be used is configured for failover and recovery, this may be a better option than using disk space on an application server. The advantages must be weighed up against the fact that a raw JDBC object store is a special object store and may not perform as well as a file system or HornetQ journal object store.



## Note

A JDBC datasource used as a Transactions object store *must* specify `jta="false"` in the `datasource` section of the server's configuration file.

### Procedure 21.4. Enable Use of a JDBC Datasource as a Transactions Object Store

1. Set `use-jdbc-store` to `true`.

```
/subsystem=transactions:write-attribute(name=use-jdbc-store,
value=true)
```

2. Set `jdbc-store-datasource` to the JNDI name for the data source to use.

```
/subsystem=transactions:write-attribute(name=jdbc-store-datasource,
value=java:jboss/datasources/TransDS)
```

3. Restart the JBoss EAP server for the changes to take effect.

```
shutdown --restart=true
```

The complete set of attributes is provided below.

**Table 21.5. Transactions JDBC Store Properties**

Property	Description
<code>use-jdbc-store</code>	Set this to "true" to enable the JDBC store for transactions.
<code>jdbc-store-datasource</code>	The JNDI name of the JDBC datasource used for storage.
<code>jdbc-action-store-drop-table</code>	Drop and recreate the action store tables at launch. Optional, defaults to "false".
<code>jdbc-action-store-table-prefix</code>	The prefix for the action store table names. Optional.
<code>jdbc-communication-store-drop-table</code>	Drop and recreate the communication store tables at launch. Optional, defaults to "false".
<code>jdbc-communication-store-table-prefix</code>	The prefix for the communication store table names. Optional.
<code>jdbc-state-store-drop-table</code>	Drop and recreate the state store tables at launch. Optional, defaults to "false".
<code>jdbc-state-store-table-prefix</code>	The prefix for the state store table names. Optional.

#### See Also:

- [Section 21.1.3, “Configure Your Datasource to Use JTA Transaction API”](#)

[Report a bug](#)

## Chapter 22. Mail subsystem

### 22.1. Use custom transports in mail subsystem

When using a standard mail server (POP3, IMAP) the server has a set of attributes that can be defined, some of which are required.

The most important of these is the **outbound-socket-binding-ref** which is a reference to the outbound mail socket binding and is defined with the host address and port number.

This is not the most effective solution for some users as their host configuration used multiple hosts for load balancing purposes. This configuration, however, is not supported by standard JavaMail requiring some users to implement custom mail transports.

These custom transports do not require the **outbound-socket-binding-ref** and allow custom host property formats.

A custom transport can be configured through the CLI using the following commands:

#### Procedure 22.1.

1. Add new mail session. The command below creates new session called mySession and sets JNDI to **java:jboss/mail/MySession**:

```
/subsystem=mail/mail-session=mySession:add(jndi-name=java:jboss/mail/MySession)
```

2. Add an outbound socket binding. The command below adds a socket binding named **my-smtp-binding** which points to **localhost:25**.

```
/socket-binding-group=standard-sockets/remote-destination-outbound-socket-binding=my-smtp-binding:add(host=localhost, port=25)
```

3. Add an SMTP server with **outbind-socket-binding-ref**. The command below adds an SMTP called **my-smtp-binding** and defines a username, password and TLS configuration.

```
/subsystem=mail/mail-session=mySession/server=smtp:add(outbound-socket-binding-ref= my-smtp-binding, username=user, password=pass, tls=true)
```

4. Repeat this process for POP3 and IMAP:

```
/socket-binding-group=standard-sockets/remote-destination-outbound-socket-binding=my-pop3-binding:add(host=localhost, port=110)
```

```
/subsystem=mail/mail-session=mySession/server=pop3:add(outbound-socket-binding-ref= my-pop3-binding, username=user, password=pass)
```

```
/socket-binding-group=standard-sockets/remote-destination-outbound-socket-binding=my-imap-binding:add(host=localhost, port=143)
```

```
/subsystem=mail/mail-session=mySession/server=imap:add(outbound-
socket-binding-ref=my-imap-binding, username=user, password=pass)
```

5. To use a custom server, create a new custom mail server without an outbound socket binding (as it is optional) and instead provide the host information as part of properties.

```
/subsystem=mail/mail-
session=mySession/custom=myCustomServer:add(username=user,password=p
ass, properties={"host" => "myhost", "my-property" =>"value"})
```

When defining custom protocols, any property name that contains a dot (.) is considered to be a fully-qualified name and passed as it is supplied. Any other format (*my-property*, for example) will be translated into the following format: **mail.server-name.my-property**.

Below is an example complete configuration XML configuration that highlights a custom format in the custom-server attribute:

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:mail:1.1">
    <mail-session jndi-name="java:/Mail" from="user.name@domain.org">
        <smtp-server outbound-socket-binding-ref="mail-smtp" tls="true">
            <login name="user" password="password"/>
        </smtp-server>
        <pop3-server outbound-socket-binding-ref="mail-pop3"/>
        <imap-server outbound-socket-binding-ref="mail-imap">
            <login name="nobody" password="password"/>
        </imap-server>
    </mail-session>
    <mail-session debug="true" jndi-name="java:jboss/mail/Default">
        <smtp-server outbound-socket-binding-ref="mail-smtp"/>
    </mail-session>
    <mail-session debug="true" jndi-name="java:jboss/mail/Custom">
        <custom-server name="smtp">
            <login name="username" password="password"/>
            <property name="host" value="mail.example.com"/>
        </custom-server>
        <custom-server name="pop3" outbound-socket-binding-ref="mail-
pop3">
            <property name="custom_prop" value="some-custom-prop-
value"/>
            <property name="some.fully.qualified.property" value="fully-
qualified-prop-name"/>
        </custom-server>
    </mail-session>
    <mail-session debug="true" jndi-name="java:jboss/mail/Custom2">
        <custom-server name="pop3" outbound-socket-binding-ref="mail-
pop3">
            <property name="custom_prop" value="some-custom-prop-
value"/>
        </custom-server>
    </mail-session>
</subsystem>
```

[Report a bug](#)

# Chapter 23. Enterprise JavaBeans

## 23.1. Introduction

### 23.1.1. Overview of Enterprise JavaBeans

Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) 3.1 is an API for developing distributed, transactional, secure and portable Java EE applications through the use of server-side components called Enterprise Beans. Enterprise Beans implement the business logic of an application in a decoupled manner that encourages reuse. Enterprise JavaBeans 3.1 is documented as the Java EE specification JSR-318.

JBoss EAP 6 has full support for applications built using the Enterprise JavaBeans 3.1 specification.

[Report a bug](#)

### 23.1.2. Overview of Enterprise JavaBeans for Administrators

JBoss administrators have many configuration options available to them to control the performance of Enterprise Beans in JBoss EAP 6. These options can be accessed using the Management Console or the command line configuration tool. Editing the XML server configuration file to apply changes is also possible but not recommended.

The EJB configuration options are located in slightly different places in the Management Console depending on how the server is being run.

1. Click on the **Configuration** tab at the top of the Management Console.
2. If you are running in Domain mode, select a profile from the **Profiles** drop down menu on the top left.
3. Expand the **Subsystems** menu.
4. Expand the **Container** menu, then select **EJB 3**.

[Report a bug](#)

### 23.1.3. Enterprise Beans

Enterprise beans are server-side application components as defined in the Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) 3.1 specification, JSR-318. Enterprise beans are designed for the implementation of application business logic in a decoupled manner to encourage reuse.

Enterprise beans are written as Java classes and annotated with the appropriate EJB annotations. They can be deployed to the application server in their own archive (a JAR file) or be deployed as part of a Java EE application. The application server manages the lifecycle of each enterprise bean and provides services to them such as security, transactions, and concurrency management.

An enterprise bean can also define any number of business interfaces. Business interfaces provide greater control over which of the bean's methods are available to clients and can also allow access to clients running in remote JVMs.

There are three types of Enterprise Bean: Session beans, Message-driven beans and Entity beans.



## Important

Entity beans are now deprecated in EJB 3.1 and Red Hat recommends the use of JPA entities instead. Red Hat only recommends the use of Entity beans for backwards compatibility with legacy systems.

[Report a bug](#)

### 23.1.4. Session Beans

Session Beans are Enterprise Beans that encapsulate a set of related business processes or tasks and are injected into the classes that request them. There are three types of session bean: stateless, stateful, and singleton.

[Report a bug](#)

### 23.1.5. Message-Driven Beans

Message-driven Beans (MDBs) provide an event driven model for application development. The methods of MDBs are not injected into or invoked from client code but are triggered by the receipt of messages from a messaging service such as a Java Messaging Service (JMS) server. The Java EE 6 specification requires that JMS is supported but other messaging systems can be supported as well.

[Report a bug](#)

## 23.2. Configuring Bean Pools

### 23.2.1. Bean Pools

JBoss EAP 6 maintains a number of instances of deployed stateless enterprise beans in memory to provide faster performance. This technique is called bean pooling. When a bean is required the application server can take one from the appropriate pool of already available beans instead of instantiating a new one. When the bean is no longer required it is returned to the pool for reuse.

Bean pools are configured and maintained separately for stateless session beans and for message-driven beans.

[Report a bug](#)

### 23.2.2. Create a Bean Pool

Bean pools can be created using the Management Console and the CLI tool.

Bean pools can also be created by adding the required bean pool configuration to the server configuration file using a text editor. [Example 23.2, “XML Configuration Sample”](#) is an example of what this configuration looks like.

#### Procedure 23.1. Create a bean pool using the Management Console

1. Login to the Management Console. Refer to [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#).

2. Click on the **Configuration** tab at the top of the screen. Expand the **Container** menu and select **EJB 3**. Select the **Bean Pools** tab.
3. Click **Add**. The **Add EJB3 Bean Pools** dialog appears.
4. Specify the required details, **Name**, **Max Pool Size**, **Timeout** value, and **Timeout unit**.
5. Click **Save** button to finish.

#### Procedure 23.2. Create a bean pool using the CLI

1. Launch the CLI tool and connect to your server. Refer to [Section 3.5.4, “Connect to a Managed Server Instance Using the Management CLI”](#).

2. Use the **add** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=ejb3/strict-max-bean-instance-pool=BEANPOOLNAME:add(max-
pool-size=MAXSIZE, timeout=TIMEOUT, timeout-unit="UNIT")
```

- Replace *BEANPOOLNAME* with the required name for the bean pool.
- Replace *MAXSIZE* with the maximum size of the bean pool.
- Replace *TIMEOUT*
- Replace *UNIT* with the required time unit. Allowed values are: **NANOSECONDS**, **MICROSECONDS**, **MILLISECONDS**, **SECONDS**, **MINUTES**, **HOURS**, and **DAYS**.

3. Use the **read - resource** operation to confirm the creation of the bean pool.

```
/subsystem=ejb3/strict-max-bean-instance-pool=BEANPOOLNAME:read-
resource
```

#### Example 23.1. Create a Bean Pool using the CLI

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=ejb3/strict-max-bean-instance-
pool=ACCTS_BEAN_POOL:add(max-pool-size=500, timeout=5000, timeout-
unit="SECONDS")
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

#### Example 23.2. XML Configuration Sample

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:ejb3:1.2">

  <pools>

    <bean-instance-pools>

      <strict-max-pool name="slsb-strict-max-pool" max-pool-
size="20"
        instance-acquisition-timeout="5"
        instance-acquisition-timeout-unit="MINUTES" />
```

```

<strict-max-pool name="mdb-strict-max-pool" max-pool-size="20"
    instance-acquisition-timeout="5"
    instance-acquisition-timeout-unit="MINUTES" />

</bean-instance-pools>

</pools>

</subsystem>

```

[Report a bug](#)

### 23.2.3. Remove a Bean Pool

Unused bean pools can be removed using the Management Console.

#### Prerequisites:

- » The bean pool that you want to remove cannot be in use. Refer to [Section 23.2.5, “Assign Bean Pools for Session and Message-Driven Beans”](#) to ensure that it is not being used.

#### Procedure 23.3. Remove a bean pool using the Management Console

1. Login to the Management Console. Refer to [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#).
2. Click on the **Configuration** tab at the top of the screen. Expand the **Container** menu and select **EJB 3**. Select the **Bean Pools** tab.
3. Select the bean pool to remove in the list.
4. Click **Remove**. The **Remove Item** dialog appears.
5. Click **Confirm** to confirm.

#### Procedure 23.4. Remove a bean pool using the CLI

1. Launch the CLI tool and connect to your server. Refer to [Section 3.5.4, “Connect to a Managed Server Instance Using the Management CLI”](#).
2. Use the **remove** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=ejb3/strict-max-bean-instance-pool=BEANPOOLNAME:remove
```

- » Replace *BEANPOOLNAME* with the required name for the bean pool.

#### Example 23.3. Removing a Bean Pool using the CLI

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=ejb3/strict-max-bean-instance-pool=ACCTS_BEAN_POOL:remove
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 23.2.4. Edit a Bean Pool

Bean pools can be edited using the Management Console.

#### Procedure 23.5. Edit a bean pool using the Management Console

1. Login to the Management Console. [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#)
2. Click on the **Configuration** tab at the top of the screen. Expand the **Container** menu and select **EJB 3**. Select the **Bean Pools** tab.
3. Select the bean pool you want to edit.
4. Click **Edit**.
5. Edit the details you want to change. Only **Max Pool Size**, **Timeout** value, and **Timeout Unit** can be changed.
6. Click **Save** to finish.

#### Procedure 23.6. Edit a bean pool using the CLI

1. Launch the CLI tool and connect to your server. Refer to [Section 3.5.4, “Connect to a Managed Server Instance Using the Management CLI”](#).
2. Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax for each attribute of the bean pool to be changed.

```
/subsystem=ejb3/strict-max-bean-instance-pool=BEANPOOLNAME:write-attribute(name="ATTRIBUTE", value="VALUE")
```

- Replace *BEANPOOLNAME* with the required name for the bean pool.
  - Replace *ATTRIBUTE* with the name of the attribute to be edited. The attributes that can be edited in this way are **max-pool-size**, **timeout**, and **timeout-unit**.
  - Replace *VALUE* with the required value of the attribute.
3. Use the **read-resource** operation to confirm the changes to the bean pool.

```
/subsystem=ejb3/strict-max-bean-instance-pool=BEANPOOLNAME:read-resource
```

#### Example 23.4. Set the Timeout Value of a Bean Pool using the CLI

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=ejb3/strict-max-bean-instance-pool=HSBeanPool:write-attribute(name="timeout", value="1500")
 {"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

[Report a bug](#)

### 23.2.5. Assign Bean Pools for Session and Message-Driven Beans

JBoss Administrators can assign individual bean pools for use by session beans and message-driven beans. Bean pools can be assigned by using the Management Console or the CLI tool.

By default two bean pools are provided, **s1sb-strict-max-pool** and **mdb-strict-max-pool** for stateless session beans and message-driven beans respectively.

To create or edit bean pools, refer to [Section 23.2.2, “Create a Bean Pool”](#) and [Section 23.2.4, “Edit a Bean Pool”](#).

#### Procedure 23.7. Assign Bean Pools for Session and Message-Driven Beans using the Management Console

1. Login to the Management Console. [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#)
2. Click on the **Configuration** tab at the top of the screen. Expand the **Container** menu and select **EJB 3**. Select the **Container** tab.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Select the bean pool to use for each type of bean from the appropriate combo-box.
5. Click **Save** to finish.

#### Procedure 23.8. Assign Bean Pools for Session and Message-Driven Beans using the CLI

1. Launch the CLI tool and connect to your server. Refer to [Section 3.5.4, “Connect to a Managed Server Instance Using the Management CLI”](#).
2. Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=ejb3:write-attribute(name="BEANTYPE", value="BEANPOOL")
```

- Replace *BEANTYPE* with **default-mdb-instance-pool** for Message-Driven Beans or **default-slsb-instance-pool** for stateless session beans.
- Replace *BEANPOOL* with the name of the bean pool to assign.

3. Use the **read-resource** operation to confirm the changes.

```
/subsystem=ejb3:read-resource
```

#### Example 23.5. Assign a Bean Pool for Session Beans using the CLI

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=ejb3:write-attribute(name="default-slsb-instance-pool", value="LV_SLSB_POOL")
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

#### Example 23.6. XML Configuration Sample

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:ejb3:1.2">
```

```

<session-bean>
  <stateless>
    <bean-instance-pool-ref pool-name="slsb-strict-max-pool"/>
  </stateless>
  <stateful default-access-timeout="5000" cache-ref="simple"/>
  <singleton default-access-timeout="5000"/>
</session-bean>
<mdb>
  <resource-adapter-ref resource-adapter-name="hornetq-ra"/>
  <bean-instance-pool-ref pool-name="mdb-strict-max-pool"/>
</mdb>

</subsystem>

```

[Report a bug](#)

## 23.3. Configuring EJB Thread Pools

### 23.3.1. Enterprise Bean Thread Pools

JBoss EAP 6 maintains number of instances of Java thread objects in memory for use by enterprise bean services, including remote invocation, the timer service, and asynchronous invocation.

This technique is called thread pooling. It provides improved performance by eliminating the overhead of thread creation and gives the system administrator a mechanism for controlling resource usage.

Multiple thread pools can be created with different parameters and each service can be allocated a different thread pool.

[Report a bug](#)

### 23.3.2. Create a Thread Pool

EJB Thread pools can be created using the Management Console or the CLI.

#### Procedure 23.9. Create an EJB Thread Pool using the Management Console

1. Login to the Management Console. [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#)
2. Click on the **Configuration** tab at the top of the screen. Expand the **Container** menu and select **EJB 3**. Select the **Thread Pools** tab.
3. Click **Add**. The **Add EJB3 Thread Pools** dialog appears.
4. Specify the required details, **Name**, **Max. Threads**, and **Keep-Alive Timeout** value.
5. Click **Save** to finish.

#### Procedure 23.10. Create a Thread Pool using the CLI

1. Launch the CLI tool and connect to your server. Refer to [Section 3.5.4, “Connect to a Managed Server Instance Using the Management CLI”](#).

2. Use the **add** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=ejb3/thread-pool=THREADPOOLNAME:add(max-threads=MAXSIZE,
keepalive-time={"time"=>"TIME", "unit"=>UNIT})
```

- Replace *THREADPOOLNAME* with the required name for the thread pool.
- Replace *MAXSIZE* with the maximum size of the thread pool.
- Replace *UNIT* with the required time unit to be used for the required keep-alive time. Allowed values are: **NANOSECONDS**, **MICROSECONDS**, **MILLISECONDS**, **SECONDS**, **MINUTES**, **HOURS**, and **DAYS**.
- Replace *TIME* with the integer value of the required keep-alive time. This value is a number of *UNITS*.

3. Use the **read-resource** operation to confirm the creation of the bean pool.

```
/subsystem=ejb3/strict-max-bean-instance-pool=THREADPOOLNAME:read-
resource
```

### Example 23.7. Create a Thread Pool using the CLI

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=ejb3/thread-
pool=testmepool:add(max-threads=50, keepalive-time={"time"=>"150",
"unit"=>"SECONDS"})
 {"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

### Example 23.8. XML Configuration Sample

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:ejb3:1.2">

    <thread-pools>
        <thread-pool name="default" max-threads="20" keepalive-
time="150"/>
    </thread-pools>

</subsystem>
```

[Report a bug](#)

#### 23.3.3. Remove a Thread Pool

Unused EJB thread pools can be removed using the Management Console.

##### Prerequisites

- The thread pool that you want to remove cannot be in use. Refer to the following tasks to ensure that the thread pool is not in use:
  - [Section 23.6.2, “Configure the EJB3 timer Service”](#)

- [Section 23.7.2, “Configure the EJB3 Asynchronous Invocation Service Thread Pool”](#)
- [Section 23.8.2, “Configure the EJB3 Remote Service”](#)

#### **Procedure 23.11. Remove an EJB thread pool using the Management Console**

1. Login to the Management Console. [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#).
2. Click on the **Configuration** tab at the top of the screen. Expand the **Container** menu and select **EJB 3**. Select the **Thread Pools** tab.
3. Select the thread pool to you want to remove.
4. Click **Remove**. The **Remove Item** dialog appears.
5. Click **OK** to confirm.

#### **Procedure 23.12. Remove a thread pool using the CLI**

1. Launch the CLI tool and connect to your server. Refer to [Section 3.5.4, “Connect to a Managed Server Instance Using the Management CLI”](#).
2. Use the **remove** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=ejb3/thread-pool={THREADPOOLNAME}:remove
```

- Replace *THREADPOOLNAME* with the name of the thread pool.

#### **Example 23.9. Removing a Thread Pool using the CLI**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=ejb3/thread-
pool=ACCTS_THREADS:remove
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

[Report a bug](#)

#### **23.3.4. Edit a Thread Pool**

JBoss Administrators can edit Thread Pools using the Management Console and the CLI.

#### **Procedure 23.13. Edit a Thread Pool using the Management Console**

1. Login to the Management Console. [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#).
2. Click on the **Configuration** tab at the top of the screen. Expand the **Container** menu and select **EJB 3**. Select the **Thread Pools** tab.
3. Select the thread pool you want to edit.
4. Click **Edit**.
5. Edit the details you want to change. Only the **Thread Factory**, **Max Threads**, **Keepalive Timeout**, and **Keepalive Timeout Unit** values can be edited.

6. Click **Save** to finish.

#### Procedure 23.14. Edit a thread pool using the CLI

1. Launch the CLI tool and connect to your server. Refer to [Section 3.5.4, “Connect to a Managed Server Instance Using the Management CLI”](#).
2. Use the **write\_attribute** operation with the following syntax for each attribute of the thread pool to be changed.

```
/subsystem=ejb3/thread-pool=THREADPOOLNAME:write-
attribute(name="ATTRIBUTE", value="VALUE")
```

- » Replace *THREADPOOLNAME* with the name of the thread pool.
- » Replace *ATTRIBUTE* with the name of the attribute to be edited. The attributes that can be edited in this way are **keepalive-time**, **max-threads**, and **thread-factory**.
- » Replace *VALUE* with the required value of the attribute.

3. Use the **read-resource** operation to confirm the changes to the thread pool.

```
/subsystem=ejb3/thread-pool=THREADPOOLNAME:read-resource
```



#### Important

When changing the value of the **keepalive-time** attribute with the CLI the required value is an object representation. It has the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=ejb3/thread-pool=THREADPOOLNAME:write-
attribute(name="keepalive-time", value={"time" => "VALUE", "unit" =>
"UNIT"})
```

#### Example 23.10. Set the Maxsize Value of a Thread Pool using the CLI

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=ejb3/thread-
pool=HSThreads:write-attribute(name="max-threads", value="50")
 {"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

#### Example 23.11. Set the keepalive-time Time Value of a Thread Pool using the CLI

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=ejb3/thread-
pool=HSThreads:write-attribute(name="keepalive-time", value=
{"time"=>"150"})
 {"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 23.4. Configuring Session Beans

### 23.4.1. Session Bean Access Timeout

Stateful and Singleton Session Beans have an access timeout value specified for managing concurrent access. This value is the period of time that a request to a session bean method can be blocked before it will timeout.

The timeout value and the time unit used can be specified using the `@javax.ejb.AccessTimeout` annotation on the method. It can be specified on the session bean (which applies to all the bean's methods) and on specific methods to override the configuration for the bean.

If they are not specified JBoss EAP 6 supplies a default timeout value of 5000 milliseconds.

Refer to the Javadocs for AccessTimeout at

<http://docs.oracle.com/javaee/6/api/javax/ejb/AccessTimeout.html>

[Report a bug](#)

### 23.4.2. Set Default Session Bean Access Timeout Values

JBoss Administrators can specify the default timeout values for Singleton and Stateful session beans. The default timeout values can be changed using the Management Console or the CLI. The default value is 5000 milliseconds.

#### Procedure 23.15. Set Default Session Bean Access Timeout Values using the Management Console

1. Login to the Management Console. See [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#).
2. Click on the **Configuration** tab at the top of the screen. Expand the **Container** menu and select **EJB 3**. Select the **Container** tab.
3. Click **Edit**. The fields in the **Details** area can now be edited.
4. Enter the required values in the **Stateful Access Timeout** and/or **Singleton Access Timeout** text boxes.
5. Click **Save** to finish.

#### Procedure 23.16. Set Session Bean Access Timeout Values Using the CLI

1. Launch the CLI tool and connect to your server. Refer to [Section 3.5.4, “Connect to a Managed Server Instance Using the Management CLI”](#).
2. Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=ejb3:write-attribute(name="BEANTYPE", value=TIME)
```

- Replace *BEANTYPE* with **default-stateful-bean-access-timeout** for Stateful Session Beans, or **default-singleton-bean-access-timeout** for Singleton Session Beans.
- Replace *TIME* with the required timeout value.

3. Use the **read-resource** operation to confirm the changes.

```
/subsystem=ejb3:read-resource
```

**Example 23.12. Setting the Default Stateful Bean Access Timeout value to 9000 with the CLI**

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=ejb3:write-
attribute(name="default-stateful-bean-access-timeout", value=9000)
{"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 /]
```

**Example 23.13. XML Configuration Sample**

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:ejb3:1.2">
  <session-bean>
    <stateless>
      <bean-instance-pool-ref pool-name="slsb-strict-max-pool"/>
    </stateless>
    <stateful default-access-timeout="5000" cache-ref="simple"/>
    <singleton default-access-timeout="5000"/>
  </session-bean>

</subsystem>
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 23.5. Configuring Message-Driven Beans

### 23.5.1. Set Default Resource Adapter for Message-Driven Beans

JBoss Administrators can specify the default resource adapter used by message-driven beans. The default resource adapter can be specified using the Management Console and the CLI. The default resource adapter supplied with JBoss EAP 6 is **hornetq-ra**.

**Procedure 23.17. Set the Default Resource Adapter for Message-Driven Beans using the Management Console**

1. Login to the Management Console. [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#)
2. Click on the **Configuration** tab at the top of the screen. Expand the **Container** menu and select **EJB 3**. Select the **Container** tab.
3. Click **Edit**. The fields in the **Details** area can now be edited.
4. Enter the name of the resource adapter to be used in the **Default Resource Adapter** text box.
5. Click **Save** to finish.

## Procedure 23.18. Set the Default Resource Adapter for Message-Driven Beans using the CLI

1. Launch the CLI tool and connect to your server. Refer to [Section 3.5.4, “Connect to a Managed Server Instance Using the Management CLI”](#).
2. Use the **write-attribute** operation with the following syntax.

```
/subsystem=ejb3:write-attribute(name="default-resource-adapter-name", value="RESOURCE-ADAPTER")
```

Replace *RESOURCE-ADAPTER* with name of the resource adapter to be used.

3. Use the **read-resource** operation to confirm the changes.

```
/subsystem=ejb3:read-resource
```

## Example 23.14. Set the Default Resource Adapter for Message-Driven Beans using the CLI

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 subsystem=ejb3] /subsystem=ejb3:write-attribute(name="default-resource-adapter-name", value="EDIS-RA")
 {"outcome" => "success"}
[standalone@localhost:9999 subsystem=ejb3]
```

## Example 23.15. XML Configuration Sample

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:ejb3:1.2">
  <mdb>
    <resource-adapter-ref resource-adapter-name="hornetq-ra"/>
    <bean-instance-pool-ref pool-name="mdb-strict-max-pool"/>
  </mdb>
</subsystem>
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 23.6. Configuring the EJB3 Timer Service

### 23.6.1. EJB3 Timer Service

The EJB3 Timer Service is a standard Java EE 6 service for scheduling the invocation of the methods from enterprise beans. Stateless session beans, singleton session beans, and message-driven beans can all schedule any of their methods for callback at specified times. Method callback can occur at a specific time, after a duration, at a recurring interval, or on a calendar-based schedule.

[Report a bug](#)

### 23.6.2. Configure the EJB3 timer Service

JBoss Administrators can configure the EJB3 Timer Service in the JBoss EAP 6 Management Console. The features that can be configured are the thread pool that is used for scheduled bean invocation and the directory where the Timer Service data is stored.

#### Procedure 23.19. Configure the EJB3 Timer Service

1. Login to the Management Console. See [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#).
2. Click on the **Configuration** tab at the top of the screen. Expand the **Container** menu and select **EJB 3**. Select the **Services** tab, click on **Timer Services**.
3. Click **Edit**. The fields in the **Details** area can now be edited.
4. You can select a different EJB3 thread pool used for the Timer Service if additional thread pools have been configured, and you can change the directory used to save the Timer Service data. The Timer Service data directory configuration consists of two values: **Path**, the directory that data is stored in; and **Relative To**, the directory which contains **Path**. By default **Relative To** is set to a Filesystem Path Variable.
5. Click **Save** to finish.

[Report a bug](#)

## 23.7. Configuring the EJB Asynchronous Invocation Service

### 23.7.1. EJB3 Asynchronous Invocation Service

The Asynchronous Invocation Service is an Enterprise JavaBeans container service that manages asynchronous invocation of session bean methods. This service maintains a configurable number of threads (a thread pool) that are allocated for asynchronous method execution.

Enterprise JavaBeans 3.1 allows for any method of a session bean (stateful, stateless or singleton) to be annotated to permit asynchronous execution.

[Report a bug](#)

### 23.7.2. Configure the EJB3 Asynchronous Invocation Service Thread Pool

JBoss Administrators can configure the EJB3 Asynchronous Invocation Service in the JBoss EAP 6 Management Console to use a specific thread pool.

#### Procedure 23.20. Configure the EJB3 Asynchronous Invocation Service thread pool

1. Login to the Management Console. See [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#).
2. Click on the **Configuration** tab at the top of the screen. Expand the **Container** menu and select **EJB 3**. Select the **Services** tab, click on **Async Service**.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Select the EJB3 thread pool to use from the list. The thread pool must have been already created.
5. Click **Save** to finish.

[Report a bug](#)

## 23.8. Configuring the EJB3 Remote Invocation Service

### 23.8.1. EJB3 Remote Service

The EJB3 Remote Service manages the remote execution of Enterprise Beans with remote business interfaces.

[Report a bug](#)

### 23.8.2. Configure the EJB3 Remote Service

JBoss Administrators can configure the EJB3 Remote Service in the JBoss EAP 6 Management Console. The features that can be configured are the thread pool that is used for remote bean invocation and the connector on which the EJB3 remoting channel is registered.

#### Procedure 23.21. Configure the EJB3 Remote Service

1. Login to the Management Console. See [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#).
2. Click on the **Configuration** tab at the top of the screen. Expand the **Container** menu and select **EJB 3**. Select the **Services** tab, click on **Remote Service**.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. You can select a different EJB3 thread pool used for the Remote Service if additional thread pools have been configured. You can change the connector used to register the EJB remoting channel.
5. Click **Save** to finish.

[Report a bug](#)

## 23.9. Configuring EJB 2.x Entity Beans

### 23.9.1. EJB Entity Beans

EJB Entity Beans are a type of enterprise bean from version 2.x of the EJB specification that represented persistent data that was maintained in a database. Entity beans have been superseded by JPA entities and officially listed for removal (pruning) from future versions of the specification. Red Hat does not recommend the use of Entity Beans except for backwards compatibility.

Support for Entity Beans is disabled by default in JBoss EAP 6.

[Report a bug](#)

### 23.9.2. Container-Managed Persistence

Container-Managed Persistence (CMP) is an application server provided service that provides data persistence for Entity beans.

[Report a bug](#)

### 23.9.3. Enable EJB 2.x Container-Managed Persistence

Container-Managed Persistence (CMP) is handled by the `org.jboss.as.cmp` extension. CMP is enabled by default in the managed domain and standalone server full configurations, e.g. `standalone-full.xml`.

To enable CMP in a different configuration, add the `org.jboss.as.cmp` module to the list of enabled extensions in the server configuration file.

```
<extensions>
    <extension module="org.jboss.as.cmp"/>
</extensions>
```

Once the extension has been added, you must also add the following element in the profile's XML configuration file under the `<profile>` element.

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:cmp:1.1"/>
```

To disable CMP in a server configuration, remove the extension entry for the `org.jboss.as.cmp` module.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 23.9.4. Configure EJB 2.x Container-Managed Persistence

The EJB 2.x Container Managed Persistence (CMP) subsystem can be configured to specify any number of key generators. Key generators are used to generate unique keys to identify each entity persisted by the CMP service.

Two types of key generator can be defined: UUID-based and HiLo key generators.

##### UUID-based key generators

A UUID-based key generator creates keys using Universally Unique Identifiers. UUID key generators only need to have a unique name, they have no other configuration.

UUID-based key generators can be added using the CLI using the following command syntax.

```
/subsystem=cmp/uuid-keygenerator=UNIQUE_NAME:add
```

##### Example 23.16. Add UUID Key Generator

To add a UUID-based key generator with the name of `uuid_identities`, use this CLI command:

```
/subsystem=cmp/uuid-keygenerator=uuid_identities:add
```

The XML configuration created by this command is:

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:cmp:1.0">
    <key-generators>
        <uuid name="uuid_identities" />
    </key-generators>
</subsystem>
```

## HiLo Key Generators

HiLo key generators use a database to create and store entity identity keys. HiLo Key generators must have unique names and are configured with properties that specify the datasource used to store the data as well as the names of the table and columns that store the keys.

HiLo key generators can be added using the CLI using the following command syntax:

```
/subsystem=cmp/hilo-keygenerator=UNIQUE_NAME/:add(property=value,
property=value, ...)
```

### Example 23.17. Add a HiLo Key Generator

```
/subsystem=cmp/hilo-
keygenerator=HiLoKeyGeneratorFactory:add(create-
table=true,create-table-ddl="create table HILOSEQUENCES
(SEQUENCENAME varchar(50) not null, HIGHVALUES integer not
null, constraint hilo_pk primary key (SEQUENCENAME))",data-
source=java:jboss/datasources/ExampleDS, id-
column=HIGHVALUES, sequence-column=SEQUENCENAME,table-
name=HILOSEQUENCES, sequence-name=general,block-size=10)
```

The XML configuration created by this command is:

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:cmp:1.1">
    <key-generators>
        <hilo name="HiLoKeyGeneratorFactory">
            <block-size>10</block-size>
            <create-table>true</create-table>
            <create-table-ddl>create table HILOSEQUENCES
(SEQUENCENAME varchar(50) not null, HIGHVALUES integer not
null, constraint hilo_pk primary key (SEQUENCENAME))</create-
table-ddl>
            <data-
source>java:jboss/datasources/ExampleDS</data-source>
            <id-column>HIGHVALUES</id-column>
            <sequence-column>SEQUENCENAME</sequence-column>
            <sequence-name>general</sequence-name>
            <table-name>HILOSEQUENCES</table-name>
        </hilo>
    </key-generators>
</subsystem>
```

### Note

The block-size must be set to a value !=0, otherwise the generated PKey will not incremented and therefore the creation of entities fail with a DuplicateKeyException.

**Note**

The select-hi-ddl must be set as 'FOR UPDATE' in case of cluster to ensure the consistency. All databases do not support the locking feature.

[Report a bug](#)

### 23.9.5. CMP Subsystem Properties for HiLo Key Generators

**Table 23.1. CMP Subsystem Properties for HiLo Key Generators**

Property	Data type	Description
<b>block-size</b>	long	The block size.
<b>create-table</b>	boolean	If set to <b>TRUE</b> , a table called <b>table-name</b> will be created using the contents of <b>create-table-ddl</b> if that table is not found.
<b>create-table-ddl</b>	string	The DDL commands used to create the table specified in <b>table-name</b> if the table is not found and <b>create-table</b> is set to <b>TRUE</b> .
<b>data-source</b>	token	The data source used to connect to the database.
<b>drop-table</b>	boolean	To determine whether to drop the tables.
<b>id-column</b>	token	The ID column name.
<b>select-hi-ddl</b>	string	The SQL command which will return the largest key currently stored.
<b>sequence-column</b>	token	The sequence column name.
<b>sequence-name</b>	token	The name of the sequence.
<b>table-name</b>	token	The name of the table used to store the key information.

[Report a bug](#)

# Chapter 24. Java Connector Architecture (JCA)

## 24.1. Introduction

### 24.1.1. About the Java EE Connector API (JCA)

JBoss EAP 6 provides full support for the Java EE Connector API (JCA) 1.6 specification. See [JSR 322: Java EE Connector Architecture 1.6](#) for more information about the JCA specification.

A resource adapter is a component that implements the Java EE Connector API architecture. It is similar to a datasource object, however, it provides connectivity from an Enterprise Information System (EIS) to a broader range of heterogeneous systems, such as databases, messaging systems, transaction processing, and Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) systems.

[Report a bug](#)

### 24.1.2. Java Connector Architecture (JCA)

The Java EE Connector Architecture (JCA) defines a standard architecture for Java EE systems to external heterogeneous Enterprise Information Systems (EIS). Examples of EISs include Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) systems, mainframe transaction processing (TP), databases and messaging systems.

JCA 1.6 provides features for managing:

- » connections
- » transactions
- » security
- » life-cycle
- » work instances
- » transaction inflow
- » message inflow

JCA 1.6 was developed under the Java Community Process as JSR-322, <http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=313>.

[Report a bug](#)

### 24.1.3. Resource Adapters

A resource adapter is a deployable Java EE component that provides communication between a Java EE application and an Enterprise Information System (EIS) using the Java Connector Architecture (JCA) specification. A resource adapter is often provided by EIS vendors to allow easy integration of their products with Java EE applications.

An Enterprise Information System can be any other software system within an organization. Examples include Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) systems, database systems, e-mail servers and proprietary messaging systems.

A resource adapter is packaged in a Resource Adapter Archive (RAR) file which can be deployed to JBoss EAP 6. A RAR file may also be included in an Enterprise Archive (EAR) deployment.

[Report a bug](#)

## 24.2. Configure the Java Connector Architecture (JCA) Subsystem

The JCA subsystem in the JBoss EAP 6 configuration file controls the general settings for the JCA container and resource adapter deployments.

### Key elements of the JCA subsystem

#### Archive validation

- ⌘ This setting whether archive validation will be performed on the deployment units.
- ⌘ The following table describes the attributes you can set for archive validation.

**Table 24.1. Archive validation attributes**

Attribute	Default Value	Description
<b>enabled</b>	true	Specifies whether archive validation is enabled.
<b>fail-on-error</b>	true	Specifies whether an archive validation error report fails the deployment.
<b>fail-on-warn</b>	false	Specifies whether an archive validation warning report fails the deployment.

- ⌘ If an archive does not implement the Java EE Connector Architecture specification correctly and archive validation is enabled, an error message will display during deployment describing the problem. For example:

```
Severity: ERROR
Section: 19.4.2
Description: A ResourceAdapter must implement a "public int hashCode()" method.
Code: com.mycompany.myproject.ResourceAdapterImpl
```

```
Severity: ERROR
Section: 19.4.2
Description: A ResourceAdapter must implement a "public boolean equals(Object)" method.
Code: com.mycompany.myproject.ResourceAdapterImpl
```

- ⌘ If archive validation is not specified, it is considered present and the **enabled** attribute defaults to true.

#### Bean validation

- ⌘ This setting determines whether bean validation (JSR-303) will be performed on the deployment units.
- ⌘ The following table describes the attributes you can set for bean validation.

**Table 24.2. Bean validation attributes**

Attribute	Default Value	Description
<b>enabled</b>	true	Specifies whether bean validation is enabled.

- >If bean validation is not specified, it is considered present and the **enabled** attribute defaults to true.

## Work managers

- There are two types of work managers:

### Default work manager

The default work manager and its thread pools.

### Custom work manager

A custom work manager definition and its thread pools.

- The following table describes the attributes you can set for work managers.

**Table 24.3. Work manager attributes**

Attribute	Description
<b>name</b>	Specifies the name of the work manager. This is required for custom work managers.
<b>short-running-threads</b>	Thread pool for standard Work instances. Each work manager has one short-running thread pool.
<b>long-running-threads</b>	Thread pool for JCA 1.6 Work instances that set the <b>LONG_RUNNING</b> hint. Each work manager can have one optional long-running thread pool.

- The following table describes the attributes you can set for work manager thread pools.

**Table 24.4. Thread pool attributes**

Attribute	Description
<b>allow-core-timeout</b>	Boolean setting that determines whether core threads may time out. The default value is false.
<b>core-threads</b>	The core thread pool size. This must be smaller than the maximum thread pool size.
<b>queue-length</b>	The maximum queue length.
<b>max-thread</b>	The maximum thread pool size.
<b>keepalive-time</b>	Specifies the amount of time that pool threads should be kept after doing work.
<b>thread-factory</b>	Reference to the thread factory .

## Bootstrap contexts

- Used to define custom bootstrap contexts.
- The following table describes the attributes you can set for bootstrap contexts.

**Table 24.5. Bootstrap context attributes**

Attribute	Description
<b>name</b>	Specifies the name of the bootstrap context.
<b>workmanager</b>	Specifies the name of the work manager to use for this context.

## Cached connection manager

- ⌘ Used for debugging connections and supporting lazy enlistment of a connection in a transaction, tracking whether they are used and released properly by the application.
- ⌘ The following table describes the attributes you can set for the cached connection manager.

**Table 24.6. Cached connection manager attributes**

Attribute	Default Value	Description
<b>debug</b>	false	Outputs warning on failure to explicitly close connections.
<b>error</b>	false	Throws exception on failure to explicitly close connections.

### Procedure 24.1. Configure the JCA subsystem using the Management Console

The JCA subsystem of JBoss EAP 6 can be configured in the Management Console. The JCA configuration options are located in slightly different places in the Management Console depending on how the server is being run.

1. Click on the **Configuration** tab at the top of the screen. Expand the **Connector** menu and select **JCA**.
2. If the server is running in Domain mode, select a profile from the **Profile** drop-down menu at top left.
3. Configure the settings for the JCA subsystem using the three tabs.

#### a. Common Config

The **Common Config** tab contains settings for the cached connection manager, archive validation and bean validation (JSR-303). Each of these is contained in their own tab as well. These settings can be changed by opening the appropriate tab, clicking the edit button, making the required changes, and then clicking on the save button.

The screenshot shows the JBoss EAP 6 Management Console interface. The top navigation bar includes 'RED HAT JBOSS ENTERPRISE APPLICATION PLATFORM 6.3.0.Alpha3', 'Messages: 0', and a user icon 'admin'. The main navigation tabs are 'Home', 'Configuration', 'Domain', 'Runtime', and 'Administration'. The 'Configuration' tab is active. In the 'Configuration' sidebar, under 'Profile: full', the 'Subsystems' tree is expanded, showing 'Connector' and 'JCA'. The 'JCA' node is selected and highlighted in blue. The main content area displays the 'JCA Subsystem' configuration page. It features three tabs: 'COMMON CONFIG' (selected), 'BOOTSTRAP CONTEXTS', and 'WORK MANAGER'. Below the tabs, a sub-section for 'Connection Manager' is shown with a 'Bean Validation' tab selected. A 'Need Help?' link is present. At the bottom of this section, there is an 'Edit' button and a field 'Is Enabled?: true'. A 'General Configuration' link is located at the very bottom left of the content area.

**Figure 24.1. JCA Common Configuration****b. Work Managers**

The **Work Manager** tab contains the list of configured Work Managers. New Work Managers can be added, removed, and their thread pools configured here. Each Work Manager can have one short-running thread pool and an optional long-running thread pool.

The screenshot shows the JBoss EAP 6.3.0.Alpha3 Administration Console interface. The top navigation bar includes Home, Configuration, Domain, Runtime, and Administration tabs. The Configuration tab is selected. On the left, a sidebar under Profile: full lists Subsystems (Connector, JCA, Datasources, Resource Adapters, Mail, Container, Core, Infinispan, Messaging, Security, Web), General Configuration, and a General Configuration section (dashed border). The main content area has tabs for COMMON CONFIG, BOOTSTRAP CONTEXTS, and WORK MANAGER (selected). The WORK MANAGER tab displays the 'JCA Workmanager' configuration, which is described as a 'Work manager for resource adapters'. Below this is a table titled 'Available Work Manager' with one row: Name (default) and Option (View >). At the bottom right are Add and Remove buttons, and pagination controls showing 1-1 of 1.

**Figure 24.2. Work Managers**

The thread pool attributes can be configured by clicking **View** on the selected resource adapter.

The screenshot shows the 'Thread Pools' section under the 'Work Manager' tab. On the left, a navigation tree includes 'Subsystems' (Connector, JCA, Datasources, Resource Adapters, Mail, Container, Core, Infinispan, Messaging, Security, Web), 'General Configuration', and a dropdown for 'Profile: full'. The main content area displays a table of available thread pools:

Name	Type	Max Threads
default	short-running	50
default	long-running	50

Below the table are tabs for 'Attributes' and 'Sizing'. A 'Need Help?' link is in the top right.

**Figure 24.3. Work Manager Thread Pools**

### c. Bootstrap Contexts

The **Bootstrap Contexts** tab contains the list of configured Bootstrap Contexts. New Bootstrap Context objects can be added, removed, and configured. Each Bootstrap Context must be assigned a Work Manager.

The screenshot shows the 'JCA Bootstrap Contexts' section under the 'COMMON CONFIG' tab. On the left, the navigation tree shows 'JCA' selected. The main content area displays an 'Available Bootstrap Context' table with one entry:

Name
default

Buttons for 'Add' and 'Remove' are at the top right. A 'Selection' section and a 'Need Help?' link are also present.

**Figure 24.4. Bootstrap Contexts**[Report a bug](#)

## 24.3. Deploy a Resource Adapter

Resource adapters can be deployed to JBoss EAP 6 using the Management CLI tool, the Web-based Management Console, or by manually copying the files. The process is the same as other deployable artifacts.

**Procedure 24.2. Deploy a resource adapter using the Management CLI**

1. Open a command prompt for your operating system.

2. Connect to the Management CLI.

- A. For Linux, enter the following at the command line:

```
$ EAP_HOME/bin/jboss-cli.sh --connect
$ Connected to standalone controller at localhost:9999
```

- B. For Windows, enter the following at a command line:

```
C:\>EAP_HOME\bin\jboss-cli.bat --connect
C:\> Connected to standalone controller at localhost:9999
```

3. Deploy the resource adapter.

- A. To deploy the resource adapter to a standalone server, enter the following at a command line:

```
$ deploy path/to/resource-adapter-name.rar
```

- B. To deploy the resource adapter to all server groups in a managed domain, enter the following at a command line:

```
$ deploy path/to/resource-adapter-name.rar --all-server-groups
```

**Procedure 24.3. Deploy a resource adapter using the Management Console**

1. Login to the Management Console. See [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#).
2. Click on the **Runtime** tab at the top of the screen. Select **Manage Deployments**. Click **Add**.
3. Browse to the resource adapter archive and select it. Then click **Next**.
4. Verify the deployment names, then click **Save**.
5. The resource adapter archive should now appear in the list in a disabled state.
6. Enable the resource adapter.
  - A. In Domain mode, click **Assign**. Select which Server Groups to assign the resource adapter to. Click **Save** to finish.

- B. In Standalone mode, select the Application Component from the list. Click **En/Disable**. Click **Confirm** on the **Are You Sure?** dialog to enable the component.

#### Procedure 24.4. Deploy a resource adapter manually

- » Copy the resource adapter archive to the server deployments directory,
  - A. For a standalone server, copy the resource adapter archive to the **EAP\_HOME/standalone/deployments/** directory.
  - B. For a managed domain, you must use the Management Console or Management CLI to deploy the resource adapter archive to the server groups.

[Report a bug](#)

## 24.4. Configure a Deployed Resource Adapter

JBoss administrators can configure resource adapters for JBoss EAP 6 using the Management CLI tool, the Web-based Management Console, or by manually editing the configuration files.

Refer to the vendor document for your resource adapter for information about supported properties and other details.



### Note

In the following procedure, the command line you must type follows the **[standalone@localhost: 9999 /]** prompt. Do not type the text within the curly braces. That is the output you should see as a result of the command, for example, **{"outcome" => "success"}**.

#### Procedure 24.5. Configure a resource adapter using the Management CLI

1. Open a command prompt for your operating system.
  2. Connect to the Management CLI.
- A. For Linux, enter the following at the command line:

```
$ EAP_HOME/bin/jboss-cli.sh --connect
```

You should see the following result output:

```
$ Connected to standalone controller at localhost:9999
```

- B. For Windows, enter the following at a command line:

```
C:\>EAP_HOME\bin\jboss-cli.bat --connect
```

You should see the following result output:

```
C:\> Connected to standalone controller at localhost:9999
```

3. Add the resource adapter configuration.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=resource-adapters/resource-
adapter=eis.rar:add(archive=eis.rar, transaction-
support=XATransaction)
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

4. Configure the **server** resource adapter level <config-property>.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=resource-adapters/resource-
adapter=eis.rar/config-properties=server/:add(value=localhost)
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

5. Configure the **port** resource adapter level <config-property>.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=resource-adapters/resource-
adapter=eis.rar/config-properties=port/:add(value=9000)
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

6. Add a connection definition for a managed connection factory.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=resource-adapters/resource-
adapter=eis.rar/connection-definitions=cfName:add(class-
name=com.acme.eis.ra.EISManagedConnectionFactory, jndi-
name=java:/eis/AcmeConnectionFactory)
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

7. Configure the **name** managed connection factory level <config-property>.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=resource-adapters/resource-
adapter=eis.rar/connection-definitions=cfName/config-
properties=name/:add(value=Acme Inc)
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

8. Add an admin object.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=resource-adapters/resource-
adapter=eis.rar/admin-objects=aoName:add(class-
name=com.acme.eis.ra.EISAdminObjectImpl, jndi-
name=java:/eis/AcmeAdminObject)
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

9. Configure the **threshold** admin object property.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=resource-adapters/resource-
adapter=eis.rar/admin-objects=aoName/config-
properties=threshold/:add(value=10)
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

10. Activate the resource adapter.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=resource-adapters/resource-
adapter=eis.rar:activate
{"outcome" => "success"}
```

11. View the newly configured and activated resource adapter.

```
[standalone@localhost:9999 /] /subsystem=resource-adapters/resource-
adapter=eis.rar:read-resource(recursive=true)
{
    "outcome" => "success",
    "result" => {
        "archive" => "eis.rar",
        "bean-validation-groups" => undefined,
        "bootstrap-context" => undefined,
        "transaction-support" => "XATransaction",
        "admin-objects" => {"aoName" => {
            "class-name" => "com.acme.eis.ra.EISAdminObjectImpl",
            "enabled" => true,
            "jndi-name" => "java:/eis/AcmeAdminObject",
            "use-java-context" => true,
            "config-properties" => {"threshold" => {"value" => 10}}
        }},
        "config-properties" => {
            "server" => {"value" => "localhost"},
            "port" => {"value" => 9000}
        },
        "connection-definitions" => {"cfName" => {
            "allocation-retry" => undefined,
            "allocation-retry-wait-millis" => undefined,
            "background-validation" => false,
            "background-validation-millis" => undefined,
            "blocking-timeout-wait-millis" => undefined,
            "class-name" =>
"com.acme.eis.ra.EISManagedConnectionFactory",
            "enabled" => true,
            "flush-strategy" => "FailingConnectionOnly",
            "idle-timeout-minutes" => undefined,
            "interleaving" => false,
            "jndi-name" => "java:/eis/AcmeConnectionFactory",
            "max-pool-size" => 20,
            "min-pool-size" => 0,
            "no-recovery" => undefined,
            "no-tx-separate-pool" => false,
            "pad-xid" => false,
            "pool-prefill" => false,
            "pool-use-strict-min" => false,
            "recovery-password" => undefined,
            "recovery-plugin-class-name" => undefined,
            "recovery-plugin-properties" => undefined,
            "recovery-security-domain" => undefined,
            "recovery-username" => undefined,
            "same-rm-override" => undefined,
            "security-application" => undefined,
            "security-domain" => undefined,
            "security-domain-and-application" => undefined,
            "use-ccm" => true,
            "use-fast-fail" => false,
            "use-java-context" => true,
            "use-try-lock" => undefined,
            "wrap-xa-resource" => true,
        }}
    }
}
```

```

        "xa-resource-timeout" => undefined,
        "config-properties" => {"name" => {"value" => "Acme
Inc"}}
    }
}
}

```

#### Procedure 24.6. Configure a resource adapter using the Web-based Management Console

1. Login to the Management Console. See [Section 3.4.2, “Log in to the Management Console”](#).
2. Click on the **Configuration** tab at the top of the screen. Expand the **Connectors** menu and select **Resource Adapters**.
  - a. In Domain mode, select a **Profile** from the drop-down at top left.

Click **Add**.
3. Enter the archive name and choose transaction type **XATransaction** from the **TX:** drop-down box. Then click **Save**.
4. Select the **Properties** tab. Click **Add**.
5. Enter **server** for the **Name** and the host name, for example **localhost**, for the **Value**. Then click **Save** to finish.
6. Click **Add** again. Enter **port** for the **Name** and the port number, for example **9000**, for the **Value**. Then click **Save** to finish.
7. The **server** and **port** properties now appear in the **Properties** panel. Click the **View** link under the **Option** column for the listed resource adapter to view the **Connection Definitions**.
8. Click **Add** above the **Available Connection Definitions** table to add a connection definition.
9. Enter the **JNDI Name** and the fully qualified class name of the **Connection Class**. Then click **Save** to finish.
10. Select the new Connection Definition, then select the **Properties** tab. Click **Add** to enter the **Key** and **Value** data for this connection definition. Click **Save** to finish.
11. The connection definition is complete, but disabled. Select the connection definition and click **Enable** to enable the connection definition.
12. A dialog asks **Really modify Connection Definition?** for the JNDI name. Click **Confirm**. The connection definition should now appear as **Enabled**.
13. Click the **Admin Objects** tab at the top of the page to create and configure admin objects. Then click **Add**.
14. Enter the **JNDI Name** and the fully qualified **Class Name** for the admin object. Then click **Save**.
15. Select the **Properties** tab, then click **Add** to add admin object properties.
16. Enter an admin object configuration property, for example **threshold**, in the **Name** field. Enter the configuration property value, for example **10**, in the **Value** field. Then click **Save** to save the property.

17. The admin object is complete, but disabled. Click **Enable** to enable the admin object.
18. A dialog asks **Really modify Admin Object?** for the JNDI name. Click **Confirm**. The admin object should now appear as **Enabled**.
19. You must reload the server configuration to complete the process. Click on the **Runtime** tab. Expand the **Server** menu. Select **Overview** in the left navigation panel.
  - a. Reload the servers
    - A. In Domain mode, hover the mouse over a server group. Select **Restart Group**.
    - B. In Standalone mode, a **Reload** button will be available. Click **Reload**.
20. A dialog asks **Do you want to reload the server configuration?** for the specified server. Click **Confirm**. The server configuration is up to date.

#### **Procedure 24.7. Configure a resource adapter manually**

1. Stop the JBoss EAP 6 server.



#### **Important**

You must stop the server before editing the server configuration file for your change to be persisted on server restart.

2. Open the server configuration file for editing.
  - A. For a standalone server, this is the **EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone.xml** file.
  - B. For a managed domain, this is the **EAP\_HOME/domain/configuration/domain.xml** file.
3. Find the **urn:jboss:domain:resource-adapters** subsystem in the configuration file.
4. If there are no resource adapters defined for this subsystem, first replace:

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:resource-adapters:1.1"/>
```

with this:

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:resource-adapters:1.1">
  <resource-adapters>
    <!-- <resource-adapter> configuration listed below -->
  </resource-adapters>
</subsystem>
```

5. Replace the **<!-- <resource-adapter> configuration listed below -->** with the XML definition for your resource adapter. The following is the XML representation of the resource adapter configuration created using the Management CLI and Web-based Management Console described above.

```

<resource-adapter>
    <archive>
        eis.rar
    </archive>
    <transaction-support>XATransaction</transaction-support>
    <config-property name="server">
        localhost
    </config-property>
    <config-property name="port">
        9000
    </config-property>
    <connection-definitions>
        <connection-definition class-
name="com.acme.eis.ra.EISManagedConnectionFactory"
            jndi-name="java:/eis/AcmeConnectionFactory"
            pool-name="java:/eis/AcmeConnectionFactory">
            <config-property name="name">
                Acme Inc
            </config-property>
        </connection-definition>
    </connection-definitions>
    <admin-objects>
        <admin-object class-
name="com.acme.eis.ra.EISAdminObjectImpl"
            jndi-name="java:/eis/AcmeAdminObject"
            pool-name="java:/eis/AcmeAdminObject">
            <config-property name="threshold">
                10
            </config-property>
        </admin-object>
    </admin-objects>
</resource-adapter>

```

## 6. Start the server

Relaunch the JBoss EAP 6 server to start it running with the new configuration.

[Report a bug](#)

## 24.5. Resource Adapter Descriptor Reference

The following tables describe the resource adapter descriptor elements.

**Table 24.7. Main elements**

Element	Description
<b>bean-validation-groups</b>	Specifies bean validation group that should be used
<b>bootstrap-context</b>	Specifies the unique name of the bootstrap context that should be used
<b>config-property</b>	The config-property specifies resource adapter configuration properties.

Element	Description
<b>transaction-support</b>	Define the type of transaction supported by this resource adapter. Valid values are: <b>No Transaction</b> , <b>LocalTransaction</b> , <b>XATransaction</b>
<b>connection-definitions</b>	Specifies the connection definitions
<b>admin-objects</b>	Specifies the administration objects

**Table 24.8. Bean validation groups elements**

Element	Description
<b>bean-validation-group</b>	Specifies the fully qualified class name for a bean validation group that should be used for validation

**Table 24.9. Connection definition / admin object attributes**

Attribute	Description
<b>class-name</b>	Specifies the fully qualified class name of a managed connection factory or admin object
<b>jndi-name</b>	Specifies the JNDI name
<b>enabled</b>	Should the object be activated
<b>use-java-context</b>	Specifies if a <b>java:</b> / JNDI context should be used
<b>pool-name</b>	Specifies the pool name for the object
<b>use-ccm</b>	Enable the cached connection manager

**Table 24.10. Connection definition elements**

Element	Description
<b>config-property</b>	The config-property specifies managed connection factory configuration properties.
<b>pool</b>	Specifies pooling settings
<b>xa-pool</b>	Specifies XA pooling settings
<b>security</b>	Specifies security settings
<b>timeout</b>	Specifies time out settings
<b>validation</b>	Specifies validation settings
<b>recovery</b>	Specifies the XA recovery settings

**Table 24.11. Pool elements**

Element	Description
<b>min-pool-size</b>	The min-pool-size element indicates the minimum number of connections a pool should hold. These are not created until a Subject is known from a request for a connection. This default to 0
<b>max-pool-size</b>	The max-pool-size element indicates the maximum number of connections for a pool. No more than max-pool-size connections will be created in each sub-pool. This defaults to <b>20</b> .
<b>prefill</b>	Whether to attempt to prefill the connection pool. Default is <b>false</b>
<b>use-strict-min</b>	Specifies if the min-pool-size should be considered strictly. Default <b>false</b>

Element	Description
<b>flush-strategy</b>	Specifies how the pool should be flush in case of an error. Valid values are: <b>FailingConnectionOnly</b> (default), <b>IdleConnections</b> , <b>EntirePool</b>

**Table 24.12. XA pool elements**

Element	Description
<b>min-pool-size</b>	The min-pool-size element indicates the minimum number of connections a pool should hold. These are not created until a Subject is known from a request for a connection. This default to <b>0</b>
<b>max-pool-size</b>	The max-pool-size element indicates the maximum number of connections for a pool. No more than max-pool-size connections will be created in each sub-pool. This defaults to <b>20</b> .
<b>prefill</b>	Whether to attempt to prefill the connection pool. Default is <b>false</b>
<b>use-strict-min</b>	Specifies if the min-pool-size should be considered strictly. Default <b>false</b>
<b>flush-strategy</b>	Specifies how the pool should be flush in case of an error. Valid values are: <b>FailingConnectionOnly</b> (default), <b>IdleConnections</b> , <b>EntirePool</b>
<b>is-same-rm-override</b>	The is-same-rm-override element allows one to unconditionally set whether the javax.transaction.xa.XAResource.isSameRM(XAResource) returns <b>true</b> or <b>false</b>
<b>interleaving</b>	An element to enable interleaving for XA connection factories
<b>no-tx-separate-pools</b>	Oracle does not like XA connections getting used both inside and outside a JTA transaction. To workaround the problem you can create separate sub-pools for the different contexts
<b>pad-xid</b>	Should the Xid be padded
<b>wrap-xa-resource</b>	Should the XAResource instances be wrapped in a org.jboss.tm.XAResourceWrapper instance

**Table 24.13. Security elements**

Element	Description
<b>application</b>	Indicates that application supplied parameters (such as from <b>getConnection(user, pw)</b> ) are used to distinguish connections in the pool.
<b>security-domain</b>	Indicates Subject (from security domain) are used to distinguish connections in the pool. The content of the security-domain is the name of the JAAS security manager that will handle authentication. This name correlates to the JAAS <b>login-config.xml</b> descriptor application-policy/name attribute.

Element	Description
<b>security-domain-and-application</b>	Indicates that either application supplied parameters (such as from <code>getConnection(user, pw)</code> ) or Subject (from security domain) are used to distinguish connections in the pool. The content of the security-domain is the name of the JAAS security manager that will handle authentication. This name correlates to the JAAS <code>login-config.xml</code> descriptor application-policy/name attribute.

**Table 24.14. Time out elements**

Element	Description
<b>blocking-timeout-millis</b>	The blocking-timeout-millis element indicates the maximum time in milliseconds to block while waiting for a connection before throwing an exception. Note that this blocks only while waiting for a permit for a connection, and will never throw an exception if creating a new connection takes an inordinately long time. The default is <b>30000</b> (30 seconds).
<b>idle-timeout-minutes</b>	The idle-timeout-minutes elements indicates the maximum time in minutes a connection may be idle before being closed. The actual maximum time depends also on the IdleRemover scan time, which is 1/2 the smallest idle-timeout-minutes of any pool.
<b>allocation-retry</b>	The allocation retry element indicates the number of times that allocating a connection should be tried before throwing an exception. The default is <b>0</b> .
<b>allocation-retry-wait-millis</b>	The allocation retry wait millis element indicates the time in milliseconds to wait between retrying to allocate a connection. The default is <b>5000</b> (5 seconds).
<b>xa-resource-timeout</b>	Passed to <code>XAResource.setTransactionTimeout()</code> . Default is zero which does not invoke the setter. Specified in seconds

**Table 24.15. Validation elements**

Element	Description
<b>background-validation</b>	An element to specify that connections should be validated on a background thread versus being validated prior to use
<b>background-validation-minutes</b>	The background-validation-minutes element specifies the amount of time, in minutes, that background validation will run.
<b>use-fast-fail</b>	Whether fail a connection allocation on the first connection if it is invalid (true) or keep trying until the pool is exhausted of all potential connections (false). Default is <b>false</b>

**Table 24.16. Admin object elements**

Element	Description
<b>config-property</b>	Specifies an administration object configuration property.

**Table 24.17. Recovery elements**

Element	Description
<b>recover-credential</b>	Specifies the user name / password pair or security domain that should be used for recovery.
<b>recover-plugin</b>	Specifies an implementation of the org.jboss.jca.core.spi.recovery.RecoveryPlugin class.

The deployment schemas are defined in **jboss-as-resource-adapters\_1\_0.xsd** and [http://www.ironjacamar.org/doc/schema/ironjacamar\\_1\\_0.xsd](http://www.ironjacamar.org/doc/schema/ironjacamar_1_0.xsd) for automatic activation.

[Report a bug](#)

## 24.6. View Defined Connection Statistics

You can read statistics for a defined connection from the **deployment=name.rar** subtree.

Statistics are defined at this level and not at the **/subsystem** level as this ensures they are accessible for any **rar** that is not defined in any configuration in the **standalone.xml** or **domain.xml** files.

For example:

**Example 24.1.**

```
/deployment=example.rar/subsystem=resource-
adapters/statistics=statistics/connection-
definitions=java\:\testMe:read-resource(include-runtime=true)
```

**Note**

Ensure you specify the **include-runtime=true** argument, as all statistics are runtime only information and the default is **false**.

[Report a bug](#)

## 24.7. Resource Adapter Statistics

### Core Statistics

The following table contains a list of the supported resource adapter core statistics:

**Table 24.18. Core Statistics**

Name	Description
<b>ActiveCount</b>	The number of active connections. Each of the connections is either in use by an application or available in the pool
<b>AvailableCount</b>	The number of available connections in the pool.

Name	Description
<b>AverageBlockingTime</b>	The average time spent blocking on obtaining an exclusive lock on the pool. The value is in milliseconds.
<b>AverageCreationTime</b>	The average time spent creating a connection. The value is in milliseconds.
<b>CreatedCount</b>	The number of connections created.
<b>DestroyedCount</b>	The number of connections destroyed.
<b>InUseCount</b>	The number of connections currently in use.
<b>MaxCreationTime</b>	The maximum time it took to create a connection. The value is in milliseconds.
<b>MaxUsedCount</b>	The maximum number of connections used.
<b>MaxWaitCount</b>	The maximum number of requests waiting for a connection at the same time.
<b>MaxWaitTime</b>	The maximum time spent waiting for an exclusive lock on the pool.
<b>TimedOut</b>	The number of timed out connections.
<b>TotalBlockingTime</b>	The total time spent waiting for an exclusive lock on the pool. The value is in milliseconds.
<b>TotalCreationTime</b>	The total time spent creating connections. The value is in milliseconds.
<b>WaitCount</b>	The number of requests that had to wait for a connection.

[Report a bug](#)

## 24.8. Deploy the WebSphere MQ Resource Adapter

### About WebSphere MQ

WebSphere MQ is IBM's Messaging Oriented Middleware (MOM) software that allows applications on distributed systems to communicate with each other. This is accomplished through the use of messages and message queues. WebSphere MQ is responsible for delivering messages to the message queues and for transferring data to other queue managers using message channels. For more information about WebSphere MQ, see [WebSphere MQ](#).

### Summary

This topic covers the steps to deploy and configure the WebSphere MQ Resource Adapter in Red Hat JBoss Enterprise Application Platform 6. This can be accomplished by manually editing configuration files, using the Management CLI tool, or using the web-based Management Console.



## Note

There is a known issue in WebSphere MQ Resource Adapter version 7.5.0.3 and earlier that causes periodic recovery to fail with an XA exception with messages similar to the following in the JBoss EAP server log:

```
WARN [com.arjuna.ats.jta] (Periodic Recovery) ARJUNA016027: Local
XARecoveryModule.xaRecovery got XA exception
XAException.XAER_INVAL: javax.transaction.xa.XAException: The
method 'xa_recover' has failed with errorCode '-5'.
```

For this reason, it is recommended that you use version 7.5.0.4 or later. A detailed description of this issue can be found here: <http://www-01.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg1IC97579>.

## Prerequisites

Before you get started, you must verify the version of the WebSphere MQ resource adapter and understand some of the WebSphere MQ configuration properties.

- » The WebSphere MQ resource adapter is supplied as a Resource Archive (RAR) file called **wmq.jmsra-VERSION.rar**. You must use version **7.5.0.0 and higher**.
- » You must know the values of the following WebSphere MQ configuration properties. Refer to the WebSphere MQ product documentation for details about these properties.
  - MQ.QUEUE.MANAGER: The name of the WebSphere MQ queue manager
  - MQ.HOST.NAME: The host name used to connect to the WebSphere MQ queue manager
  - MQ.CHANNEL.NAME: The server channel used to connect to the WebSphere MQ queue manager
  - MQ.QUEUE.NAME: The name of the destination queue
  - MQ.TOPIC.NAME: The name of the destination topic
  - MQ.PORT: The port used to connect to the WebSphere MQ queue manager
  - MQ.CLIENT: The transport type
- » For outbound connections, you must also be familiar with the following configuration property:
  - MQ.CONNECTIONFACTORY.NAME: The name of the connection factory instance that will provide the connection to the remote system



## Note

The following are default configurations provided by IBM and are subject to change. Please refer to WebSphere MQ documentation for more information.

## Procedure 24.8. Deploy the Resource Adapter Manually

- If you need transaction support with the WebSphereMQ resource adapter, you must repackage the `wmq.jmsra-VERSION.rar` archive to include the `mqetclient.jar`. You can use the following command:

```
[user@host ~]$ jar -uf wmq.jmsra-VERSION.rar mqetclient.jar
```

Be sure to replace the *VERSION* with the correct version number.

- Copy the `wmq.jmsra-VERSION.rar` file to the `EAP_HOME/standalone/deployments/` directory.
- Add the resource adapter to the server configuration file.
  - Open the `EAP_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone-full.xml` file in an editor.
  - Find the `urn:jboss:domain:resource-adapters` subsystem in the configuration file.
  - If there are no resource adapters defined for this subsystem, first replace:

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:resource-adapters:1.1"/>
```

with this:

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:resource-adapters:1.1">
  <resource-adapters>
    <!-- <resource-adapter> configuration listed below -->
  </resource-adapters>
</subsystem>
```

- The resource adapter configuration depends on whether you need transaction support and recovery. If you do not need transaction support, choose the first configuration step below. If you do need transaction support, choose the second configuration step.

- For non-transactional deployments, replace the `<!-- <resource-adapter> configuration listed below -->` with the following:

```
<resource-adapter>
  <archive>
    wmq.jmsra-VERSION.rar
  </archive>
  <transaction-support>NoTransaction</transaction-support>
  <connection-definitions>
    <connection-definition
      class-
      name="com.ibm.mq.connector.outbound.ManagedConnectionFactoryI
ryImpl"
      jndi-
      name="java:jboss/MQ.CONNECTIONFACTORY.NAME"
      pool-name="MQ.CONNECTIONFACTORY.NAME">
      <config-property name="hostName">
        MQ.HOST.NAME
    </connection-definition>
  </connection-definitions>
</resource-adapter>
```

```

        </config-property>
        <config-property name="port">
            MQ.PORT
        </config-property>
        <config-property name="channel">
            MQ.CHANNEL.NAME
        </config-property>
        <config-property name="transportType">
            MQ.CLIENT
        </config-property>
        <config-property name="queueManager">
            MQ.QUEUE.MANAGER
        </config-property>
        <security>
            <security-
domain>MySecurityDomain</security-domain>
            </security>
        </connection-definition>
    </connection-definitions>
    <admin-objects>
        <admin-object
            class-
name="com.ibm.mq.connector.outbound.MQQueueProxy"
            jndi-name="java:jboss/MQ.QUEUE.NAME"
            pool-name="MQ.QUEUE.NAME">
            <config-property name="baseQueueName">
                MQ.QUEUE.NAME
            </config-property>
            <config-property name="baseQueueManagerName">
                MQ.QUEUE.MANAGER
            </config-property>
            <admin-object class-
name="com.ibm.mq.connector.outbound.MQTopicProxy"
            jndi-name="java:jboss/MQ.TOPIC.NAME" pool-
name="MQ.TOPIC.NAME">
                <config-property name="baseTopicName">
                    MQ.TOPIC.NAME
                </config-property>
                <config-property name="brokerPubQueueManager">
                    MQ.QUEUE.MANAGER
                </config-property>
            </admin-object>
        </admin-object>
    </admin-objects>
</resource-adapter>
```

Be sure to replace the *VERSION* with the actual version in the name of the RAR.

- B. For transactional deployments, replace the **<!-- <resource-adapter> configuration listed below -->** with the following:

```

<resource-adapter>
    <archive>
        wmq.jmsra-VERSION.rar
    </archive>
    <transaction-support>XATransaction</transaction-
```

```

support>
    <connection-definitions>
        <connection-definition
            class-
name="com.ibm.mq.connector.outbound.ManagedConnectionFactoryImpl"
                jndi-
name="java:jboss/MQ.CONNECTIONFACTORY.NAME"
                    pool-name="MQ.CONNECTIONFACTORY.NAME">
            <config-property name="hostName">
                MQ.HOST.NAME
            </config-property>
            <config-property name="port">
                MQ.PORT
            </config-property>
            <config-property name="channel">
                MQ.CHANNEL.NAME
            </config-property>
            <config-property name="transportType">
                MQ.CLIENT
            </config-property>
            <config-property name="queueManager">
                MQ.QUEUE.MANAGER
            </config-property>
            <security>
                <security-
domain>MySecurityDomain</security-domain>
            </security>
            <recovery>
                <recover-credential>
                    <user-name>USER_NAME</user-name>
                    <password>PASSWORD</password>
                </recover-credential>
            </recovery>
        </connection-definition>
    </connection-definitions>
    <admin-objects>
        <admin-object
            class-
name="com.ibm.mq.connector.outbound.MQQueueProxy"
                jndi-name="java:jboss/MQ.QUEUE.NAME"
                    pool-name="MQ.QUEUE.NAME">
            <config-property name="baseQueueName">
                MQ.QUEUE.NAME
            </config-property>
            <config-property name="baseQueueManagerName">
                MQ.QUEUE.MANAGER
            </config-property>
        </admin-object>
        <admin-object class-
name="com.ibm.mq.connector.outbound.MQTopicProxy"
                jndi-name="java:jboss/MQ.TOPIC.NAME" pool-
name="MQ.TOPIC.NAME">
            <config-property name="baseTopicName">
                MQ.TOPIC.NAME
            </config-property>

```

```

<config-property name="brokerPubQueueManager">
    MQ.QUEUE.MANAGER
</config-property>
</admin-object>
</admin-objects>
</resource-adapter>

```

Be sure to replace the *VERSION* with the actual version in the name of the RAR. You must also replace the *USER\_NAME* and *PASSWORD* with the valid user name and password.

### Note

To support transactions, the `<transaction-support>` element was set to **XATransaction**. To support XA recovery, the `<recovery>` element was added to the connection definition.

- e. If you want to change the default provider for the EJB3 messaging system in JBoss EAP 6 from HornetQ to WebSphere MQ, modify the `urn:jboss:domain:ejb3:1.2` subsystem as follows:

Replace:

```

<mdb>
    <resource-adapter-ref resource-adapter-name="hornetq-
ra"/>
    <bean-instance-pool-ref pool-name="mdb-strict-max-pool"/>
</mdb>

```

with:

```

<mdb>
    <resource-adapter-ref resource-adapter-name="wmq.jmsra-
VERSION.rar"/>
    <bean-instance-pool-ref pool-name="mdb-strict-max-pool"/>
</mdb>

```

Be sure to replace the *VERSION* with the actual version in the name of the RAR.

### Procedure 24.9. Modify the MDB code to use the resource adapter

- » Configure the ActivationConfigProperty and ResourceAdapter in the MDB code as follows:

```

@MessageDriven( name="WebSphereMQMDB",
    activationConfig =
{
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName =
"destinationType",propertyValue = "javax.jms.Queue"),
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "useJNDI",
    propertyValue = "false"),
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "hostName",
    propertyValue = "MQ.HOST.NAME"),
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "port", propertyValue

```

```

        = "MQ.PORT"),
        @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "channel",
propertyValue = "MQ.CHANNEL.NAME"),
        @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "queueManager",
propertyValue = "MQ.QUEUE.MANAGER"),
        @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "destination",
propertyValue = "MQ.QUEUE.NAME"),
        @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "transportType",
propertyValue = "MQ.CLIENT")
    })
@ResourceAdapter(value = "wmq.jmsra-VERSION.rar")
@TransactionAttribute(TransactionAttributeType.NOT_SUPPORTED)
public class WebSphereMQMDB implements MessageListener {
}

```

Be sure to replace the *VERSION* with the actual version in the name of the RAR.

[Report a bug](#)

## 24.9. Install JBoss Active MQ Resource Adapter

To install JBoss Active MQ (A-MQ) resource adapter to JBoss EAP 6 in order to make it work with JBoss Fuse A-MQ 6.1.0, follow the steps provided at:

[https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red\\_Hat\\_JBoss\\_Fuse/6.1/html/Deploying\\_into\\_a\\_Web\\_Server/files/DeployRar.html](https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_JBoss_Fuse/6.1/html/Deploying_into_a_Web_Server/files/DeployRar.html)

[Report a bug](#)

## 24.10. Configure a Generic JMS Resource Adapter for Use with a Third-party JMS Provider

### Summary

JBoss EAP 6 can be configured to work with third-party JMS providers, however not all JMS providers produce a JMS JCA resource adapter for integration with Java application platforms. This procedure covers the steps required to configure the generic JMS resource adapter included in JBoss EAP 6 to connect to a JMS provider. In this procedure, Tibco EMS 6.3 is used as an example JMS provider, however other JMS providers may need a different configuration.



### Important

The generic JMS JCA resource adapter should only be used when a JMS provider does not provide its own resource adapter. Before using the generic JMS resource adapter, you should first check with the JMS provider to see if they have their own resource adapter that can be used with JBoss EAP 6.

### Prerequisites

This procedure assumes that a JMS provider server is already configured and ready for use. Any binaries required for the provider's JMS implementation will be needed. You will also need to know the values of the following JMS provider properties:

- » *PROVIDER\_HOST:PROVIDER\_PORT*: The host name and port number of the JMS provider server.
- » *PROVIDER\_CONNECTION\_FACTORY*: The name of the connection factory deployed on the JMS provider server. This must be XA.
- » *PROVIDER\_QUEUE, PROVIDER\_TOPIC*: The names of the queues and topics on the JMS provider server that are to be used.

#### Procedure 24.10. Configure a Generic JMS Resource Adapter

1. Create an **ObjectFactory** implementation for the JNDI binding of queues and topics:

- a. Using the code below as a template, replace the server details with your JMS provider server values.

```

import java.util.Hashtable;
import java.util.Properties;

public class RemoteJMSObjectFactory implements ObjectFactory {
    private Context context = null;

    public RemoteJMSObjectFactory() {
    }

    public Object getObjectInstance(Object obj, Name name,
        Context nameCtx,
        Hashtable<?, ?> environment) throws Exception {
        try {
            String jndi = (String) obj;

            final Properties env = new Properties();
            env.put(Context.INITIAL_CONTEXT_FACTORY,
                "com.tibco.tibjms.naming.TibjmsInitialContextFactory");
            env.put(Context.URL_PKG_PREFIXES,
                "com.tibco.tibjms.naming");
            env.put(Context.PROVIDER_URL,
                "tcp://TIBCO_HOST:TIBCO_PORT");

            context = new InitialContext(env);
            Object o = context.lookup(jndi);

            return o;
        } catch (NamingException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
            throw e;
        }
    }
}

```

- b. Compile the above code, and save the resulting class file in a JAR file named **remoteJMSObjectFactory.jar**

2. Create a **genericjms** module for your JBoss EAP 6 instance:

- a. Create the following directory structure:  
**EAP\_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/org/jboss/genericjms/provider/main**
- b. Copy the **remoteJMSObjectFactory.jar** file to  
**EAP\_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/org/jboss/genericjms/provider/main**
- c. Copy the binaries required for the provider's JMS implementation to  
**EAP\_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/org/jboss/genericjms/provider/main**. For Tibco EMS, the binaries required are **tibjms.jar** and **tibcrypt.jar** from the Tibco installation's **/lib** directory.
- d. Create a **module.xml** file in  
**EAP\_HOME/modules/system/layers/base/org/jboss/genericjms/provider/main** as below, listing the JAR files from the previous steps as resources:

```

<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.1"
  name="org.jboss.genericjms.provider">
  <resources>
    <resource-root path="tibjms.jar"/>
    <resource-root path="tibcrypt.jar"/>
    <resource-root path="remoteJMSObjectFactory.jar"/>
  </resources>

  <dependencies>
    <module name="javax.api"/>
    <module name="javax.jms.api"/>
  </dependencies>
</module>

```

3. Add the generic JMS module as a dependency for all deployments as global modules.

### Note

In this procedure, **EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone-full.xml** is used as the JBoss EAP 6 configuration file.

In **EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone-full.xml**, under **<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:ee:1.1">**, add:

```

<global-modules>
  <module name="org.jboss.genericjms.provider" slot="main"/>
  <module name="org.jboss.common-core" slot="main"/>
</global-modules>

```

4. Replace the default HornetQ resource adapter with the generic resource adapter.

In **EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone-full.xml**, replace **<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:ejb3:1.4"> <mdb>**, with:

```

<mdb>
  <resource-adapter-ref resource-adapter-
    name="org.jboss.genericjms"/>

```

```
<bean-instance-pool-ref pool-name="mdb-strict-max-pool"/>
</mdb>
```

- Add bindings for your JMS topics and queues as remote objects as necessary.

In **EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone-full.xml**, under **<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:naming:1.3">**, add the bindings, replacing *PROVIDER\_QUEUE* and *PROVIDER\_TOPIC* as necessary:

```
<bindings>
  <object-factory name="PROVIDER_QUEUE"
    module="org.jboss.genericjms.provider"
    class="org.jboss.qa.RemoteJMSObjectFactory"/>
  <object-factory name="PROVIDER_TOPIC"
    module="org.jboss.genericjms.provider"
    class="org.jboss.qa.RemoteJMSObjectFactory"/>
</bindings>
```

- In **EAP\_HOME/standalone/configuration/standalone-full.xml**, add the generic resource adapter configuration to **<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:resource-adapters:1.1">**.

Replace *PROVIDER\_CONNECTION\_FACTORY*, *PROVIDER\_HOST*, and *PROVIDER\_PORT* with the JMS provider values.

```
<resource-adapters>
  <resource-adapter id="org.jboss.genericjms">
    <module slot="main" id="org.jboss.genericjms"/>
    <transaction-support>NoTransaction</transaction-support>
    <connection-definitions>
      <connection-definition class-
        name="org.jboss.resource.adapter.jms.JmsManagedConnectionFactory"
        jndi-name="java:/jms/PROVIDER_CONNECTION_FACTORY" pool-
        name="PROVIDER_CONNECTION_FACTORY">
        <config-property name="JndiParameters">
          java.naming.factory.initial=com.tibco.tibjms.naming.TibjmsInitialCo
          ntextFactory;java.naming.provider.url=tcp://PROVIDER_HOST:PROVIDER
          _PORT
        </config-property>
        <config-property name="ConnectionFactory">
          PROVIDER_CONNECTION_FACTORY
        </config-property>
        <security>
          <application/>
        </security>
      </connection-definition>
    </connection-definitions>
  </resource-adapter>
</resource-adapters>
```

## Result

The generic JMS resource adapter is now configured and ready for use.

When creating a new message driven bean (MDB), use code similar below to use the resource adapter. Replace *PROVIDER\_CONNECTION\_FACTORY*, *PROVIDER\_HOST*, and *PROVIDER\_PORT* with the JMS provider values.

Optionally, the example below also configures a secure connection for Tibco EMS by specifying the **user** and **password** properties (replace the property values as needed).

```
@MessageDriven(activationConfig = {  
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "destinationType",  
    propertyValue = "javax.jms.Queue"),  
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "jndiParameters",  
    propertyValue =  
    "java.naming.factory.initial=com.tibco.tibjms.naming.TibjmsInitialContex  
tFactory;java.naming.provider.url=tcp://PROVIDER_HOST:PROVIDER_PORT")  
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "destination", propertyValue  
= "PROVIDER_QUEUE"),  
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "connectionFactory",  
    propertyValue = "PROVIDER_CONNECTION_FACTORY"),  
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "user", propertyValue =  
"USER"),  
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "password", propertyValue =  
"PASSWORD"),  
})  
  
@ResourceAdapter("org.jboss.genericjms")  
public class SampleMdb implements MessageListener {  
    @Override  
  
        public void onMessage(Message message) {  
  
    }  
}
```

[Report a bug](#)

# Chapter 25. Deploy JBoss EAP 6 on Amazon EC2

## 25.1. Introduction

### 25.1.1. About Amazon EC2

Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) is a service operated by amazon.com that provides customers with a customizable virtual computing environment. An Amazon Machine Image (AMI) can be booted using the service to create a virtual machine or instance. Users can install whatever software they require on an instance and are charged according to the capacity used. Amazon EC2 is designed to be flexible and allow users to quickly scale their deployed applications.

You can read more about it at the Amazon EC2 website, <http://aws.amazon.com/ec2/>.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.1.2. About Amazon Machine Instances (AMIs)

An Amazon Machine Image (AMI) is a template for a EC2 virtual machine instance. Users create EC2 instances by selecting an appropriate AMI to create the instance from. The primary component of an AMI is a read-only filesystem that contains an installed operating system as well as other software. Each AMI has different software installed for different use cases. Amazon EC2 includes many AMIs to choose from provided by both amazon.com and third parties. Users can also create their own custom AMIs.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.1.3. About JBoss Cloud Access

JBoss Cloud Access is a Red Hat subscription feature that provides support for JBoss EAP 6 on Red Hat certified cloud infrastructure providers such as Amazon EC2. JBoss Cloud Access allows you to move your subscriptions between traditional servers and public cloud-based resources in a simple and cost-effective manner.

You can find out more details about it at <http://www.redhat.com/solutions/cloud/access/jboss/>.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.1.4. JBoss Cloud Access Features

Membership in the JBoss Cloud Access program provides access to supported private Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) created by Red Hat.

The Red Hat AMIs have the following software pre-installed and fully supported by Red hat:

- » Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6
- » JBoss EAP 6
- » The JBoss Operations Network (JON) 3 agent
- » Product updates with RPMs using Red Hat Update Infrastructure.

Each of the Red Hat AMIs are only a starting point, requiring further configuration to the requirements of your application.



## Important

JBoss Cloud Access does not currently provide support for the full-ha profile, in either standalone instances or a managed domain.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.1.5. Supported Amazon EC2 Instance Types

JBoss Cloud Access supports the following Amazon EC2 instance types. Refer to the *Amazon EC2 User Guide* for more details about each instance type,  
<http://docs.amazonwebservices.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/instance-types.html>.

**Table 25.1. Supported Amazon EC2 Instance Types**

Instance Type	Description
Standard Instance	Standard Instances are general purpose environments with a balanced memory-to-CPU ratio.
High Memory Instance	High Memory Instances have more memory allocated to them than Standard Instances. High Memory Instances are suited for high throughput applications such as databases or memory caching applications.
High CPU Instance	High CPU Instances have more CPU resources allocated than memory and are suited for relatively low throughput but CPU intensive applications.



## Important

The instance type **Micro (t1.micro)** is not suitable for deployment of JBoss EAP 6.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.1.6. Supported Red Hat AMIs

The supported Red Hat AMIs can be identified by their AMI Name.

The JBoss EAP 6 AMIs are named using the following syntax:

**RHEL-osversion-JBEAP-version-arch-creationdate**

*version* is the version number of JBoss EAP installed in the AMI. Example **6 . 3**.

*osversion* is the version number of Red Hat Enterprise Linux installed in the AMI. Example **6 . 2**.

*arch* is the architecture of the AMI. This will be **x86\_64** or **i386**.

*creationdate* is the date that the AMI was created in the format of YYYYMMDD. Example **20120501**.

Example AMI name: **RHEL-6 . 2-JBEAP-6 . 0 . 0 -x86\_64-20120501**.

[Report a bug](#)

## 25.2. Deploying JBoss EAP 6 on Amazon EC2

### 25.2.1. Overview of Deploying JBoss EAP 6 on Amazon EC2

JBoss EAP 6 can be deployed using the Amazon EC2 AMI. The AMI contains everything that is required for deployment of clustered and non-clustered instances.

Deploying a non-clustered instance is the easiest scenario. It requires only that you make a few configuration changes to specify your application deployment when creating the instance.

Deploying clustered instances requires more configuration. It is recommended you create a Virtual Private Cloud to contain your cluster. Use of a JBoss EAP instance to act as a mod\_cluster proxy is optional but if you take this option, an S3 bucket for the S3\_PING JGroups discovery protocol is also required.

Each of these steps is detailed below but it is assumed that you have some experience with JBoss EAP 6, Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 and Amazon EC2.

The following documentation is recommended additional reference:

- » JBoss EAP 6

[https://access.redhat.com/documentation/JBoss\\_Enterprise\\_Application\\_Platform/](https://access.redhat.com/documentation/JBoss_Enterprise_Application_Platform/)

- » Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6

[https://access.redhat.com/documentation/Red\\_Hat\\_Enterprise\\_Linux/](https://access.redhat.com/documentation/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux/)

- » Amazon Web Services

<http://aws.amazon.com/documentation/>

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.2.2. Non-clustered JBoss EAP 6

#### 25.2.2.1. About Non-clustered Instances

A non-clustered instance is a single Amazon EC2 instance running JBoss EAP 6. It is not part of a cluster.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 25.2.2.2. Non-clustered Instances

##### 25.2.2.2.1. Launch a Non-clustered JBoss EAP 6 Instance

###### Summary

This topic covers the steps required to launch a non-clustered instance of JBoss EAP 6 on a Red Hat AMI (Amazon Machine Image).

###### Prerequisites

- » A suitable Red Hat AMI. Refer to [Section 25.1.6, “Supported Red Hat AMIs”](#).

- » A pre-configured Security Group which allows incoming requests on at least ports 22, 8080, and 9990.

### Procedure 25.1. Launch a Non-clustered Instance of JBoss EAP 6 on a Red Hat AMI (Amazon Machine Image)

1. Configure the **User Data** field. The configurable parameters are available here:  
[Section 25.4.1, “Permanent Configuration Parameters”](#), [Section 25.4.2, “Custom Script Parameters”](#).

#### Example 25.1. Example User Data Field

The example shows the User Data field for a non-clustered JBoss EAP 6 instance. The password for the user **admin** has been set to **adminpwd**.

```
JBOSSAS_ADMIN_PASSWORD=adminpwd
JBOSS_IP=0.0.0.0 #listen on all IPs and interfaces

# In production, access to these ports needs to be restricted for
security reasons
PORTS_ALLOWED="9990 9443"

cat> $USER_SCRIPT << "EOF"

# Get the application to be deployed from an Internet URL
# mkdir -p /usr/share/java/jboss-ec2-eap-applications
# wget https://<your secure storage hostname>/<path>/<app
name>.war -O /usr/share/java/jboss-ec2-eap-applications/<app
name>.war

# Create a file of CLI commands to be executed after starting the
server
cat> $USER_CLI_COMMANDS << "EOC"
# deploy /usr/share/java/jboss-ec2-eap-applications/<app
name>.war
EOC

EOF
```

#### 2. For Production Instances

For a production instance, add the following line beneath the **USER\_SCRIPT** line of the **User Data** field, to ensure security updates are applied on boot.

```
yum -y update
```

#### Note

**yum -y update** should be run regularly, to apply security fixes and enhancements.

#### 3. Launch the Red Hat AMI instance.

## Result

A non-clustered instance of JBoss EAP 6 has been configured, and launched on a Red Hat AMI.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.2.2.2. Deploy an Application on a non-clustered JBoss EAP 6 Instance

#### Summary

This topic covers deploying an application to a non-clustered JBoss EAP 6 instance on a Red Hat AMI.

##### 1. A. Deploy the Sample Application

Add the following lines to the **User Data** field:

```
# Deploy the sample application from the local filesystem
deploy --force /usr/share/java/jboss-ec2-eap-samples/hello.war
```

#### Example 25.2. Example User Data Field with Sample Application

This example uses the sample application provided on the Red Hat AMI. It also includes basic configuration for a non-clustered JBoss EAP 6 instance. The password for the user **admin** has been set to **adminpwd**.

```
JBOSSAS_ADMIN_PASSWORD=adminpwd
JBOSS_IP=0.0.0.0 #listen on all IPs and interfaces

# In production, access to these ports needs to be restricted
# for security reasons
PORTS_ALLOWED="9990 9443"

cat> $USER_SCRIPT << "EOF"

# Create a file of CLI commands to be executed after starting
# the server
cat> $USER_CLI_COMMANDS << "EOC"

# Deploy the sample application from the local filesystem
deploy --force /usr/share/java/jboss-ec2-eap-samples/hello.war
EOC

EOF
```

##### B. Deploy a Custom Application

Add the following lines to the **User Data** field, configuring the application name and the URL:

```
# Get the application to be deployed from an Internet URL
mkdir -p /usr/share/java/jboss-ec2-eap-applications
wget https://<your secure storage hostname>/<path>/<app
name>.war -O /usr/share/java/jboss-ec2-eap-applications/<app
```

name>.war

### Example 25.3. Example User Data Field with Custom Application

This example uses an application called **MyApp**, and includes basic configuration for a non-clustered JBoss EAP 6 instance. The password for the user **admin** has been set to **adminpwd**.

```
JBOSSAS_ADMIN_PASSWORD=adminpwd
JBOSS_IP=0.0.0.0 #listen on all IPs and interfaces

# In production, access to these ports needs to be restricted
# for security reasons
PORTS_ALLOWED="9990 9443"

cat> $USER_SCRIPT << "EOF"

# Get the application to be deployed from an Internet URL
mkdir -p /usr/share/java/jboss-ec2-eap-applications
wget https://PATH_TO_MYAPP/MyApp.war -O /usr/share/java/jboss-ec2-eap-applications/MyApp.war

# Create a file of CLI commands to be executed after starting
# the server
cat> $USER_CLI_COMMANDS << "EOC"
deploy /usr/share/java/jboss-ec2-eap-applications/MyApp.war
EOC

EOF
```

2. Launch the Red Hat AMI instance.

## Result

The application has been successfully deployed to JBoss EAP 6.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.2.2.2.3. Test the Non-clustered JBoss EAP 6 Instance

#### Summary

This topic covers the steps required to test that the non-clustered JBoss EAP 6 is running correctly.

#### Procedure 25.2. Test the Non-clustered JBoss EAP 6 Instance is Running Correctly

1. Determine the instance's **Public DNS**, located in the instance's details pane.
2. Navigate to **http://<public-DNS>:8080**.
3. Confirm that the JBoss EAP home page appears, including a link to the Admin console. If the home page is not available, refer here: [Section 25.5.1, “About Troubleshooting Amazon EC2”](#).
4. Click on the **Admin Console** hyperlink.

## 5. Log in:

- » Username: **admin**
- » Password: Specified in the **User Data** field here: [Section 25.2.2.2.1, “Launch a Non-clustered JBoss EAP 6 Instance”](#).

## 6. Test the Sample Application

Navigate to **http://<public-DNS>:8080/hello** to test that the sample application is running successfully. The text **Hello World!** should appear in the browser. If the text is not visible, refer here: [Section 25.5.1, “About Troubleshooting Amazon EC2”](#).

## 7. Log out of the JBoss EAP 6 Admin Console.

## Result

The JBoss EAP 6 instance is running correctly.

[Report a bug](#)

## 25.2.2.3. Non-clustered Managed Domains

### 25.2.2.3.1. Launch an Instance to Serve as a Domain Controller

#### Summary

This topic covers the steps required to launch a non-clustered JBoss EAP 6 managed domain on a Red Hat AMI (Amazon Machine Image).

#### Prerequisites

- » A suitable Red Hat AMI. Refer to [Section 25.1.6, “Supported Red Hat AMIs”](#).
- » [Section 25.2.3.4, “Create a Virtual Private Cloud \(VPC\)”](#)
- » [Section 25.2.3.5, “Launch an Apache HTTP Server Instance to Serve as a mod\\_cluster Proxy and a NAT Instance for the VPC”](#)
- » [Section 25.2.3.6, “Configure the VPC Private Subnet Default Route”](#)
- » [Section 25.2.3.8, “Configure IAM Setup”](#)
- » [Section 25.2.3.10, “Configure S3 Bucket Setup”](#)

#### Procedure 25.3. Launch a non-clustered JBoss EAP 6 managed domain on a Red Hat AMI

1. In the Security Group tab, ensure all traffic is allowed. Red Hat Enterprise Linux's built-in firewall capabilities can be used to restrict access if desired.
2. Set the public subnet of the VPC to *running*.
3. Select a static IP.
4. Configure the **User Data** field. The configurable parameters are available here: [Section 25.4.1, “Permanent Configuration Parameters”](#), [Section 25.4.2, “Custom Script Parameters”](#). For further information on domain controller discovery on Amazon EC2, see [Section 25.2.2.3.4, “Configuring Domain Controller Discovery and Failover on Amazon](#)

EC2".

#### Example 25.4. Example User Data Field

The example shows the User Data field for a non-clustered JBoss EAP 6 managed domain. The password for the user **admin** has been set to **admin**.

```
## password that will be used by slave host controllers to
connect to the domain controller
JBossAS_ADMIN_PASSWORD=admin

## subnet prefix this machine is connected to
SUBNET=10.0.0.

## S3 domain controller discovery setup
# JBOSS_DOMAIN_S3_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY=<your secret key>
# JBOSS_DOMAIN_S3_ACCESS_KEY=<your access key>
# JBOSS_DOMAIN_S3_BUCKET=<your bucket name>

##### to run the example no modifications below should be needed
#####
JBoss_DOMAIN_CONTROLLER=true
PORTS_ALLOWED="9999 9990 9443"
JBoss_IP=`hostname | sed -e 's/ip-//' -e 'y/-/./'` #listen on
public/private EC2 IP address

cat > $USER_SCRIPT << "EOF"
## Get the application to be deployed from an Internet URL
# mkdir -p /usr/share/java/jboss-ec2-eap-applications
# wget https://<your secure storage hostname>/<path>/<app
name>.war -O /usr/share/java/jboss-ec2-eap-applications/<app
name>.war

## Create a file of CLI commands to be executed after starting
the server
cat> $USER_CLI_COMMANDS << "EOC"

# Add the modcluster subsystem to the default profile to set up a
proxy
/profile=default/subsystem=web/connector=ajp:add(name=ajp,proto
col=AJP/1.3,scheme=http,socket-binding=ajp)
/:composite(steps=[ {"operation" => "add", "address" => [
("profile" => "default"), ("subsystem" => "modcluster") ] },{
"operation" => "add", "address" => [ ("profile" => "default"),
("subsystem" => "modcluster"), ("mod-cluster-config" =>
"configuration") ], "advertise" => "false", "proxy-list" =>
"${jboss.modcluster.proxyList}", "connector" => "ajp"}, {
"operation" => "add", "address" => [ ("profile" => "default"),
("subsystem" => "modcluster"), ("mod-cluster-config" =>
"configuration"), ("dynamic-load-provider" => "configuration")
], { "operation" => "add", "address" => [ ("profile" =>
"default"), ("subsystem" => "modcluster"), ("mod-cluster-config"
=> "configuration"), ("dynamic-load-provider" =>
"configuration"), ("load-metric" => "busyness")], "type" =>
"busyness" } ])
```

```

# Deploy the sample application from the local filesystem
deploy /usr/share/java/jboss-ec2-eap-samples/hello.war --server-
groups=main-server-group
EOC

## this will workaround the problem that in a VPC, instance
hostnames are not resolvable
echo -e "127.0.0.1\tlocalhost.localdomain localhost" > /etc/hosts
echo -e "::1\tlocalhost6.localdomain6 localhost6" >> /etc/hosts
for (( i=1 ; i<255 ; i++ )); do
    echo -e "$SUBNET$i\tip-${SUBNET//./-}$i" ;
done >> /etc/hosts

EOF

```

## 5. For Production Instances

For a production instance, add the following line beneath the **USER\_SCRIPT** line of the **User Data** field, to ensure security updates are applied on boot.

```
yum -y update
```



### Note

**yum -y update** should be run regularly, to apply security fixes and enhancements.

## 6. Launch the Red Hat AMI instance.

### Result

A non-clustered JBoss EAP 6 managed domain has been configured, and launched on a Red Hat AMI.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.2.2.3.2. Launch One or More Instances to Serve as Host Controllers

#### Summary

This topic covers the steps required to launch one or more instances of JBoss EAP 6 to serve as non-clustered host controllers on a Red Hat AMI (Amazon Machine Image).

#### Prerequisites

- » Configure and launch the non-clustered domain controller. Refer to [Section 25.2.2.3.1, “Launch an Instance to Serve as a Domain Controller”](#).
- » [Section 25.2.3.8, “Configure IAM Setup”](#)
- » [Section 25.2.3.10, “Configure S3 Bucket Setup”](#)

#### Procedure 25.4. Launch Host Controllers

For each instance you would like to create, repeat the following steps:

1. Select an AMI.
2. Define the desired number of instances (the number of slave host controllers).
3. Select the VPC and instance type.
4. Click on Security Group.
5. Ensure that all traffic from the JBoss EAP 6 subnet is allowed.
6. Define other restrictions as desired.
7. Add the following into the User Data field:

```
## mod cluster proxy addresses
MOD_CLUSTER_PROXY_LIST=10.0.0.4:7654

## host controller setup
### static domain controller discovery setup
JBoss_DOMAIN_MASTER_ADDRESS=10.0.0.5
### S3 domain controller discovery setup
# JBoss_DOMAIN_S3_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY=<your secret key>
# JBoss_DOMAIN_S3_ACCESS_KEY=<your access key>
# JBoss_DOMAIN_S3_BUCKET=<your bucket name>

JBoss_HOST_PASSWORD=<password for slave host controllers>

## subnet prefix this machine is connected to
SUBNET=10.0.1.

##### to run the example no modifications below should be needed
#####
JBoss_HOST_USERNAME=admin
PORTS_ALLOWED="1024:65535"
JBoss_IP=`hostname | sed -e 's/ip-//' -e 'y/-/./'` #listen on
public/private EC2 IP address

cat > $USER_SCRIPT << "EOF"
## Server instance configuration
sed -i "s/other-server-group/main-server-group/" \
$JBoss_CONFIG_DIR/$JBoss_HOST_CONFIG

## this will workaround the problem that in a VPC, instance
hostnames are not resolvable
echo -e "127.0.0.1\tlocalhost.localdomain localhost" > /etc/hosts
echo -e "::1\tlocalhost6.localdomain6 localhost6" >> /etc/hosts
for (( i=1 ; i<255 ; i++ )); do
    echo -e "$SUBNET$i\tip-$SUBNET//.-}.$i" ;
done >> /etc/hosts

EOF
```

For further information on domain controller discovery on Amazon EC2, see  
[Section 25.2.2.3.4, “Configuring Domain Controller Discovery and Failover on Amazon EC2”](#).

## 8. For Production Instances

For a production instance, add the following line beneath the **USER\_SCRIPT** line of the **User Data** field, to ensure security updates are applied on boot.

```
yum -y update
```

### Note

**yum -y update** should be run regularly, to apply security fixes and enhancements.

## 9. Launch the Red Hat AMI instance.

### Result

The JBoss EAP 6 non-clustered host controllers are configured and launched on a Red Hat AMI.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.2.2.3.3. Test the Non-Clustered JBoss EAP 6 Managed Domain

#### Summary

This topic covers the steps required to test the non-clustered JBoss EAP 6 managed domain on a Red Hat AMI (Amazon Machine Image).

To test the managed domain you must know the elastic IP addresses of both the Apache HTTP server and JBoss EAP 6 domain controller.

#### Prerequisites

- » Configure and launch the domain controller. See [Section 25.2.2.3.1, “Launch an Instance to Serve as a Domain Controller”](#).
- » Configure and launch the host controllers. See [Section 25.2.2.3.2, “Launch One or More Instances to Serve as Host Controllers”](#).

#### Procedure 25.5. Test the Web Server

- » Navigate to **http://ELASTIC\_IP\_OF\_APACHE\_HTTPD** in a browser to confirm the web server is running successfully.

#### Procedure 25.6. Test the Domain Controller

1. Navigate to **http://ELASTIC\_IP\_OF\_DOMAIN\_CONTROLLER:9990/console**
2. Log in using the username of **admin** and the password specified in the User Data field for the domain controller and the admin console landing page for a managed domain should appear (**http://ELASTIC\_IP\_OF\_DOMAIN\_CONTROLLER:9990/console/App.html#server-instances**).
3. Click the **Server** label at the top right side of the screen, and select any of the host controllers in the **Host** dropdown menu at the top left side of the screen.

4. Verify that each host controller has two server configurations called **server-one** and **server-two** and that they both belong to the **main-server-group**.
5. Log out of the JBoss EAP 6 Admin Console.

### Procedure 25.7. Test the Host Controllers

1. Navigate to **http://ELASTIC\_IP\_OF\_APACHE\_HTTPD/hello** to test that the sample application is running successfully. The text **Hello World!** should appear in the browser.  
If the text is not visible, refer here: Section 18.5.1, "About Troubleshooting Amazon EC2".
2. Connect to the Apache HTTP server instance:

```
$ ssh -L7654:localhost:7654 ELASTIC_IP_OF_APACHE_HTTPD
```

3. Navigate to **http://localhost:7654/mod\_cluster-manager** to confirm all instances are running correctly.

### Result

The JBoss EAP 6 web server, domain controller, and host controllers are running correctly on a Red Hat AMI.

[Report a bug](#)

#### 25.2.2.3.4. Configuring Domain Controller Discovery and Failover on Amazon EC2

For a managed domain running on Amazon EC2, in addition to static domain controller discovery, host controllers can dynamically discover a domain controller using the Amazon S3 storage system. In particular, host controllers and the domain controller can be configured with information needed to access an Amazon S3 bucket.

Using this configuration, when a domain controller is started, it writes its contact information to an S3 file in the bucket. Whenever a host controller attempts to contact the domain controller, it gets the domain controller's contact information from the S3 file.

This means that if the domain controller's contact information changes (for example, it is common for an EC2 instance's IP address to change when it is stopped and started), the host controllers do not need to be reconfigured. The host controllers are able to get the domain controller's new contact information from the S3 file.

You can automatically enable domain controller discovery by passing the **JBOSS\_DOMAIN\_S3\_ACCESS\_KEY**, **JBOSS\_DOMAIN\_S3\_SECRET\_ACCESS\_KEY**, and **JBOSS\_DOMAIN\_S3\_BUCKET** parameters to the JBoss EAP 6 instance when launching it. See [Section 25.4.1, "Permanent Configuration Parameters"](#) for configurable parameters. Alternatively, you can manually configure domain discovery using the following configuration.

The manual domain controller discovery configuration is specified using the following properties:

##### **access-key**

The Amazon AWS user account access key.

##### **secret-access-key**

The Amazon AWS user account secret access key.

##### **location**

The Amazon S3 bucket to be used.

The following are example host controller and domain controller configurations. Although one discovery option is shown in the examples below, it is possible to configure any number of static discovery or S3 discovery options. For details on the domain discovery and failover process, see [Section 1.7, “About Domain Controller Discovery and Failover”](#).

### Example 25.5. Host Controller Configuration

```
<domain-controller>
  <remote security-realm="ManagementRealm">
    <discovery-options>
      <discovery-option name="s3-discovery"
code="org.jboss.as.host.controller.discovery.S3Discovery"
module="org.jboss.as.host-controller">
        <property name="access-key" value="S3_ACCESS_KEY"/>
        <property name="secret-access-key"
value="S3_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY"/>
        <property name="location" value="S3_BUCKET_NAME"/>
      </discovery-option>
    </discovery-options>
  </remote>
</domain-controller>
```

### Example 25.6. Domain Controller Configuration

```
<domain-controller>
  <local>
    <discovery-options>
      <discovery-option name="s3-discovery"
code="org.jboss.as.host.controller.discovery.S3Discovery"
module="org.jboss.as.host-controller">
        <property name="access-key" value="S3_ACCESS_KEY"/>
        <property name="secret-access-key"
value="S3_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY"/>
        <property name="location" value="S3_BUCKET_NAME"/>
      </discovery-option>
    </discovery-options>
  </local>
</domain-controller>
```

[Report a bug](#)

## 25.2.3. Clustered JBoss EAP 6

### 25.2.3.1. About Clustered Instances

A clustered instance is an Amazon EC2 instance running JBoss EAP 6 with clustering enabled. Another instance running the Apache HTTP server will be acting as the proxy for the instances in the cluster.

The JBoss EAP 6 AMIs include two configuration files for use in clustered instances, **standalone-ec2-ha.xml** and **standalone-mod\_cluster-ec2-ha.xml**. Each of these configuration files provides clustering without the use of multicast because Amazon EC2 does not support multicast. This is done by using TCP unicast for cluster communications and S3\_PING as the discovery protocol. The **standalone-mod\_cluster-ec2-ha.xml** configuration also provides easy registration with mod\_cluster proxies.

Similarly, the **domain-ec2.xml** configuration file provides two profiles for use in clustered managed domains: ec2-ha, and mod\_cluster-ec2-ha.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.2.3.2. Create a Relational Database Service Database Instance

#### Summary

This topic covers the steps to create a relational database service database instance, using MySQL as an example.



#### Warning

It is highly recommended that the back-up and maintenance features remain enabled for production environments.



#### Important

It is good practice to create separate user/password pairs for each application accessing the database. Tune other configuration options according to your application's requirements.

#### Procedure 25.8. Create a Relational Database Service Database Instance

1. Click on the **RDS** in the AWS console.
2. Subscribe to the service if needed.
3. Click on **Launch DB instance**.
4. Click on **MySQL**.
  - a. Select a version. For example, **5.5.12**.
  - b. Select **small instance**.
  - c. Ensure **Multi-AZ Deployment** and **Auto upgrade** are off.
  - d. Set **Storage** to **5GB**.
  - e. Define the database administrator's username and password and click **Next**.
  - f. Select a database name to be created with the instance, and click **Next**.
  - g. Disable back-ups and maintenance, if necessary.
  - h. Confirm the settings.

## Result

The database is created. It will initialize and be ready for use after a few minutes.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.2.3.3. About Virtual Private Clouds

An Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC) is a feature of Amazon Web Services (AWS) that allows you to isolate a set of AWS resources in a private network. The topology and configuration of this private network can be customized to your needs.

Refer to the Amazon Virtual Private Cloud website for more information <http://aws.amazon.com/vpc/>.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.2.3.4. Create a Virtual Private Cloud (VPC)

#### Summary

This topic covers the steps required to create a Virtual Private Cloud, using a database external to the VPC as an example. Your security policies may require connection to the database to be encrypted. Please refer to Amazon's *RDS FAQ* for details about encrypting the database connections.



#### Important

VPC is recommended for a JBoss EAP 6 cluster setup as it greatly simplifies secure communication between cluster nodes, a JON Server and the mod\_cluster proxy. Without a VPC, these communication channels need to be encrypted and authenticated.

For detailed instructions on configuring SSL, refer here: [Section 11.12.1, “Implement SSL Encryption for the JBoss EAP 6 Web Server”](#).

1. Go to the VPC tab in the AWS console.
2. Subscribe to the service if needed.
3. Click on "**Create new VPC**".
4. Choose a VPC with one public and one private subnet.
  - a. Set the public subnet to be **10 . 0 . 0 . 0 /24**.
  - b. Set the private subnet to be **10 . 0 . 1 . 0 /24**.
5. Go to **Elastic IPs**.
6. Create an elastic IP for use by the mod\_cluster proxy/NAT instance.
7. Go to **Security groups** and create a security group to allow all traffic in and out.
8. Go to Network ACLs
  - a. Create an ACL to allow all traffic in and out.

- b. Create an ACL to allow all traffic out and traffic in on only TCP ports **22, 8009, 8080, 8443, 9443, 9990** and **16163**.

## Result

The Virtual Private Cloud has been successfully created.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.2.3.5. Launch an Apache HTTP Server Instance to Serve as a mod\_cluster Proxy and a NAT Instance for the VPC

#### Summary

This topic covers the steps required to launch an Apache HTTP server instance to serve as a mod\_cluster proxy and a NAT instance for the Virtual Private Cloud.

#### Prerequisites

- » [Section 25.2.3.2, “Create a Relational Database Service Database Instance”](#).
- » [Section 25.2.3.4, “Create a Virtual Private Cloud \(VPC\)”](#)

#### Procedure 25.9. Launch an Apache HTTP server Instance to Serve as a mod\_cluster proxy and a NAT Instance for the VPC

1. Create an elastic IP for this instance.
2. Select an AMI.
3. Go to **Security Group** and allow all traffic (use Red Hat Enterprise Linux's built-in firewall capabilities to restrict access if desired).
4. Select "**running**" in the public subnet of the VPC.
5. Select a static IP (e.g. **10 . 0 . 0 . 4**).
6. Put the following in the **User Data:** field:

```
JBOSSCONF=disabled

cat > $USER_SCRIPT << "EOS"

echo 1 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/ip_forward
echo 0 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/conf/all/rp_filter
echo 0 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/conf/eth0/rp_filter

iptables -I INPUT 4 -s 10.0.1.0/24 -p tcp --dport 7654 -j ACCEPT
iptables -I INPUT 4 -p tcp --dport 80 -j ACCEPT

iptables -I FORWARD -m state --state RELATED,ESTABLISHED -j ACCEPT
iptables -I FORWARD -s 10.0.1.0/24 -j ACCEPT
iptables -t nat -A POSTROUTING -o eth0 ! -s 10.0.0.4 -j MASQUERADE

# balancer module incompatible with mod_cluster
sed -i -e 's/LoadModule proxy_balancer_module/#\0/' \
/etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf
```

```

cat > /etc/httpd/conf.d/mod_cluster.conf << "EOF"
#LoadModule proxy_module modules/mod_proxy.so
#LoadModule proxy_ajp_module modules/mod_proxy_ajp.so
LoadModule slotmem_module modules/mod_slotmem.so
LoadModule manager_module modules/mod_manager.so
LoadModule proxy_cluster_module modules/mod_proxy_cluster.so
LoadModule advertise_module modules/mod_advertise.so

Listen 7654

# workaround JBPAPP-4557
MemManagerFile /var/cache/mod_proxy/manager

<VirtualHost *:7654>
    <Location /mod_cluster-manager>
        SetHandler mod_cluster-manager
        Order deny,allow
        Deny from all
        Allow from 127.0.0.1
    </Location>

    <Location />
        Order deny,allow
        Deny from all
        Allow from 10.
        Allow from 127.0.0.1
    </Location>

    KeepAliveTimeout 60
    MaxKeepAliveRequests 0
    ManagerBalancerName mycluster
    ServerAdvertise Off
    EnableMCPMReceive On
</VirtualHost>
EOF

echo "`hostname | sed -e 's/ip-//' -e 'y/-.//'`" `hostname`"
>> /etc/hosts

semanage port -a -t http_port_t -p tcp 7654 #add port in the apache
port list for the below to work
setsebool -P httpd_can_network_relay 1 #for mod_proxy_cluster to
work
chcon -t httpd_config_t -u system_u
/etc/httpd/conf.d/mod_cluster.conf

##### Uncomment the following line when launching a managed domain
#####
# setsebool -P httpd_can_network_connect 1

service httpd start

EOS

```

7. Disable the Amazon EC2 cloud source/destination checking for this instance so it can act as a router.
  - a. Right-click on the running Apache HTTP server instance and choose "**Change Source/Dest check**".
  - b. Click on **Yes, Disable**.
8. Assign the elastic IP to this instance.

## Result

The Apache HTTP server instance has been launched successfully.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.2.3.6. Configure the VPC Private Subnet Default Route

#### Summary

This topic covers the steps required to configure the VPC private subnet default route. JBoss EAP 6 cluster nodes will run in the private subnet of the VPC, but cluster nodes require Internet access for S3 connectivity. A default route needs to be set to go through the NAT instance.

#### Procedure 25.10. Configure the VPC Private Subnet Default Route

1. Navigate to the Apache HTTP server instance in the Amazon AWS console.
2. Navigate to the **VPC → route tables**.
3. Click on the routing table used by the private subnet.
4. In the field for a new route enter **0 . 0 . 0 . 0 /0**.
5. Click on "**Select a target**".
6. Select "**Enter Instance ID**".
7. Choose the ID of the running Apache HTTP server instance.

## Result

The default route has been successfully configured for the VPC subnet.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.2.3.7. About Identity and Access Management (IAM)

Identity and Access Management (IAM) provides configurable security for your AWS resources. IAM can be configured to use accounts created in IAM or to provide identity federation between IAM and your own identity services.

Refer to the AWS Identity and Access Management website for more information  
<http://aws.amazon.com/iam/>

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.2.3.8. Configure IAM Setup

## Summary

This topic covers the configuration steps required for setting up IAM for clustered JBoss EAP 6 instances. The **S3\_PING** protocol uses an S3 bucket to discover other cluster members. **JGroups** version 3.0.x requires Amazon AWS account access and secret keys to authenticate against the S3 service.

Because S3 domain controller discovery makes use of an S3 bucket, it requires Amazon AWS account access and secret keys to authenticate against the S3 service (similar to the **S3\_PING** protocol used by JGroups). The IAM user and S3 bucket used for S3 discovery must be different from the IAM user and S3 bucket used for clustering.

It is a security risk to enter your main account credentials in the user-data field, store them online or in an AMI. To circumvent this, a separate account can be created using the Amazon IAM feature which would be only granted access to a single S3 bucket.

### Procedure 25.11. Configure IAM Setup

1. Go to the IAM tab in the AWS console.
2. Click on **users**.
3. Select **Create New Users**.
4. Choose a name, and ensure the **Generate an access key for each User** option is checked.
5. Select **Download credentials**, and save them in a secure location.
6. Close the window.
7. Click on the newly created user.
8. Make note of the **User ARM** value. This value is required to set up the S3 bucket, documented here: [Section 25.2.3.10, “Configure S3 Bucket Setup”](#).

## Result

The IAM user account has been successfully created.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.2.3.9. About the S3 Bucket

S3 Buckets are the basic organization store unit in the Amazon Simple Storage System (Amazon S3). A bucket can store any number of arbitrary objects and must have a unique name to identify it with Amazon S3..

Refer to the Amazon S3 website for more information, <http://aws.amazon.com/s3/>.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.2.3.10. Configure S3 Bucket Setup

## Summary

This topic covers the steps required to configure a new S3 bucket.

## Prerequisites

- » [Section 25.2.3.8, “Configure IAM Setup”.](#)

### Procedure 25.12. Configure S3 Bucket Setup

1. Open the **S3** tab in the AWS console.
2. Click on **Create Bucket**.
3. Choose a name for the bucket and click **Create**.



#### Note

Bucket names are unique across the entire S3. Names cannot be reused.

4. Right click on the new bucket and select **Properties**.
5. Click **Add bucket policy** in the permissions tab.
6. Click **New policy** to open the policy creation wizard.
  - a. Copy the following content into the new policy, replacing **arn:aws:iam::055555555555:user/jbosscluster\*** with the value defined here: [Section 25.2.3.8, “Configure IAM Setup”](#). Change both instances of **clusterbucket123** to the name of the bucket defined in step 3 of this procedure.

```
{
  "Version": "2008-10-17",
  "Id": "Policy1312228794320",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "Stmt1312228781799",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "AWS": [
          "arn:aws:iam::055555555555:user/jbosscluster"
        ]
      },
      "Action": [
        "s3>ListBucketVersions",
        "s3>GetObjectVersion",
        "s3>ListBucket",
        "s3>PutBucketVersioning",
        "s3>DeleteObject",
        "s3>DeleteObjectVersion",
        "s3>GetObject",
        "s3>ListBucketMultipartUploads",
        "s3>ListMultipartUploadParts",
        "s3>PutObject",
        "s3>GetBucketVersioning"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:s3:::clusterbucket123/*",
        "arn:aws:s3:::clusterbucket123"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

```
        ]  
    }  
}
```

## Result

A new S3 bucket has been created, and configured successfully.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.2.3.11. Clustered Instances

#### 25.2.3.11.1. Launch Clustered JBoss EAP 6 AMIs

##### Summary

This topic covers the steps required to launch clustered JBoss EAP 6 AMIs.

##### Prerequisites

- » [Section 25.2.3.2, “Create a Relational Database Service Database Instance”](#).
- » [Section 25.2.3.4, “Create a Virtual Private Cloud \(VPC\)”](#).
- » [Section 25.2.3.5, “Launch an Apache HTTP Server Instance to Serve as a mod\\_cluster Proxy and a NAT Instance for the VPC”](#).
- » [Section 25.2.3.6, “Configure the VPC Private Subnet Default Route”](#).
- » [Section 25.2.3.8, “Configure IAM Setup”](#).
- » [Section 25.2.3.10, “Configure S3 Bucket Setup”](#).



##### Warning

Running a JBoss EAP 6 cluster in a subnet with network mask smaller than 24 bits or spanning multiple subnets complicates acquiring a unique server peer ID for each cluster member.

Refer to the **JBOSS\_CLUSTER\_ID** variable for information on how to make such a configuration work reliably: [Section 25.4.1, “Permanent Configuration Parameters”](#).



## Important

The auto-scaling Amazon EC2 feature can be used with JBoss EAP 6 cluster nodes. However, ensure it is tested **before** deployment. You should ensure that your particular workloads scale to the desired number of nodes, and that the performance meets your needs for the instance type you are planning to use (different instance types receive a different share of the EC2 cloud resources).

Furthermore, instance locality and current network/storage/host machine/RDS utilization can affect performance of a cluster. Test with your expected real-life loads and try to account for unexpected conditions.



## Down-scaling a cluster

The Amazon EC2 *scale-down* action terminates the nodes without any chance to gracefully shut down, and, as some transactions might be interrupted, other cluster nodes (and load balancers) will need time to fail over. This is likely to impact your application users' experience.

It is recommended that you either scale down the application cluster manually by disabling the server from the mod\_cluster management interface until processed sessions are completed, or shut down the JBoss EAP 6 instance gracefully (SSH access to the instance or JON can be used).

Test that your chosen procedure for scaling-down does not lead to adverse effects on your users' experience. Additional measures might be required for particular workloads, load balancers and setups.

### Procedure 25.13. Launch Clustered JBoss EAP 6 AMIs

1. Select an AMI.
2. Define the desired number of instances (the cluster size).
3. Select the VPC and instance type.
4. Click on **Security Group**.
5. Ensure that all traffic from the JBoss EAP 6 cluster subnet is allowed.
6. Define other restrictions as desired.
7. Add the following into the **User Data** field:

#### Example 25.7. Example User Data Field

```
## mod cluster proxy addresses
MOD_CLUSTER_PROXY_LIST=10.0.0.4:7654

## clustering setup
JBoss_JGroups_S3_PING_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY=<your secret key>
```

```

JBOSS_JGROUPS_S3_PING_ACCESS_KEY=<your access key>
JBOSS_JGROUPS_S3_PING_BUCKET=<your bucket name>

## password to access admin console
JBOSAS_ADMIN_PASSWORD=<your password for opening admin console>

## database credentials configuration
JAVA_OPTS="$JAVA_OPTS -
Ddb.host=instancename.something.rds.amazonaws.com -
Ddb.database=mydatabase -Ddb.user=<user> -Ddb.passwd=<pass>""

## subnet prefix this machine is connected to
SUBNET=10.0.1.

##### to run the example no modifications below should be needed
#####
PORTS_ALLOWED="1024:65535"
JBoss_IP=`hostname | sed -e 's/ip-//` -e 'y/-/./'` #listen on
public/private EC2 IP address

cat > $USER_SCRIPT << "EOF"
## Get the application to be deployed from an Internet URL
# mkdir -p /usr/share/java/jboss-ec2-eap-applications
# wget https://<your secure storage hostname>/<path>/<app
name>.war -O /usr/share/java/jboss-ec2-eap-applications/<app
name>.war

## install the JDBC driver as a core module
yum -y install mysql-connector-java
mkdir -p /usr/share/jbossas/modules/com/mysql/main
cp -v /usr/share/java/mysql-connector-java-* .jar
/usr/share/jbossas/modules/com/mysql/main/mysql-connector-
java.jar

cat > /usr/share/jbossas/modules/com/mysql/main/module.xml
<<"EOM"
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.0" name="com.mysql">
  <resources>
    <resource-root path="mysql-connector-java.jar"/>
  </resources>
  <dependencies>
    <module name="javax.api"/>
  </dependencies>
</module>
EOM

cat > $USER_CLI_COMMANDS << "EOC"
## Deploy sample application from local filesystem
deploy --force /usr/share/java/jboss-ec2-eap-samples/cluster-
demo.war

## ExampleDS configuration for MySQL database
data-source remove --name=ExampleDS
/subsystem=datasources/jdbc-driver=mysql:add(driver-
name="mysql",driver-module-name="com.mysql")

```

```

data-source add --name=ExampleDS --connection-
url="jdbc:mysql://${db.host}:3306/${db.database}" --jndi-
name=java:jboss/datasources/ExampleDS --driver-name=mysql --user-
name="${db.user}" --password="${db.passwd}"
/subsystem=datasources/data-source=ExampleDS:enable
/subsystem=datasources/data-source=ExampleDS:test-connection-in-
pool
EOC

## this will workaround the problem that in a VPC, instance
hostnames are not resolvable
echo -e "127.0.0.1\tlocalhost.localdomain localhost" > /etc/hosts
echo -e "::1\tlocalhost6.localdomain6 localhost6" >> /etc/hosts
for (( i=1 ; i<255 ; i++ )); do
    echo -e "$SUBNET${i}\tip-$SUBNET//.-} ${i}" ;
done >> /etc/hosts

EOF

```

## Result

The clustered JBoss EAP 6 AMIs have been configured and launched successfully.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.2.3.11.2. Test the Clustered JBoss EAP 6 Instance

#### Summary

This topic covers the steps to confirm that the clustered JBoss EAP 6 instances are running correctly.

#### Procedure 25.14. Testing the Clustered Instance

1. Navigate to [http://ELASTIC\\_IP\\_OF\\_APACHE\\_HTTPD](http://ELASTIC_IP_OF_APACHE_HTTPD) in a browser to confirm the web server is running successfully.

##### 2. Test the Clustered Nodes

- a. Navigate to [http://ELASTIC\\_IP\\_OF\\_APACHE\\_HTTPD/cluster-demo/put.jsp](http://ELASTIC_IP_OF_APACHE_HTTPD/cluster-demo/put.jsp) in a browser.
- b. Verify that one of the cluster nodes logs the following message:

Putting date now

- c. Stop the cluster node that logged the message in the previous step.
- d. Navigate to [http://ELASTIC\\_IP\\_OF\\_APACHE\\_HTTPD/cluster-demo/get.jsp](http://ELASTIC_IP_OF_APACHE_HTTPD/cluster-demo/get.jsp) in a browser.
- e. Verify that the time shown is the same as the time that was PUT using **put.jsp** in Step 2-a.
- f. Verify that one of the running cluster nodes logs the following message:

Getting date now

- g. Restart the stopped clustered node.
- h. Connect to the Apache HTTP server instance:

```
ssh -L7654:localhost:7654 <ELASTIC_IP_OF_APACHE_HTTPD>
```

- i. Navigate to [http://localhost:7654/mod\\_cluster-manager](http://localhost:7654/mod_cluster-manager) to confirm all instances are running correctly.

## Result

The clustered JBoss EAP 6 instances have been tested, and confirmed to be working correctly.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.2.3.12. Clustered Managed Domains

#### 25.2.3.12.1. Launch an Instance to Serve as a Cluster Domain Controller

##### Summary

This topic covers the steps required to launch a clustered JBoss EAP 6 managed domain on a Red Hat AMI (Amazon Machine Image).

##### Prerequisites

- » A suitable Red Hat AMI. Refer to [Section 25.1.6, “Supported Red Hat AMIs”](#).
- » [Section 25.2.3.4, “Create a Virtual Private Cloud \(VPC\)”](#)
- » [Section 25.2.3.5, “Launch an Apache HTTP Server Instance to Serve as a mod\\_cluster Proxy and a NAT Instance for the VPC”](#)
- » [Section 25.2.3.6, “Configure the VPC Private Subnet Default Route”](#)
- » [Section 25.2.3.8, “Configure IAM Setup”](#)
- » [Section 25.2.3.10, “Configure S3 Bucket Setup”](#)

#### Procedure 25.15. Launch a Cluster Domain Controller

1. Create an elastic IP for this instance.
2. Select an AMI.
3. Go to Security Group and allow all traffic (use Red Hat Enterprise Linux's built-in firewall capabilities to restrict access if desired).
4. Choose "running" in the public subnet of the VPC.
5. Choose a static IP (e.g. **10 . 0 . 0 . 5**).
6. Put the following in the User Data: field:

```
## mod cluster proxy addresses
MOD_CLUSTER_PROXY_LIST=10.0.0.4:7654
```

```

## password that will be used by slave host controllers to connect
to the domain controller
JBOSAS_ADMIN_PASSWORD=<password for slave host controllers>

## subnet prefix this machine is connected to
SUBNET=10.0.0.

## S3 domain controller discovery setup
# JBOS_DOMAIN_S3_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY=<your secret key>
# JBOS_DOMAIN_S3_ACCESS_KEY=<your access key>
# JBOS_DOMAIN_S3_BUCKET=<your bucket name>

##### to run the example no modifications below should be needed
#####
JBOS_DOMAIN_CONTROLLER=true
PORTS_ALLOWED="9999 9990 9443"
JBOS_IP=`hostname | sed -e 's/ip-//' -e 'y/-/./'` #listen on
public/private EC2 IP address

cat > $USER_SCRIPT << "EOF"
## Get the application to be deployed from an Internet URL
# mkdir -p /usr/share/java/jboss-ec2-eap-applications
# wget https://<your secure storage hostname>/<path>/<app name>.war
-O /usr/share/java/jboss-ec2-eap-applications/<app name>.war

## Install the JDBC driver as a core module
yum -y install mysql-connector-java
mkdir -p /usr/share/jbosas/modules/com/mysql/main
cp -v /usr/share/java/mysql-connector-java-* .jar
/usr/share/jbosas/modules/com/mysql/main/mysql-connector-java.jar

cat > /usr/share/jbosas/modules/com/mysql/main/module.xml <<"EOM"
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.0" name="com.mysql">
    <resources>
        <resource-root path="mysql-connector-java.jar"/>
    </resources>
    <dependencies>
        <module name="javax.api"/>
    </dependencies>
</module>
EOM

cat > $USER_CLI_COMMANDS << "EOC"
## Deploy the sample application from the local filesystem
deploy /usr/share/java/jboss-ec2-eap-samples/cluster-demo.war --
server-groups=other-server-group

## ExampleDS configuration for MySQL database
data-source --profile=mod_cluster-ec2-ha remove --name=ExampleDS
/profile=mod_cluster-ec2-ha/subsystem=datasources/jdbc-
driver=mysql:add(driver-name="mysql",driver-module-
name="com.mysql")
data-source --profile=mod_cluster-ec2-ha add --name=ExampleDS --
connection-url="jdbc:mysql://${db.host}:3306/${db.database}" --
jndi-name=java:jboss/datasources/ExampleDS --driver-name=mysql --

```

```

user-name="${db.user}" --password="${db.passwd}"
/profile=mod_cluster-ec2-ha/subsystem=datasources/data-
source=ExampleDS:enable
EOC

## this will workaround the problem that in a VPC, instance
hostnames are not resolvable
echo -e "127.0.0.1\tlocalhost.localdomain localhost" > /etc/hosts
echo -e "::1\tlocalhost6.localdomain6 localhost6" >> /etc/hosts
for (( i=1 ; i<255 ; i++ )); do
    echo -e "$SUBNET${i}\tip-$SUBNET//.-} ${i}" ;
done >> /etc/hosts

EOF

```

## 7. For Production Instances

For a production instance, add the following line beneath the **USER\_SCRIPT** line of the **User Data** field, to ensure security updates are applied on boot.

```
yum -y update
```

### Note

**yum -y update** should be run regularly, to apply security fixes and enhancements.

## 8. Launch the Red Hat AMI instance.

### Result

A clustered JBoss EAP 6 managed domain is configured and launched on a Red Hat AMI.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.2.3.12.2. Launch One or More Instances to Serve as Cluster Host Controllers

#### Summary

This topic covers the steps required to launch one or more instances of JBoss EAP 6 to serve as cluster host controllers on a Red Hat AMI (Amazon Machine Image).

#### Prerequisites

- Configure and launch the cluster domain controller. Refer to [Section 25.2.3.12.1, “Launch an Instance to Serve as a Cluster Domain Controller”](#).
- [Section 25.2.3.8, “Configure IAM Setup”](#)
- [Section 25.2.3.10, “Configure S3 Bucket Setup”](#)

#### Procedure 25.16. Launch Host Controllers

For each instance you would like to create, repeat the following steps:

1. Select an AMI.
2. Define the desired number of instances (the number of slave host controllers).
3. Select the VPC and instance type.
4. Click on Security Group.
5. Ensure that all traffic from the JBoss EAP 6 cluster subnet is allowed.
6. Define other restrictions as desired.
7. Add the following into the User Data field:

```

## mod cluster proxy addresses
MOD_CLUSTER_PROXY_LIST=10.0.0.4:7654

## clustering setup
JBoss_JGROUPS_S3_PING_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY=<your secret key>
JBoss_JGROUPS_S3_PING_ACCESS_KEY=<your access key>
JBoss_JGROUPS_S3_PING_BUCKET=<your bucket name>

## host controller setup
### static domain controller discovery setup
JBoss_DOMAIN_MASTER_ADDRESS=10.0.0.5
### S3 domain controller discovery setup
# JBoss_DOMAIN_S3_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY=<your secret key>
# JBoss_DOMAIN_S3_ACCESS_KEY=<your access key>
# JBoss_DOMAIN_S3_BUCKET=<your bucket name>

JBoss_HOST_PASSWORD=<password for slave host controllers>

## database credentials configuration
JAVA_OPTS="$JAVA_OPTS -
Ddb.host=instancename.something.rds.amazonaws.com -
Ddb.database=mydatabase -Ddb.user=<user> -Ddb.passwd=<pass>"

## subnet prefix this machine is connected to
SUBNET=10.0.1.

#### to run the example no modifications below should be needed
#####
JBoss_HOST_USERNAME=admin
PORTS_ALLOWED="1024:65535"
JBoss_IP=`hostname | sed -e 's/ip-//' -e 'y/-./'` #listen on
public/private EC2 IP address

cat > $USER_SCRIPT << "EOF"
## Server instance configuration
sed -i "s/main-server-group/other-server-group/" \
$JBoss_CONFIG_DIR/$JBoss_HOST_CONFIG

## install the JDBC driver as a core module
yum -y install mysql-connector-java
mkdir -p /usr/share/jbossas/modules/com/mysql/main
cp -v /usr/share/java/mysql-connector-java-* .jar
/usr/share/jbossas/modules/com/mysql/main/mysql-connector-java.jar

```

```

cat > /usr/share/jbossas/modules/com/mysql/main/module.xml <<"EOM"
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.0" name="com.mysql">
    <resources>
        <resource-root path="mysql-connector-java.jar"/>
    </resources>
    <dependencies>
        <module name="javax.api"/>
    </dependencies>
</module>
EOM

## this will workaround the problem that in a VPC, instance
hostnames are not resolvable
echo -e "127.0.0.1\tlocalhost.localdomain localhost" > /etc/hosts
echo -e "::1\tlocalhost6.localdomain6 localhost6" >> /etc/hosts
for (( i=1 ; i<255 ; i++ )); do
    echo -e "$SUBNET${i} tip-$SUBNET//.-$i" ;
done >> /etc/hosts

EOF

```

## 8. For Production Instances

For a production instance, add the following line beneath the **USER\_SCRIPT** line of the **User Data** field, to ensure security updates are applied on boot.

```
yum -y update
```

### Note

**yum -y update** should be run regularly, to apply security fixes and enhancements.

## 9. Launch the Red Hat AMI instance.

### Result

The JBoss EAP 6 cluster host controllers are configured and launched on a Red Hat AMI.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.2.3.12.3. Test the Clustered JBoss EAP 6 Managed Domain

#### Summary

This topic covers the steps required to test the clustered JBoss EAP 6 managed domain on a Red Hat AMI (Amazon Machine Image).

To test the Managed Domain you must know the elastic IP addresses of both the Apache HTTP server and JBoss EAP 6 Domain Controller.

#### Prerequisites

- Configure and launch the cluster domain controller. See [Section 25.2.3.12.1, “Launch an Instance to Serve as a Cluster Domain Controller”](#).
- Configure and launch the cluster host controllers. See [Section 25.2.3.12.2, “Launch One or More Instances to Serve as Cluster Host Controllers”](#).

#### Procedure 25.17. Test the Apache HTTP server instance

- Navigate to **http://ELASTIC\_IP\_OF\_APACHE\_HTTP\_SERVER** in a browser to confirm the web server is running successfully.

#### Procedure 25.18. Test the Domain Controller

1. Navigate to **http://ELASTIC\_IP\_OF\_DOMAIN\_CONTROLLER:9990/console**
2. Log in using the username **admin** and the password specified in the User Data field for the domain controller. Once logged in, the administration console landing page for a managed domain should appear ([http://ELASTIC\\_IP\\_OF\\_DOMAIN\\_CONTROLLER:9990/console/App.html#server-instances](http://ELASTIC_IP_OF_DOMAIN_CONTROLLER:9990/console/App.html#server-instances)).
3. Click the **Server** label at the top right side of the screen. Select any of the host controllers in the **Host** dropdown menu at the top left side of the screen.
4. Verify that this host controller has two server configurations called **server-one** and **server-two** and verify that they both belong to the **other-server-group**.

#### Procedure 25.19. Test the Host Controllers

1. Navigate to **http://ELASTIC\_IP\_OF\_APACHE\_HTTP\_SERVER/cluster-demo/put.jsp** in a browser.
2. Verify that one of the host controllers logs the following message: **Putting date now**.
3. Stop the server instance that logged the message in the previous step (see *Stop a Server Using the Management Console*).
4. Navigate to **http://ELASTIC\_IP\_OF\_APACHE\_HTTP\_SERVER/cluster-demo/get.jsp** in a browser.
5. Verify that the time shown is the same as the time that was **PUT** using **put.jsp** in Step 2.
6. Verify that one of the running server instances logs the following message: **Getting date now**.
7. Restart the stopped server instance (see Section 2.8.3, Start a Server Using the Management Console)
8. Connect to the Apache HTTP server instance.

```
$ ssh -L7654:localhost:7654 ELASTIC_IP_OF_APACHE_HTTP_SERVER
```

9. Navigate to **http://localhost:7654/mod\_cluster-manager** to confirm all instances are running correctly.

#### Result

The JBoss EAP 6 web server, domain controller, and host controllers are running correctly on a Red Hat AMI.

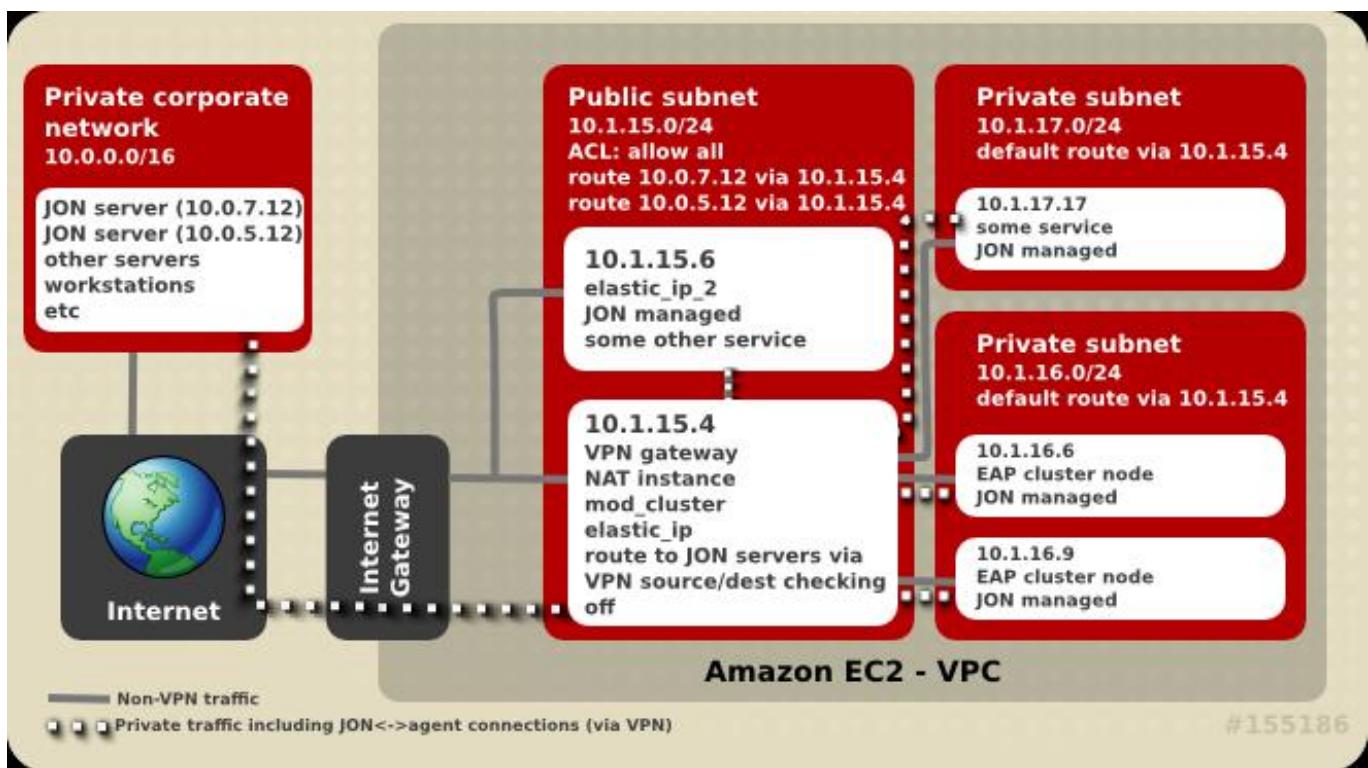
[Report a bug](#)

## 25.3. Establishing Monitoring with JBoss Operations Network (JON)

### 25.3.1. About AMI Monitoring

With your business application deployed to a correctly-configured AMI instance, the next step is to establish monitoring of the platform with JBoss Operations Network (JON).

The JON server is commonly located inside a corporate network, so it's necessary to establish a secure connection between the server and each of its agents. Establishing a VPN between the two points is the most common solution but this complicates the required networking configuration. This chapter provides network configuration guidelines for enabling communication between the JON agent and JON server. For more extensive information on configuration, management, and usage please refer to the official Red Hat documentation for JBoss Operations Network (JON).



**Figure 25.1. JON Server connectivity**

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.3.2. About Connectivity Requirements

Registering a JON agent with its servers requires two-way communication between agent and servers. The JON Agent needs access to port **7080** on all JON servers, except in the case of SSL where port **7443** is used. Each JON server must be able to access each of the connected agents on a unique host and port pairing. The agent port is usually **16163**.

If there are multiple clustered JON servers, make sure each agent can communicate with all servers in the JON cluster via the IP and hostname pairs as configured through the JON server administration console. The JON server used by the agent to register may not be the server it tries to use after initialization.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.3.3. About Network Address Translation (NAT)

A corporate VPN gateway acting in routed mode greatly simplifies network configuration. If your corporate VPN gateway is acting in NAT mode however, the JON server does not have direct visibility of agents. In this case, port forwarding needs to be configured for each agent.

NAT VPN configurations require a port on the gateway to be forwarded to the JON agent's address or port on the managed machine. The JON agent also needs to be configured to tell the server the forwarded port number and IP address. You can find further information in the `rhq.communications.connector.*` description for the `agent-configuration.xml` configuration file.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.3.4. About Amazon EC2 and DNS

JON servers and JON agents need to be able to resolve each others' hostnames. The DNS resolution is more complicated in the case of a VPN configuration. Connected servers have multiple possible options. One option is to use either the Amazon EC2 or the corporate network's DNS servers. Another option is to use a split DNS configuration where the corporate DNS servers are used for resolving names in particular domains, and the Amazon EC2 DNS servers are used for resolving all other names.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.3.5. About Routing in EC2

All Amazon EC2 servers have a **source/destination checking** routing feature activated by default. This feature drops any packets being sent to the server which have a destination different from the machine's IP address. If the VPN solution selected for connecting agents to the JON server includes a router, this feature needs to be turned off for the server or servers acting as routers or VPN gateways. This configuration setting can be accessed via the Amazon AWS console. Disabled **source/destination checking** is also required in a Virtual Private Cloud (VPC).

Some VPN configurations route general Internet traffic through the corporate VPN by default. It is recommended that you avoid this as it may be a slower and less efficient configuration for your particular needs.

While the use of a proper addressing schema is not a concern specific to JON, poor schemas can affect it. Amazon EC2 assigns IP addresses from the **10.0.0.0/8** network. Instances usually have a public IP address also, but only network traffic on the internal IP address within the same availability zone is free. To avoid using the **10.0.0.0/8** network in private addressing, there are a few things to consider.

- » When creating a VPC, avoid allocating addresses already in use in the private network to avoid connectivity problems.
- » If an instance needs access to availability zone local resources, make sure Amazon EC2 private addresses are used and traffic is not routed through the VPN.

- » If an Amazon EC2 instance will access a small subset of corporate private network addresses (for example only JON servers), only these addresses should be routed through the VPN. This increases security and lowers the chance of Amazon EC2 or private network address space collisions.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.3.6. About Terminating and Restarting with JON

One of the benefits of a cloud environment is the ease by which you can terminate and launch a machine instance. You can also launch an instance identical to the initial one. This may cause issues if the new instance tries to register with JON servers using the same agent name as the previously running agent. If this happens the JON server will not allow an agent to reconnect with a missing or non-matching identification token.

To avoid this, ensure that terminated agents are removed from the JON inventory before trying to connect an agent with the same name or specify the correct identification token when starting new agent.

Another issue that you might encounter is when an agent machine is assigned a new VPN IP address that no longer matches the address recorded in the JON configuration. An example might include a machine that is restarted or where a VPN connection is terminated. In this case, it is recommended that you bind the JON agent's life cycle to the VPN connection's life cycle. If the connection drops, you can stop the agent. When the connection is restored again, update **JON\_AGENT\_ADDR** in **/etc/sysconfig/jon-agent-ec2** to reflect the new IP address and restart the agent.

Information on how to change the agent's IP address can be found in the Configuring JON Servers and Agents Guide available at

[https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/JBoss\\_Operations\\_Network/](https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/JBoss_Operations_Network/).

If there are a high number of instances launched and/or terminated it can become impractical to add and remove them manually from the JON inventory. JON's scripting capabilities can be used for automate these steps. Refer to the JON documentation for further information.

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.3.7. Configure an Instance to Register with JBoss Operations Network

Use the following procedure to register a JBoss EAP 6 instance with JBoss Operations Network.

- » For JBoss EAP 6, add this to the User Data field.

```
JON_SERVER_ADDR=jon2.it.example.com
## if instance not already configured to resolve its hostname
JON_AGENT_ADDR=`ip addr show dev eth0 primary to 0/0 | sed -n
's#.*inet \([0-9]\+\)\/.*\#\!p'` 
PORTS_ALLOWED=16163
# insert other JON options when necessary.
```

See [Section 25.4.1, “Permanent Configuration Parameters”](#), parameters starting with **JON\_** for the format of JON options.

[Report a bug](#)

## 25.4. User Script Configuration

### 25.4.1. Permanent Configuration Parameters

#### Summary

The following parameters can be used to influence the configuration and operation of JBoss EAP 6. Their contents are written to `/etc/sysconfig/jbossas` and `/etc/sysconfig/jon-agent-ec2`.

**Table 25.2. Configurable Parameters**

Name	Description	Default
JBOSS_JGROUPS_S3_PING_ACCESS_KEY	Amazon AWS user account access key for S3_PING discovery if clustering is used.	N/A
JBOSS_JGROUPS_S3_PING_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY	Amazon AWS user account secret access key.	N/A
JBOSS_JGROUPS_S3_PING_BUCKET	Amazon S3 bucket to be used for S3_PING discovery.	N/A
JBOSS_CLUSTER_ID	ID of cluster member nodes. Only used for clustering. Accepted values are (in order): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ A valid cluster ID number in the range <b>0 - 1023</b>.</li> <li>➤ A network interface name, where the last octet of the IP is used as the value.</li> <li>➤ "S3" as a value would coordinate ID usage through the S3 bucket used by jgroups' S3_PING.</li> </ul> It is recommended to use the last octet of the IP (the default) when all cluster nodes are located in the same 24 or more bit subnet (for example, in a VPC subnet).	Last octet of eth0's IP address
MOD_CLUSTER_PROXY_LIST	Comma-delimited list of IPs/hostnames of mod_cluster proxies if mod_cluster is to be used.	N/A
PORTS_ALLOWED	List of incoming ports to be allowed by firewall in addition to the default ones.	N/A
JBOSSAS_ADMIN_PASSWORD	Password for the <b>admin</b> user.	N/A
JON_SERVER_ADDR	JON server hostname or IP with which to register. This is only used for registration, after that the agent may communicate with other servers in the JON cluster.	N/A

Name	Description	Default
JON_SERVER_PORT	Port used by the agent to communicate with the server.	7080
JON_AGENT_NAME	Name of JON agent, must be unique.	Instance's ID
JON_AGENT_PORT	Port that the agent listens on.	16163
JON_AGENT_ADDR	IP address that the JON agent is to be bound to. This is used when the server has more than one public address, (e.g. VPN).	JON agent chooses the IP of local hostname by default.
JON_AGENT_OPTS	Additional JON agent system properties which can be used for configuring SSL, NAT and other advanced settings.	N/A
JBOSS_SERVER_CONFIG	<p>Name of JBoss EAP 6 server configuration file to use. If <code>JBOSS_DOMAIN_CONTROLLER</code>=<code>true</code>, then <code>domain-ec2.xml</code> is used. Otherwise:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ If S3 config is present, then <code>standalone-ec2-ha.xml</code> is used.</li> <li>➤ If <code>MOD_CLUSTER_PROXY_LIST</code> is specified, then <code>standalone-mod_cluster-ec2-ha.xml</code> is selected.</li> <li>➤ If neither of the first two options are used, then the <code>standalone.xml</code> file is used.</li> <li>➤ Can also be set to <code>standalone-full.xml</code>.</li> </ul>	<code>standalone.xml</code> , <code>standalone-full.xml</code> , <code>standalone-ec2-ha.xml</code> , <code>standalone-mod_cluster-ec2-ha.xml</code> , <code>domain-ec2.xml</code> depending on the other parameters.
JAVA_OPTS	Custom values to be added to the variable before JBoss EAP 6 starts.	JAVA_OPTS is built from the values of other parameters.
JBOSS_IP	IP address that the server is to be bound to.	127.0.0.1
JBOSSCONF	The name of the JBoss EAP 6 profile to start. To prevent JBoss EAP 6 from starting, JBOSSCONF can be set to <code>disabled</code>	<code>standalone</code>
JBOSS_DOMAIN_CONTROLLER	Sets whether or not this instance will run as a domain controller.	<code>false</code>
JBOSS_DOMAIN_MASTER_ADDRESS	IP address of remote domain controller.	N/A
JBOSS_HOST_NAME	The logical host name (within the domain). This needs to be distinct.	The value of the HOSTNAME environment variable.

Name	Description	Default
JBOSS_HOST_USERNAME	The username the host controller should use when registering with the domain controller. If not provided, the JBOSS_HOST_NAME is used instead.	JBOSS_HOST_NAME
JBOSS_HOST_PASSWORD	The password the host controller should use when registering with the domain controller.	N/A
JBOSS_HOST_CONFIG	If JBOSS_DOMAIN_CONTROLLER_R=true, then <b>host-master.xml</b> or <b>host-slave.xml</b> , depending on the other parameters.	<b>host-master.xml</b> or <b>host-slave.xml</b> , depending on the other parameters.
JBOSS_DOMAIN_S3_ACCESS_KEY	Amazon AWS user account access key for S3 domain controller discovery.	N/A
JBOSS_DOMAIN_S3_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY	Amazon AWS user account secret access key for S3 domain controller discovery.	N/A
JBOSS_DOMAIN_S3_BUCKET	Amazon S3 bucket to be used for S3 domain controller discovery.	N/A

[Report a bug](#)

#### 25.4.2. Custom Script Parameters

##### Summary

The following parameters can be used in the user customization section of the **User Data:** field.

**Table 25.3. Configurable Parameters**

Name	Description
JBOSS_DEPLOY_DIR	Deploy directory of the active profile (for example, <b>/var/lib/jbossas/standalone/deployments/</b> ). Deployable archives placed in this directory will be deployed. Red Hat recommends using the Management Console or CLI tool to manage deployments instead of using the deploy directory.
JBOSS_CONFIG_DIR	Config directory of the active profile (for example, <b>/var/lib/jbossas/standalone/configuration</b> ).
JBOSS_HOST_CONFIG	Name of the active host configuration file (for example, <b>host-master.xml</b> ). Red Hat recommends using the Management Console or CLI tools to configure the server instead of editing the configuration file.
JBOSS_SERVER_CONFIG	Name of the active server configuration file (for example, <b>standalone-ec2-ha.xml</b> ). Red Hat recommends using the Management Console or CLI tools to configure the server instead of editing the configuration file.

Name	Description
USER_SCRIPT	Path to the custom configuration script, which is available prior to sourcing user-data configuration.
USER_CLI_COMMANDS	Path to a custom file of CLI commands, which is available prior to sourcing user-data configuration.

[Report a bug](#)

## 25.5. Troubleshooting

### 25.5.1. About Troubleshooting Amazon EC2

EC2 provides an Alarm Status for each instance, indicating severe instance malfunction but the absence of such an alarm is no guarantee that the instance has started correctly and services are running properly. It is possible to use Amazon CloudWatch with its custom metric functionality to monitor instance services' health but use of an enterprise management solution is recommended.

To simplify troubleshooting, Red Hat recommends managing the EC2 instance using JBoss Operations Network (JON) which can automatically discover, monitor and manage many services on an EC2 instance with the JON agent installed, including: JBoss EAP 6, Tomcat, Apache HTTP Server, and PostgreSQL. For details of monitoring JBoss EAP with JON, see [Section 25.3.1, “About AMI Monitoring”](#).

[Report a bug](#)

### 25.5.2. Diagnostic Information

In case of a problem being detected by the JBoss Operations Network, Amazon CloudWatch or manual inspection, common sources of diagnostic information are:

- » **/var/log/jboss\_user-data.out** is the output of the jboss-ec2-eap init script and user custom configuration script.
- » **/var/cache/jboss-ec2-eap/** contains the actual user data, custom script, and custom CLI commands used at instance start-up.
- » **/var/log** also contains all the logs collected from machine start up, JBoss EAP 6, httpd and most other services.

Access to these files is only available via an SSH session. Refer to the Amazon EC Getting Started Guide for details on how to configure and establish an SSH session with an Amazon EC2 instance.

[Report a bug](#)

## Supplemental References

### A.1. Download Files from the Red Hat Customer Portal

#### Prerequisites

- Before you begin this task, you need a Customer Portal account. Browse to <https://access.redhat.com> and click the **Register** link in the upper right corner to create an account.

#### Procedure A.1. Log in and Download Files from the Red Hat Customer Portal

- Browse to <https://access.redhat.com> and click the **Log in** link in the top right corner. Enter your credentials and click **Log In**.

#### Result

You are logged into RHN and you are returned to the main web page at <https://access.redhat.com>.

- Navigate to the Downloads page.**

Use one of the following options to navigate to the **Downloads** page.

- Click the **Downloads** link in the top navigation bar.
- Navigate directly to <https://access.redhat.com/downloads/>.

- Select the product and version to download.**

Use one of the following ways to choose the correct product and version to download.

- Step through the navigation one level at a time.
- Search for your product using the search area at the top right-hand side of the screen.

- Download the appropriate file for your operating system and installation method of choice.**

Depending on the product you choose, you may have the choice of a Zip archive, RPM, or native installer for a specific operating system and architecture. Click either the file name or the **Download** link to the right of the file you want to download.

#### Result

The file is downloaded to your computer.

#### Report a bug

### A.2. Configure the Default JDK on Red Hat Enterprise Linux

It is possible to have multiple Java Development Kits (JDks) installed on your Red Hat Enterprise Linux system. This task shows you how to specify which one your current environment uses. It uses the **alternatives** command.



## Important

This task only applies to Red Hat Enterprise Linux.



## Note

It may not be necessary to do this step. Red Hat Enterprise Linux uses OpenJDK 1.6 as the default option. If this is what you want, and your system is working properly, you do not need to manually specify which JDK to use.

### Prerequisites

- In order to complete this task, you need to have superuser access, either through direct login or by means of the **sudo** command.

### Procedure A.2. Configure the Default JDK

#### 1. Determine the paths for your preferred java and javac binaries.

You can use the command **rpm -q1 packagename | grep bin** to find the locations of binaries installed from RPMs. The default locations of the **java** and **javac** binaries on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 32-bit systems are as follows.

**Table A.1. Default locations for java and javac binaries**

JDK	Path
OpenJDK 1.6	<b>/usr/lib/jvm/jre-1.6.0-openjdk/bin/java</b>
	<b>/usr/lib/jvm/java-1.6.0-openjdk/bin/javac</b>
Oracle JDK 1.6	<b>/usr/lib/jvm/jre-1.6.0-sun/bin/java</b>
	<b>/usr/lib/jvm/java-1.6.0-sun/bin/javac</b>

#### 2. Set the alternative you wish to use for each.

Run the following commands to set your system to use a specific **java** and **javac**: **/usr/sbin/alternatives --config java** or **/usr/sbin/alternatives --config javac**. Follow the on-screen instructions.

#### 3. Optional: Set the **java\_sdk\_1.6.0** alternative choice.

If you want to use Oracle JDK, you need to set the alternative for **java\_sdk\_1.6.0**. as well. Use the following command: **/usr/sbin/alternatives --config java\_sdk\_1.6.0**. The correct path is usually **/usr/lib/jvm/java-1.6.0-sun**. You can do a file listing to verify it.

**Result:**

The alternative JDK is selected and active.

[Report a bug](#)

## Revision History

**Revision 6.3.0-51**      **Tuesday November 18 2014**      **Russell Dickenson**  
Red Hat JBoss Enterprise Application Platform 6.3.0 Continuous Release

**Revision 6.3.0-38**      **Monday August 4 2014**      **Sande Gilda**  
Red Hat JBoss Enterprise Application Platform 6.3.0.GA